

In the opinions of Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P. and Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP, Bond Counsel, under existing law (i) assuming continuing compliance with certain covenants and the accuracy of certain representations, interest on the Series 2007 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes and is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations, and (ii) interest on, and any profit made on the sale, exchange or other disposition of, the Series 2007 Bonds are exempt from the Ohio personal income tax, the Ohio commercial activity tax, the net income base of the Ohio corporate franchise tax, and municipal and school district income taxes in Ohio. Interest on the Series 2007 Bonds may be subject to certain federal taxes imposed only on certain corporations, including the corporate alternative minimum tax on a portion of that interest. For a more complete discussion of the tax aspects, see "TAX MATTERS" herein.

**\$5,531,594,541**

## Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority

### Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007

**\$211,350,000 Series 2007A-1**  
Senior Current Interest Serial Bonds

**\$4,726,045,000 Series 2007A-2**  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds

**\$274,751,138 Series 2007A-3**  
Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds

**\$191,265,480 Series 2007B**  
First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds

**\$128,182,923 Series 2007C**  
Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds

The Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority (the "Authority") is a body, both corporate and politic, constituting a public body, agency and instrumentality of the State of Ohio (the "State"), separate and distinct from the State, performing essential functions of the State and created and governed by Sections 183.51 and 183.52 of the Ohio Revised Code (the "Act").

The Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007 are comprised of three series of bonds — the Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007A, which are Senior Bonds (the "Series 2007A Bonds"), the Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007B, which are First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Bonds (the "Series 2007B Bonds") and the Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007C, which are Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Bonds (the "Series 2007C Bonds") and together with the Series 2007A Bonds and the Series 2007B Bonds, the "Series 2007 Bonds". The Series 2007A Bonds consist of three subseries — the Series 2007A-1 Bonds which are fixed rate serial bonds, the Series 2007A-2 Bonds which are fixed rate current interest turbo term bonds and the Series 2007A-3 Bonds which are capital appreciation turbo term bonds until their Conversion Date at which time they will become fixed rate current interest turbo term bonds. The Series 2007 Bonds will be paid in accordance with the Payment Priorities. All of the Series 2007 Bonds other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds are Turbo Term Bonds. Capitalized terms used on this cover and not otherwise defined shall have the meanings defined herein.

The Series 2007 Bonds will be issued pursuant to a Trust Indenture, dated as of October 1, 2007, as supplemented (the "Indenture") between the Authority and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the "Trustee") principally in order to finance the Authority's purchase from the State of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts. The State will also receive the 2007 Residual Certificate, as described herein. The Indenture also permits the issuance of Refunding Bonds, Additional Bonds and Fully Subordinate Bonds subject to the satisfaction of certain conditions described herein. The Series 2007 Bonds, together with any Refunding Bonds, Additional Bonds and Fully Subordinate Bonds issued under the Indenture, are referred to herein as the "Bonds."

Pursuant to the Purchase and Sale Agreement by and between the State and the Authority, dated as of October 1, 2007 (the "2007 Sale Agreement"), the Authority is purchasing the right, title and interest in and to 100% of (i) all tobacco settlement payments that are required to be made by the tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State under the terms of the MSA on and after the delivery date for the Series 2007 Bonds (the "Delivery Date"), (ii) all lump sum or partial lump sum payments received on and after the Delivery Date that are allocable to, or in substitution for, payments required under the terms of the MSA by tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State, and (iii) the State's rights under the MSA to receive the tobacco settlement payments referred to in (i) and (ii) (such payments and rights, as more fully described herein, the "2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts"). The 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts include 100% of any amounts due to the State and withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account on and after the Delivery Date by the tobacco manufacturers as a result of a dispute as to the amount of a payment required to be made by them under the MSA, and that are subsequently paid by the tobacco manufacturers or released from the Disputed Payments Account, including all earnings thereon. The 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts do not include any right to or interest in amounts withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account before the Delivery Date, including all earnings thereon.

The Bonds are special revenue obligations of the Authority and are payable solely from the Pledged Tobacco Receipts and the other Collateral pledged under the Indenture. The "Pledged Tobacco Receipts" are the right, title and interest of the Authority in and to, 100% of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts. The Authority has no assets available for payment of the Bonds other than the Pledged Tobacco Receipts and the other Collateral.

Pursuant to the Act, (i) the Series 2007 Bonds are not general obligations of the State and the full faith and credit, revenue, and taxing power of the State are not pledged to the payment of debt service on the Series 2007 Bonds or to any guarantee of the payment of that debt service, (ii) the Holders of Series 2007 Bonds shall have no right to have any moneys obligated or pledged for the payment of debt service except the Collateral, and (iii) the rights of the Holders of Series 2007 Bonds to payment of debt service are limited to all or that portion of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, and the Pledged Accounts, pledged to the payment of debt service pursuant to the Indenture in accordance with the Act.

The amount of Pledged Tobacco Receipts received is dependent on many factors, including future domestic cigarette consumption, the financial capability of the PMs, litigation affecting the MSA and related state legislation, enforcement of state legislation related to the MSA, and the tobacco industry. Payments by the PMs under the MSA are subject to certain adjustments, some of which may be material. Bondholders should assume that future annual payments and strategic contribution payments may be reduced. See "RISK FACTORS" for a discussion of certain factors that should be considered in connection with an investment in the Series 2007 Bonds.

Numerous lawsuits have been filed challenging the MSA and related statutes, including two cases (*Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings*, both discussed in "RISK FACTORS" herein), that are pending in the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of New York. The State is a defendant in the *Grand River* case. The courts in the *Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings* actions are considering plaintiffs' allegations of an illegal output cartel under the federal antitrust laws and plaintiffs' allegations of violations under the Commerce Clause of the U.S. Constitution. A determination that the MSA or related state legislation is void or unenforceable could have a materially adverse effect on the payments by PMs under the MSA and the amount or the timing of receipt of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions, could lead to a decrease in the market value and/or liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds, and could result in the complete loss of a Bondholder's investment. See "RISK FACTORS" and "CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS" herein.

Interest on the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds will be payable semiannually on each June 1 and December 1, commencing June 1, 2008. Interest on the Series 2007A-3 Bonds will not be paid currently prior to December 1, 2012 (the "Conversion Date") but will be compounded and accrete to, but not including, the Conversion Date. Thereafter, interest on the Series 2007A-3 Bonds will be paid currently on each June 1 and December 1 until maturity or earlier prepayment. Interest on the Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds will not be payable currently and will accrete from the Delivery Date and be compounded on June 1, 2008 and thereafter on each December 1 and June 1 until maturity or earlier redemption.

The Series 2007 Bonds consist of Serial Bonds and Turbo Term Bonds maturing on June 1 in the years as set forth on the inside front cover (each such date, a "Maturity Date"). The Series 2007A Bonds, other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, are subject to redemption in accordance with the schedule of Sinking Fund Installments therefor. In addition, the Series 2007 Bonds, except Series 2007A-1 Bonds, are subject to mandatory redemption to the extent of Surplus Collections as defined herein ("Turbo Redemptions"). Turbo Redemptions, if any, will be credited against both Sinking Fund Installments where applicable and Turbo Term Bond Maturities in chronological order of maturities. As a consequence, payment of the Bond Obligation of the Series 2007 Bonds, other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, may be substantially earlier than the scheduled Sinking Fund Installments and Maturity Dates therefor. The Series 2007 Bonds are also subject to optional redemption, mandatory redemption and mandatory clean-up calls, all as described herein.

No payments will be made with respect to First Subordinate Bonds, including the Series 2007B Bonds, before all Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds, are paid or redeemed in full. No payments will be made with respect to Second Subordinate Bonds, including the Series 2007C Bonds, before all Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds and the First Subordinate Bonds, including the Series 2007B Bonds, are paid or redeemed in full. See "SERIES 2007 BONDS — Subordination of Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds" herein.

Failure to pay interest when due or the Principal of a Senior Bond on its Maturity Date will constitute a Payment Default, which is an Event of Default under the Indenture. However, failure to pay Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions on the Senior Bonds will not constitute an Event of Default under the Indenture unless Collections are sufficient and available therefor. The ratings for the Series 2007 Bonds address only (i) the payment of interest thereon when due and (ii) the payment of Principal thereof by their respective Maturity Dates. The ratings do not address the payment of Sinking Fund Installments on Series 2007 Bonds or Turbo Redemptions. See "RATINGS" herein.

See the Inside Front Cover for Maturity Schedule, Principal Amounts, Interest Rates, Prices, Yields, Projected Turbo Redemption Dates, Projected Average Lives, CUSIP Numbers and other pricing information.

This cover contains information for reference only. Potential investors must read the entire Offering Circular for information essential to making an informed investment decision.

The Series 2007 Bonds are offered when, as and if issued and accepted by the Underwriters, subject to the approval of legality by Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP and Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P., as Bond Counsel. Certain legal matters with respect to the State will be passed upon by the State's Attorney General. Certain legal matters with respect to the Authority will be passed upon by Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, New York, New York and Wilkerson & Associates Co., LPA, Cleveland, Ohio, as Co-Underwriters' Counsel. It is expected that the Series 2007 Bonds will be available for delivery in book-entry only form through The Depository Trust Company in New York, New York, on or about October 29, 2007.

**Bear, Stearns & Co. Inc.**  
Joint Book-Running Senior Manager

**Citi**  
Joint Book-Running Senior Manager

**DEPFA First Albany Securities LLC**

**Goldman, Sachs & Co.**

**JPMorgan**

**Merrill Lynch & Co.**

**Morgan Stanley**

**A.G. Edwards & Sons, Inc.**  
**Fidelity Capital Markets Services**  
**Key Banc Capital Markets**  
**NatCity Investments Inc.**  
**RBC Capital Markets**  
**SBK-Brooks Investment Corp.**

**Banc of America Securities LLC**  
**Fifth Third Securities, Inc.**  
**Lehman Brothers**  
**PNC Capital Markets**  
**Rice Financial Products Company**  
**Siebert Brandford Shank & Co., LLC**

**Butler Wick & Co., Inc.**  
**The Huntington Investment Company**  
**Loop Capital Markets, LLC**  
**Raymond James & Associates, Inc.**  
**Robert W. Baird & Co.**  
**UBS Investment Bank**

**\$5,531,594,541**  
**Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority**  
**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007**

All Series 2007 Bonds dated their date of delivery

**MATURITY SCHEDULE, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS, INTEREST RATES, PRICES OR YIELDS AND  
CUSIP NUMBERS**

**\$211,350,000**

**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds,  
Series 2007A-1 Senior Current Interest Serial Bonds**

<b>Maturity Date (June 1)</b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Price/ Yield</b>	<b>CUSIP No.<sup>†</sup></b>
2009	\$12,140,000	4.000%	100%	118217 AA6
2010	7,080,000	5.000%	4.125%	118217 AC2
2010	12,630,000	4.125%	100%	118217 AB4
2011	14,270,000	5.000%	4.250%	118217 AE8
2011	8,075,000	4.250%	100%	118217 AD0
2012	4,480,000	5.000%	4.400%	118217 AG3
2012	15,815,000	4.375%	4.400%	118217 AF5
2013	12,230,000	4.500%	100%	118217 AH1
2014	23,995,000	5.000%	4.650%	118217 AJ7
2015	26,640,000	5.000%	4.750%	118217 AK4
2016	35,000,000	5.000%	4.875%	118217 AL2
2017	38,995,000	5.000%	4.930%	118217 AM0

<sup>†</sup> Copyright 2007, American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein are provided by Standard & Poor's CUSIP Service Bureau, a Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of Bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds and the Authority does not make any representation with respect to such numbers or undertake any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP number for a specific maturity is subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds as a result of procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that may be applicable to all or a portion of certain maturities of the Series 2007 Bonds or the defeasance and call for redemption of a portion of a maturity of the Series 2007 Bonds.

**\$4,726,045,000**  
**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds,**  
**Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds**

\$200,000,000 5.375% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2024; Yield 5.440%  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2017\*  
Projected Average Life: 5.4 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AN8 †

\$949,530,000 5.125% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2024; Yield 5.440%  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2017\*  
Projected Average Life: 5.4 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AP3 †

\$687,600,000 5.875% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2030; Yield 5.950%  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2020\*  
Projected Average Life: 11.5 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AQ1 †

\$505,200,000 5.750% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2034; Yield 5.980%  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2022\*  
Projected Average Life: 13.8 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AR9 †

\$250,000,000 6.000% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2042; Price 99.00%  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2026\*  
Projected Average Life: 17.2 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AS7 †

\$750,000,000 6.500% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2047; Yield 5.950%\*\*  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2028\*  
Projected Average Life: 19.0 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AT5 †

\$1,383,715,000 5.875% Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds due June 1, 2047; Yield 6.070%  
Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date: June 1, 2028\*  
Projected Average Life: 19.0 years\*  
CUSIP No. 118217 AU2 †

---

\* Assumes all Turbo Redemptions are made based on the receipt of Surplus Collections (as defined herein) projected in accordance with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and other structuring assumptions. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION." No assurance can be given that these assumptions will be realized. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions.

\*\* Priced to first call on June 1, 2017.

† Copyright 2007, American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein are provided by Standard & Poor's CUSIP Service Bureau, a Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of Bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds and the Authority does not make any representation with respect to such numbers or undertake any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP number for a specific maturity is subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds as a result of procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that may be applicable to all or a portion of certain maturities of the Series 2007 Bonds or the defeasance and call for redemption of a portion of a maturity of the Series 2007 Bonds.

**\$274,751,138**  
**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds,**  
**Series 2007A-3 Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds**

<u>Maturity Date (June 1)</u>	<u>Initial Principal Amount</u>	<u>Initial Principal Amount per \$5,000 Accreted Value at Conversion Date</u>	<u>Accreted Value at Conversion Date**</u>	<u>Conversion Date</u>	<u>Interest Rate on and after the Conversion Date</u>	<u>Approximate Yield to Maturity Date</u>	<u>Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date*</u>	<u>Projected Average Life (years)*</u>	<u>CUSIP No. †</u>
2037	\$274,751,138	\$3,655.55	\$375,800,000	December 1, 2012	6.250%	6.250%	June 1, 2023	15.2	118217 AV0

\* Assumes all Turbo Redemptions are made based on the receipt of Surplus Collections (as defined herein) in accordance with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and other structuring assumptions. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION." No assurance can be given that these assumptions will be realized. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions.

\*\* Represents Accreted Value at Conversion Date, after which interest will be payable on each Distribution Date.

† Copyright 2007, American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein are provided by Standard & Poor's CUSIP Service Bureau, a Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of Bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds and the Authority does not make any representation with respect to such numbers or undertake any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP number for a specific maturity is subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds as a result of procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that may be applicable to all or a portion of certain maturities of the Series 2007 Bonds or the defeasance and call for redemption of a portion of a maturity of the Series 2007 Bonds.

**\$191,265,480**  
**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds,**  
**Series 2007B First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds**

Maturity Date (June 1)	Initial Principal Amount	Initial Principal Amount per \$5,000 Accreted Value at Maturity Date	Maturity Value**	Approximate Yield to Maturity Date	Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date*	Projected Average Life (years)*	CUSIP No.†
2047	\$191,265,480	\$298.20	\$3,207,000,000	7.250%	June 1, 2030	21.7	118217 AW8

**\$128,182,923**  
**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds,**  
**Series 2007C Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds**

Maturity Date (June 1)	Initial Principal Amount	Initial Principal Amount per \$5,000 Accreted Value at Maturity Date	Maturity Value**	Approximate Yield to Maturity Date	Projected Final Turbo Redemption Date*	Projected Average Life (years)*	CUSIP No.†
2052	\$128,182,923	\$187.55	\$3,417,300,000	7.500%	June 1, 2031	23.2	118217 AX6

\* Assumes all Turbo Redemptions are made based on the receipt of Surplus Collections (as defined herein) projected in accordance with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and other structuring assumptions. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION." No assurance can be given that these assumptions will be realized. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions.

\*\* Represents Accreted Value at the Maturity Date. However, Turbo Redemptions will be made in accordance with the Payment Priorities (as defined herein) to the extent of Surplus Collections at the Accreted Value calculated as of the Redemption Date.

† Copyright 2007, American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein are provided by Standard & Poor's CUSIP Service Bureau, a Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of Bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds and the Authority does not make any representation with respect to such numbers or undertake any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP number for a specific maturity is subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds as a result of procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that may be applicable to all or a portion of certain maturities of the Series 2007 Bonds or the defeasance and call for redemption of a portion of a maturity of the Series 2007 Bonds.

**CERTAIN PERSONS PARTICIPATING IN THIS OFFERING MAY ENGAGE IN TRANSACTIONS THAT STABILIZE OR MAINTAIN THE PRICE OF THE SECURITIES AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET OR OTHERWISE AFFECT THE PRICE OF THE SECURITIES OFFERED HEREBY, INCLUDING OVER-ALLOTMENT AND STABILIZING TRANSACTIONS. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.**

**NO DEALER, BROKER, SALESPERSON OR OTHER PERSON IS AUTHORIZED IN CONNECTION WITH ANY OFFERING MADE HEREBY TO GIVE ANY INFORMATION OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATION OTHER THAN AS CONTAINED HEREIN, AND, IF GIVEN OR MADE, SUCH INFORMATION OR REPRESENTATION MUST NOT BE RELIED UPON AS HAVING BEEN AUTHORIZED BY THE AUTHORITY OR THE UNDERWRITERS. THIS OFFERING CIRCULAR DOES NOT CONSTITUTE AN OFFER TO SELL, OR A SOLICITATION OF AN OFFER TO BUY, ANY OF THE SECURITIES OFFERED HEREBY BY ANY PERSON IN ANY JURISDICTION IN WHICH IT IS UNLAWFUL FOR SUCH PERSON TO MAKE SUCH AN OFFER OR SOLICITATION.**

**THERE CAN BE NO ASSURANCE THAT A SECONDARY MARKET FOR THE SERIES 2007 BONDS WILL DEVELOP OR, IF ONE DEVELOPS, THAT IT WILL CONTINUE FOR THE LIFE OF THE SERIES 2007 BONDS.**

Certain information set forth herein has been furnished by the Authority and Global Insight (as defined herein) and the Offering Circular includes information obtained from other sources, all of which are believed to be reliable. Information concerning the tobacco industry and industry participants has been obtained from certain publicly available information provided by certain industry participants and certain other sources. See “CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY.” The industry participants have not provided any information to the Authority for use in connection with this offering. In certain cases, tobacco industry information provided herein (such as market share data) may be derived from sources that are inconsistent or in conflict with each other. The Authority has not independently verified the information under the caption “CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY;” the Authority cannot and does not warrant the accuracy or completeness of this information. The information contained under the caption “THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” and in the Global Insight Consumption Report attached as Appendix A hereto has been included in reliance upon Global Insight as an expert in econometric forecasting, and has not been independently verified for accuracy or appropriateness of assumptions.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice and neither the delivery of this Offering Circular nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the Authority, in the matters covered by the report of Global Insight included as Appendix A to this Offering Circular, or tobacco industry information, since the date hereof, or that the information contained in this Offering Circular is correct as of any date subsequent to the date hereof. Such information and expressions of opinion are made for the purpose of providing information to prospective investors and are not to be used for any other purpose or relied on by any other person.

This Offering Circular contains forecasts, projections and estimates that are based on current expectations or assumptions. In light of the factors that may materially affect the amount of Pledged Tobacco Receipts (see “RISK FACTORS,” “CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS,” “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT,” “THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” and “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION”), the inclusion in this Offering Circular of such forecasts, projections and estimates should not be regarded as a representation by the Authority, its financial advisor, Global Insight or the Underwriters that such forecasts, projections and

estimates will occur. Such forecasts, projections and estimates are not intended as representations of fact or guarantees of results.

If and when included in this Offering Circular, the words “expects,” “forecasts,” “projects,” “intends,” “anticipates,” “estimates,” “assumes” and analogous expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements and any such statements inherently are subject to a variety of risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those that have been projected. Such risks and uncertainties include, among others, general economic and business conditions, changes in political, social and economic conditions, regulatory initiatives and compliance with governmental regulations, litigation and various other events, conditions and circumstances, many of which are beyond the control of the Authority. These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this Offering Circular. The Authority disclaims any obligation or undertaking to release publicly any updates or revisions to any forward-looking statement contained herein to reflect any changes in the Authority’s expectations with regard thereto or any change in events, conditions or circumstances on which any such statement is based.

THE SERIES 2007 BONDS ARE EXEMPT SECURITIES UNDER SECTION 3(a)(2) OF THE U.S. SECURITIES ACT OF 1933 (THE “SECURITIES ACT”) AND HAVE NOT BEEN AND WILL NOT BE REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, OR WITH ANY SECURITIES REGULATORY AUTHORITY OF ANY STATE OF THE UNITED STATES. THE SERIES 2007 BONDS HAVE NOT BEEN APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED BY THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION, ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION OR ANY OTHER REGULATORY AGENCY, NOR HAS ANY OF THE FOREGOING PASSED UPON THE ACCURACY OR ADEQUACY OF THIS OFFERING CIRCULAR. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.

The Underwriters have provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Offering Circular: The Underwriters have reviewed the information in this Offering Circular in accordance with, and as part of, their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<p>SUMMARY STATEMENT ..... S-1</p> <p>ESTIMATED APPLICATION OF PROCEEDS ..... 1</p> <p>RISK FACTORS ..... 1</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation ..... 1</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Litigation Seeking Monetary Relief from Tobacco Industry Participants ..... 12</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Decline in Cigarette Consumption Materially Beyond Forecasted Levels May Adversely Affect Payments ..... 13</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA ..... 18</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Other Risks Relating to the MSA and Related Statutes ..... 26</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Bankruptcy of PMs May Delay, Reduce or Eliminate Payments ..... 27</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Uncertainty as to Timing of Turbo Redemptions ..... 28</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Limited Resources of the Authority ..... 28</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Limited Remedies ..... 28</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Limited Liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds; Price Volatility ..... 28</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Limited Nature of Ratings; Reduction, Suspension or Withdrawal of a Rating ..... 29</p> <p>CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS ..... 29</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Bankruptcy of a PM May Delay or Reduce Payments ..... 29</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">MSA Enforceability ..... 30</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Qualifying Statute Constitutionality ..... 31</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Limitations on Opinions of Counsel; No Assurance as to Outcome of Litigation ..... 31</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Enforcement of Rights to Pledged Tobacco Receipts ..... 32</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">No Assurance as to the Outcome of Litigation ..... 33</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Act Prohibits Bankruptcy of Authority ..... 33</p> <p>THE SERIES 2007 BONDS ..... 34</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Payments of Interest ..... 34</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Payments of Principal ..... 35</p>	<p style="padding-left: 20px;">Subordination of Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds ..... 35</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Sinking Fund Installments ..... 36</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Turbo Redemptions ..... 40</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Prohibition on Open Market Purchases ..... 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Optional Redemption ..... 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Redemption of Defeased Bonds ..... 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Application of Redemptions with Respect to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities ..... 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Partial Redemptions ..... 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Mandatory Clean-Up Calls ..... 45</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Notice of Redemption ..... 45</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Refunding Bonds and Additional Bonds ..... 45</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Fully Subordinate Bonds ..... 46</p> <p>SECURITY FOR THE BONDS ..... 46</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Pledge of Collateral ..... 46</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts ..... 47</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Percentage of Pledged Tobacco Receipts ..... 47</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Accounts ..... 47</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Application of Collections ..... 49</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; State Covenant ..... 53</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">No Indebtedness or Funds of the State ..... 53</p> <p>THE 2007 SALE AGREEMENT ..... 54</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Conveyance of 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts ..... 54</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Notification of Transfer ..... 54</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Covenants of the State ..... 54</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Amendment ..... 55</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Assignment and Pledge by the Authority ..... 55</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">No Liability for Officers or Employees ..... 55</p> <p>SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT ..... 55</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General ..... 55</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Parties to the MSA ..... 56</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Scope of Release ..... 57</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Overview of Payments by the Participating Manufacturers; MSA Escrow Agent ..... 58</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Initial Payments ..... 58</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Annual Payments ..... 59</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Strategic Contribution Payments ..... 60</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Adjustments to Payments ..... 60</p>
---	---

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(continued)

<p>Subsequent Participating Manufacturers..... 63</p> <p>Payments Made to Date ..... 64</p> <p>“Most Favored Nation” Provisions ..... 65</p> <p>State-Specific Finality and Final Approval..... 65</p> <p>Disbursement of Funds from Escrow ..... 65</p> <p>Advertising and Marketing Restrictions; Educational Programs..... 66</p> <p>Remedies upon the Failure of a PM to Make a Payment ..... 66</p> <p>Termination of Agreement..... 66</p> <p>Non-Severability ..... 67</p> <p>Amendments and Waivers ..... 67</p> <p>MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes ..... 67</p> <p>CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY..... 70</p> <p>Industry Overview..... 71</p> <p>Shipment Trends ..... 72</p> <p>Consumption Trends ..... 73</p> <p>Distribution, Competition and Raw Materials..... 74</p> <p>Grey Market ..... 74</p> <p>Regulatory Issues ..... 74</p> <p>Civil Litigation..... 80</p> <p>THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT..... 102</p> <p>General ..... 102</p> <p>Historical Cigarette Consumption..... 104</p> <p>Factors Affecting Cigarette Consumption..... 105</p> <p>SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION ..... 106</p> <p>Introduction..... 106</p> <p>Cash Flow Assumptions..... 106</p> <p>Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments ..... 106</p> <p>Interest Earnings..... 108</p> <p>Other Assumptions..... 108</p> <p>Bond Structuring Methodology..... 109</p> <p>Debt Service Coverage..... 112</p> <p>Effect of Changes in Cigarette Consumption Levels on Turbo Redemptions ..... 114</p>	<p>Explanation of Alternative Global Insight Forecasts ..... 126</p> <p>THE AUTHORITY ..... 127</p> <p>THE 2007 RESIDUAL CERTIFICATE ..... 127</p> <p>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT..... 127</p> <p>TAX MATTERS ..... 130</p> <p>General ..... 130</p> <p>Original Issue Discount and Original Issue Premium..... 132</p> <p>LITIGATION ..... 132</p> <p>RATINGS..... 133</p> <p>UNDERWRITING ..... 133</p> <p>LEGAL MATTERS ..... 134</p> <p>OTHER PARTIES ..... 134</p> <p>Financial Advisor..... 134</p> <p>Global Insight ..... 134</p> <p>APPENDIX A – GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT..... A-1</p> <p>APPENDIX B – MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT.....B-1</p> <p>APPENDIX C – PROPOSED FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL.....C-1</p> <p>APPENDIX D – DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE ..... D-1</p> <p>APPENDIX E – BOOK-ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM.....E-1</p> <p>APPENDIX F – ACCRETED VALUE TABLES..... F-1</p> <p>APPENDIX G –INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS..... G-1</p>
--	---

## SUMMARY STATEMENT

This Summary Statement is subject in all respects to more complete information contained in this Offering Circular and should not be considered a complete statement of the facts material to making an investment decision. The offering of the Series 2007 Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of the entire Offering Circular. Capitalized terms used in the Offering Circular and not otherwise defined shall have the meanings given such terms in the Summary of the Indenture. See Appendix D —“DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE — Definitions” attached hereto. For definitions of certain terms used herein, see also Appendix G — “INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS” attached hereto.

**Overview** ..... The Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority (the “**Authority**”) is issuing \$5,531,594,541 aggregate original principal amount of its Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007 (the “**Series 2007 Bonds**”). The Series 2007 Bonds are comprised of three series of bonds – the Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007A (the “**Series 2007A Bonds**”), which are Senior Bonds, the Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007B (the “**Series 2007B Bonds**”), which are First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Bonds and the Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007C (the “**Series 2007C Bonds**”), which are Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Bonds. The Series 2007A Bonds consist of three subseries: (i) Series 2007A-1, which are fixed rate serial bonds (referred to herein as the “**Series 2007A-1 Bonds**” and the “**Serial Bonds**”); (ii) Series 2007A-2, which are fixed rate current interest turbo term bonds (referred to herein as the “**Series 2007A-2 Bonds**”); and (iii) Series 2007A-3, which are capital appreciation turbo term bonds until their Conversion Date (as hereinafter defined) at which time they will become fixed rate current interest turbo term bonds (referred to herein as the “**Series 2007A-3 Bonds**” and the “**Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds**”). Collectively, the Series 2007A Bonds are referred to herein as the “**Senior Bonds.**” The Series 2007A-1 Bonds, the Series 2007A-2 Bonds and the Series 2007A-3 Bonds, after the Conversion Date, are referred to herein as the “**Current Interest Bonds.**” The Series 2007A-2 Bonds, the Series 2007A-3 Bonds, the Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds are collectively referred to herein as the “**Turbo Term Bonds.**” The Series 2007A-3 Bonds, until the Conversion Date, the Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds are collectively referred to herein as the “**Capital Appreciation Bonds.**” The Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds are collectively referred to herein as the “**Subordinate Bonds.**” The Series 2007B Bonds are referred to herein as “**First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Bonds.**” The Series 2007C Bonds are referred to herein as “**Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Bonds.**” The Series 2007 Bonds, together with any Refunding Bonds, Additional Bonds and Fully Subordinate Bonds issued under the Indenture, are referred to herein as the “**Bonds.**” See “THE SERIES 2007 BONDS — Refunding Bonds and Additional Bonds” herein. In addition to the appropriate Series 2007 Bonds, all references to Serial Bonds, Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds, Senior Bonds, Current Interest Bonds, Turbo Term Bonds, Capital Appreciation Bonds, Subordinate Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds and Second Subordinate Bonds include all Bonds so designated in a Series Supplement. The Series 2007 Bonds

will be issued pursuant to a Trust Indenture, dated as of October 1, 2007 (the “**Trust Indenture**”), between the Authority and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “**Trustee**”), and a Series 2007 Supplement thereto (the “**Series 2007 Supplement**” and the Trust Indenture as so supplemented, the “**Indenture**”), to be entered into between the Authority and the Trustee in connection with the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds. In addition to the Series 2007 Bonds, the Indenture permits the issuance of Refunding Bonds, Additional Bonds and Fully Subordinate Bonds (as such terms are defined herein), subject to the satisfaction of certain conditions described herein.

Under the Master Settlement Agreement entered into by participating tobacco product manufacturers (“**PMs**”), 46 states and six other U.S. jurisdictions (collectively, the “**Settling States**”) in November 1998 in settlement of certain smoking-related litigation (the “**MSA**”), the State is entitled to receive 5.0375098% of each Annual Payment and 2.7819695% of each Strategic Contribution Payment (as such terms are hereinafter defined) payable by the PMs. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT” under the subheadings “— Annual Payments” and “— Strategic Contribution Payments.”

Pursuant to the Purchase and Sale Agreement by and between the State of Ohio (the “**State**”) and the Authority, dated as of October 1, 2007 (the “**2007 Sale Agreement**”), the Authority is purchasing the right, title and interest in and to 100% of (i) except as excluded as described in the last sentence of this paragraph, all tobacco settlement payments that are required to be made by the tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State under the terms of the MSA on and after the Delivery Date, (ii) all lump sum or partial lump sum payments received on and after the Delivery Date that are allocable to, or in substitution for, payments required under the terms of the MSA by tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State, and (iii) the State’s rights under the MSA to receive the tobacco settlement payments referred to in (i) and (ii) (such payments and rights, as more fully described herein, the “**2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts**”). The 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts specifically include 100% of any amounts due to the State and withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account (as defined herein), on or after the Delivery Date, by the tobacco manufacturers as a result of a dispute as to the amount of a payment required to be made by them under the MSA and that are subsequently paid by the tobacco manufacturers or released from the Disputed Payments Account, including all earnings thereon, but specifically exclude any right to or interest in amounts withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account before the Delivery Date, including all earnings thereon.

“**Disputed Payments Account**” means any account into which the disputed portion of payments required to be made by the PMs under the MSA are withheld or deposited pending resolution of the dispute.

The right, title and interest of the Authority to 100% of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts will be pledged under the Indenture (the “**Pledged Tobacco Receipts**”). The Authority has no assets available for payment

of the Bonds other than the Pledged Tobacco Receipts and the other Collateral (as herein defined).

The Series 2007 Bonds are being offered for the purpose of (i) financing the Authority's purchase from the State of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts, (ii) funding the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, and (iii) providing for the payment of the costs of issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds.

The State expects to apply the proceeds it receives from the sale of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts to capital expenditures for public elementary, secondary and higher education facilities.

**The Authority** ..... The Authority is a body, both corporate and politic, constituting a public body, agency and instrumentality of the State, separate and distinct from the State, performing essential functions of the State and created and governed by Sections 183.51 and 183.52 of the Ohio Revised Code (the "**Act**").

**Securities Offered** ..... It is expected that the Series 2007 Bonds will be delivered in book-entry form through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("**DTC**"), on or about October 29, 2007 (the "**Delivery Date**"). Individual purchases of beneficial ownership interests in (i) the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and the Series 2007A-2 Bonds may be made for principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, (ii) the Series 2007A-3 Bonds may be made for principal amounts which will accrete to \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof at their Conversion Date, and (iii) the Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds may be made in the principal amount which will accrete to \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof at their respective Maturity Dates (each, respectively, an "**Authorized Denomination**"). Beneficial owners of the Series 2007 Bonds will not receive physical delivery of bond certificates.

**Collateral** ..... The Bonds are special revenue obligations of the Authority payable solely from and secured solely by (i) the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, (ii) investment earnings on certain accounts pledged under the Indenture (which earnings, together with the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, are referred to herein as the "**Collections**"), (iii) all rights to receive the Collections and the proceeds of such rights, (iv) amounts held in the Collection Account and all accounts in the Bond Service Fund including the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account established under the Indenture (collectively, the "**Pledged Accounts**"), (v) certain rights or remedies with respect to any breach by the State of any of its covenants, obligations, representations or warranties under the 2007 Sale Agreement or the Act and (vi) certain rights of the Authority as specified in the 2007 Sale Agreement (collectively, the "**Collateral**").

The proceeds of the Series 2007 Bonds, except the amount deposited in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, are not pledged to the payment of, and are therefore not available to, the holders of the Series 2007 Bonds.

**The Senior Liquidity Reserve Account does not represent security for the Series 2007B Bonds or the Series 2007C Bonds.**

**Pursuant to the Act, (i) the Series 2007 Bonds are not general obligations of the State and the full faith and credit, revenue, and taxing power of the State are not pledged to the payment of debt service on the Series 2007 Bonds or to any guarantee of the payment of that debt service, (ii) the Holders of Series 2007 Bonds shall have no right to have any moneys obligated or pledged for the payment of debt service except the Collateral, and (iii) the rights of the Holders of Series 2007 Bonds to payment of debt service are limited to all of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, and the Pledged Accounts, pledged to the payment of debt service pursuant to the Indenture in accordance with the Act.**

**Subordination of Series 2007B**

**Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds ....**

No payments will be made with respect to the Series 2007B Bonds, and any other Bonds issued as First Subordinate Bonds, before the Series 2007A Bonds, and any other Bonds issued as Senior Bonds, are paid or redeemed in full. No payments will be made with respect to the Series 2007C Bonds, and any other Bonds issued as Second Subordinate Bonds, before the Series 2007A Bonds and the Series 2007B Bonds, and any other Bonds issued as Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds, are paid or redeemed in full. Even if there has been a Subordinate Payment Default, as defined herein, the Owners of the Series 2007B Bonds may enforce the provisions of the Indenture for their benefit by appropriate legal proceedings only if the Senior Bonds are no longer deemed Outstanding under the Indenture. Similarly, the Owners of the Series 2007C Bonds may enforce the provisions of the Indenture for their benefit by appropriate legal proceedings only if the Senior Bonds and the First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding.

**“Outstanding Bonds”** means Bonds issued under the Trust Indenture, excluding: (i) Bonds that have been exchanged or replaced, or delivered to the Trustee for credit against the Principal; (ii) Bonds that have been paid or Fully Paid; (iii) Bonds that have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided; (iv) Bonds for which (A) there has been irrevocably set aside sufficient Defeasance Collateral timely maturing and bearing interest, to pay or redeem them and (B) any required notice of redemption shall have been duly given in accordance with the Trust Indenture or irrevocable instructions to give notice shall have been given to the Trustee; (v) Bonds the payment of which shall have been provided for pursuant to the Trust Indenture; and (vi) for purposes of any consent or other action to be taken by the Holders of a Majority in Interest or specified percentage of Bonds under the Trust Indenture, Bonds held by or for the account of the Authority, the State or any person controlling, controlled by or under common control with either of them.

**Master Settlement Agreement .....**

The MSA was entered into on November 23, 1998, among the attorneys general of 46 states (including the State), the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, American Samoa and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana

Islands (collectively, the “**Settling States**”) and the then four largest United States tobacco manufacturers: Philip Morris Incorporated (“**Philip Morris**”), R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company (“**Reynolds Tobacco**”), Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation (“**B&W**”) and Lorillard Tobacco Company (“**Lorillard**”). Philip Morris, Reynolds Tobacco, B&W and Lorillard are collectively referred to as the “**Original Participating Manufacturers**” or the “**OPMs.**” On January 5, 2004, Reynolds American Inc. (“**Reynolds American**”) was incorporated as a holding company to facilitate the combination of the U.S. assets, liabilities and operations of B&W with those of Reynolds Tobacco. References herein to the “**Original Participating Manufacturers**” or “**OPMs**” means, for the period prior to June 30, 2004, collectively, Philip Morris, Reynolds Tobacco, B&W and Lorillard and for the period on and after June 30, 2004, means, collectively, Philip Morris, Reynolds American and Lorillard. As reported by the OPMs, the OPMs accounted for approximately 86.8%\* of the U.S. domestic cigarette market in 2006, based upon shipments.

The MSA resolved cigarette smoking-related litigation between the Settling States and the OPMs and released the OPMs from past and present smoking-related claims and provides for a continuing release of future smoking-related claims, in exchange for certain payments to be made to the Settling States (including Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments as defined herein), and imposed certain tobacco advertising and marketing restrictions on the OPMs, among other things. The MSA represents the resolution of a large potential financial liability of the OPMs for smoking-related injuries, the costs of which have been borne and will likely continue to be borne by cigarette consumers. The Authority is not a party to the MSA.

The MSA provides for tobacco companies other than the OPMs to become parties to the MSA. Tobacco companies that become parties to the MSA after the OPMs are referred to herein as “**Subsequent Participating Manufacturers**” or “**SPMs**” and together with the OPMs are referred to herein as the “**Participating Manufacturers**” or “**PMs.**” Tobacco companies that do not become parties to the MSA are referred to herein as “**Non-Participating Manufacturers**” or “**NPMs.**” See “SUMMARY OF THE MSA” herein.

**Litigation Regarding MSA**

**and Related Statutes** ..... Numerous lawsuits have been filed challenging the MSA and related statutes, including two cases (*Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings*,

---

\* Market share information for the OPMs based on domestic industry shipments may be materially different from Relative Market Share for purposes of the MSA and the respective obligations of the OPMs to contribute to Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT – Annual Payments” and “– Strategic Contribution Payments.” Additionally, aggregate market share information as reported by the OPMs is different from that utilized in the bond structuring assumptions and may differ from the market share information reported by the OPMs for purposes of their filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission. See “SUMMARY OF THE BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION” and “DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY.” The aggregate market share information used in the Cash Flow Assumptions may differ materially from the market share information used by the MSA Auditor in calculating adjustments to Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT – Adjustments to Payments.”

discussed in “RISK FACTORS” herein), that are pending in the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of New York. The State is a defendant in the *Grand River* case. The plaintiffs in both *Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings* seek, *inter alia*, a determination that the MSA or state statutes enacted pursuant to the MSA conflict with and are preempted by the federal antitrust laws and/or that state statutes enacted pursuant to the MSA violate the Commerce Clause of the U.S. Constitution. A determination that the MSA or state legislation enacted pursuant to the MSA is void or unenforceable could have a materially adverse effect on the payments by PMs under the MSA and the amount or the timing of receipt of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation (as defined herein) of and interest, if any, on the Series 2007 Bonds and to make Turbo Redemptions (hereinafter defined), could lead to a decrease of the market value and/or liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds, and could result in the complete loss of a Bondholder’s investment. See “RISK FACTORS” and “CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS” herein.

**Payments Pursuant to the MSA....** Under the MSA, the OPMs are required to make the following payments to the Settling States: (i) five initial payments, all of which have been made (the “**Initial Payments**”), (ii) annual payments (the “**Annual Payments**”) which are required to be made annually on each April 15, having commenced April 15, 2000, and continuing in perpetuity in the following base amounts (subject to adjustment as described herein):

<u>Year</u>	<u>Base Amount<sup>†</sup></u>	<u>Year</u>	<u>Base Amount<sup>†</sup></u>
2000	\$4,500,000,000	2010	\$8,139,000,000
2001	5,000,000,000	2011	8,139,000,000
2002	6,500,000,000	2012	8,139,000,000
2003	6,500,000,000	2013	8,139,000,000
2004	8,000,000,000	2014	8,139,000,000
2005	8,000,000,000	2015	8,139,000,000
2006	8,000,000,000	2016	8,139,000,000
2007	8,000,000,000	2017	8,139,000,000
2008	8,139,000,000	2018	9,000,000,000
2009	8,139,000,000	thereafter	9,000,000,000

and (iii) ten annual payments in the amount of \$861 million (the “**Strategic Contribution Payments**”), each of which is subject to adjustment and required to be made on each April 15, commencing April 15, 2008 and ending April 15, 2017. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Annual Payments.”

The State is entitled to receive 5.0375098% of each Annual Payment and 2.7819695% of each Strategic Contribution Payment.

---

<sup>†</sup> As described herein, the base amounts of Annual Payments are subject to various adjustments which have resulted in reduced Annual Payments in all prior years. See “SUMMARY OF MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Annual Payments,” “RISK FACTORS — Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the Master Settlement Agreement — Disputed or Recalculated Payments” and “SUMMARY OF MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Annual Payments.”



Under the MSA, each OPM is required to pay an allocable portion of each Annual Payment and Strategic Contribution Payment based on its respective market share of the United States cigarette market during the preceding calendar year, in each case, subject to certain adjustments as described herein. Each SPM has Annual Payment and Strategic Contribution Payment obligations under the MSA (separate from the payment obligations of the OPMs) according to its market share. However, any SPM that became a party to the MSA within 90 days after it became effective pays only if its market share exceeds the higher of its 1998 market share or 125% of its 1997 market share.

The payment obligations under the MSA follow tobacco product brands if they are transferred by any of the PMs. Payments by the PMs under the MSA are required to be made to the MSA Escrow Agent, which is required, in turn, pursuant to the instructions of the MSA Escrow Agreement, to remit an allocable share of such payments to the parties entitled thereto.

Under the MSA, the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments due are subject to numerous adjustments, some of which may be material. Such adjustments include, among others, reductions when a PM experiences a loss of market share to NPMs as a result of such PMs' participation in the MSA, reductions for decreased domestic cigarette shipments and to account for those states that settle or have settled their claims against the PMs independently of the MSA and increases related to inflation in an amount of not less than 3% per year. See "RISK FACTORS."

**Sale of Tobacco Receipts**..... Pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement, the State is selling to the Authority the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts. Under the Indenture, the Authority will assign and pledge 100% of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts to the Trustee as Pledged Tobacco Receipts.

On or before the Delivery Date, the State shall cause the Attorney General to notify the Escrow Agent, on behalf of the State, that the State has sold the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts to the Authority, identifying the percentage of tobacco settlement payments that comprise the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts, and shall irrevocably instruct the Escrow Agent to pay the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts directly to the Trustee.

The purchase price paid by the Authority to the State under the 2007 Sale Agreement will consist of: (i) the payment to the State shown under "ESTIMATED APPLICATION OF PROCEEDS" herein and (ii) a security representing the right to receive 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts on and after the date on which all Bonds have been Fully Paid, all payments under each Ancillary Facility (as defined in Appendix D — "DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE — Definitions") have been paid and all incurred Operating Expenses have been satisfied (the "**2007 Residual Certificate**"). Initially, the State will own the sole beneficial interest in the 2007 Residual Certificate.

<b>Covenants</b> .....	Both the Authority and the State have made certain covenants for the benefit of the Beneficiaries. See “Appendix D —“DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE” for a summary of the covenants made by the Authority and “THE 2007 SALE AGREEMENT” for a summary of the covenants made by the State.
<b>Enforcement Expenses</b> .....	The State has covenanted in the 2007 Sale Agreement to enforce the MSA, the Qualifying Statute, the Consent Decree and related legislation. Pursuant to the Act, the Indenture establishes a mechanism for the ongoing funding of the costs incurred or to be incurred (including reserves for the same) by the office of the Attorney General of the State with respect to enforcement of the MSA, the Qualifying Statute, the Consent Decree and related legislation (“ <b>Enforcement Expenses</b> ”). The Authority’s funding of Enforcement Expenses is subject to an annual Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap of (i) \$2.5 million through the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2013 and (ii) thereafter \$2 million, which \$2 million will be indexed for inflation as set forth in the Indenture. The Enforcement Expenses are payable from the Operating Account, up to the Operating Cap, and then from the Collections after funding the Senior Debt Service Account and replenishment of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account but before Surplus Collections are deposited into the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account. The Authority is not the only source of funding for enforcement activities.
<b>Industry Overview</b> .....	The three OPMs (Philip Morris, Reynolds American and Lorillard) are the largest manufacturers of cigarettes in the United States, based on 2006 domestic market share. The market for cigarettes is highly competitive and is characterized by brand recognition and loyalty. See “CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY” herein.
<b>Cigarette Consumption</b> .....	As described in the Global Insight Consumption Report described below, domestic cigarette consumption grew dramatically in the 20th century, reaching a peak of 640 billion cigarettes in 1981. Consumption declined in the 1980’s and 1990’s, falling to an estimated 373 billion cigarettes in 2006 and is projected to fall to 367 billion cigarettes in 2007. A number of factors affect consumption, including, but not limited to, pricing, industry advertising expenditures, health warnings, restrictions on smoking in public places, nicotine dependence, youth consumption, general population trends and disposable income. See APPENDIX A — “THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT.”
<b>Global Insight Consumption Report</b> .....	Global Insight (USA), Inc. (“Global Insight”), an international econometric and consulting firm, was retained to forecast cigarette consumption in the United States from 2007 through 2052. Global Insight’s report, entitled “A Forecast of U.S. Cigarette Consumption (2007-2052) for the Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority” dated October 24, 2007 (the “Global Insight Consumption Report”) is

attached hereto as Appendix A and should be read in its entirety for an understanding of the assumptions on which it is based and the conclusions contained therein. The Global Insight Consumption Report is subject to certain disclaimers and qualifications as described therein. See APPENDIX A.

Global Insight considered the impact of demographics, cigarette prices, disposable income, employment and unemployment, industry advertising expenditures, the future effects of the incidence of smoking among underage youth and qualitative variables that captured the impact of anti-smoking regulations, legislation and health warnings. Global Insight found the following variables to be effective in building an empirical model of adult per capita cigarette consumption: real cigarette prices, real per capita disposable personal income, the impact of restrictions on smoking in public places and the trend over time in individual behavior and preferences. Using data from 1965 to 2003 and an analysis of the variables, Global Insight constructed an empirical model of adult per capita cigarette consumption (“CPC”) for the United States. Using standard multivariate regression analysis to determine the relationship between such variables and CPC along with Global Insight’s standard adult population growth statistics and adjustments for non-adult smoking, Global Insight projected adult cigarette consumption through 2052.

While the Global Insight Consumption Report is based on United States cigarette consumption, MSA payments are computed based in part on cigarette shipments in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico. The Global Insight Consumption Report states that the quantities of cigarettes shipped and cigarettes consumed within the United States may not match at any given point in time as a result of various factors, such as inventory adjustments, but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time. See “THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT.” The projections and forecasts regarding future cigarette consumption included in the Global Insight Consumption Report are estimates which have been prepared on the basis of certain assumptions and hypotheses. No representation or warranty of any kind is or can be made with respect to the accuracy or completeness of, and no representation or warranty should be inferred from, these projections and forecasts.

**Interest**..... Interest on the outstanding principal amount of the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds will be payable on each June 1 and December 1, commencing June 1, 2008.

Interest on the Series 2007A-3 Bonds will accrue from their Delivery Date and be compounded on each Distribution Date (to become part of Accreted Value as more fully described herein), commencing on June 1, 2008 through and excluding December 1, 2012 (the “**Conversion Date**”) or through and including any earlier redemption date. See APPENDIX F — “ACCRETED VALUE TABLES.” On and after the applicable Conversion Date, such Series 2007A-3 Bonds will become Current Interest Bonds with a principal amount equal to the Accreted Value at such Conversion Date, the interest on which will be payable

currently on each Distribution Date after the Conversion Date until the Maturity Date or earlier redemption of such Bonds.

Interest on the Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds will accrete from the Delivery Date and be compounded on June 1, 2008 and thereafter on each December 1 and June 1 and will be payable as part of the Accreted Value at the Maturity Date or earlier redemption of such Bond. See APPENDIX F — “ACCRETED VALUE TABLES.”

**“Accreted Value”** means, with respect to any Capital Appreciation Bond, an amount equal to the initial principal amount of such Bond, plus interest thereon from its date, compounded on each Distribution Date, commencing on the first Distribution Date after its issuance (through and including the Maturity Date or earlier redemption date of such Bond, or in the case of a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond, through and excluding the applicable Conversion Date or earlier redemption date of such Bond) at the “original issue yield” for such Bond, as set forth in the related Series Supplement or in an exhibit thereto; provided, however, that the Authority shall calculate or cause to be calculated the Accreted Value on any date other than a Distribution Date set forth in the related Series Supplement or in an exhibit thereto by straight line interpolation of the Accreted Values as of the immediately preceding and succeeding Distribution Dates.

**“Bond Obligation”** means, as of any given date, (i) with respect to any Outstanding Current Interest Bond, the principal amount of such Current Interest Bond as of such date, and (ii) with respect to any Outstanding Capital Appreciation Bond or Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond prior to the Conversion Date, the Accreted Value thereof as of such date.

**“Business Day”** means any day other than (i) a Saturday or a Sunday or (ii) a day on which banking institutions in Columbus, Ohio, or New York, New York, are required or authorized by law to be closed.

**“Conversion Date”** means the date set forth in the applicable Series Supplement on and after which a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond (such as each of the Series 2007A-3 Bonds) is deemed a Current Interest Bond and after which the Holders will be entitled to receive current payments of interest on each Distribution Date.

**“Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond”** means a Bond the interest on which (i) prior to the Conversion Date, shall be (x) compounded periodically, (y) payable only upon redemption or prepayment, and (z) determined by subtracting from the Accreted Value thereof the original principal amount thereof and (ii) on and after the Conversion Date, shall accrue and be payable periodically commencing on the next succeeding Distribution Date following the Conversion Date. On and after the Conversion Date, Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds shall be Current Interest Bonds.

**“Distribution Date”** means, except as set forth in a Series Supplement, each June 1 and December 1, commencing June 1, 2008, or, if such date

is not a Business Day, the following Business Day, each additional Distribution Date selected by the Authority or the Trustee following a Payment Default, and each Distribution Date, to the extent so characterized in a Supplemental Indenture.

**Principal**..... The principal or Accreted Value of a Senior Bond must be paid on or prior to the stated maturity date thereof (each, a “**Maturity Date**”) in order to avoid a Payment Default as described herein. The amount of principal payable on the Series 2007 Bonds at maturity on their respective Maturity Dates is referred to herein as “**Principal.**” **The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds only address each Rating Agency’s assessment of the ability of the Authority to pay interest when due and to pay the Principal of the Series 2007 Bonds and do not address payment at any earlier time, whether from Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions (as described below) or otherwise.** See “RATINGS.” Principal will be paid from Collections and, if necessary in connection with any Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account. A failure by the Authority to pay the Principal of a Senior Bond when due will constitute a Payment Default, which is an Event of Default under the Indenture.

**Money in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available as security for the Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds (or any other Bonds that are not Senior Bonds issued pursuant to the Indenture).**

“**Payment Default**” means an Event of Default that has occurred as a consequence of the Authority’s failure to pay: (i) the Principal of, premium or interest on any Senior Bond, when due or (ii) payments (other than Termination Payments), when due, under an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement related to Senior Bonds.

**Sinking Fund Installments** ..... The “**Sinking Fund Installments**” of the Series 2007A Bonds represent each respective principal payment on Turbo Term Bonds that is scheduled to be made from Collections to the extent of available Collections as set forth in the schedules under “THE SERIES 2007 BONDS — Sinking Fund Installments” herein. Failure by the Authority to pay the Sinking Fund Installments of the Series 2007A Bonds when scheduled will not constitute an Event of Default. Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available to pay Sinking Fund Installments. There will be no Sinking Fund Installments with respect to the Series 2007A-1 Bonds.

**Turbo Redemptions** ..... “**Turbo Redemptions**” represent the requirement contained in the Indenture to apply 100% of all Collections which are in excess of Indenture requirements for, among other things, the periodic funding of Operating Expenses (including Enforcement Expenses), the Senior Debt Service Account and replenishment of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, Enforcement Expenses and Termination Payments, in each case, up to their respective caps (such excess, the “**Surplus Collections**”), to the special mandatory redemption of the Turbo Term Bonds at their principal amount or Accreted Value on each Distribution

Date (or a special redemption date pursuant to the Indenture) (each a **“Turbo Redemption Date”**), in accordance with the Payment Priorities. Turbo Redemptions may also be made in accordance with the Payment Priorities from amounts on deposit in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account with confirmation from each Rating Agency that no rating then in effect with respect to the Bonds from such Rating Agency will be withdrawn, reduced or suspended as a result of such payment. Turbo Redemptions are not scheduled amortization payments and are only required to be made from Surplus Collections, if any. Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account are not available to make Turbo Redemptions. **The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions.**

**“Payment Priorities”** means payment of Bonds in the following order of priority: (i) first, the Senior Bonds are Fully Paid in chronological order of Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installments and Maturity Dates therefor; (ii) second, the First Subordinate Bonds are Fully Paid; (iii) third, the Second Subordinate Bonds are Fully Paid; and (iv) fourth, any Fully Subordinate Bonds are Fully Paid in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement.

**Payment of the Bonds** ..... So long as no Payment Default has occurred, all payments of the Bond Obligation of the Bonds made from Collections will be credited against Serial Bond maturities and Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities in accordance with the Payment Priorities, within a priority in chronological order, and Pro Rata among Bonds within the same Payment Priority as to which such payments are due on the same date, as more fully described in the Indenture. The Senior Liquidity Reserve Account is available to pay the Principal of the Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds, on their Maturity Dates. Failure to pay the Principal of a Senior Bond on its Maturity Date will constitute a Payment Default, which is an Event of Default under the Indenture, in which case all future payments will be made on a Pro Rata basis, subject to the Payment Priorities. Only if no Senior Bonds are Outstanding, failure to pay the Principal of a First Subordinate Bond or Second Subordinate Bond on its Maturity Date, constituting a Subordinate Payment Default, will entitle the Holders thereof to pursue remedies. In such case, all future payments will be made on a Pro Rata basis, in each case subject to the Payment Priorities. **“Pro Rata”** means, for an allocation of available amounts to any payment of interest, Accreted Value, Principal or payments under an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement to be made pursuant to the Indenture, the application of a fraction to such available amounts (a) the numerator of which is equal to the amount due to the respective Holders and any party who has entered into an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement with the Authority to whom such payment is owing, and (b) the denominator of which is equal to the total amount due to all Holders and counterparties to whom such payment is owing.

**“Subordinate Payment Default”** means that Principal of, premium or interest on any First Subordinate Bond or Second Subordinate Bond has not been paid when due.

<b>Prohibition on Open Market Purchases</b> .....	Moneys in the Pledged Accounts may not be used to make open market purchases of the Bonds.
<b>Actual Payment of Principal</b> .....	Due to a number of factors, including actual shipments of cigarettes in the United States, the amount of available Collections may fluctuate from year to year. As a result, Collections received by the Authority may be insufficient to pay Principal or sufficient to pay Principal but insufficient for Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions. In either event, the Authority will have no obligation to make Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions beyond the amount of available Collections.
<b>Optional Redemption of the Series 2007 Bonds</b> .....	<p>The Series 2007A-1 Bonds are not subject to optional redemption. All other Series 2007 Bonds are subject to redemption at the option of the Authority (i) in whole or in part at any time, but only in an amount that may not exceed the amount of the Projected Turbo Redemptions that were projected to be paid but, as of the date of such redemption, have not been paid with respect to such Turbo Term Bonds and (ii) in whole or in part on any day on or after June 1, 2017, with respect to the Series 2007A-2 Bonds, Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds, and June 1, 2022, with respect to the Series 2007A-3 Bonds, from any Turbo Term Bond Maturity selected by the Authority in its discretion and if redeemed in part in accordance with DTC’s standard procedures, or if such Series 2007 Bonds are not then held by DTC or other Securities Depository, on such basis as the Trustee deems fair and appropriate, including by lot, within a Turbo Term Bond Maturity, in either case at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued to the redemption date.</p> <p><b>“Projected Turbo Redemption”</b> means, for a Series of Turbo Term Bonds, each respective Turbo Redemption projected to be made in accordance with the Indenture and the bond structuring assumptions and methodology set forth under “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION.” See “THE SERIES 2007 BONDS — Turbo Redemptions” herein for the schedule of Projected Turbo Redemptions.</p>
<b>Redemption of Defeased Bonds</b> ....	In the event of a full or partial defeasance of the Series 2007 Bonds, the defeasance escrow will be structured to redeem the Turbo Term Bonds in accordance with the Projected Turbo Schedule until the date fixed for any optional redemption of such Turbo Term Bonds.
<b>Mandatory Clean-up Calls</b> .....	The Outstanding Senior Bonds are subject to mandatory redemption in whole at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued, if any, to the date fixed for redemption, at any time, to the extent of the transfer to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account pursuant to the Indenture.

The Bonds are subject to mandatory redemption in whole at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption, at any time that the available amounts on deposit in the Pledged Accounts equal or exceed the aggregate Bond Obligation of, and accrued interest on, all Outstanding Bonds and Parity Swap Payments (each such mandatory redemption, a “**Mandatory Clean-Up Call**”).

**Senior Liquidity Reserve**

**Account** .....

Upon the Delivery Date of the Series 2007 Bonds, a reserve account (the “**Senior Liquidity Reserve Account**”) will be funded in the amount of \$389,231,603.13 (the “**Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement**”), which level is required to be maintained for so long as any Series 2007A Bonds or any other Senior Bonds remain Outstanding. However, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement may be amended by the Authority in connection with the issuance of Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds. Rating Confirmation is a condition to the issuance of Refunding Bonds and Additional Bonds.

Amounts on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be available to pay the Principal of and interest on the Series 2007A Bonds and any other Senior Bonds to the extent Collections are insufficient for such purpose.

Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account are not available as security for the Series 2007B Bonds, the Series 2007C Bonds or any other Bonds which are not Senior Bonds. After a Payment Default, money in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be available to pay Pro Rata, first, the accrued interest on the Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds (including, in each case, interest at the stated rate on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible), and second, the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding. Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available to make Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions on any Bonds. Unless a Payment Default has occurred, amounts withdrawn from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be replenished from Collections as described herein.

If a Payment Default has not occurred, money in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be applied to the redemption of Outstanding Senior Bonds in accordance with the provisions described under the heading “THE SERIES 2007 BONDS — Mandatory Clean-Up Calls.” Any money remaining in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account after its application in accordance with the Mandatory Clean-Up Call provisions will be applied in accordance with the Indenture.

The Indenture provides that, upon Rating Confirmation and with an opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel, if any Tax-Exempt Bonds are Outstanding, the Authority may replace amounts and investments held in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account with “**Cash Equivalents**” (as defined in the Indenture) and then transfer such replaced amounts to the Authority, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.



**Bond Structuring Assumptions  
and Methodology.....**

The Series 2007 Bonds were structured on the basis of forecasts, which themselves are based on assumptions, as described herein. Among these are a forecast of United States cigarette consumption contained in the Global Insight Consumption Report and the application of certain adjustments and offsets to payments to be made by the PMs pursuant to the MSA, as well as a forecast of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, the balances in the Pledged Accounts and all earnings on amounts on deposit in the Pledged Accounts. In addition, such assumptions and forecasts were used to project amounts expected to be available to make Turbo Redemptions and the resulting expected average lives of the Turbo Term Bonds.

No assurance can be given, however, that events will occur in accordance with such assumptions and forecasts. Any deviations from such assumptions and forecasts could materially and adversely affect the payment of the Series 2007 Bonds. See “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION” herein.

**Distributions and Priorities.....**

Promptly upon receipt, the Trustee will deposit all Pledged Tobacco Receipts in an account established under the Indenture and maintained by the Trustee (the “**Collection Account**”). All Collections that have been identified by an Officer’s Certificate as consisting of Partial Lump Sum Payments received by the Trustee will be promptly (and, in any event, no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Distribution Date) transferred to the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account in accordance with the instructions received by the Trustee pursuant to an Officer’s Certificate. All Collections that have been identified by an Officer’s Certificate as consisting of Total Lump Sum Payments received by the Trustee will be promptly (and, in any event, no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Distribution Date) applied in the manner described under “*Distribution Date Transfers*” below.

Not later than on each Distribution Date, the Trustee will deposit in the Collection Account and apply as described below under “*Transfers to Accounts*” all Collections consisting of investment earnings on amounts on deposit with the Trustee in the Pledged Accounts (excluding amounts in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account), except that, unless otherwise specified in a Series Supplement relating to a Series of Bonds, all amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in excess of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement determined to exist pursuant to the valuation procedure described in the Indenture will be transferred to the Senior Debt Service Account (except to the extent used as described under “THE SERIES 2007 BONDS — Mandatory Clean-Up Calls”).

“**Lump Sum Payment**” means a final payment from a PM that results in, or is due to, a release of that PM from all of its future payment obligations under the MSA. Any Lump Sum Payment will be applied as Collections. The term “Lump Sum Payment” does not include any payments that are Partial Lump Sum Payments, Total Lump Sum Payments or any non-scheduled prepayments other than a Lump Sum Payment.

**“Officer’s Certificate”** means a certificate signed by an Authorized Officer of the Authority or, if so specified, of the Trustee.

**“Partial Lump Sum Payment”** means a payment from a PM that results in, or is due to, a release of that PM from a portion, but not all, of its future payment obligations under the MSA.

**“Pledged Accounts”** are certain accounts established and maintained by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture, including the Collection Account and the accounts in the Bond Service Fund including the Senior Debt Service Account, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, and the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, and all subaccounts contained in the named accounts.

**“Total Lump Sum Payment”** means a final payment under the MSA from all of the PMs that results in, or is due to, a release of all PMs from all of their future payment obligations under the MSA.

*Transfers to Accounts.* As soon as is practicable, but in any event no later than the earlier of (x) the fifth Business Day following each Deposit Date, or (y) the Distribution Date following each Deposit Date, the Trustee will withdraw the funds on deposit in the Collection Account and transfer such amounts as follows in the following order of priority:

(i) to the Operating Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein to equal the amount specified by an Officer’s Certificate in order to pay, for the twelve-month period applicable to such Officer’s Certificate, (x) the Operating Expenses to the extent that the amount thereof does not exceed the Operating Cap\* (provided, that any such Operating Expenses consisting of Enforcement Expenses must be identified in such Officer’s Certificate as to be paid in accordance with the provisions described in this paragraph), (y) the Tax Obligations, and (z) Priority Payments;

(ii) to the Senior Debt Service Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein (taking into account any amounts already on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Subaccount or the Senior Debt Service Account) to equal the sum of (x) interest at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, plus (y) interest at the Applicable Periodic Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds through the next Distribution Date (after the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period), at the Assumed Rate to the next succeeding Distribution Date, and all Parity Swap Payments that will come due (i) in the next succeeding Bond Year, if the Deposit Date

---

\* The **“Operating Cap”** is \$250,000 in the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2008 and adjusted for inflation in subsequent Fiscal Years by the greater of 3% or the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics for the December of the prior year.

is on or after December 1 and on or before May 31 of any Bond Year, or (ii) in the then-current Bond Year, if the Deposit Date is on or after June 1 and on or before November 30 of any Bond Year, plus (z) any such unpaid interest on the Outstanding Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds and all Parity Swap Payments from prior Distribution Dates (including interest at the stated rate or Applicable Periodic Rate on such unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible); and the amounts to be so deposited will be calculated assuming that the Bond Obligation of the Outstanding Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds will have been paid as described in clauses (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) of “*Distribution Date Transfers*” below;

(iii) to the Senior Debt Service Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein to equal the amount specified in clause (ii) above plus the sum of (a) if the Deposit Date is on or after December 1 and on or before May 31 of any Bond Year, the Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installment or Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) due for Senior Bonds in or scheduled for the next succeeding Bond Year, plus (b) any such Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installment or Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) unpaid from prior Distribution Dates, but the amount of each Sinking Fund Installment will first be adjusted as described under “*Distribution Date Transfers*” below;

(iv) unless a Payment Default has occurred, to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account an amount sufficient to cause the amount on deposit therein to equal the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement. However, if on any Distribution Date on which the amount in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amount necessary to be paid in connection with the liquidation of the investment of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, including a Termination Payment) equals or exceeds the Bond Obligation of and interest on all Outstanding Senior Bonds, the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amounts necessary to be paid in connection with liquidating investments in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account including a Termination Payment) will first be transferred to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of all Outstanding Senior Bonds, and if all Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, second, will be transferred to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding First Subordinate Bonds and, if all Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, third, will be transferred to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding Second Subordinate Bonds;

(v) to the Operating Account, the amount, if any, necessary to make the amount therein equal to the amount specified by the Officer’s Certificate delivered or deemed to be delivered pursuant to the Indenture in order to pay, for the twelve-month period applicable to such Officer’s Certificate, the Operating Expenses (other than Enforcement Expenses), if any, in excess of the Operating Cap;

(vi) to the Authority for payment or reimbursement of Enforcement Expenses, the amount as specified in an Officer's Certificate (provided, that any such Enforcement Expenses must be identified in such Officer's Certificate as to be paid in accordance with the provisions described in this paragraph), provided that such amount and all such prior transfers for Enforcement Expenses for the current Fiscal Year shall not exceed the Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap\*;

(vii) in the amounts and to the Funds and Accounts established by the Series Supplement for Junior Payments;

(viii) to or at the direction of the Authority, to pay any Termination Amount due under an Ancillary Facility executed in connection with the Senior Bonds, not to exceed the related Termination Payment Cap (if any);

(ix) to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no Senior Bonds are Outstanding;

(x) to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no First Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding;

(xi) to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no Second Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding; and

(xii) to the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no Fully Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding.

**"Bond Year"** means, for so long as Bonds are Outstanding, the 12-month period ending each May 31.

**"Deposit Date"** means the date of actual receipt by the Trustee of any Collections.

**"Enforcement Expenses"** means, as certified to the Trustee by an Officer's Certificate, any amount designated in such Officer's Certificate as being requisitioned for payment or reimbursement to the Enforcement Expense Reserve Account in connection with the costs

---

\* The **"Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap"** means the aggregate limitation, applicable to each Fiscal Year, on the transfer of amounts from the Collection Account pursuant to the Indenture for payment or reimbursement of Enforcement Expenses equal to (i) \$2,500,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2008 through and including June 30, 2013, without inflation, (ii) \$2,000,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2014 and thereafter, such \$2,000,000 to be inflated in each Fiscal Year beginning with the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2015 by the greater of 3% or the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics for December of the prior year, less (iii) with respect to both clauses (i) and (ii), the amount disbursed in such Fiscal Year for such purpose from the Operating Account, if any, pursuant to paragraph (i) of *"Transfers to Accounts"* above. The State has covenanted in the 2007 Sale Agreement to diligently enforce the Qualifying Statute and enforce the MSA, the Consent Decree and related legislation. The Authority is not the only source of funding for enforcement activities.

incurred or to be incurred (including reserves for the same) by the office of the Attorney General of the State with respect to enforcement of the MSA, the Qualifying Statute, the Consent Decree and related legislation.

**“Operating Expenses”** means the reasonable operating expenses of the Authority, including without limitation, the cost of preparation of accounting and other reports, costs of maintenance of the ratings on the Bonds, insurance premiums, and costs of Authority meetings or other required activity of the Authority, counsel fees, including the fees of the Attorney General of the State, and fees and expenses incurred for consultants and fiduciaries, all costs and expenses, if any, incurred by the State and other amounts which are required to be reimbursed or borne by the Authority pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement, Enforcement Expenses, and all other costs authorized by the Act or all other Operating Expenses so identified in the Indenture.

**“Parity Swap Payments”** means scheduled payments under an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement executed in connection with a Series of Senior Bonds, not to exceed the applicable Maximum Rate, but does not include any payments under any other Ancillary Facility.

**“Priority Payments”** means fees payable pursuant to Ancillary Facilities that are identified by the Indenture or a Series Supplement as Priority Payments, which will not include payments of or in lieu of interest, Principal, redemption price or purchase price of Bonds.

**“Tax Obligations”** means, with respect to the issuance of Tax-Exempt Bonds, if any, the rebate requirement and any penalties, fines, or other payments required to be made to the United States of America under the arbitrage or rebate provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the **“Code”**).

**“Termination Payment”** means any payment made by the Authority with respect to a loss under or the termination of an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement, investment agreement or forward purchase agreement relating to a Pledged Account.

**“Termination Payment Cap”** means, with respect to Termination Payments due under any Ancillary Facility, the related limitation, if any, on payment thereof from amounts held in Pledged Accounts, as set forth in the related Supplemental Indenture.

**“Turbo Term Bond Maturity”** means the payment of principal or Accreted Value required to be made upon the final maturity of any Turbo Term Bond, as set forth in the Series Supplement.

*Distribution Date Transfers.* Unless a Payment Default has occurred and continues, on each Distribution Date the Trustee is to apply amounts in the various Accounts in the following order of priority:

- (i) from the Capitalized Interest Subaccount, the Senior Debt Service Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, and the

Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, in that order, to pay interest at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, interest at the Applicable Periodic Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, and all Parity Swap Payments due on such Distribution Date;

(ii) from the Senior Debt Service Account and the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, in that order, to pay, in the following order, the Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installments, and Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) (Pro Rata among Bonds within the same Payment Priority for which Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities are scheduled to be paid on the same date) for Senior Bonds first, for such Senior Bonds unpaid from prior Distribution Dates and second, for such Senior Bonds due on or scheduled for such Distribution Date, provided (x) the amount of such Sinking Fund Installment first has been adjusted as described in the Indenture, (y) the Trustee will not pay a Sinking Fund Installment or a Term Bond maturity (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) unless the Senior Debt Service Account will contain, after giving effect to such payment, sufficient funds to pay interest due on Senior Bonds on the next succeeding Distribution Date, such interest to be calculated at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds and at the Periodic Interest Amount for the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period and the Assumed Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds through the next succeeding Distribution Date, and (z) all Senior Bonds will be paid in accordance with clause (i) of the definition of Payment Priorities;

(iii) from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account to pay in the following order, the Serial Bond maturities and Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) for Senior Bonds due on or scheduled for such Distribution Date or unpaid from prior Distribution Dates (Pro Rata among Bonds within the same Payment Priority for which Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities are scheduled to be paid on the same date), and then to reimburse the provider of any Eligible Investment provided in lieu of or in substitution for amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account for any payment under or draw on such investment for a purpose for which the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account is otherwise available, provided that (x) the amount of such Turbo Term Bond Maturities will first have been adjusted as described in the Indenture and (y) the Trustee may not pay a Serial Bond maturity or Term Bond maturity (including a Turbo Term Bond Maturity) pursuant to this paragraph unless the Senior Debt Service Account and the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in the aggregate will, after giving effect to such payment, contain sufficient funds to pay interest due on the next succeeding Distribution Date, such interest to be calculated at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds and at the Periodic Interest Amount for the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period and the Assumed Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Senior Bonds through the next succeeding Distribution Date, and (z) all Senior Bonds will be paid in accordance with clause (i) of the definition of Payment Priorities;

(iv) from the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Senior Bonds which are Turbo Term Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture in accordance with the Indenture; provided that all Senior Bonds will be redeemed in accordance with clause (i) of the definition of Payment Priorities;

(v) from the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, but only as directed in an Officer's Certificate delivered by the Authority and accompanied by Rating Confirmation, to redeem Turbo Term Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture in accordance with the Indenture, provided that any redemptions shall redeem Bonds in accordance with the Payment Priorities;

(vi) from the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem First Subordinate Bonds on such Distribution Date (or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture) in accordance with the Indenture;

(vii) from the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Second Subordinate Bonds on such Distribution Date (or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture) in accordance with the Indenture; and

(viii) from the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Fully Subordinate Bonds as provided in the applicable Series Supplement.

Upon the receipt of a sum that has been identified by an Officer's Certificate as a Total Lump Sum Payment, the Trustee will after making provision for the amounts required to be deposited pursuant to clause (i) of "*Transfers to Accounts*" above, and giving the notices required by the Indenture, use all remaining proceeds of such Total Lump Sum Payments to make the following payments and prepayments, each Pro Rata, in the following order of priority:

(i) pay the accrued interest on the Current Interest Bonds (including Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds on and after the Conversion Date) which are Senior Bonds (including interest at the stated rate or the Applicable Periodic Rate, as the case may be, on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible);

(ii) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding;

(iii) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all First Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;

(iv) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all Second Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding; and

(v) pay and prepay Fully Subordinate Bonds in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement.

After making all deposits and payments set forth above, and provided that there are no Outstanding Bonds and no obligations to make payments under any Ancillary Facility, the Trustee is to deliver any amounts remaining from such Total Lump Sum Payment to the holder of the 2007 Residual Certificate.

**Payment Default**..... Upon the occurrence of a Payment Default, and on each succeeding Distribution Date commencing with the Distribution Date following a Payment Default, until there are no Senior Bonds Outstanding, all available funds in the Senior Debt Service Account, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the Senior Turbo Redemption Account will be applied to pay Pro Rata, first, accrued interest to the date of payment for all Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds (including Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds on and after the Conversion Date) and all Parity Swap Payments (including, in each case, interest at the stated rate on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible), and second, the Bond Obligation on all Outstanding Senior Bonds. Until there are no First Subordinate Bonds Outstanding, all available funds in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account will be applied to pay and prepay Pro Rata, the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all First Subordinate Bonds Outstanding. Until there are no Second Subordinate Bonds Outstanding, all available funds in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account will be applied to pay Pro Rata, the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all Second Subordinate Bonds Outstanding. For a description of Payment Defaults and other Events of Default under the Indenture, see APPENDIX D — “DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE — Events of Default.”

Failure to make any Turbo Redemption or Sinking Fund Installment does not constitute an Event of Default unless Collections were sufficient and available for their payment.

**Refunding Bonds and Additional Bonds**..... Subsequent to the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds, additional Series of Bonds (each a “**Series**”) may be issued either as “**Refunding Bonds**,” or as “**Additional Bonds**” at the discretion of the Authority but only if upon the issuance of such Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds: (i) the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account immediately following the issuance of the Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds will be at least equal to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement; (ii) no Event of Default has occurred and is continuing after the date of issuance of such Bonds; (iii) the expected weighted average life of each Turbo Term Bond that will remain Outstanding after issuance of the Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds as computed on the basis of new projections on the date of sale of the Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds will not exceed (x) the remaining expected weighted average life of each such Turbo Term Bond as computed by



the Authority on the basis of new projections, assuming that no such Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds are issued, plus (y) one year; and (iv) a Rating Confirmation is received for any Bonds that will remain Outstanding after the date of issuance of the Additional Bonds or Refunding Bonds which are then rated by a Rating Agency.

Refunding Bonds may also be issued under the Indenture to refund all Outstanding Bonds in whole without satisfaction of any of the foregoing conditions.

- Fully Subordinate Bonds**..... One or more Series of Bonds (the “**Fully Subordinate Bonds**”) may be issued for any lawful purpose by the Authority if there is no payment permitted for such bonds until all then outstanding Bonds are Fully Paid. Fully Subordinate Bonds may be issued without satisfying the requirements of the Indenture relating to Additional Bonds and Refunding Bonds.
- Ratings** ..... The ratings for the Series 2007 Bonds address only (i) the payment of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds when due, and (ii) the payment of Principal of the Series 2007 Bonds by their respective Maturity Dates. The ratings do not address the payment of Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions. The Serial Bond maturities and the Turbo Term Bond Maturities of the Series 2007 Bonds were structured to produce cash flow stress test performance necessary for the Authority to achieve the targeted credit ratings. A credit rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities, and such ratings may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time. See “**RATINGS**” herein.
- Risk Factors**..... Reference is made to “**RISK FACTORS**” herein for a description of certain considerations relevant to an investment in the Series 2007 Bonds.
- Certain Legal Considerations** ..... Reference is made to “**CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS**” herein for a description of certain legal issues relevant to an investment in the Series 2007 Bonds.
- Tax Matters**..... In the opinions of Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P. and Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP, Bond Counsel, under existing law (i) assuming continuing compliance with certain covenants and the accuracy of certain representations, interest on the Series 2007 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes and is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations, and (ii) interest on, and any profit made on the sale, exchange or other disposition of, the Series 2007 Bonds are exempt from the Ohio personal income tax, the Ohio commercial activity tax, the net income base of the Ohio corporate franchise tax, and municipal and school district income taxes in Ohio. Interest on the Series 2007 Bonds may be subject to certain federal taxes imposed only on certain corporations, including the corporate alternative minimum tax on a portion of that interest. For a more complete discussion of the tax aspects, see “**TAX MATTERS**” herein.

**Availability of Documents** ..... Included herein are brief summaries of certain documents and reports, which summaries do not purport to be complete or definitive, and reference is made to such documents and reports for full and complete statements of the contents thereof. Copies of the Indenture and the 2007 Sale Agreement may be obtained by written request from the Trustee at U.S. Bank National Association, 175 South Third Street, 4th Floor, Columbus, OH 43215, Attention: Corporate Trust Services. Any statements in this Offering Circular involving matters of opinion, whether or not expressly so stated, are intended as such and not as representations of fact. This Offering Circular is not to be construed as a contract or agreement among the Authority, the State and the Bondholders.

**\$5,531,594,541**  
**Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority**  
**Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007**

\$211,350,000 Series 2007A-1 Senior Current Interest Serial Bonds	\$4,726,045,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds
\$274,751,138 Series 2007A-3 Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds	
\$191,265,480 Series 2007B First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds	\$128,182,923 Series 2007C Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds

**ESTIMATED APPLICATION OF PROCEEDS**

The estimated application of the Series 2007 Bond proceeds is set forth below:

Payment to the State.....	\$5,050,000,000.00
Deposit to Senior Liquidity Reserve Account.....	389,231,603.13
Costs of Issuance <sup>(1)</sup> .....	25,537,652.27
Original Issue Discount.....	<u>66,825,285.60</u>
Total .....	<u>\$5,531,594,541.00</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Costs of issuance include underwriters' discount, legal fees, rating agency fees, econometric consultant fee, printing costs and certain other fees and expenses related to the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds and rounding.

**RISK FACTORS**

*The Series 2007 Bonds differ from many other tax-exempt securities in a number of respects. Prospective investors should carefully consider the factors set forth below regarding an investment in the Series 2007 Bonds as well as other information contained in this Offering Circular. The following discussion of risks is not meant to be a complete list of the risks associated with the purchase of the Series 2007 Bonds and the order of presentation does not necessarily reflect the relative importance of the various risks. Potential purchasers of the Series 2007 Bonds are advised to consider the following factors, among others, and to review the other information in this Offering Circular in evaluating the Series 2007 Bonds. Any one or more of the risks discussed, and others, could lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds, or, in certain circumstances, could lead to a complete loss of a Bondholder's investment. There can be no assurance that other risk factors will not become material in the future.*

**Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation**

*General Overview.* Certain smokers, consumer groups, cigarette importers, cigarette wholesalers, cigarette distributors, cigarette manufacturers, Native American tribes, taxpayers, taxpayers' groups and other parties have instituted lawsuits against various PMs, certain of the Settling States and other public entities challenging the MSA and/or the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation. One or more of the lawsuits, several of which remain pending, allege, among other things, that the MSA and/or the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation are void or unenforceable under the Commerce Clause and certain other provisions of the U.S. Constitution and the federal antitrust laws, as described below under “–Grand River, Freedom Holdings and Related Cases” and “–Other Litigation Challenging the MSA, Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” in this subsection. In addition, some of the lawsuits allege that the MSA and/or related state legislation are void or unenforceable under the federal civil rights laws, state constitutions, consumer protection laws, and unfair competition laws. Certain of these lawsuits seek, and, if ultimately successful, could result in, a determination that the MSA and/or the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation are void or

unenforceable. Certain of the lawsuits further seek, among other things, an injunction against one or more of the Settling States from collecting any moneys under the MSA and barring the PMs from collecting cigarette price increases related to the MSA. In addition, class action lawsuits have been filed in several federal and state courts alleging that under the federal Medicaid law, any amount of tobacco settlement funds that the Settling States receive in excess of what they paid through the Medicaid program to treat tobacco-related diseases should be paid directly to Medicaid recipients.

To date, challenges to the MSA or related state legislation have not been ultimately successful, although three such challenges (the *Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings* cases in federal court in New York, and the *Xcaliber* case in federal court in Louisiana, all of which are discussed below) have survived initial appellate review of motions to dismiss. Moreover, these three cases, and the *A.B. Coker* case in federal court in Louisiana (discussed below), are the only cases challenging the MSA or related legislation that have proceeded to a stage of litigation where the ultimate outcome may be determined by, among other things, findings of fact based on extrinsic evidence as to the operation and impact of the MSA and the related statutes. In *Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings*, certain decisions by the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit have created heightened uncertainty as a result of that court's interpretation of federal antitrust immunity and Commerce Clause doctrines as applied to the MSA and related statutes, which interpretation appears to conflict with interpretations by other courts, which have rejected challenges to the MSA and related statutes. Prior decisions in Circuits other than the Second Circuit rejecting such challenges (in the Third, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Ninth and Tenth Circuits) have concluded that the MSA and related statutes do not violate the Commerce Clause of the U.S. Constitution and/or are protected from antitrust challenges based on established antitrust immunity doctrines. See "RISK FACTORS – Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation – Possibility of Conflict Among the Federal Courts." In addition, proceedings are pending or on appeal in certain other cases, including two challenges by certain NPMs in federal court in Louisiana. One case (*Xcaliber*) alleges *inter alia*, that the Louisiana Allocable Share Release Amendment violates the rights of free speech, due process of law, and equal protection of the laws guaranteed under the U.S. Constitution and the Louisiana Constitution and the federal antitrust laws. On March 1, 2006, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit vacated the district court's dismissal of the plaintiffs' complaint in this case and remanded the case for reconsideration. The other case (*A.B. Coker*) alleges that the MSA and Louisiana's Complementary Legislation are violations of the Commerce Clause, Due Process Clause and First Amendment of the U.S. Constitution and the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act. See "–Other Litigation Challenging the MSA, Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation" in this subsection.

In several cases, the State has brought actions against NPMs which were alleged to be non-compliant with Ohio's Qualifying Statute, and the defendant NPMs have counterclaimed, asserting defenses based on constitutional or preemption grounds. In March, 2006, in a case captioned *Carolina Tobacco v. Petro*, the Ohio Court of Appeals, Tenth Appellate District, decided similar claims in favor of the State. In addition, similar counterclaims were raised in *Ohio vs. Bulgartabac Holding Group*, and these counterclaims could be litigated against the State if the case is remanded to the trial court upon an appellate finding of personal jurisdiction as to the defendant. The *Bulgartabac* case, along with one other pending case captioned *State of Ohio vs. Makedonjia Tabak 2000, et al*, are the only enforcement actions brought by the Ohio Attorney General under the Qualifying Statute that have not been successfully resolved in favor of the State.

The MSA and related state legislation may also continue to be challenged in the future. A determination by a court having jurisdiction over the State and the Authority that the MSA or related state legislation is void or unenforceable would have a materially adverse effect on the payments by the PMs under the MSA and the amount or the timing of receipt of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and to make Turbo Redemptions, and could lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds and, in certain circumstances, could lead to a complete loss of a Bondholder's investment. A determination by any court that the MSA or state legislation enacted pursuant to the MSA is void or unenforceable could also lead to a decrease in the market value and/or liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds. See "CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS" herein.

*Qualifying Statute and Related Legislation.* Under the MSA’s NPM Adjustment, downward adjustments may be made to the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments payable by a PM if the PM experiences a loss of market share in the United States to NPMs as a result of the PM’s participation in the MSA. See “– Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA – NPM Adjustment” herein and “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT – MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes” herein. A Settling State may avoid the effect of this adjustment by adopting and diligently enforcing a Qualifying Statute, as hereinafter described. The State has adopted the Model Statute, which by definition is a Qualifying Statute under the MSA. The Model Statute, in its original form, required an NPM to make escrow deposits approximately in the amount that the NPM would have had to pay to all of the states had it been a PM and further authorized the NPM to obtain from the applicable Settling State the release of the amount by which the escrow deposit in that state exceeded that state’s allocable share of the total payments that the NPM would have made as a PM. Legislation has been enacted in at least 44 of the Settling States, including the State, amending the Qualifying Statutes in those states by eliminating the reference to the allocable share and limiting the possible release an NPM may obtain under the statute to the excess above the total payment that the NPM would have paid had it been a PM (each an “**Allocable Share Release Amendment**”). A majority of the PMs, including all OPMs, have indicated in writing that the State’s Model Statute, as amended by an Allocable Share Release Amendment, will continue to constitute a Qualifying Statute within the meaning of the MSA. In addition, at least 45 Settling States (including the State) have passed legislation (often termed “**Complementary Legislation**”) to further ensure that NPMs are making required escrow payments under the states’ respective Qualifying Statutes. Pursuant to the State’s Complementary Legislation, every tobacco product manufacturer whose cigarettes are sold directly or indirectly in the State is required to certify annually that it is a PM or an NPM and is in full compliance with the State’s Qualifying Statute.

The Qualifying Statutes and related legislation (including those of the State), like the MSA, have also been the subject of litigation in cases alleging that the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation violate certain provisions of the United States Constitution and/or state constitutions and are preempted by federal antitrust laws. The lawsuits seek, among other things, injunctions against the enforcement of the Qualifying Statutes and the related legislation. To date such challenges have not been ultimately successful, although the enforcement of Allocable Share Release Amendments has been preliminarily enjoined in New York and certain other states. Appeals are also possible in certain other cases. The Qualifying Statutes and related legislation may also continue to be challenged in the future. Pending challenges to the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation are described below under “– *Grand River, Freedom Holdings and Related Cases*” and “– *Other Litigation Challenging the MSA, Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation*” in this subsection.

A determination that a Qualifying Statute is unconstitutional would have no effect on the enforceability of the MSA itself; such a determination could, however, have an adverse effect on payments to be made under the MSA if one or more NPMs were to gain market share. See “– Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA — NPM Adjustment” herein, “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes” and “CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS” herein.

A determination that an Allocable Share Release Amendment is unenforceable would not constitute a breach of the MSA but could permit NPMs to exploit differences among states, target sales in states without Allocable Share Release Amendments, and thereby potentially increase their market share at the expense of the PMs. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes” herein.

A determination that the State’s Complementary Legislation is unenforceable would not constitute a breach of the MSA or affect the enforceability of the State’s Qualifying Statute; such a determination could, however, make enforcement of the State’s Qualifying Statute against NPMs more difficult for the State. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes” herein.

*Grand River, Freedom Holdings and Related Cases.* Among the pending challenges to the MSA and/or related state legislation are two lawsuits referred to herein as *Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings*, both of which are pending in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. The *Grand River* case is pending against the attorneys general of 31 states, including the State, and alleges, among other things, that (a) the MSA creates an unlawful output cartel under federal antitrust law and state legislation enacted pursuant to the MSA mandates or authorizes such cartel and is thus preempted by federal law and that (b) the MSA and related statutes are invalid or unenforceable under the Commerce Clause and other provisions of the United States Constitution. The plaintiffs in *Grand River* seek to enjoin the enforcement of the Qualifying Statutes and Complementary Legislation by the Grand River Defendant States (defined below), including the State. The *Freedom Holdings* case is pending against the attorney general and the commissioner of taxation and finance of the State of New York and is based on the same purported claims as the *Grand River* case (including, as discussed below, a Commerce Clause claim asserted by the plaintiffs in their Second Supplemental and Amended Complaint following a Second Circuit ruling on the issue in the *Grand River* case). The plaintiffs in *Freedom Holdings* seek to enjoin the enforcement of New York's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation. These suits have survived appellate review of motions to dismiss for failure to state a claim upon which relief can be granted. *Grand River* is in the discovery phase of litigation in preparation for the development of a factual record to support possible findings of fact that may be used by the court in its decision as to the pending claims. Discovery has been completed in *Freedom Holdings*. To date, *Grand River* and *Freedom Holdings*, along with *Xcaliber v. Foti* (discussed below), are the only cases challenging the MSA or related legislation that have survived initial appellate review of motions to dismiss. Moreover, these three cases, and the *A.B. Coker* case in federal court in Louisiana (discussed below), are the only cases challenging the MSA or related legislation that have proceeded to a stage of litigation where the ultimate outcome may be determined by, among other things, findings of fact based on extrinsic evidence as to the operation and impact of the MSA and the related state legislation.

On July 1, 2002, *Grand River Enterprises Six Nations Ltd. v. Pryor* ("**Grand River**") was filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York by certain NPMs against current and former attorneys general of 31 states, including the State (the "**Grand River Defendant States**"). The plaintiffs seek to enjoin the enforcement of the Grand River Defendant States' Qualifying Statutes and Complementary Legislation, alleging that such Qualifying Statutes and Complementary Legislation violate the plaintiffs' constitutional rights under the Commerce Clause and other provisions of the United States Constitution and also that such Qualifying Statutes and Complementary Legislation conflict with and are therefore preempted by the federal antitrust laws. In September 2003, the District Court held that it lacked personal jurisdiction over the non-New York attorneys general and dismissed the plaintiffs' complaint against them. In addition, the District Court dismissed the plaintiffs' complaint against the New York Attorney General, finding that the plaintiffs had failed to state a claim upon which relief could be granted. After the Second Circuit's decision in *Freedom Holdings* (discussed below), however, the District Court granted the plaintiffs' motion in *Grand River* to reinstate, against the New York attorney general only, that portion of the complaint alleging that New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation conflict with antitrust laws and are preempted by federal law.

The plaintiffs appealed the dismissal of their other claims to the Second Circuit. On September 28, 2005, the Second Circuit reinstated portions of the Commerce Clause challenge and reinstated the non-New York attorneys general, including the Attorney General of the State, as defendants, finding that a federal court in New York could exercise personal jurisdiction over them, and affirmed the dismissal of certain remaining claims, including the claim that the Qualifying Statute and related legislation violated the Indian Commerce Clause of the United States Constitution. The case was remanded to the District Court. On May 31, 2006, the District Court denied Grand River's motion for a preliminary injunction seeking to bar defendants from: (1) enforcing their states' Allocable Share Release Amendments; (2) denying Grand River's application to become a party to the Master Settlement Agreement; and (3) banning sales in the defendants' states of Grand River-produced cigarettes. The District Court held that Grand River failed to show either a likelihood of irreparable injury absent an injunction or a likelihood of success on the merits of its claims. On June 7, 2006, Grand River filed an appeal of this decision before the Second Circuit. Separately, Grand River also filed a

motion for an injunction pending appeal, which the District Court denied on June 29, 2006. On March 6, 2007, the Second Circuit denied Grand River's appeal, solely on the basis that the District Court had not abused its discretion in finding that plaintiff Grand River had failed to show a likelihood of irreparable injury. On June 12, 2007, the Second Circuit issued a judgment confirming its May 23, 2007 order denying plaintiff Grand River's petition for rehearing.

On October 12, 2005, the defendants filed a petition with the Second Circuit for rehearing with regard to the Second Circuit's ruling on the issue of personal jurisdiction. The plaintiffs filed a petition with the Second Circuit for rehearing on the Indian Commerce Clause ruling. On January 3, 2006, the Second Circuit denied all parties' petitions for rehearing. On April 18, 2006 the non-New York defendants filed a petition for certiorari review with the U.S. Supreme Court challenging the Second's Circuit ruling on the issue of personal jurisdiction. See *King v. Grand River Enterprises Six Nations, Ltd.* On October 10, 2006, the U.S. Supreme Court denied the defendants' petition for certiorari.

With regard to the Commerce Clause challenge, the Second Circuit in *Grand River* noted that because it was reviewing a motion to dismiss, it was required to accept as true the material facts alleged in the complaint and to draw all reasonable inferences in the plaintiffs' favor. The Second Circuit held that although each state's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation apply to cigarette sales within such state, the plaintiffs sufficiently stated a possible claim that these statutes together create a national or "interstate" regulatory policy and thereby exert "extraterritorial control" over out-of-state transactions in contravention of the Commerce Clause. The Second Circuit acknowledged that in *Freedom Holdings* (discussed below) it had ruled that plaintiffs failed to state a claim that the state's Complementary Legislation had violated the Commerce Clause, but explained that it did so because plaintiffs there had not sufficiently alleged an extraterritorial effect of that legislation. To date, *A.B. Coker* (discussed below), *Grand River*, and, as a technical matter, *Freedom Holdings* (pursuant to the grant of a motion to amend the complaint in that matter to include a Commerce Clause claim), are the only cases in which a Commerce Clause challenge to the MSA and related statutes has not been the subject of a summary dismissal. However, other such challenges are currently pending in various jurisdictions. An adverse ruling on Commerce Clause grounds could potentially lead to invalidation of the MSA and the Qualifying Statutes in their entirety and result in the complete loss of a Bondholder's investment.

With regard to the reinstatement of the non-New York defendants, the Second Circuit explained that where an out of state defendant has "transacted business" in the State of New York and there is "substantial nexus" between that transaction and the litigation in question, the federal courts in the state can obtain jurisdiction over the defendants. The Second Circuit concluded that by negotiating the MSA in New York, the attorneys general "transacted business" for the purpose of conferring jurisdiction in federal courts in New York. The Court also held that there was "substantial nexus" between the MSA negotiations and the lawsuit, because although the challenged statutes are discrete acts of each state, they were integral to the operation of the MSA and were negotiated as such.

*Grand River* remains pending before the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of New York, wherein the defendants filed an answer to the complaint on October 25, 2006. The District Court has ruled that the pre-trial discovery period will conclude in March 2008. Any decision by the Second Circuit in this case would not be subject to appeal as of right to the U.S. Supreme Court. No assurance can be given: (1) that the Supreme Court would choose to hear and determine any appeal relating to the validity or enforceability of MSA or related legislation in this or any other case; or (2) as to the outcome of any petition for writ of certiorari or any appeal, even if heard by the Supreme Court. A Supreme Court decision to affirm or to decline to review a Second Circuit ruling that is adverse to the defendants in *Grand River* or other similar cases, challenging the validity or enforceability of the MSA or related legislation, could ultimately result in the complete cessation of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to make payments on the Series 2007 Bonds. Moreover, even if ultimately reversed by the Supreme Court, a Second Circuit decision adverse to the defendants in *Grand River*, could, unless stayed pending appeal at the discretion of the court: (1) result in the complete cessation of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to make payments on the Series 2007 Bonds; or (2)

have a material adverse effect on the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds and, as a result, lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of, the Series 2007 Bonds, during the pendency of the appeal. Any final ruling by the Second Circuit, or the U.S. Supreme Court on appeal, that is adverse to the defendants in *Grand River* would be binding on the State and could result in the complete cessation of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions, and could result in the complete loss of a Bondholder's investment.

On April 16, 2002, in *Freedom Holdings, Inc. v. Spitzer* ("**Freedom Holdings**"), certain cigarette importers filed an action against the attorney general of New York and the Commissioner of Taxation and Finance of the State of New York (the "**New York State Defendants**"), challenging New York's Complementary Legislation, alleging in their initial complaint that New York's Complementary Legislation enforces a market-sharing and price-fixing cartel, and allows the OPMs to charge supra-competitive prices for their cigarettes. Plaintiffs also alleged that New York's Complementary Legislation violates the Commerce Clause of the United States Constitution and establishes an output cartel in violation of federal antitrust law. The initial complaint also alleged that the legislation is selectively enforced in violation of the Equal Protection Clause of the United States Constitution. The Southern District dismissed the action on May 14, 2002.

In its *Freedom Holdings* decision, the Southern District applied two United States Supreme Court doctrines known as the "state action" immunity doctrine (based on a United States Supreme Court case known as "**Parker**") and the First Amendment based immunity doctrine (based on two United States Supreme Court cases known collectively as Noerr-Pennington "**NP**"). The applicability of the *Parker* immunity doctrine requires two levels of analysis. Where a state confers authority on private parties to engage in conduct that would otherwise be per se violative of antitrust laws, cases subsequent to *Parker* (most notably a United States Supreme Court case known as "**MidCal**") have required both a clear articulation of state policy and active supervision by the state of the otherwise anticompetitive conduct for *Parker* immunity to apply. When a state is acting unilaterally, in its capacity as the sovereign, however, no *MidCal* analysis is required and *Parker* immunity applies directly. *NP* immunity applies to conduct that is protected by the First Amendment, most particularly conduct that constitutes petitioning activity directed at courts or governmental bodies. The Southern District held, among other things, that New York's Complementary Legislation was protected from antitrust challenge by both direct *Parker* immunity and *NP* immunity.

The plaintiffs in *Freedom Holdings* appealed and on January 6, 2004, the Second Circuit partially reversed the decision of the Southern District. In its reversal, the Second Circuit noted, because it was reviewing a motion to dismiss, that it was required to accept as true the material facts alleged in the complaint and to draw all reasonable inferences in the plaintiffs' favor. The Second Circuit affirmed the Southern District's dismissal of that portion of the complaint that alleged a Commerce Clause violation. The Second Circuit reversed the dismissal of the plaintiffs' Equal Protection claim, based on uncertainty both as to the basis for the district court's ruling and the allegations of the complaint. The Second Circuit remanded the case to allow the plaintiffs to amend their complaint to correct deficiencies in the pleadings. The Second Circuit held, however, that the plaintiffs had alleged facts sufficient to state a claim that New York's Complementary Legislation conflicts with federal antitrust law, and that based on the facts alleged, the legislation was not protected from an antitrust challenge based on either of the *Parker* or *NP* immunity doctrines. The Second Circuit determined, on the record before it, that a *MidCal* analysis was required and, on that record and solely for the purpose of reviewing the Southern District's dismissal of the complaint, found insufficient active supervision and insufficient articulation of state policy to support a conclusion that there was antitrust immunity under *Parker* and *MidCal*. On March 25, 2004, the Second Circuit denied the New York State Defendants' petition for a rehearing.

In April 2004, the plaintiffs in *Freedom Holdings* filed an amended complaint, which was supplemented in November 2004 and included requests for: (1) a declaratory judgment that the operation of the MSA, New York's Qualifying Statute, and New York's Complementary Legislation implements an illegal *per se* output cartel in violation of the federal antitrust laws and are thus preempted by federal antitrust law; and (2) injunctive relief enjoining the enforcement of New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's



Complementary Legislation. The amended complaint did not seek an injunction enjoining the enforcement or administration of the MSA, was limited only to claims under the federal antitrust laws, and did not allege that the MSA, New York State's Qualifying Statute, or Complementary Legislation violates the Commerce Clause or the Equal Protection Clause of the U.S. Constitution.

On September 14, 2004, the Southern District denied the plaintiffs' motion for a preliminary injunction enjoining New York, during the pendency of the action, from enforcing the MSA, New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation. The Southern District held that, based on the evidence presented by the parties, the plaintiffs had failed to establish a likelihood of success on the merits of their claims (1) that New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation authorized or mandated a per se violation of the federal antitrust laws or (2) that the MSA, New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation would not be entitled to *Parker* antitrust immunity under a *MidCal* analysis. The Southern District also determined that the plaintiffs had failed to make a showing of irreparable harm sufficient to justify preliminary injunctive relief. The Southern District, however, granted the plaintiffs' motion to enjoin New York from enforcing its Allocable Share Release Amendment, holding that the plaintiffs had established likelihood of success on their claim that New York's Allocable Share Release Amendment conflicts with the federal antitrust laws and that its enforcement would cause plaintiffs and other NPMs irreparable harm. The plaintiffs appealed the Southern District's denial of their motion for a preliminary injunction as to New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation. The plaintiffs did not appeal the denial of their motion for a preliminary injunction to enjoin the enforcement of the MSA and supplemented their amended complaint to state that they do not seek a permanent injunction to enjoin the enforcement of the MSA. The New York State Defendants did not appeal the granting of the plaintiffs' motion to enjoin enforcement of New York's Allocable Share Release Amendment. On May 18, 2005, the Second Circuit affirmed the Southern District's denial of the plaintiffs' request for a preliminary injunction. The Second Circuit held that the plaintiffs failed to satisfy the irreparable harm requirement for a preliminary injunction. The Second Circuit made no determination as to the likelihood of the plaintiffs' ultimate success on the merits. On November 1, 2005, the Southern District denied, without prejudice and upon agreement of the parties, plaintiffs' motion for partial summary judgment which sought a determination that New York's Allocable Share Release Amendment violates federal antitrust law. On December 28, 2005, the Southern District denied the plaintiffs' motion to file an amended complaint to add a Commerce Clause claim similar to the plaintiffs' claims in *Grand River*, as described above. In its decision, however, the Southern District granted the plaintiffs leave to renew their motion to amend upon the condition that the plaintiffs show what additional discovery would be required to support such additional claims.

On February 6, 2006, the Southern District granted plaintiffs' renewed motion for leave to assert a claim under the Commerce Clause. On February 10, 2006, plaintiffs filed a Second Supplemental and Amended Complaint. The plaintiffs now seek (1) a declaratory judgment that the operation of the MSA, New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation implements an illegal per se output cartel in violation of the federal antitrust laws and is preempted thereby, (2) a declaratory judgment that the New York Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation, together with the Qualifying Statutes and Complementary Legislation of other states, regulates interstate commerce in violation of the Commerce Clause of the United States Constitution and (3) an injunction permanently enjoining the enforcement of New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation. The amended complaint does not seek to enjoin the enforcement or administration of the MSA. On July 12, 2006, defendants filed a motion to dismiss the Second Supplemental and Amended Complaint. A hearing took place on December 11, 2006 to resolve certain discovery issues. A final decision by Judge Alvin K. Hellerstein of the Southern District remains pending in *Freedom Holdings*.

*Possibility of Conflict Among Federal Courts.* Certain decisions by the United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit in *Freedom Holdings* have created heightened uncertainty as a result of the court's interpretation of federal antitrust law immunity doctrines, as applied to the MSA and related statutes, which interpretation appears to conflict with interpretations by the United States Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit (*A.D. Bedell Wholesale Co. v. Philip Morris, Inc.* and *Mariana v. Fisher*), the Sixth Circuit

(*Tritent International Corp. v. Commonwealth of Kentucky* and *S&M Brands Inc. v. Summers*), the Ninth Circuit (*Sanders v. Brown*), and other lower courts which have rejected challenges to the MSA and related statutes. Prior decisions rejecting such challenges have concluded that the MSA and related statutes are protected from an antitrust challenge based on the *Parker* or *NP* doctrines.

An adverse decision by the Second Circuit in *Grand River* regarding the enforceability of the MSA and/or related statutes under federal antitrust law or the Commerce Clause of the U.S. Constitution would be controlling law not only within the Second Circuit but also in each of the Grand River Defendant States, including the State, at least as to the *Grand River* plaintiffs and possibly as to other potential plaintiffs as well.

In addition, an adverse decision by the Second Circuit in *Freedom Holdings* regarding the enforceability of the MSA and related statutes under federal antitrust law or the Commerce Clause of the United States Constitution would be controlling law only within the Second Circuit from which no appeal as of right to the United States Supreme Court would exist. If, however, the Second Circuit were to make a final determination in *Freedom Holdings* that (a) the MSA constitutes a per se federal antitrust violation, not immunized by the *NP* or *Parker* doctrines, or that New York's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation authorize or mandate such a per se violation, or (b) New York's Qualifying Statute and New York's Complementary Legislation operate with the Qualifying Statutes and Complementary Legislation of other states to regulate interstate commerce in violation of the Commerce Clause of the United States Constitution, such determination could be considered to be in conflict with decisions rendered by other federal courts, which have come to different conclusions on these issues. The existence of a conflict as to the rulings of different federal courts on these issues, especially between Circuit Courts of Appeals, is one factor that the United States Supreme Court may take into account when deciding whether to exercise its discretion in agreeing to hear an appeal. No assurance can be given that the United States Supreme Court would choose to hear and determine any appeal relating to the substantive merits of *Freedom Holdings*. Any final decision by the United States Supreme Court on the substantive merits of *Freedom Holdings* would be binding everywhere in the United States, including in the State.

*Other Litigation Challenging the MSA, Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation.* In addition to *Freedom Holdings* and *Grand River*, other cases remain pending in federal courts that challenge the MSA, the Qualifying Statute, the Complementary Legislation and/or the Allocable Share Release Amendment in Kentucky, Tennessee, Arkansas, Kansas, California, Louisiana and Oklahoma. The issues raised in *Freedom Holdings* or *Grand River* are also raised in many of these other cases, as briefly described below, by way of example only, and not as an exclusive or complete list.

*Sixth Circuit Cases.* The State is within the Sixth Circuit. In a case brought in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Kentucky, *Tritent International Corp. v. Commonwealth of Kentucky*, the plaintiffs sought a declaratory judgment that Kentucky's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation conflict with federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution. On September 8, 2005, the District Court granted Kentucky's motion to dismiss the complaint and on October 24, 2005, the District Court denied the plaintiffs' subsequent motion for reconsideration. The plaintiffs appealed the dismissal to the Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals. On October 30, 2006, the Sixth Circuit affirmed the District Court's dismissal. On November 13, 2006, the plaintiffs filed a petition for en banc rehearing, which petition was denied in February 2007. The Sixth Circuit's October 30, 2006 decision is controlling law within the Sixth Circuit, which includes the State, and is not subject to appeal as of right to the U.S. Supreme Court. Plaintiffs did not file within the prescribed time period a petition for a writ of certiorari with the U.S. Supreme Court with respect to the Sixth Circuit's rulings in this case and those rulings are final.

Similarly, in the Tennessee case, *S&M Brands, Inc. v. Summers*, the plaintiffs filed suit in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee seeking a declaratory judgment that the Tennessee Qualifying Statute (including the Allocable Share Release Amendment) and Complementary Legislation also conflict with federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution. On June 1, 2005, the Sixth Circuit affirmed the District Court's denial of plaintiffs' motion for a preliminary injunction with respect to the

enforcement of Tennessee's Allocable Share Release Amendment. On October 6, 2005, the District Court granted Tennessee's motion to dismiss the complaint except that portion of the complaint that alleges that the state's retroactive enforcement of the state's Allocable Share Release Provision violates plaintiff's constitutional rights, which issue was not raised by the state in its motion and was therefore not addressed by the court. In its opinion, the District Court expressly rejected the Second Circuit's reasoning in sustaining antitrust challenges in the *Freedom Holdings* case and the Third Circuit's rationale for denying state action immunity in the *Bedell* and *Mariana* cases. Instead, *S&M Brands* followed the *Sanders* and *PTI* line of cases (described below) and held that Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation are direct state action, entitled to *Parker* immunity without the need for *MidCal* analysis. On December 13, 2005, and in accordance with its October 6, 2005 decision, the District Court entered a final judgment dismissing the claims seeking a declaration that the Tennessee Qualifying Statute violated Federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution. On January 3, 2006, plaintiffs filed a notice of appeal of that judgment. On April 19, 2007, the Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals affirmed the District Court's December 12, 2005 final judgment of dismissal. The Sixth Circuit's April 19, 2007 decision is controlling law within the Sixth Circuit, which includes the State, and is not subject to appeal as of right to the U.S. Supreme Court. Plaintiffs did not file within the prescribed period a petition for a writ of certiorari with the U.S. Supreme Court with respect to the Sixth Circuit's April 19, 2007 decision and that decision is final. By separate decision filed November 28, 2005, the District Court also held that the state's retroactive application of its Allocable Share Release Amendment, which was effective as of April 20, 2004, to 2003 cigarette sales was unconstitutional. Defendants' appeal of the District Court's November 28, 2005 decision regarding retroactivity of Tennessee's Allocable Share Release Amendment was argued before the Sixth Circuit on April 26, 2007 and remains pending.

*Other Cases.* Similar cases were brought in Arkansas. In three cases in the U.S. District Court for the Western District of Arkansas (*Grand River Enterprises Six Nations Ltd. v. Beebe*, *International Tobacco Partners Ltd. v. Beebe*, and *Dos Santos v. Beebe*), the plaintiffs sought to enjoin, preliminarily and permanently, Arkansas's enforcement of its Allocable Share Release Amendment as preempted by the federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution and the Arkansas Constitution. In *International Tobacco Partners Ltd.*, the plaintiffs also sought a declaratory judgment that the MSA and Arkansas's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation are preempted by federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution. The District Court preliminarily enjoined, as against the plaintiffs only, the enforcement of Arkansas's Allocable Share Release Amendment. On August 8, 2005, the court ordered Arkansas to reimburse certain amounts it withheld pursuant to the Allocable Share Release Amendment to International Tobacco Partners Ltd. On March 6, 2006, the District Court issued orders in all three cases: (1) denying Arkansas's motion to dismiss the complaint with respect to the plaintiffs' claim that the retroactive application of the Allocable Share Release Amendment violates the plaintiffs' right to due process of law under the Fourteenth Amendment of the U.S. Constitution; and (2) granting Arkansas's motion to dismiss the complaint in all other respects. Both the *Dos Santos* and *International Tobacco Partners Ltd.* cases have been settled by the parties, and orders dismissing those cases have been entered. On March 14, 2006, the District Court in *Grand River v. Beebe* denied the plaintiffs' motion to preliminarily enjoin the Allocable Share Release Amendment. On April 12, 2006, the plaintiffs filed an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Eighth Circuit. On December 4, 2006, the Eighth Circuit affirmed the District Court's decision to deny an injunction.

Two cases are currently pending in Kansas. In the first case filed, *Xcaliber International Limited, LLC v. Kline*, the plaintiffs seek to enjoin, preliminarily and permanently, Kansas's enforcement of its Allocable Share Release Amendment as preempted by the federal antitrust laws, expressly based on the same facts that were before the District Court in the *Freedom Holdings* case in New York. The complaint challenges only the Allocable Share Amendment but purports to reserve the right to challenge the Kansas Qualifying Statute in its entirety. On February 7, 2006, the District Court granted the state's motion for summary judgment and dismissed the case on its merits and denied the plaintiffs' motion to supplement the record with additional facts. On February 16, 2006, the plaintiffs appealed to the Court of Appeals for the Tenth Circuit. On March 8, 2006, the Tenth Circuit granted *Xcaliber's* motion to consolidate this case with

*Xcaliber v. Edmondson* (described below) for oral argument, and oral argument was held in September 2006. In the second case, *International Tobacco Partners Ltd. v. Kline*, the plaintiff seeks a declaratory judgment that the Allocable Share Release Amendment is preempted by federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution and preliminary and permanent injunctions against the enforcement of the Allocable Share Release Amendment. On January 30, 2006, the plaintiff amended the complaint, which now seeks to enjoin the enforcement of Kansas's Complementary Legislation and Kansas's Qualifying Statute in their entirety. Although the complaint asserts that the MSA is also preempted by federal antitrust laws and certain provisions of the U.S. Constitution, it does not specifically seek to enjoin the enforcement thereof. Both parties filed motions for summary judgment, which were dismissed by the court. Kansas filed a motion to dismiss on February 28, 2006. On April 24, 2006, plaintiff filed a new motion for summary judgment. On February 8, 2007, the court granted Kansas' motion and dismissed the case. On March 9, 2007, the plaintiff appealed this dismissal. The Tenth Circuit has put briefing in this case on hold pending its decision in the appeals of *Xcaliber International Limited, LLC v. Kline* and *Xcaliber v. Edmondson*.

On March 28, 2005, the United States District Court for the Northern District of California in the California case, *Sanders v. Lockyer* (now *Sanders v. Brown*), dismissed an antitrust challenge to the MSA and California's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation brought by a class of California consumers against the State of California and the OPMs. The District Court, expressly unpersuaded by *Freedom Holdings*, found the MSA to be the sovereign act of the state and further found California's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation to be direct legislative activity entitled to *Parker* immunity without the need for any additional *MidCal* analysis. The District Court also found the MSA and California's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation to be entitled to *NP* immunity. The plaintiffs appealed the dismissal to the Ninth Circuit Court of Appeals. On September 26, 2007, the Ninth Circuit affirmed the District Court ruling that Sanders had failed (i) to show that the MSA implementing statutes are *per se* illegal under the Sherman Act, (ii) to show that any of the defendants are liable under either the Sherman Act or California antitrust law or (iii) to state a claim entitling him to relief. In upholding the district court's dismissal of the plaintiff's claims challenging the MSA, the Ninth Circuit expressly agreed with the Sixth Circuit's reasoning in *Tritent* and expressly declined to follow either the Second Circuit's approach in *Freedom Holdings* or the Third Circuit's "hybrid restraint" analysis of the MSA in *Bedell*. A petition for a writ of certiorari to the U.S. Supreme Court is possible.

On August 13, 1999, in *PTI, Inc v. Philip Morris Inc.*, certain cigarette importers and cigarette distributors filed an action in the United States District Court for the Central District of California against the PMs and all of the state officials involved in the negotiation of the MSA and those charged with the enforcement of the California Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation as enacted by the respective states (collectively, the "**State Defendants**"). The plaintiffs therein sought to enjoin the passage or enforcement, as the case may be, of the California Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation. The complaint alleged, among other things, that the passage, implementation and/or enforcement of the California Qualifying Statute would be preempted by federal antitrust laws and violate certain provisions of the federal constitution, including the Interstate Compact Clause, the prohibition on Bills of Attainder, the Commerce Clause, the Import-Export Clause, the Supremacy Clause, the First Amendment, the Equal Protection Clause, and the Due Process Clause. On May 25, 2000, the District Court found that jurisdiction did not exist over the non-California State Defendants, and dismissed with prejudice all federal antitrust and constitutional claims against the PMs and the California State Defendants based on the merits. Like the *Sanders* court, the *PTI* court found antitrust immunity under both the *NP* and *Parker* doctrines. With respect to the Commerce Clause challenge, the District Court found that neither the California Qualifying Statute nor the Complementary Legislation was discriminatory on its face and applied equally to in-state, out-of-state and foreign manufacturers. In addition, the court found that the alleged burden imposed on interstate commerce by the California Qualifying Statute did not clearly exceed the putative local benefits of discouraging cigarette consumption. The *PTI* court's decision was not appealed and is final.

Two cases are currently pending in Louisiana that challenge the MSA, Qualifying Statutes, and/or related legislation. In *Xcaliber International Limited, LLC v. Foti*, certain NPMs have challenged the state's

Allocable Share Release Amendment on both federal and state constitutional grounds. In March 2006, the Fifth Circuit Court of Appeals vacated the District Court's earlier dismissal of the action and remanded the case for further proceedings to review the plaintiffs' allegations that the Louisiana Allocable Share Release Amendment violates the rights of free speech, due process of law, and equal protection of the laws guaranteed under the U.S. Constitution and the Louisiana Constitution. On July 5, 2006, the plaintiff filed an Amended Complaint, which is now pending before U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Louisiana. The Amended Complaint also alleges that the Louisiana Allocable Share Release Amendment violates federal antitrust laws. On July 19, 2006, defendant filed a motion to dismiss certain claims of the Amended Complaint, which the court denied on October 18, 2006. On October 30, 2006, the defendant filed its answer to the Amended Complaint. A settlement conference was held on February 5, 2007. A final pretrial conference had been set for September 6, 2007, with a bench trial to follow on September 24, 2007. This schedule, however, has been suspended pending the resolution of certain discovery issues. A status conference is scheduled for October 31, 2007. In *A.B. Coker v. Foti*, filed in August 2005, certain NPMs and cigarette distributors brought an action in a federal district court in Louisiana, seeking, among other relief: (1) a declaration that the MSA and Louisiana's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation are invalid as violations of the U.S. Constitution and the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act; and (2) an injunction barring the enforcement of the MSA and Louisiana's Qualifying Statute and Complementary Legislation. On November 2, 2005, the State defendant filed a motion to dismiss the complaint for lack of jurisdiction. On November 9, 2006, the U.S. District Court for the Western District of Louisiana granted in part and denied in part the defendant's motion to dismiss. The court allowed the case to proceed on claims that the MSA and Louisiana's Complementary Legislation are violations of the Commerce Clause, Due Process Clause and First Amendment of the U.S. Constitution, and the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act. The court dismissed claims that alleged violation of the Tenth Amendment of the U.S. Constitution. On December 12, 2006, the state defendant filed its answer to the complaint. The judge has ordered all dispositive motions due by June 13, 2008. A trial date will be set thereafter.

In the Oklahoma case, *Xcaliber International Limited, LLC v. Edmondson*, certain NPMs have challenged Oklahoma's enforcement of its Allocable Share Release Amendment under federal antitrust laws. On May 20, 2005, the District Court granted summary judgment in favor of defendant, holding that the Oklahoma Allocable Share Release Amendment constituted unilateral state action that is directly protected from preemption by the *Parker* immunity doctrine. The plaintiffs requested that the District Court reconsider its summary judgment order and appealed the order to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Tenth Circuit. On August 31, 2005, the District Court denied the motion to reconsider. On October 28, 2005, the Tenth Circuit referred the case for mediation conferencing. Mediation conferencing was subsequently terminated, and appellate briefing was completed in February 2006. Oral argument on the appeal was held on September 25, 2006 and a decision remains pending.

The plaintiffs in *Freedom Holdings* filed a motion with the federal Judicial Panel on Multidistrict Litigation (the "**MDL Panel**") requesting that the Tennessee, Kentucky and Oklahoma cases described herein, together with *Grand River*, be transferred to the Southern District of New York for coordinated and consolidated pretrial proceedings with *Freedom Holdings*. On June 16, 2005, the MDL Panel denied this motion. The MDL Panel's denial of this motion is not subject to appeal.

If there is an adverse ruling in one or more of the cases discussed above, it could have a material adverse effect on: (1) the amount of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions; or (2) the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds, and, as a result, lead to a decrease in the market value and/or liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds, which in certain circumstances, could result in the complete loss of a Bondholder's investment. For a description of the opinions of Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP addressing such matters, see "CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS – MSA Enforceability" and "CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS – Qualifying Statute Constitutionality" herein.

## Litigation Seeking Monetary Relief from Tobacco Industry Participants

The tobacco industry has been the target of litigation for many years. Both individual and class action lawsuits have been brought by or on behalf of smokers alleging that smoking has been injurious to their health, and by non-smokers alleging harm from environmental tobacco smoke (“ETS”), also known as “secondhand smoke.” Plaintiffs in these actions seek compensatory and punitive damages aggregating billions of dollars. Philip Morris, for example, has reported that, as of August 1, 2007, there were 10 cases on appeal in which verdicts were returned against Philip Morris, including: (1) a \$74 billion punitive damages judgment against Philip Morris in the *Engle* class action, which has been overturned on appeal by the Florida Supreme Court; and (2) a compensatory and punitive damages verdict totaling approximately \$10.1 billion in the *Price* case in Illinois. On December 15, 2005, however, the Illinois Supreme Court reversed the judgment against Philip Morris in *Price* and remanded the case to the trial court with instructions to dismiss the case in its entirety. In its decision, the court held that the defendant’s conduct alleged by the plaintiffs to be fraudulent under the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act was specifically authorized by the Federal Trade Commission, and that the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act specifically exempts conduct so authorized by a regulatory body acting under the authority of the U.S. The court declined to review the case on the merits, concluding that the action was barred entirely by the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act. In January 2006, the plaintiffs filed a motion asking the court to reconsider its decision in *Price*. On May 5, 2006, the Supreme Court of Illinois denied this motion. In October 2006, plaintiffs filed a petition for certiorari with the U.S. Supreme Court. On November 27, 2006, the U.S. Supreme Court denied plaintiff’s petition for certiorari. The trial court then entered an order of dismissal in December 2006. In January 2007, the plaintiff filed a motion to vacate the dismissal, which motion is pending. It has been reported that on May 2, 2007 the state trial court judge in the *Price* case asked the Illinois Fifth District Appellate Court whether he has the authority to reopen the *Price* case, citing possible new evidence presented in a case pending before the U.S. Supreme Court. It has also been reported that on May 17, 2007, Philip Morris petitioned the Illinois Supreme Court for an order that would prevent the trial court judge from reopening the *Price* case. See “CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY—Civil Litigation” herein.

There are a number of other proposed federal class action suits against manufacturers of “light” cigarettes alleging that the manufacturers falsely represented the cigarettes as “light” to mislead smokers into believing that the cigarettes delivered lower tar and nicotine and therefore were safer than regular cigarettes. For example, on August 31, 2007, the First Circuit issued an opinion in *Good v. Altria Group Inc.* holding that plaintiffs’ claims, although similar to those in *Price*, are not preempted by the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act (the “FCLAA”). The court reasoned that plaintiffs’ claims of fraudulent misrepresentation under a Maine fraud statute are neither expressly nor implicitly preempted by the FCLAA. The court also disagreed with those courts, including the *Price* court, which have held that “lights” advertising is authorized by the FTC and therefore beyond the reach of state consumer protection statutes. The First Circuit denied defendant’s summary judgment motion and remanded the case to the U.S. District Court for the District of Maine.

The MSA does not release PMs from liability in either individual or class action cases. Healthcare cost recovery cases have also been brought by governmental and non-governmental healthcare providers seeking, among other things, reimbursement for healthcare expenditures incurred in connection with the treatment of medical conditions allegedly caused by smoking. The PMs are also exposed to liability in these cases, because the MSA only settled healthcare cost recovery claims of the Settling States. Litigation has also been brought against certain PMs and their affiliates in foreign countries.

Pending claims related to tobacco products generally fall within four categories: (i) smoking and health cases alleging personal injury and purporting to be brought on behalf of a class of individual plaintiffs, including cases brought pursuant to a 1997 settlement agreement involving claims by flight attendants on U.S. airlines alleging injury from exposure to ETS in aircraft cabins, (ii) smoking and health cases alleging personal injury brought on behalf of individual plaintiffs, (iii) health care cost recovery cases brought by governmental (both domestic and foreign) and non-governmental plaintiffs seeking reimbursement for health care

expenditures allegedly caused by cigarette smoking and/or disgorgement of profits, and (iv) other tobacco-related litigation, including class action suits alleging that the use of the terms “Lights” and “Ultra Lights” constitute deceptive and unfair trade practices, suits by former asbestos manufacturers seeking contribution or reimbursement for amounts expended in connection with the defense and payment of asbestos claims that were allegedly caused in whole or in part by cigarette smoking, and various antitrust suits and suits by foreign governments seeking to recover damages for taxes lost as a result of the allegedly illegal importation of cigarettes into their jurisdictions. Plaintiffs seek various forms of relief, including compensatory and punitive damages, treble/multiple damages and other statutory damages and penalties, creation of medical monitoring and smoking cessation funds, disgorgement of profits, legal fees, and injunctive and equitable relief. Defenses raised in these cases include lack of proximate cause, statutes of limitation and preemption by the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act. A February 2007 California Supreme Court decision (*Grisham v. Philip Morris*) regarding a statute of limitations issue in an individual case has held that the plaintiff need not have filed suit when she realized she was addicted, thus permitting her lawsuit to go forward after a lower court had held her claim to be time-barred. This decision could lead to an increase in individual lawsuits in California.

The ultimate outcome of these and any other pending or future lawsuits is uncertain. Verdicts of substantial magnitude that are enforceable as to one or more PMs, if they occur, could encourage commencement of additional litigation, or could negatively affect perceptions of potential triers of fact with respect to the tobacco industry, possibly to the detriment of pending litigation. An unfavorable outcome or settlement, or one or more adverse judgments could result in a decision by the affected PMs to substantially increase cigarette prices, thereby reducing cigarette consumption beyond what is forecast in the Global Insight Consumption Report. In addition, the financial condition of any or all of the PM defendants could be materially and adversely affected by the ultimate outcome of pending litigation, including bonding and litigation costs and/or a verdict or verdicts awarding substantial compensatory or punitive damages. Depending upon the magnitude of any such negative financial impact (and irrespective of whether the PM is thereby rendered insolvent), an adverse outcome in one or more of the lawsuits could substantially impair the affected PM’s ability to make payments under the MSA, and have a material adverse effect on: (1) the amount of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions; or (2) the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds and, as a result, lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds. For a detailed discussion of tobacco industry litigation and related matters, see “CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY — Civil Litigation” and “CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS.”

### **Decline in Cigarette Consumption Materially Beyond Forecasted Levels May Adversely Affect Payments**

*Smoking Trends.* As discussed in the Global Insight Consumption Report, cigarette consumption in the United States has declined since its peak in 1981 of 640 billion cigarettes to an estimated 373 billion cigarettes in 2006. Adult per capita cigarette consumption (total consumption divided by the number of people 18 years and older) has been declining since 1964. The Global Insight Consumption Report forecasts a continued decline in total cigarette consumption at an average annual rate of 1.81% to 163 billion cigarettes in 2052 under its Global Insight Base Case Forecast (as defined herein), which represents a decline in per capita consumption at an average rate of 2.52% per year. These consumption declines are based on historical trends which may not be indicative of future trends, as well as other factors which may vary significantly from those assumed or forecasted by Global Insight. For a more detailed discussion of the Global Insight methodology, see “GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” and APPENDIX A — GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT.”

According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, the pharmaceutical industry is seeking approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the “FDA”) for two new smoking cessation products possibly more effective than those now in existence such as gum and patch nicotine replacement products, and other

smoking cessation products such as NicoBloc or Zyban. In June 2006, the FDA approved Varenicline, a Pfizer product to be marketed as Chantix, for use as a prescription medicine. It is intended to satisfy nicotine cravings without being pleasurable or addictive. The drug binds to the same brain receptor as nicotine. Tests indicate that it is more effective as a cessation aid than Zyban. Pfizer introduced Chantix with a novel marketing program, GETQUIT, an integrated consumer support system which emphasizes personalized treatment advice with regular phone and email contact. Pfizer reports that through June 2007, nearly 2.5 million prescriptions have been filled.

Several new drugs may also appear on the market in the near future. On May 14, 2005, Cytos Biotechnology AG, announced that it had successfully completed Phase II testing of a virus-based vaccine, which is genetically engineered to cause an immune system response against nicotine and its effects. Novartis has acquired the license to the vaccine and has reported positive results toward Phase III trials. Nabi Biopharmaceuticals has also reported positive results in its Phase IIB clinical trials for NicVAX, a vaccine to prevent and treat nicotine addiction. It triggers antibodies that bind with nicotine molecules. In 2006, NicVAX received Fast Track Designation from the FDA, which is intended to expedite its review process. The Xenova Group is set to begin Phase II testing of its similar vaccine, Ta-Nic. Positive results were also reported in July 2006 by Somaxon Pharmaceuticals from a pilot Phase II study of Nalmefene. Nalmefene has been used for over 10 years for the reversal of opioid drug effects. Somaxon Pharmaceuticals is seeking to develop it as a treatment for impulse control disorders. Global Insight expects that products such as these will continue to be developed and that their introduction and use will contribute to the trend decline in smoking. One SPM has also introduced a cigarette with reportedly little or no nicotine. Future FDA regulation could also include regulation of nicotine content in cigarettes to non-addictive levels. Such new products or similar products, if successful, or such FDA regulation, if enacted, could have a material adverse effect on cigarette consumption.

*Smokeless Tobacco Products.* Smokeless tobacco products have been available for centuries. As cigarette consumption expanded in the last century, the use of smokeless products declined. Chewing tobacco and snuff are the most significant components. Snuff is a ground or powdered form of tobacco that is placed under the lip to dissolve. It delivers nicotine effectively to the body. Moist snuff is both smoke-free and can be spit-free. According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, chewing tobacco and dry snuff consumption has been declining in the U.S. in this decade, but moist snuff consumption has increased at an annual rate of more than 5% since 2002, and by 10.4% in 2006, when over 5 million consumers purchased 1.1 billion cans. Snuff is now being marketed to adult cigarette smokers as an alternative to cigarettes. UST Inc., the largest producer of moist smokeless tobacco, is explicitly targeting adult smoker conversion in its growth strategy. The industry is responding to both the proliferation of indoor smoking bans and to a perception that smokeless use is a less harmful mode of tobacco and nicotine usage than cigarettes. In 2006, the three largest U.S. cigarette manufacturers entered the market. Philip Morris introduced a snuff product, Taboka, Reynolds American acquired Conwood Company, L.P., the nation's second largest smokeless-tobacco manufacturer, and introduced Camel Snus, a snuff product, and Lorillard entered into an agreement with Swedish Match North America to develop smokeless tobacco products in the United States. Product development has continued in 2007, most recently with the introduction by Philip Morris of a Marlboro snus product. In October 2007, Altria announced that it would accelerate the development of snuff and less-harmful cigarettes to counter a decline in smoking.

Advocates of the use of snuff as part of a tobacco harm reduction strategy point to Sweden, where 'snus,' a moist snuff manufactured by Swedish Match, use has increased sharply since 1970, and where cigarette smoking incidence among males has declined to levels well below that of other countries. A review of the literature on the Swedish experience concludes that snus, relative to cigarettes, delivers lower concentrations of some harmful chemicals, and does not appear to cause cancer or respiratory diseases. They conclude that snus use appears to have contributed to the unusually low rates of smoking among Swedish men. The Sweden experience is unique, even with respect to its Northern European neighbors. It is not clear whether it could be replicated elsewhere. Public health advocates in the U.S. emphasize that smokeless use results in both nicotine dependence and to increased risks of oral cancer among other health concerns. Snuff use is also



often criticized as a gateway to cigarette use. See “CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY—Regulatory Issues—*Smokeless Tobacco Products*” and APPENDIX A—”GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” herein.

A decline in the overall consumption of cigarettes beyond the levels forecasted in the Global Insight Consumption Report could have a material adverse effect on (1) the payments by PMs under the MSA and the amounts of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions; or (2) the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds.

*Regulatory Restrictions and Legislative Initiatives.* The tobacco industry is subject to a wide range of laws and regulations regarding the marketing, sale, taxation and use of tobacco products imposed by local, state, federal and foreign governments. Various state governments have adopted or are considering, among other things, legislation and regulations that would increase their excise taxes on cigarettes, restrict displays and advertising of tobacco products, establish ignition propensity standards for cigarettes, raise the minimum age to possess or purchase tobacco products, ban the sale of “flavored” cigarette brands, require the disclosure of ingredients used in the manufacture of tobacco products, impose restrictions on smoking in public and private areas, restrict the sale of tobacco products directly to consumers or other unlicensed recipients, including over the Internet, and charge state employees who smoke higher health insurance premiums than non-smoking state employees. Five states, Alabama, Georgia, Idaho, Kentucky and West Virginia, charge higher health insurance premiums to smokers than non-smokers, and a number of states have implemented legislation that allows employers to provide incentives to employees who do not smoke. Several large corporations, including Meijer Inc., Gannett Co., American Financial Group Inc., PepsiCo Inc., and Northwest Airlines, are now charging smokers higher health insurance premiums. In addition, the U.S. Congress is considering and may in the future consider legislation further increasing the federal excise tax, regulation of cigarette manufacturing and sale by the FDA, amendments to the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act to require additional warnings, reduction or elimination of the tax deductibility of advertising expenses, implementation of a national standard for “fire-safe” cigarettes, regulation of the retail sale of cigarettes over the Internet and in other non-face-to-face retail transactions, such as by mail order and telephone, and banning the delivery of cigarettes by the U.S. Postal Service. In March 2005, for example, bipartisan legislation was reintroduced in the U.S. Congress, which would provide the FDA with broad authority to regulate tobacco products. A bi-partisan group of lawmakers, Massachusetts Senator Edward M. Kennedy, Texas Senator John Cornyn, California Representative Henry Waxman and Virginia Representative Tom Davis, on February 15, 2007 introduced the Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act, legislation aimed at placing tobacco products under the authority of the FDA. The bill would give the FDA broad regulatory authority over the sale, distribution, and advertising of tobacco products. Such legislation would, among other anticipated changes, permit the FDA to regulate tar and other ingredients in cigarettes, permit the FDA to strengthen warning labels, reduce nicotine levels in tobacco products, police false or misleading advertising and marketing aimed at children and would require manufacturers to provide the FDA with lists of ingredients and additives in their products, including nicotine. Philip Morris has indicated its strong support for this legislation. The Senate Health Committee approved the legislation on August 1, 2007 by a 13 to 8 vote, including an amendment requiring that all cigarette packages be half-covered by warning labels with colored graphic. A committee of the House of Representatives began holding hearings on October 3, 2007 on whether the FDA should be given the power to regulate tobacco products. It has been recently reported that various states have requested the Alcohol Tax and Trade Bureau to categorize “little cigars” as another form of cigarettes that require federal regulation. No assurance can be given that future federal or state legislation or administrative regulations will not seek to further regulate, restrict or discourage the manufacture, sale and use of cigarettes.

Cigarettes are also currently subject to substantial excise taxes in the U.S. The federal excise tax has remained constant, at \$0.39 per pack, since 2002. The U.S. Congress has adopted legislation which would raise the federal excise tax. In August, the Senate and House of Representatives passed bills with \$0.61 and \$0.45 increases to the tax, respectively. The increase to the federal excise tax is designed to provide funding for the State Children’s Health Insurance Program (“SCHIP”). On September 25, 2007, the House of

Representatives passed a new bill with a \$0.61 increase by a vote of 265 to 159. On September 27, 2007, the Senate voted 67 to 29 to reauthorize and expand SCHIP funded in part by a \$0.61 increase in the federal excise tax on cigarettes. On October 3, 2007, the President vetoed the bill, and on October 18, 2007, the House of Representatives failed to override the Presidential veto. It has been reported that Congress will consider revised legislation covering SCHIP, possibly as early as October 25, 2007. It is not possible at this time to predict with certainty the outcome of this legislation or any future legislative action or its effect upon the level of federal excise taxes on cigarettes.

All states, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico currently impose taxes at levels ranging from \$0.07 per pack in South Carolina to \$2.575 per pack in New Jersey. In addition, certain municipalities also impose an excise tax on cigarettes ranging up to \$1.50 per pack in New York City and \$2.68 per pack in Chicago, which includes the Cook County tax of \$2.00 per pack. According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, excise tax increases were enacted in 20 states and in New York City in 2002, in 13 states in 2003, in 11 states in 2004, and in 8 states (Kentucky, Maine, Minnesota, New Hampshire, North Carolina, Ohio, Virginia, and Washington) in 2005. The increase in Minnesota was not a tax increase, but rather the imposition of a "Health Impact Fee," which has the same effect on consumer prices. Global Insight's Consumption Report considers any such fees as equivalent to excise taxes. In 2006, Texas passed a budget that raised the state excise tax by \$1.00 in January 2007, and Hawaii, New Jersey, North Carolina, and Vermont enacted legislation which raised excise taxes. In the November 2006 elections, referenda passed in Arizona and South Dakota raising excise taxes. In 2007, Connecticut, Delaware, Iowa, Indiana, New Hampshire and Tennessee have increased excise taxes. These actions increased the average state excise tax to \$1.074 per pack in July 2007. It is expected that other states will also enact increases in 2007 and in future years. Wisconsin is expected to approve a \$1.25 increase and Maryland and Illinois are considering excise tax increases, of \$1.00 and \$0.84, respectively. In Oregon, voters will decide in November on an \$0.81 increase. After California voters rejected a ballot initiative on November 7, 2006 that would have raised the tax from \$0.87 to \$3.47 per pack, California lawmakers introduced three new smoking related bills that would: (a) raise the tax by \$1.90 per pack; (b) impose a fine of \$100 on anyone smoking in a car with a child under the age of 18 present; and (c) ban smoking in state parks and on beaches.

At least one state, Minnesota (a Previously-Settled State (as defined herein)), currently imposes a 75 cent "health impact fee" on tobacco manufacturers for each pack of cigarettes sold. The purpose of this fee is to recover the state's health costs related to or caused by tobacco use. The imposition of this fee was contested by Philip Morris and upheld by the Minnesota Supreme Court as not in violation of Minnesota's settlement with the tobacco companies. On February 20, 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court declined to hear Philip Morris's appeal of that decision. See "*Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA-NPM Adjustment*" herein.

According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, all of the states and the District of Columbia now require smoke-free indoor air to some degree or in some public places. The most comprehensive bans have been enacted since 1998 in 26 states and a number of large cities. In 1998, California imposed a comprehensive smoking ban for all indoor workplaces, including restaurants and bars. Delaware followed suit in 2002, and in 2003, Connecticut, Maine, New York, and Florida passed similar comprehensive bans, as did the cities of Boston and Dallas. Since then, Arizona, Arkansas, Colorado, the District of Columbia, Hawaii, Illinois, Louisiana, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Montana, Nevada, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New Mexico, Ohio, Oregon, Rhode Island, Tennessee, Utah, Vermont, Washington, and Puerto Rico established similar bans, as did the cities of Baltimore, Chicago, Houston, and Philadelphia. The New Mexico, Washington State and Chicago restrictions are stronger than those in other states as they include a ban on outdoor smoking within 25 feet of the entrances of restaurants and other public places. It is expected that these restrictions will continue to proliferate. For example, in September 2007, two states, Michigan and Wisconsin, were considering legislation which would enact comprehensive bans.

The American Nonsmokers' Rights Foundation documents clean indoor air ordinances by local governments throughout the U.S. As of October 1, 2007, there were 2,650 municipalities with local laws that

restrict where smoking is allowed, including 1,109 municipalities that restrict smoking in one or more outdoor areas. Of these, 507 local governments required workplaces to be 100% smoke-free, and 100% smoke-free conditions were required for restaurants by 461 governments, and for bars by 344. The number of such ordinances grew rapidly beginning in the 1980s, from less than 200 in 1985 to over 1,000 by 1993, and 1,500 by 2001. The ordinances completely restricting smoking in restaurants and bars have generally appeared in the past decade. In 1993 only 13 municipalities prohibited all smoking in restaurants, and 6 in bars. These numbers grew to 49 for restaurants and 32 for bars in 1998, and doubled again by 2001, to 100 and 74, respectively.

The first extensive outdoor smoking restrictions were instituted in March 2006 in Calabasas, California. The City of Oakland and the California municipalities of Belmont, Beverly Hills, Dublin, El Cajon, Emeryville and Santa Monica have also established extensive outdoor restrictions, as have Davis County and the City of Murray in Utah. Burbank, California, is expected to follow suit. In the most restrictive version to date, the Belmont City Council has approved an ordinance which restricts smoking anywhere in the city except for single-family detached homes. Many landlords and condominium associations have also established smoke-free apartment policies. The Massachusetts Department of Public Health is conducting a survey of landlords, tenants, and condominium associations to assess the feasibility of making residences smoke-free.

In the past year, San Diego City and Los Angeles, Santa Cruz and San Mateo Counties have banned smoking at beaches and parks, joining over 30 other Southern California cities in prohibiting smoking on the beach. The beach restrictions may soon become statewide. Chicago approved beach and parkground smoking restrictions in October 2007. Nassau County, New York and Volusia County, Florida are also considering park and beach bans. At least 50 colleges nationwide now prohibit smoking everywhere on campus. California and Nevada have banned smoking in state prisons. Arkansas, Louisiana, Puerto Rico, Texas and Rockland County, New York, now prohibit smoking in a car where there are children present, and similar legislation has been proposed in Arizona, California, Connecticut, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Massachusetts, Montana, New Jersey, New York, Oregon, Rhode Island, South Carolina, Utah, West Virginia, and Bangor, Maine.

In June 2006, the Office of the Surgeon General released a report, "The Health Consequences of Involuntary Exposure to Tobacco Smoke." It is a comprehensive review of health effects of involuntary exposure to tobacco smoke. It concludes definitively that secondhand smoke causes disease and adverse respiratory effects. It also concludes that policies creating completely smoke-free environments are the most economical and efficient approaches to providing protection to non-smokers. On September 18, 2007, the Office of the Surgeon General released the report, "Children and Secondhand Smoke Exposure," which concludes that many children are exposed to secondhand smoke in the home and that establishing a completely smoke-free home is the only way to eliminate secondhand smoke exposure in that setting. These reports are expected to strengthen arguments in favor of further smoking restrictions across the country. Further, the California Environmental Protection Agency Air Resources Board declared environmental tobacco smoke to be a toxic air contaminant in 2006.

The attorneys general of the Settling States have obtained agreements from Philip Morris, Reynolds Tobacco and B&W that they will remove product advertisements from various magazines that are circulated in schools for educational purposes.

No assurance can be given that future federal or state legislation or administrative regulations will not seek to further regulate, restrict or discourage the manufacture, sale and use of cigarettes. Excise tax increases and other legislative or regulatory measures could severely increase the cost of cigarettes, limit or prohibit the sale of cigarettes, make cigarettes less appealing to smokers or reduce the addictive qualities of cigarettes. As a result of these types of initiatives and other measures, the overall consumption of cigarettes nationwide may decrease materially more than forecasted in the Global Insight Consumption Report and thereby could have a material adverse effect on (1) the payments by PMs under the MSA and the amounts of Pledged Tobacco

Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions; or (2) the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds and, as a result, lead to a decrease in the market value and/or liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds, which in certain circumstances, could lead to a complete loss of a Bondholder's investment. See "CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY — Regulatory Issues" herein.

### **Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA**

*Adjustments to MSA Payments.* The MSA provides that the amounts payable by the PMs are subject to numerous adjustments, offsets and recalculations, some of which may be material. Such adjustments, offsets and recalculations could reduce the Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority below the respective amounts required to pay Bond Obligations of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds. The State has advised the Authority that both the Settling States and one or more of the PMs are disputing or have disputed the calculations of some of the Initial Payments for the years 2000 through 2003, and some Annual Payments for the years 2000 through 2007. No assurance can be given as to the magnitude of the adjustments, if any, that may result upon resolution of those disputes. Any such adjustments could trigger the Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments. For additional information regarding the MSA and the payment adjustments, see "–NPM Adjustment" in this subsection and "SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT" herein.

The assumptions used to project Collections (the source of the payments on the Series 2007 Bonds) are based on the premise that certain adjustments will occur as set forth under "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION" herein. Actual adjustments could be materially different from what has been assumed and described herein.

*Growth of NPM Market Share and Other Factors.* The assumptions used to project Collections and structure the Series 2007 Bonds contemplate declining consumption of cigarettes in the United States combined with a static relative market share of 5.14%\* for the NPMs. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION" herein. Should the forecasted decline in consumption occur, but be accompanied by a material increase in the relative aggregate market share of the NPMs, shipments by PMs would decline at a rate greater than the decline in consumption. This would result in greater reductions of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments by the PMs due to application of the Volume Adjustment, even for Settling States (including the State) that have adopted enforceable Qualifying Statutes and are diligently enforcing such statutes and are thus exempt from the NPM Adjustment. One SPM has introduced a cigarette with reportedly no nicotine. If consumers used the product to quit smoking, it could reduce the size of the cigarette market. The capital costs required to establish a profitable cigarette manufacturing facility are relatively low and new cigarette manufacturers, whether SPMs or NPMs, are less likely than OPMs to be subject to frequent litigation.

The Model Statute in its original form had required each NPM to make escrow deposits approximately in the amount that the NPM would have had to pay had it been a PM, but entitled the NPM to a release, from each Settling State in which the NPM had made an escrow deposit, of the amount by which the escrow deposit exceeds that Settling State's allocable share of the total payments that the NPM would have been required to make had it been a PM. At least 44 Settling States, including the State, have enacted, and other states are considering enacting, legislation that amends this provision in their Model/Qualifying Statutes, by eliminating the reference to the allocable share and limiting the possible release an NPM may obtain to the excess above the total payment that the NPM would have paid had it been a PM (so called "**Allocable Share Release Legislation**"). The National Association of Attorneys General ("**NAAG**") has endorsed these legislative efforts. A majority of the PMs, including all OPMs, have indicated their agreement in writing that in the event

---

\* The aggregate market share of NPMs utilized in the bond structuring assumptions may differ materially from the market share information utilized by the MSA Auditor when calculating the NPM adjustments.

a Settling State enacts legislation substantially in the form of the Allocable Share Release Legislation, such Settling State's previously enacted Model Statute or Qualifying Statute will continue to constitute a Model Statute or Qualifying Statute within the meaning of the MSA. Following a challenge by NPMs, the District Court for the Southern District of New York in September 2004 enjoined New York from enforcing its Allocable Share Release Legislation. NPMs are also currently challenging Allocable Share Release Legislation in the states of Arkansas, California, Kansas, Kentucky, Louisiana, Oklahoma and Tennessee. It is possible that NPMs will challenge such legislation in other states. See “— Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” herein. To the extent either (i) that other states do not enact or enforce Allocable Share Release Legislation or (ii) that a state's Allocable Share Release Legislation is invalidated, NPMs could concentrate sales in such states to take advantage of the absence of Allocable Share Release Legislation by limiting the amount of its escrow payment obligations to only a fraction of the payment it would have been required to make had it been a PM. Because the price of cigarettes affects consumption, NPM cost advantage is one of the factors that has resulted and could continue to result in increases in market share for the NPMs.

A significant loss of market share by PMs to NPMs could have a material adverse effect on (1) the payments by PMs under the MSA and the amounts of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions; or (2) the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Adjustments to Payments” and “THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” herein.

#### *NPM Adjustment*

Description of the NPM Adjustment. The NPM Adjustment, measured by domestic sales of cigarettes by NPMs, operates in certain circumstances to reduce the payments of the PMs under the MSA in the event of losses in market share to NPMs during a calendar year as a result of the MSA. Three conditions must be met in order to trigger an NPM Adjustment for one or more Settling States: (1) a Market Share Loss (as defined in the MSA) for the applicable year must exist, which means that the aggregate market share of the PMs in any year must fall more than 2% below the aggregate market share held by those same PMs in 1997 (a condition that has existed in every year since 2000), (2) a nationally recognized firm of economic consultants must determine that the disadvantages experienced as a result of the provisions of the MSA were a significant factor contributing to the market share loss for the year in question, and (3) the Settling States in question must be proven to have not diligently enforced their Model Statutes.\* The Settling States and the PMs selected The Brattle Group in May 2004 as the current economic consultants responsible for making the significant factor determinations.

---

\* The NPM Adjustment does not apply at all if the number of cigarettes shipped in or to the United States in the year prior to the year in which the payment is due by all manufacturers that were PMs prior to December 7, 1998 exceeds the number of cigarettes shipped in or to the United States by all such PMs in 1997.

Application of the NPM Adjustment. The entire NPM Adjustment is ultimately applied to a subsequent year's Annual Payment and Strategic Contribution Payment due to those Settling States: (1) that have been proven to have not diligently enforced their Model Statutes throughout the year; or (2) that have enacted a Model Statute that is declared invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction. The 1997 market share percentage for the PMs, less 2%, is defined in the MSA as the "**Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share.**" If the PMs' actual aggregate market share is between 0% and 16⅔% less than the Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share, the amounts paid by the PMs would be decreased by three times the percentage decrease in the PMs' actual aggregate market share. If, however, the PMs' market share loss is greater than 16⅔%, then the NPM Adjustment will equal 50% plus an amount determined by formula as set forth in the footnote below.\*

The MSA further provides that in no event shall the amount of an NPM Adjustment applied to any Settling State in any given year exceed the amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be received by such Settling State in such year.

Regardless of how the NPM Adjustment is calculated, it is always subtracted from the total Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments due from the PMs and then ultimately allocated on a Pro Rata (as defined in the MSA) basis only among those Settling States that have been proven (i) to have not diligently enforced their Model Statutes or (ii) to have enacted a Model Statute that is declared invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction.\*\* However, the practical effect of a decision by a PM to claim an NPM Adjustment for a given year and pay its portion of the amount of such claimed NPM Adjustment into the Disputed Payments Account, or withhold payment of such amount, would be to reduce the payments to all Settling States on a pro rata basis until, for any particular Settling State, a resolution is reached regarding the diligent enforcement dispute for such state for such year or until, for all Settling States, a global settlement is reached for all such disputes for such year. If the PMs make a claim for an NPM Adjustment for any particular year and the State is determined to be one of a few states (or the only state) not to have diligently enforced its Model Statute or Qualifying Statute in such year, the amount of the NPM Adjustment applied to the State in the year following such determination could be as great as the amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments that would otherwise have been received by the State in such year and would have a material adverse effect on the amounts of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to make payments with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds, including Turbo Redemptions and to pay Principal and Sinking Fund Installments of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds in such year.

Settlement of Calendar 1999 through 2002 NPM Adjustment Claims. In June 2003, the OPMs and the Settling States settled all NPM Adjustment claims for the years 1999 through 2002, subject, however, under limited circumstances, to the reinstatement of an OPM's right to an NPM Adjustment for the years 2001 and 2002. In connection therewith, the OPMs and the Settling States agreed prospectively that OPMs claiming an NPM Adjustment for any year will not make such a deposit into the Disputed Payments Account or withhold payment with respect thereto unless and until the selected economic consultants determine that the disadvantages of the MSA were a significant factor contributing to the market share loss giving rise to the alleged NPM Adjustment. If the selected economic consultants make such a "significant factor" determination regarding a year for which one or more OPMs have claimed an NPM Adjustment, such OPMs may either make a deposit into the Disputed Payments Account or withhold payment reflecting the claimed NPM

---

\* If the aggregate market share loss from the Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Share is greater than 16⅔%, the NPM Adjustment will be calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPM Adjustment} &= 50\% + \\ &[50\% / (\text{Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share} - 16\frac{2}{3}\%)] \\ &\times [\text{market share loss} - 16\frac{2}{3}\%] \end{aligned}$$

\*\* If a court of competent jurisdiction declares a Settling States' Model Statute to be invalid or unenforceable, then the NPM Adjustment for such State is limited to no more, on a yearly basis, than 65% of the amount of such state's allocated payment.

Adjustment. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Adjustments to Payments” herein.

The State has indicated that the 2005 Annual Payments by the OPMs were made without a diversion of any portion thereof into the Disputed Payments Account for the Settling States. According to the State, however, eleven SPMs paid approximately \$84 million of their 2005 Annual Payments into the Disputed Payments Account for the Settling States as a result of alleged disputes, including disputes related to NPM Adjustments. Unlike the OPMs, the SPMs had not agreed, as part of their settlement of calendar 1999 through 2002 NPM Adjustment Claims, to await the finding of a significant factor determination before taking such action. Of this \$84 million, approximately \$44 million represented payments by six SPMs relating to cigarettes sold in 2003. Following litigation brought by the State of New York challenging such actions, the six SPMs released such \$44 million to the Settling States. Such release of money, however, does not represent final settlement of any alleged disputes. In addition, more than \$18 million due from various SPMs was withheld on April 15, 2005.

Significant Factor Determination for Calendar Year 2003. On March 27, 2006, The Brattle Group made its final determination, which final determination is publicly available, that the disadvantages experienced as a result of the MSA were a significant factor contributing to the Market Share Loss for calendar year 2003. The MSA Auditor had previously determined that the Market Share Loss in 2003 was 5.95%, reflecting the difference between the PMs’ 99.58% 1997 market share and their 91.63% 2003 market share less 2%. Of the total 7.95% differential, The Brattle Group determined that 3% to 3.5% was attributable to the MSA and then compared 3% to 3.5% to 7.95% in making its significant factor determination. In a statement dated March 28, 2006, the Attorneys General of Iowa and Idaho, the co-chairs of the NAAG Tobacco Committee, stated, among other things, that the Settling States believe it would not be appropriate for a PM to withhold any portion of the April 2006 Annual Payment. According to the statement, the Settling States believe that the PMs must still prove to a court that the Settling States have not diligently enforced their Model Statutes and also believe that every Settling State will be found to have diligently enforced its Model Statute in 2003. It has been reported, however, that the general counsel of Reynolds American stated that he believes not all states were diligently enforcing their Model Statutes.

Effect of Calendar 2003 NPM Adjustment Claim on 2006 Annual Payments. Philip Morris and Reynolds American believe that the size of the NPM Adjustment attributable to 2003 is approximately \$1.2 billion (representing a \$1.14 billion NPM Adjustment of approximately 17.85% of the 2004 Annual Payment, with interest). On March 31, 2006, Philip Morris made its full \$3.4 billion payment, even though it believes that payment should eventually be subject to downward adjustment by operation of the calendar 2003 NPM Adjustment, and it intends to continue to negotiate with the Settling States’ Attorneys General for, and reserved its right to claim, a reduction of its payment. Lorillard paid approximately \$558 million of its 2006 Annual Payment on March 31, 2006 and deposited the balance of the 2006 Annual Payment, \$108 million, into the Disputed Payments Account pending final non-appealable resolution of the diligent enforcement issue with respect to 2003. Additionally, Reynolds American paid approximately \$2.016 billion of its Annual Payment obligation for 2006, of which \$647 million was deposited in the Disputed Payment Account pending resolution of the diligent enforcement issue in 2003. According to the co-chairs of the NAAG Tobacco Committee, in a statement released on April 18, 2006, the Annual Payments paid by Lorillard and Reynolds American to the Settling States constitute about 82% of the amount that was due. The three SPMs from whom the largest payments were due made substantial payments. However, one of the three paid a portion of its payment to the Disputed Payments Account, and the other two each withheld a portion of the payment due from them. A majority of the Settling States has given notice to the PMs of each such Settling State’s intent to commence enforcement proceedings under the MSA, compelling the PMs to make the 2006 Annual Payment without diminution for any NPM Adjustment so long as there has not yet been a final non-appealable resolution of the diligent enforcement issue for such Settling State for the year in question.

Vibo Corporation d/b/a General Tobacco, an SPM, paid \$96 million of its 2006 Annual Payment in April 2006 and paid the balance, \$11.5 million, in June 2006. General Tobacco reportedly maintains that it is

entitled to a reduction based on the market share loss it experienced after joining the MSA, but has elected to make the full payments pending final adjudication regarding the actual final payments due.

In their April 18, 2006 statement, the co-chairs of the NAAG Tobacco Committee restated that the Settling States believe that no NPM Adjustment would be found to apply and, thus, the Settling States are entitled to receive the full payment due under the MSA. They stated that each Settling State has enacted a Model Statute, that the Settling States all believe they have diligently enforced their Model Statute, and that they will ultimately receive the money in dispute. The statement further stated that the issues of diligent enforcement are not subject to arbitration and will be litigated in the courts of each Settling State. Many of the Settling States (including the State) have initiated legal action in their state courts to ensure full payment. On September 13, 2006, Reynolds American and certain other PMs sent letters to the Settling States that had not yet objected to arbitration of the NPM Adjustment or that had not yet filed legal proceedings relating to the dispute regarding a claimed NPM Adjustment for 2003 in their respective state courts. These letters stated that unless the Settling States indicated otherwise, it would be assumed that these Settling States would not object to such arbitration. All but one of the Settling States that received these letters responded that they would not agree to submit the dispute to arbitration and would oppose any effort to compel arbitration of the dispute. PMs have filed motions in the courts of each of these Settling States (except certain of the Territories) to compel arbitration.

Altria has reported that 38 states have instituted legal proceedings in their respective state courts against the PMs. They each claim that they diligently enforced their Qualifying Statute and request that the respective court enter a declaratory order finding that the 2006 Annual Payment is not subject to a 2003 NPM Adjustment, and that the PMs are not entitled to withhold or pay into the Disputed Payments Account any portion of the 2006 Annual Payment. They also assert that in June 2003, the OPMs unconditionally released the Settling States from all claims that they may have with respect to cigarettes sold or shipped from 1999 through 2002. As previously noted, the OPMs and the Settling States entered into agreements that resolved a variety of disputes relating to cigarette sales and MSA payments from 1999 through 2002. The Settling States maintain that, since an NPM Adjustment for 2003 would be based upon cigarettes sold or shipped in 2002, the release in the June 2003 agreements bars the OPMs from claiming an NPM Adjustment for 2003.

Calendar 2004 NPM Adjustment. In April 2006, the OPMs initiated NPM Adjustment proceedings seeking a downward adjustment of their annual payments under the MSA for 2004. It has been reported that The Brattle Group rendered its final determination on February 12, 2007 to the effect that the disadvantages experienced as a result of the MSA were a “significant factor” contributing to the Market Share Loss for calendar year 2004. Each Settling State may nonetheless avoid a downward adjustment to its share of the PMs’ annual payment for 2004 if it establishes that it diligently enforced a qualifying escrow statute during the entirety of 2004. Any downward adjustment is then potentially re-allocated to states that do not establish such diligent enforcement. It has been reported that the calendar year 2004 NPM Adjustment for the OPMs is approximately \$1.14 billion. There is no certainty that the PMs will ultimately receive any adjustment as a result of these proceedings. If the PMs do receive such an adjustment, the adjustment may be applied as a credit against future MSA payments and would be allocated among the PMs pursuant to the MSA’s provisions for allocation of the NPM Adjustment among the PMs. On March 30, 2007, Philip Morris reported that it made its full \$3.5 billion payment, which amount includes approximately \$400 million that Philip Morris disputes it owes by operation of the calendar 2004 NPM Adjustment. Philip Morris stated that it hoped that its full payment will facilitate an expeditious resolution of NPM Adjustment disputes, whether by settlement or by arbitration. Reynolds American and Lorillard, on the other hand, collectively paid approximately \$672 million of their aggregate 2007 annual payment into the Disputed Payments Account based on a claim of entitlement to an NPM Adjustment for 2004.

Calendar 2005 NPM Adjustment. Altria has reported that it is participating in an NPM Adjustment proceeding before The Brattle Group to determine whether the disadvantages of the MSA were a significant factor contributing to the PMs’ collective loss of market share in 2005. Altria has reported that The Brattle



Group is expected to render its final determination on the significant factor issue for 2005 some time in January 2008.

Resolution of Diligent Enforcement Disputes. As previously noted, any Settling State that adopts, maintains and diligently enforces its Qualifying Statute is exempt from the NPM Adjustment. The State has adopted the Model Statute (which is a Qualifying Statute under the MSA). No provision of the MSA, however, attempts to define what activities, if undertaken by a Settling State, would constitute diligent enforcement. The State's Attorney General's office has stated that the State has been and is diligently enforcing its Qualifying Statute.

Furthermore, the MSA does not explicitly state which party bears the burden of proving or disproving whether a Settling State has diligently enforced its Qualifying Statute or whether any diligent enforcement dispute would be resolved in state courts or through arbitration. As of June 8, 2007, 43 state courts (including the State) that have considered the issue of whether a diligent enforcement dispute should be resolved in state courts or through arbitration have held in favor of the arbitration process. Twenty-two states have final orders compelling arbitration and 21 states have orders to compel arbitration that are at various stages of appellate review, including writs and appeals. Some of these courts have suggested that such an arbitration proceeding should be before a single national panel. On June 7, 2007, the North Dakota Supreme Court reversed the decision of the lower court and ruled that a diligent enforcement dispute should be resolved through arbitration. On the other hand, on May 31, 2007, a Louisiana trial court has concluded that such a dispute is not subject to arbitration. Certain of these decisions, including in the State, are the subject of appeals and, because the time period for taking appeals has not yet expired in all cases, further appeals can be expected. The MSA provides that arbitration, if required by the MSA, will be governed by the United States Federal Arbitration Act. The decision of an arbitration panel under the Federal Arbitration Act may only be overturned under limited circumstances, including a showing of a manifest disregard of the law by the panel. At the present time, there are hearings pending in many other states regarding whether arbitration is the appropriate forum for these disputes. The Attorneys General of the Settling States, including the State, continue to believe that the court in each Settling State that retains continuing jurisdiction over the MSA should make the determination as to diligent enforcement of such state's Qualifying Statute. Regardless of the forum in which a diligent enforcement dispute is heard, no assurance can be given as to how long it will take to resolve such a dispute with finality.

Effect of Complementary Legislation. At least 45 of the Settling States, including the State, have passed legislation (often termed "**Complementary Legislation**") to further ensure that NPMs are making required escrow payments under the Qualifying Statutes. The State's Complementary Legislation provides that no person can sell, offer for sale or possess for sale in the State, cigarettes of a tobacco product manufacturer or a brand family which is not included on the directory published by the Attorney General of the State on that office's website. Such directory contains the list of the approved brands of each tobacco product manufacturer that has provided a current and accurate annual certification that it is either a PM or an NPM and that it is in full compliance with the State's Qualifying Statute. Such certification by the PM or NPM must state that the PM or NPM is in compliance with the State's statutory requirements, including if appropriate, with respect to quarterly installment payments. The State's administrative code allows the Attorney General to impose quarterly rather than annual filing requirements and payment obligations on certain NPMs, including those NPMs which are new, have extensive cigarette sales, or which the Attorney General reasonably believes might not make the required annual payment. No cigarette tax stamps may be affixed to the cigarettes of any tobacco product manufacturers that do not make such certification. In addition to any other penalties that may be imposed by law, a civil penalty can be imposed on any tobacco product manufacturer who files a false certification or any cigarette tax agent who affixes a cigarette tax stamp in violation of the State's Complementary Legislation and such cigarettes can be seized and are subject to forfeiture. The State has brought numerous enforcement actions against non-compliant NPMs.

All of the OPMs and other PMs have provided written assurances that the Settling States have no duty to enact Complementary Legislation, that the failure to enact such a legislation will not be used in determining

whether a Settling State has diligently enforced its Qualifying Statute pursuant to the terms of the MSA, and that the diligent enforcement obligations under the MSA shall not apply to the Complementary Legislation. In addition, the written assurances contain an agreement that the Complementary Legislation will not constitute an amendment to a Settling State's Qualifying Statute. However, a determination that a Settling State's Complementary Legislation is invalid may make enforcement of its Qualifying Statute more difficult, which could lead to an increase in the market share of NPMs, resulting in a reduction of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments under the MSA. The Qualifying Statutes and related Complementary Legislation in many Settling States have been challenged on various constitutional grounds, including claims based on preemption by the federal antitrust laws. See “— Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” herein. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — MSA Provisions Related to Model/Qualifying Statutes” herein and Appendix D — “DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE” attached hereto.

Conclusion. Future NPM Adjustment claims remain possible for calendar year 2005 and all future years. Philip Morris, Reynolds American and Lorillard have filed an NPM Adjustment claim for the year 2005. The Brattle Group has not made any final “significant factor” determinations for any year other than 2003 and 2004. In addition, the “diligent enforcement” exemption afforded a Settling State is based on actual enforcement efforts for the calendar year preceding each Annual Payment, and could be disputed by a PM even after the final resolution of a diligent enforcement dispute related to a prior year. If the other preconditions to an NPM Adjustment exist for a given year, disputes regarding diligent enforcement for such year may be expected if the market share of the NPMs results in an NPM Adjustment that, absent the protection of the Qualifying Statutes, would apply.

Future NPM Adjustments could be as large as, or larger than, the reported potential \$1.2 billion calendar 2003 NPM Adjustment and \$1.14 billion calendar 2004 NPM Adjustment. Although a Settling State that diligently enforces its Qualifying Statute is exempt from the NPM Adjustment, many procedural uncertainties, as described above, still remain regarding the resolution of a dispute regarding diligent enforcement. A decision by the PMs to pay the amount of a claimed NPM Adjustment into the Disputed Payments Account or to withhold payment of such an amount pending the resolution of the dispute could lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds and would have a material adverse effect on the amounts of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to make Turbo Redemptions and other payments on the Series 2007 Bonds during such period. Should a PM be determined with finality to be entitled to an NPM Adjustment in a future year due to an absence of diligent enforcement of the Qualifying Statute by the State, the application of the NPM Adjustment could lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds and would also have a material adverse effect on the amounts of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to make Turbo Redemptions and other payments on the Series 2007 Bonds in such future year. The structuring assumptions for the Series 2007 Bonds do not include any NPM Adjustments, nor do they include withholdings or Disputed Payment Account deposits relating to PM claims of entitlement to NPM Adjustments. See “BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION.” Amounts deposited into the Disputed Payments Account in 2005 and 2006 are not 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts and, if subsequently released to the State, are not pledged to the payment of the Bonds.

With regard to NPM Adjustments, the State cannot comment on ongoing litigation, other than with reference to publicly filed documents or motions, or on the existence of settlement negotiations. Any settlement or amendment to the MSA by any Settling State or group of Settling States would only be effective as to those Settling States which chose to approve such settlement or amendment.

*Disputed or Recalculated Payments and Disputes under the Terms of the MSA.* Miscalculations or recalculations by the MSA Auditor or disputed calculations by any of the parties to the MSA, such as those described above under “NPM Adjustment,” have resulted and could in the future result in offsets to, or delays in disbursements of, payments to the Settling States pending resolution of the disputed item in accordance with

the provisions of the MSA. By way of example, on August 30, 2004, one of the SPMs (Liggett) announced that it had notified the attorneys general of 46 states that it intended to initiate proceedings against the attorneys general for violating the terms of the MSA. It alleged that the attorneys general violated its rights and the MSA by extending unauthorized favorable financial terms to Miami-based Vibo Corporation d/b/a General Tobacco when, on August 19, 2004, the attorneys general entered into an agreement with General Tobacco allowing it to become an SPM. General Tobacco imports discount cigarettes manufactured in Colombia, South America. In the notice sent to the attorneys general, Liggett indicated that it would seek to enforce the terms of the MSA, void the agreement with General Tobacco and enjoin the Settling States and NAAG from listing General Tobacco as a PM on their websites. On August 18, 2005, Liggett and an additional four SPMs filed a motion to enforce the MSA in Kentucky. The Commonwealth of Kentucky filed its opposition, and the SPMs replied. General Tobacco intervened in the case and filed its opposition to the other SPMs' motion. The SPMs replied, and a hearing was held on the issue on November 8, 2005. On January 26, 2006 the court upheld the agreement by which General Tobacco became an SPM. An appeal was filed to the Kentucky Court of Appeals on February 14, 2006. The Kentucky Court of Appeals, on August 24, 2007, upheld a lower court decision denying a motion that sought to void the 2004 Agreement that permitted General Tobacco to join the MSA.

Disputes concerning payments and their calculations may be raised up to four years after the respective Payment Due Date (as defined in the MSA). The resolution of disputed payments may result in the application of an offset against subsequent Annual Payments or Strategic Contribution Payments. The diversion of disputed payments to the Disputed Payments Account, the withholding of all or a portion of any disputed amounts or the application of offsets against future payments could all have a material adverse effect on: (1) the payments by the PMs under the MSA and amounts of Pledged Tobacco Receipts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions; or (2) the secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds, and, as a result, lead to a decrease in the market value and/or the liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds. The structuring assumptions for the Series 2007 Bonds do not factor in an offset for miscalculated or disputed payments. See "SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT—Adjustments to Payments—*Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments*" herein.

On June 3, 2005, the State of California filed an application in San Diego County Superior Court for an enforcement order against Bekenton USA, Inc. ("**Bekenton**"), to compel Bekenton to comply with its full payment obligations under the MSA. On June 29, 2005, Bekenton filed a motion to file a suit, alleging that the State of California breached the Most Favored Nation ("**MFN**") provisions of the MSA by allowing three other SPMs (Farmer's Tobacco Co., General Tobacco, and Premier Manufacturing Incorporated) to join the MSA under more favorable terms. In a tentative ruling dated November 1, 2005, the Superior Court granted Bekenton's motion to file suit based on this allegation. In its initial complaint, Bekenton had further alleged that (a) the state's agreements with Farmer's Tobacco, General Tobacco and Premier (the "**Three Agreements**"), which required them to make certain back payments (as required by the MSA) as a precondition to joining the MSA, permitted such back payments to be made on an extended time frame and (b) this time frame effectively "relieved" Farmer's Tobacco, General Tobacco and Premier of certain payment obligations as PMs. Bekenton claimed that it was entitled to a similar relief under another clause of the MFN (the "**Relief Clause**"), which requires that if any PM is relieved of a payment obligation, such relief becomes applicable to all of the PMs. In the November 1, 2005 tentative ruling, the Superior Court denied Bekenton's motion to file suit under the Relief Clause, ruling that (1) because the Three Agreements were preconditions to allowing Farmer's Tobacco, General Tobacco and Premier to become PMs, these companies were not "PMs" for purposes of the Relief Clause and (2) even if Farmer's Tobacco, General Tobacco and Premier are PMs for purposes of the Relief Clause, the payment schedules in the Three Agreements did not relieve them of any obligations. On March 15, 2006, the Superior Court adopted the November 1, 2005 tentative ruling as its final order.

Bekenton is involved in similar disputes in Kentucky and Iowa. In the Kentucky case, Bekenton failed to make its full MSA payment of approximately \$7.7 million in April 2005, and, instead, paid only

\$198,000, less than 3% of the total payment due. The Commonwealth of Kentucky commenced an action against Bekenton in which Bekenton claimed that under the Relief Clause it was entitled to reduce its payment as a consequence of Kentucky's agreement with General Tobacco, which was similar to the agreement described above between the State of California and General Tobacco. On April 14, 2006, the court dismissed Bekenton's claim for a reduction, holding that the Relief Clause was not applicable since the General Tobacco agreement did not relieve General Tobacco of any payment obligations.

In the Iowa case, the State of Iowa sought to de-list Bekenton as a PM for failing to comply with the MSA payment provisions and to prohibit Bekenton from doing business in Iowa for failing to comply with the escrow payment provisions of the Iowa Qualifying Statute. On August 11, 2005 an Iowa state court, finding that the MSA itself provides procedures for the resolution of disputes regarding MSA payments and that such procedures should be followed in this case, enjoined Iowa from "de-listing" Bekenton, permitting Bekenton to continue selling cigarettes in Iowa.

In 2005, Bekenton also filed for bankruptcy relief. See "RISK FACTORS — Bankruptcy of PMs May Delay, Reduce or Eliminate Payments" for a discussion of the effects of bankruptcy.

*"Nicotine-Free" Cigarettes.* The MSA contemplates that the manufacturers of cigarettes will be either a PM or an NPM. The term "**cigarette**" is defined in the MSA to mean any product that contains tobacco and nicotine, is intended to be burned and is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette and includes "roll-your-own" tobacco. Should a manufacturer develop a "nicotine-free" tobacco product (intended to be burned and is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette), such manufacturer would not be a manufacturer for purposes of the MSA. Sales of such a product could cause a reduction in Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments. In addition, if consumers used the product to quit smoking, it could reduce the size of the cigarette market. The capital costs required to establish a profitable cigarette manufacturing facility are relatively low and new cigarette manufacturers are less likely to be subject to frequent litigation than OPMs. Furthermore, the Qualifying Statutes would not cover a manufacturer of such "nicotine-free" products and such manufacturer would not be required to make escrow deposits in the same manner as the NPMs are so required. Vector Group has introduced QUEST, a tobacco product that is reportedly nicotine-free.

### **Other Risks Relating to the MSA and Related Statutes**

*Severability.* Most of the major provisions of the MSA are not severable. If a court materially modifies, renders unenforceable or finds unlawful any non-severable provision, the attorneys general of the Settling States and the OPMs are required by the MSA to attempt to negotiate substitute terms. However, if any OPM does not agree to the substitute terms, the MSA terminates in all Settling States affected by the court's ruling. See "SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Severability."

*Amendments, Waivers and Termination.* As a settlement agreement between the PMs and the Settling States, the MSA is subject to amendment in accordance with its terms, and may be terminated upon consent of the parties thereto. Parties to the MSA, including the State, may waive the performance provisions of the MSA. The Authority is not a party to the MSA; accordingly, the Authority has no direct rights to challenge any such amendment, waiver or termination of the MSA. While the economic interests of the State and the Bondholders will presumably be the same in many circumstances, no assurance can be given that such an amendment, waiver or termination of the MSA would not have a material adverse effect on the Bondholders. See "SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Amendments and Waivers."

*Reliance on State Enforcement of the MSA and State Impairment.* The State may not convey and has not conveyed to the Authority or the Bondholders any right to enforce the terms of the MSA. Pursuant to its terms, the MSA, as it relates to the State, can only be enforced by the State. Although the State is entitled to an allocable share of 5.0375098% of each Annual Payment and an allocable share of 2.7819695% of each Strategic Contribution Payment under the MSA and the State has covenanted in the 2007 Sale Agreement to

enforce the provisions of the MSA requiring the payment of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts and the Authority's rights to receive the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts, no assurance can be given that the State will enforce any particular provision of the MSA. Failure by the State to enforce the MSA may have a material adverse effect on the Bondholders. It is possible that the State could attempt to claim some or all of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts for itself or otherwise interfere with the security for the Bonds. In that event, the Bondholders, the Trustee or the Authority may assert claims based on contractual, fiduciary or constitutional rights, but no prediction can be made as to the disposition of such claims. See "CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS."

### **Bankruptcy of PMs May Delay, Reduce or Eliminate Payments**

The only significant source of payment for the Series 2007 Bonds (other than amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account and interest earnings) is the Pledged Tobacco Receipts that are paid by the PMs. Therefore, if one or more PMs were to become a debtor in a case under Title 11 of the United States Code (the "**Bankruptcy Code**"), there could be delays in or reductions or elimination of payments on the Series 2007 Bonds, and Bondholders could incur losses on their investments. Philip Morris, by way of example, prior to the resolution of the dispute in the *Price* case in Illinois in the spring of 2003 over the size of the required appeal bond, had publicly stated that it would not have been possible for it to post the \$12 billion bond initially ordered by the trial judge. Philip Morris also publicly stated at that time that there was a risk that immediate enforcement of the judgment would force a bankruptcy. Certain SPMs, including Cutting Edge Enterprises, Inc. and Carolina Tobacco Company have filed for bankruptcy relief. In the case of *Cutting Edge Enterprises Inc. v. National Association of Attorneys General*, the Attorney General of the State was a defendant along with other state attorneys general in an action in federal court in the Southern District of New York where Cutting Edge, a PM, sought to cause the National Association of Attorneys General and the respective states to list the PM's brands which had been purchased from a NPM on their respective web sites, alleging that their refusal to do so violates federal antitrust laws, the Commerce Clause, and laws prohibiting tortious interference with business relations. The court dismissed this case on March 6, 2007 for lack of personal jurisdiction and the appeal period has expired. Having filed a voluntary petition in bankruptcy on April 16, 2007, Cutting Edge as debtor-in-possession has filed similar claims that are now pending against the same defendants in the U.S. Bankruptcy Court for the Middle District of North Carolina. In the bankruptcy case of Carolina Tobacco Company, the court temporarily stayed the enforcement of the State's claims against Carolina Tobacco Company and required that it not be eliminated from the State Attorney General's list of approved manufacturers. The bankruptcy court has given Carolina Tobacco Company an extension of time to make its past due and current NPM Payments.

In the event of the bankruptcy of a PM, unless approval of the bankruptcy court is obtained, the automatic stay provisions of the Bankruptcy Code could prevent any action by the State, the Authority, the Trustee, the Bondholders, or the beneficial owners of the Bonds to collect any Pledged Tobacco Receipts or any other amounts owing by the bankrupt PM. In addition, even if the bankrupt PM wanted to continue to make required payments to the State under the MSA, it could be prohibited as a matter of law from making such payments. In particular, if it were to be determined that the MSA was not an "executory contract" under the Bankruptcy Code, then the PM may be unable to make such payments. If the MSA is determined in a bankruptcy case to be an "executory contract" under the Bankruptcy Code, the bankrupt PM may be able to repudiate the MSA and stop making payments under it. Furthermore, payments previously made to the Bondholders and the beneficial owners of the Bonds could be avoided as preferential payments, so that the Bondholders and the beneficial owners of the Bonds would be required to return such payments to the bankrupt PM. Also, the bankrupt PM may have the power to alter the terms of its payment obligations under the MSA without the consent, and even over the objection of the State, the Authority, the Trustee, the Bondholders, or the beneficial owners of the Bonds. Finally, while there are provisions of the MSA that purport to deal with the situation when a PM goes into bankruptcy (see "SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT- Termination of Agreement"), such provisions may be unenforceable. There may be other possible effects of a bankruptcy of a PM that could result in delays or reductions or elimination of payments on the Series 2007 Bonds. Regardless of any specific adverse determination in a PM bankruptcy

proceeding, the fact of a PM bankruptcy proceeding could have an adverse effect on the liquidity or value of the Series 2007 Bonds. For a further discussion of certain bankruptcy issues, see “CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS” herein.

### **Uncertainty as to Timing of Turbo Redemptions**

No assurance can be given as to the timing of amortization of the Series 2007 Bonds. A certain level of payments due under the MSA has been forecast based on various assumptions, including among others, domestic cigarette consumption levels as set forth in the Global Insight Base Case Consumption Forecast and adjustments to the payments by the PMs as required by the terms of the MSA and the Consent Decree. These assumptions, which were used to schedule interest on, Accreted Values, Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities of, the Series 2007 Bonds, as well as provide expectations of Turbo Redemptions of the Series 2007 Bonds from Surplus Collections are discussed in “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION.” No assurance can be given that these assumptions will be realized. Actual results could and likely will vary from such assumptions. Such variance could be material and could affect the level of payments due under the MSA. Any material reduction in Pledged Tobacco Receipts or earnings on the Pledged Accounts would impair the Surplus Collections available to make Turbo Redemptions of the Series 2007 Bonds and extend the average life of the Series 2007 Bonds. On the other hand, material increases would generate more Surplus Collections to make Turbo Redemptions and shorten the average life of the Series 2007 Bonds. In addition, future increases in the rate of inflation above 3% per annum could, in the absence of other factors, materially shorten the average lives of the Series 2007 Bonds.

The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds only address the payment of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds when due and the payment of Principal of the Series 2007 Bonds by their respective Maturity Dates. Holders of the Series 2007 Bonds bear the reinvestment risk from faster than expected amortization, as well as the extension risk from slower than expected amortization of the Series 2007 Bonds.

### **Limited Resources of the Authority**

The Bonds are payable only from the Collateral. In the event that the Collateral has been exhausted, no amounts will thereafter be paid on the Bonds. The Bonds are not obligations of the State, and no recourse may be had to the State for payment of amounts owing on the Bonds. Investors in the Series 2007 Bonds must look solely to the Collateral for repayment of their investment. The Authority’s only source of funds for payments on the Bonds is the Collateral.

### **Limited Remedies**

The Trustee is limited under the terms of the 2007 Sale Agreement to enforcing the terms of such agreement and to receiving the Pledged Tobacco Receipts and applying them in accordance with the Indenture. If an Event of Default occurs, the Trustee cannot sell or foreclose on the Pledged Tobacco Receipts or its rights under the 2007 Sale Agreement. In any suit against the State or the Authority, the State or Authority may seek to assert statutory or constitutional defenses and limitations on remedies and payment of claims.

### **Limited Liquidity of the Series 2007 Bonds; Price Volatility**

There is currently a limited secondary market for securities such as the Series 2007 Bonds. The Underwriters are under no obligation to make a secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds. There can be no assurance that a secondary market for the Series 2007 Bonds will develop, or if a secondary market does develop, that it will provide Bondholders with liquidity or that it will continue for the life of the Series 2007 Bonds. Tobacco settlement securitization bonds generally have also exhibited greater price volatility than traditional municipal bonds. Any purchaser of the Series 2007 Bonds must be prepared to hold such securities for an indefinite period of time or until final redemption of such securities.

## **Limited Nature of Ratings; Reduction, Suspension or Withdrawal of a Rating**

Any rating assigned to the Series 2007 Bonds by a Rating Agency will reflect such Rating Agency's assessment of the likelihood of the payment of interest when due on the Series 2007 Bonds and the payment of Principal of the Series 2007 Bonds by their respective Maturity Dates. Any such rating will not address the likelihood that the Turbo Redemptions will be made according to the Projected Turbo Schedule or the likelihood of payment of the Sinking Fund Installments when due. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds will not be a recommendation to purchase, hold or sell such Bonds and such rating will not address the marketability of such Bonds, any market price or suitability for a particular investor. There is no assurance that any rating will remain for any given period of time or that any rating will not be lowered, suspended or withdrawn entirely by a Rating Agency if, in such Rating Agency's judgment, circumstances so warrant based on factors prevailing at the time, including, but not limited to, the evaluation by such Rating Agency of the financial outlook for the tobacco industry. Any such reduction, suspension or withdrawal of a rating, if it were to occur, could adversely affect the availability of a market for, or the market price of, the Series 2007 Bonds.

Moody's currently indicates that its ratings on all tobacco settlement securitizations, including its ratings of the Series 2007A Bonds, are "on watch direction uncertain." S&P currently indicates that its ratings on all tobacco settlement securitizations, including its ratings of the Series 2007A Bonds, have a negative outlook. Fitch's view of the tobacco industry is a key factor in its ratings of tobacco settlement securitizations, including its ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds. Fitch's outlook on the unsecured credit profile of the tobacco industry is stable.

## **CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS**

*The following discussion summarizes some, but not all, of the possible legal issues that could affect the Series 2007 Bonds. The discussion does not address every possible legal challenge that could result in a decision that would cause the Pledged Tobacco Receipts to be reduced or eliminated. References in the discussion to various opinions of Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP are incomplete summaries of such opinions and are qualified in their entirety by reference to the actual opinions.*

### **Bankruptcy of a PM May Delay or Reduce Payments**

Because the only significant source of payment for the Series 2007 Bonds (other than amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account and interest earnings) is the Pledged Tobacco Receipts paid by the PMs, if one or more PMs were to become a debtor in a case under the Bankruptcy Code, there could be delays or reductions in or elimination of payments on the Series 2007 Bonds. See "RISK FACTORS — Bankruptcy of a PM May Delay, Reduce, or Eliminate Payments" herein.

In the event of a bankruptcy of a PM, the automatic stay provisions of the Bankruptcy Code could prevent (unless approval of the bankruptcy court was obtained) any action by the State, the Authority, the Trustee, the Bondholders, or the beneficial owners of the Bonds to collect any Pledged Tobacco Receipts or any other amounts owing by the bankrupt PM. In addition, even if the bankrupt PM wanted to continue making the required payments to the State pursuant to the MSA, it could be prohibited as a matter of law from making such payments. In particular, if it were to be determined that the MSA was not an "executory contract" under the Bankruptcy Code, then the PM may be unable to make such further payments. Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP will render an opinion to each Rating Agency that, subject to all the assumptions, qualifications, and limitations set forth therein, if an OPM were to become the debtor in a case under the Bankruptcy Code, and the matter were properly briefed and presented to a federal court with jurisdiction over such bankruptcy case, the court, exercising reasonable judgment after full consideration of all relevant factors, would hold that the MSA is an "executory contract" under Section 365 of the Bankruptcy Code. Certain of the assumptions contained in this opinion will be assumptions that certain facts or circumstances will exist or occur, and Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP cannot provide any assurance that such facts or circumstances will exist or occur as assumed in the opinion. This opinion will be based on an analysis of existing laws and court

decisions, and will cover certain matters not directly addressed by such authorities. There are no court decisions directly on point, there are court decisions that could be viewed as contrary to the conclusions expressed in the opinion, and the matter is not free from doubt. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that a particular court would not hold that the MSA is not an executory contract, thus resulting in delays or reductions in, or elimination of, payments on the Series 2007 Bonds.

If the MSA is an “executory contract” under the Bankruptcy Code, the bankrupt PM may be able to repudiate the MSA and stop making payments under it, thus resulting in delays or reductions in, or elimination of, payments on the Series 2007 Bonds.

Furthermore, payments previously made to the Bondholders and the beneficial owners of the Bonds could be avoided as preferential payments, so that the Bondholders and the beneficial owners of the Bonds would be required to return such payments to the bankrupt PM. Also, the bankrupt PM may have the power to alter the terms of its payment obligations under the MSA without the consent, and even over the objection, of the State, the Authority, the Trustee, the Bondholders or the beneficial owners of the Bonds. Finally, while there are provisions of the MSA that purport to deal with the situation when a PM goes into bankruptcy (see “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT- Termination of Agreement”), such provisions may be unenforceable. There may be other possible effects of a bankruptcy of a PM that could result in delays or reductions in, or elimination of, payments on the Series 2007 Bonds. Regardless of any specific adverse determination in a PM bankruptcy proceeding, the fact of a PM bankruptcy proceeding could have an adverse effect on the liquidity or value of the Series 2007 Bonds.

### **MSA Enforceability**

Most of the major provisions of the MSA are not severable. If a court materially modifies, renders unenforceable or finds unlawful any nonseverable provision, the attorneys general of the Settling States and the OPMs are required by the MSA to attempt to negotiate substitute terms. However, if any OPM does not agree to the substitute terms, the MSA would terminate in all Settling States affected by the court’s ruling. Even if substitute terms are agreed upon, payments under such terms may be less than payments under the MSA and could reduce the amount available to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds.

Certain cigarette manufacturers, cigarette importers, cigarette distributors, Native American tribes and smokers’ rights organizations have filed actions against some, and in certain cases all, of the signatories to the MSA alleging, among other things, that the MSA violates provisions of the United States Constitution, federal antitrust laws, federal civil rights laws, state constitutions, state consumer protection laws and unfair competition laws, which actions, if ultimately successful, could result in a determination that the MSA is void or unenforceable. The lawsuits seek, among other things, an injunction against one or more of the Settling States from collecting any money under the MSA and barring the PMs from collecting cigarette price increases related to the MSA or a determination that the MSA is void or unenforceable. To date, such challenges have not been ultimately successful, although four cases (*Grand River*, *Freedom Holdings*, *Xcaliber* and *A.B. Coker*) have survived pre-trial motions to dismiss and have proceeded to a stage of litigation where the ultimate outcome may be determined in part by findings of fact based on extrinsic evidence as to the operation and impact of the MSA and appeals are pending or still possible in certain other cases. The terms of the MSA are currently being challenged and may continue to be challenged in the future. A determination by a court that a non-severable provision of the MSA is void or voidable would, in the absence of an agreement to a substitute term as described above, result in the termination of the MSA in any Settling States affected by the court’s ruling. Accordingly, in the event of an adverse court ruling, Bondholders could incur a complete loss of their investment. See “RISK FACTORS — Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” herein.

In rendering the opinions described below, Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP considered the claims asserted in the federal and state actions described above under the caption “RISK FACTORS — Litigation



Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” that it believes are representative of the legal theories that an opponent of the MSA would advance in an attempt to invalidate the MSA. Subject to the assumptions and qualifications set forth below, Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP will render an opinion to each Rating Agency that, subject to all the assumptions, qualifications and limitations set forth therein, and although there can be no assurances that a court applying existing legal principles would not hold otherwise, a court applying existing legal principles to the facts would find the MSA to be a valid and enforceable agreement among the states and the tobacco companies who are parties thereto. This opinion as to the enforceability of the MSA and the obligations of the aforementioned signatories is also subject to the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, and other laws affecting creditors’ rights or remedies and general principles of equity, regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law.

### **Qualifying Statute Constitutionality**

The Qualifying Statutes and related legislation, like the MSA, have also been the subject of litigation in cases alleging that the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation violate certain provisions of the federal and state constitutions or are preempted by federal antitrust laws. The lawsuits seek, among other things, injunctions against the enforcement of the Qualifying Statutes and related legislation. To date such challenges have not been ultimately successful, although the enforcement of Allocable Share Release Amendments has been preliminarily enjoined in New York and certain other states. Appeals are pending or still possible in certain cases. The Qualifying Statutes and related legislation may also continue to be challenged in the future. Although a determination that the Qualifying Statute is unconstitutional would have no effect on the enforceability of the MSA, such a determination could have an adverse effect on payments to be made under the MSA if an NPM were to gain market share in the future and there occurred the requisite impact on the market share of PMs under the MSA. See “RISK FACTORS — Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” herein.

In rendering the opinion described below, Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP considered the claims asserted in the federal and state actions described above under the caption “RISK FACTORS - Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation” that it believes are representative of the legal theories that an opponent of the State’s Qualifying Statute would advance in an attempt to invalidate the State’s Qualifying Statute. Subject to the assumptions and qualifications set forth below, Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP will render an opinion to each Rating Agency to the effect that, subject to all the facts, assumptions and qualifications set forth therein, and although there can be no assurance that a court applying existing legal principles would not hold otherwise, if the matter were properly briefed and presented to a court, the court applying existing legal principles to the facts would find the State’s Qualifying Statute to be valid, enforceable and constitutional in all material respects. In rendering its opinion, Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP will rely upon a letter from counsel to the OPMs confirming that the OPMs would not dispute that the State’s Qualifying Statute constitutes a “model statute” under the MSA.

### **Limitations on Opinions of Counsel; No Assurance as to Outcome of Litigation**

A court’s decision regarding the matters upon which a lawyer is opining would be based on such court’s own analysis and interpretation of the factual evidence before it and of applicable legal principles. Thus, if a court reached a result different from that expressed in an opinion, such as that the MSA is void or voidable or that the State’s Qualifying Statute is unenforceable, it would not necessarily constitute reversible error or be inconsistent with that opinion. An opinion of counsel is not a prediction of what a particular court (including any appellate court) that reached the issue on the merits would hold, but, instead, is the opinion of such counsel as to the proper result to be reached by a court applying existing legal rules to the facts as properly found after appropriate briefing and argument and, in addition, is not a guarantee, warranty or representation, but rather reflects the informed professional judgment of such counsel as to specific questions of law. Opinions of counsel are not binding on any court or party to a court proceeding. The descriptions of the opinions set forth herein are summaries, do not purport to be complete and are qualified in their entirety by the opinions themselves.

## **Enforcement of Rights to Pledged Tobacco Receipts**

It is possible that the State could in the future attempt to claim some or all of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts for itself, or otherwise interfere with the security for the Series 2007 Bonds. In that event, the Series 2007 Bondholders, the Trustee, or the Authority, could assert claims based on contractual, fiduciary or constitutional rights, but no prediction can be made as to the disposition of such claims.

*Contractual Remedies.* The State, in the 2007 Sale Agreement, covenants and agrees with the Authority that it shall: (i) maintain statutory authority for, and cause to be collected and paid directly to the Authority or its assignee, the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (ii) enforce the rights of the Authority to receive the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (iii) not materially impair the rights of the Authority to fulfill the terms of its agreements with the Bondholders and Benefited Parties (as defined in Appendix D —“DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE — Definitions”) under the Indenture; (iv) not materially impair the rights and remedies of the Bondholders and Benefited Parties or materially impair the security for those outstanding Bonds and Benefited Parties; (v) enforce the Qualifying Statute, the MSA and the Consent Decree to effectuate the collection of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (vi) cause the Ohio Attorney General to irrevocably instruct the Escrow Agent under the MSA to transfer all 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts directly to the Trustee as assignee of the Authority; (vii) not amend the MSA, or amend or repeal the Qualifying Statute, in any manner that would materially impair the rights of the Bondholders or Benefited Parties, until the Bonds, together with the interest thereon, all Ancillary Facilities, and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of Bondholders, are fully paid and discharged pursuant to the terms of the Trust Indenture; and (viii) not permit the Authority, or permit any public officer or organization, entity, or other person to authorize the Authority, prior to the date which is one year and one day after which the Authority no longer has any Bonds outstanding, (1) to file a voluntary petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code, or (2) to voluntarily commence any similar bankruptcy proceeding under state law including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors. The Trustee, as assignee under the Indenture of certain of the Authority’s rights under the 2007 Sale Agreement, could seek to compel the State to enforce its payment rights under the MSA if the State failed to do so contrary to its covenant in the 2007 Sale Agreement to cause the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts to be collected. The Act authorizes the inclusion of these covenants in the 2007 Sale Agreement and in the Indenture.

Pursuant to the Act, the Indenture establishes a mechanism for the ongoing funding of the costs incurred or to be incurred (including reserves for the same) by the office of the Attorney General of the State with respect to enforcement of the MSA, the Qualifying Statute, the Consent Decree and related legislation (“Enforcement Expenses”). The Authority’s funding of Enforcement Expenses is subject to an annual Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap of (i) \$2.5 million through the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2013 and (ii) thereafter \$2 million, which \$2 million will be indexed for inflation as set forth in the Indenture. The Enforcement Expenses are payable from the Operating Account, up to the Operating Cap, and then from the Collections after funding the Senior Debt Service Account and replenishment of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account but before Surplus Collections are deposited into the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account.

In the Indenture, the Authority covenants that it will, from time to time, execute and deliver all documents and instruments, and will take such other action, as is necessary or advisable to (i) maintain or preserve the lien and pledge and assignment (and the priority thereof) of the Indenture; (ii) perfect, publish notice of or protect the validity of any pledge and assignment made or to be made by the Indenture; (iii) preserve and defend title to the Collateral pledged under the Indenture and the rights of the Trustee and the Bondholders in such Collateral against the claims of all persons and parties, including the challenge by any party to the validity or enforceability of the Indenture or the Act; (iv) enforce the 2007 Sale Agreement; (v) pay any and all taxes lawfully levied or assessed upon all or any part of the Collateral pledged under the Indenture; or (vi) carry out more effectively the purposes of the Indenture.

Nothing in the Act, the 2007 Sale Agreement or the Trust Indenture precludes or limits the State from taxing or regulating the sale of cigarettes or other tobacco products, or from defending or prosecuting cases or other actions relating to the sale or use of cigarettes or other tobacco products, and except as otherwise may be agreed in writing by the Attorney General, nothing in the 2007 Sale Agreement or the Trust Indenture shall modify or limit the responsibility, power, judgment, and discretion of the Attorney General to protect and discharge the duties, rights and obligations of the State under the MSA, the Consent Decree, or the Qualifying Statute.

*Constitutional Claims.* The Series 2007 Bondholders are further entitled to the benefit of the prohibitions in the United States Constitution's Contract Clause (the "**Contract Clause**") against any state's impairment of the obligation of contracts. This prohibition, although not absolute, is particularly strong when applied to a state's attempt to evade its own obligations.

Generally, based on the U.S. Supreme Court's standard of review for Contract Clause challenges in *Energy Reserves Group, Inc. v. Kansas Power & Light Co.*, 459 U.S. 400 (1983), a state must justify the exercise of its inherent police powers to safeguard the vital interests of its people before it may enact legislation that substantially impairs contractual relationships. In those instances, however, where a state's own contractual obligations involving financing will be substantially impaired, the U.S. Supreme Court applies a stricter standard of judgment to a state's actions due to the risk that a state's self interest rather than any public necessity will be the motivation for its actions. Indeed, in *United States Trust Company of New York v. New Jersey*, 431 U.S. 1 (1977), the U.S. Supreme Court noted that only once in an entire century had the U.S. Supreme Court upheld the alteration of a municipal bond contract. Thus, in order for the State to justify legislation that substantially impairs the contractual rights of the Series 2007 Bondholders to be paid from the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, the State not only must demonstrate a significant and legitimate public purpose, such as the remedying of a broad and general social or economic problem, but must also demonstrate that its actions under such circumstances satisfy the U.S. Supreme Court's strict standard of judgment employed in *United States Trust Company*.

#### **No Assurance as to the Outcome of Litigation**

With respect to all matters of litigation that have been brought and may in the future be brought against the PMs, or involving the enforceability or constitutionality of the MSA and/or the State's related legislation or the enforcement of the right to the Pledged Tobacco Receipts or otherwise filed in connection with the tobacco industry, the outcome of such litigation, in general, cannot be determined with certainty and depends, among other things, on (i) the issues being appropriately presented and argued before the courts (including the applicable appellate courts) and (ii) on the courts, having been presented with such issues, correctly applying applicable legal principles in reaching appropriate decisions regarding the merits. In addition, the courts may, in their exercise of equitable jurisdiction, reach judgments based not upon the legal merits but upon a balancing of the equities among the parties. Accordingly, no assurance can be given as to the outcome of any such litigation and any adverse outcome in any such litigation could have a material and adverse impact on the amounts available to the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and make Turbo Redemptions.

#### **Act Prohibits Bankruptcy of Authority**

Under the Act, the Authority is prohibited from filing a voluntary petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code, or voluntarily commencing any similar bankruptcy proceeding under state law, including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors. In addition, as provided in the Act, the State has covenanted in the 2007 Sale Agreement, not to permit the Authority, or permit any public officer or organization, entity, or other person, to authorize the Authority, prior to the date which is one year and one day after which the Authority no longer has any Bonds Outstanding, (i) to file a voluntary petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code, or (ii) to voluntarily commence any similar bankruptcy proceeding under state law including, without limitation,

consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors. This covenant, as authorized by the 2007 Sale Agreement and the Act, has also been included in the Indenture.

## THE SERIES 2007 BONDS

*The following summary describes certain terms of the Series 2007 Bonds. This summary does not purport to be complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to, the provisions of the Indenture and the Series 2007 Bonds. Copies of the Indenture may be obtained upon written request to the Trustee.*

All Series 2007 Bonds will be dated their date of delivery.

The Series 2007 Bonds will initially be represented by one or more bond certificates registered in the name of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York (“DTC”), or its nominee. DTC will act as securities depository for the Series 2007 Bonds. Individual purchases of beneficial ownership interests in (a) the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and the Series 2007A-2 Bonds may be made for principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, (b) the Series 2007A-3 Bonds may be made for principal amounts which will accrete to \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof at their Conversion Date, and (c) the Series 2007B Bonds and the Series 2007C Bonds may be made in the principal amount which will accrete to \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof at their respective Maturity Dates (each, respectively, an “**Authorized Denomination**”). Except under the limited circumstances described herein, no Beneficial Owner (as defined herein) of the Series 2007 Bonds will be entitled to receive a physical certificate representing its ownership interest in such Bonds. See APPENDIX E — “BOOK-ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM” herein.

For each Distribution Date, payments will be made to registered owners of the Series 2007 Bonds (the “**Holders**”) as of the last Business Day of the calendar month immediately preceding the calendar month in which a Distribution Date occurs (the “**Record Date**”). The Trustee and the Authority may establish special record dates for the determination of the Holders for various purposes of the Indenture, including giving consent or direction to the Trustee.

### Payments of Interest

*Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds.* Interest on the outstanding principal amount of the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds will be payable on each June 1 and December 1, commencing June 1, 2008 until their Maturity Dates or earlier redemption of such Bonds. Interest will accrue from and including the Delivery Date, or from and including the most recent Distribution Date on which interest has been paid to, but excluding the subsequent Distribution Date on which interest is payable. Interest on the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months. Amounts on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account are available to make payments of interest on the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds. Failure to pay the full amount of interest payable on the Series 2007A-1 Bonds and Series 2007A-2 Bonds on any Distribution Date is a Payment Default, which is an Event of Default. If on any Distribution Date there are insufficient funds to pay all interest then due on the Senior Bonds, available amounts will be allocated Pro Rata among all Senior Bonds for which interest is due.

*Series 2007A-3 Bonds.* The Series 2007A-3 Bonds will accrete interest from the Delivery Date, which interest will be compounded on each Distribution Date, commencing June 1, 2008 through and excluding the Conversion Date, as set forth on the inside cover page hereof, or through and including any earlier redemption date of such Bond. Prior to the Conversion Date, interest is not payable on a current basis. On and after the Conversion Date, such Series 2007A-3 Bond will become a Current Interest Bond with a principal amount equal to the Accreted Value at such Conversion Date, the interest on which will be payable currently on each Distribution Date after the Conversion Date until the Maturity Date or earlier redemption date of such Bond as

provided in the Indenture. Interest on the Series 2007A-3 Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months. Failure to pay the full amount of interest due on the Series 2007A-3 Bonds on any Distribution Date after the Conversion Date is a Payment Default, which is an Event of Default. If on any Distribution Date there are insufficient funds to pay all interest then due on the Senior Bonds, available amounts will be allocated Pro Rata among all Senior Bonds for which interest is due.

*Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds.* Interest on the Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds is not payable on a current basis. Interest on the Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds will accrete from the Delivery Date and will be compounded on each Distribution Date, commencing June 1, 2008 through and including the respective Maturity Date or earlier redemption of such Bond. Interest will accrete from and including the Delivery Date, or from and including the most recent Distribution Date to, but excluding the subsequent Distribution Date. Interest on the Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds will accrete on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months. Failure to pay the Accreted Value of a Series 2007B Bond or Series 2007C Bond on its Maturity Date is a Subordinate Payment Default, which entitles the Holders thereof to pursue remedies under the Indenture so long as no Senior Bonds are Outstanding. If a Subordinate Payment Default occurs, interest on the Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds will continue to accrete to their respective Maturity Dates and thereafter, the Series 2007B Bonds will bear interest at the Default Rate of 7.25% and the Series 2007C Bonds will bear interest at the Default Rate of 7.50%.

### **Payments of Principal**

The Series 2007A-1 Bonds will be issued as Serial Bonds and will mature in the amounts and on the dates and will bear interest at the rates set forth on the inside cover hereto. The Series 2007 Bonds, other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, are all issued as Turbo Term Bonds, subject to special mandatory and optional redemption as provided in “—Sinking Fund Installments,” “—Turbo Redemptions” and “—Optional Redemption” below. Failure to pay the Principal of a Senior Bond on its Maturity Date will constitute a Payment Default, which is an Event of Default under the Indenture, in which case all future payments will be made on a Pro Rata basis, subject to the Payment Priorities. Only if no Senior Bonds are Outstanding, failure to pay the Principal of a First Subordinate Bond or Second Subordinate Bond on its Maturity Date, constituting a Subordinate Payment Default, will entitle the Holders thereof to pursue remedies. In such case, all future payments will be made on a Pro Rata basis, in each case subject to the Payment Priorities. So long as no Payment Default has occurred, all payments on the Series 2007 Bonds (other than the Series 2007 A-1 Bonds) made from Collections will be credited against Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities in chronological order, as more fully described under “Effect of Redemptions on Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities” below. The Senior Liquidity Reserve Account is available to pay the Principal of the Series 2007A Bonds on their respective Maturity Dates. Money in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available as security for the Series 2007B Bonds or Series 2007C Bonds, or any other Bonds which are not Senior Bonds.

If less than all of the Series 2007 Bonds of any maturity are to be redeemed, the Holders of the Series 2007 Bonds of such maturity will be paid as described under the heading “Partial Redemptions” below.

### **Subordination of Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds**

No payments will be made with respect to the Series 2007B Bonds, and any other Additional Bonds issued as First Subordinate Bonds, before the Series 2007A Bonds, and any other Additional Bonds issued as Senior Bonds, are paid or redeemed in full. No payments will be made with respect to the Series 2007C Bonds, and any other Additional Bonds issued as Second Subordinate Bonds, before the Series 2007A Bonds and the Series 2007B Bonds, and any other Additional Bonds issued as Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds, are paid or redeemed in full. Even if there has been a Subordinate Payment Default, as defined herein, the Owners of the Series 2007B Bonds may enforce the provisions of the Indenture for their benefit by appropriate legal proceedings only if the Senior Bonds are no longer deemed Outstanding under the Indenture.

Similarly, the Owners of the Series 2007C Bonds may enforce the provisions of the Indenture for their benefit by appropriate legal proceedings only if the Senior Bonds and the First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding. See “DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF THE INDENTURE — Events of Default” in Appendix D.

### **Sinking Fund Installments**

The Series 2007A Bonds, other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, are subject to mandatory redemption from Sinking Fund Installments to the extent of available Collections in the amounts and on the dates set forth below, at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption. To the extent that more than one Sinking Fund Installment is scheduled for the same date, payments shall be credited against such Sinking Fund Installments on a pro rata basis. The Indenture provides that the Trustee will not pay a Sinking Fund Installment unless, after giving effect to such payment, the Senior Debt Service Account will contain sufficient funds to pay interest due on the next succeeding Distribution Date. Failure by the Authority to pay a Sinking Fund Installment when scheduled will not constitute an Event of Default under the Indenture. Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available to pay Sinking Fund Installments.

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$200,000,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2024**

<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>	<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>
2008	\$2,315,000	2017	\$5,655,000
2009	5,280,000	2018	16,805,000
2010	4,900,000	2019	18,485,000
2011	5,555,000	2020	20,025,000
2012	7,060,000	2021	21,835,000
2013	5,320,000	2022	22,730,000
2014	4,640,000	2023	23,515,000
2015	5,150,000	2024†	25,655,000
2016	5,075,000		

†Final Maturity

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$949,530,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2024**

<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>	<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>
2008	\$11,010,000	2017	\$26,840,000
2009	25,075,000	2018	79,795,000
2010	23,255,000	2019	87,755,000
2011	26,365,000	2020	95,075,000
2012	33,525,000	2021	103,670,000
2013	25,260,000	2022	107,905,000
2014	22,020,000	2023	111,650,000
2015	24,450,000	2024†	121,790,000
2016	24,090,000		

†Final Maturity

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$687,600,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2030**

<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>	<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>
2025	\$107,700,000	2028	\$117,700,000
2026	109,600,000	2029	119,000,000
2027	111,500,000	2030†	122,100,000

†Final Maturity

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$505,200,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2034**

<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>	<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>
2031	\$114,035,000	2033	\$129,790,000
2032	123,405,000	2034†	137,970,000

†Final Maturity

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$250,000,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2042**

<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>	<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>
2038	\$45,160,000	2041	\$52,355,000
2039	47,090,000	2042†	55,250,000
2040	50,145,000		

†Final Maturity

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$750,000,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2047**

<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>	<u>(June 1)</u>	<u>Sinking Fund Installments</u>
2038	\$46,260,000	2043	\$87,580,000
2039	48,225,000	2044	93,050,000
2040	51,255,000	2045	98,840,000
2041	53,720,000	2046	104,575,000
2042	56,585,000	2047†	109,910,000

†Final Maturity



**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$1,383,715,000 Series 2007A-2  
Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2047**

<b><u>(June 1)</u></b>	<b><u>Sinking Fund Installments</u></b>	<b><u>(June 1)</u></b>	<b><u>Sinking Fund Installments</u></b>
2038	\$ 85,330,000	2043	\$161,580,000
2039	88,975,000	2044	171,675,000
2040	94,565,000	2045	182,355,000
2041	99,115,000	2046	192,940,000
2042	104,400,000	2047†	202,780,000

---

†Final Maturity

**Sinking Fund Installments for  
\$274,751,138 Series 2007A-3  
Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing on June 1, 2037**

<b><u>(June 1)</u></b>	<b><u>Sinking Fund Installments</u></b>	<b><u>(June 1)</u></b>	<b><u>Sinking Fund Installments</u></b>
2035	\$115,300,000	2037†	\$135,900,000
2036	124,600,000		

---

†Final Maturity

## **Turbo Redemptions**

The Authority has covenanted to apply 100% of all Surplus Collections, if any, to the special mandatory redemption (“**Turbo Redemption**”) of the Series 2007 Bonds, other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, at the principal amount or Accreted Value thereof on each Distribution Date (or a special redemption date pursuant to the Indenture) in accordance with the Payment Priorities as further set forth in the Indenture. Turbo Redemptions may also be made in accordance with the Payment Priorities from amounts on deposit in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account with confirmation from each Rating Agency that no rating then in effect with respect to the Bonds from such Rating Agency will be withdrawn, reduced or suspended as a result of such payment. Turbo Redemptions are not scheduled amortization payments and are to be made only from Surplus Collections, if any. Failure to pay Turbo Redemptions on Turbo Term Bonds will not constitute an Event of Default. Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available to make Turbo Redemptions.

Turbo Redemptions, if any, of the First Subordinate Bonds, including the Series 2007B Bonds, will not occur until the Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds, are Fully Paid. Turbo Redemptions, if any, of the Second Subordinate Bonds, including the Series 2007C Bonds, will not occur until the Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds, and First Subordinate Bonds, including the Series 2007B Bonds, are Fully Paid. Turbo Redemptions of the Turbo Term Bonds will be applied to redeem such Bonds at the principal amount or Accreted Value thereof, together with accrued interest, without premium; provided, that Turbo Redemptions of Capital Appreciation Bonds will be applied to redeem such Bonds at their Accreted Value as of the redemption date, without premium. If less than all of the Turbo Term Bonds are to be redeemed, the Owners of such Turbo Term Bonds will be paid in accordance with the Indenture. See “Partial Redemption” below.

The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds only address each Rating Agency’s assessment of the ability of the Authority to pay interest when due and to pay Principal of the Series 2007 Bonds by their respective Maturity Dates and do not address payment at any earlier time, whether from Turbo Redemptions as described herein or otherwise. See “RATINGS” herein.

**Projected Turbo Redemptions for Series 2007A-2 and A-3 Bonds**

<b>Turbo Redemption Date (June 1)</b>	<b>\$200,000,000* Series 2007A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2024</b>	<b>\$949,530,000* Series 2007 A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2024</b>	<b>\$687,600,000* Series 2007A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2030</b>	<b>\$505,200,000* Series 2007A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2034</b>	<b>\$250,000,000* Series 2007A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2042</b>
2008	\$13,805,000	\$65,570,000	-	-	-
2009	17,470,000	82,960,000	-	-	-
2010	17,935,000	85,115,000	-	-	-
2011	19,380,000	92,035,000	-	-	-
2012	21,745,000	103,210,000	-	-	-
2013	21,085,000	100,120,000	-	-	-
2014	21,100,000	100,185,000	-	-	-
2015	22,695,000	107,740,000	-	-	-
2016	23,535,000	111,735,000	-	-	-
2017	21,250,000	100,860,000	\$23,140,000	-	-
2018	-	-	220,725,000	-	-
2019	-	-	239,040,000	-	-
2020	-	-	204,695,000	\$53,570,000	-
2021	-	-	-	278,995,000	-
2022	-	-	-	172,635,000	-
2023	-	-	-	-	\$19,950,000
2024	-	-	-	-	89,840,000
2025	-	-	-	-	96,935,000
2026	-	-	-	-	43,275,000
2027	-	-	-	-	-
2028	-	-	-	-	-

\* Assumes Turbo Redemptions are made based on the receipt of Surplus Collections projected in accordance with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and other structuring assumptions. No assurance can be given that these structuring assumptions will be realized. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION" herein.

**Projected Turbo Redemptions for Series 2007A-2 and A-3 Bonds**

<b>Turbo Redemption Date (June 1)</b>	<b>\$750,000,000* Series 2007A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2047</b>	<b>\$1,383,715,000* Series 2007A-2 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2047</b>	<b>\$274,751,138* Series 2007A-3 Bonds Maturing June 1, 2037**</b>
2008	-	-	-
2009	-	-	-
2010	-	-	-
2011	-	-	-
2012	-	-	-
2013	-	-	-
2014	-	-	-
2015	-	-	-
2016	-	-	-
2017	-	-	-
2018	-	-	-
2019	-	-	-
2020	-	-	-
2021	-	-	-
2022	-	-	\$128,440,000
2023	\$20,435,000	\$37,710,000	247,360,000
2024	91,980,000	169,680,000	-
2025	99,310,000	183,235,000	-
2026	128,650,000	237,355,000	-
2027	155,055,000	286,065,000	-
2028	254,570,000	469,670,000	-

\* Assumes Turbo Redemptions are made based on the receipt of Surplus Collections projected in accordance with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and other structuring assumptions. No assurance can be given that these structuring assumptions will be realized. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION" herein.

\*\* Turbo Redemptions of Series 2007A-3 Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds are shown at the Accreted Value thereof.

**Projected Turbo Redemptions for Series 2007B Bonds  
and Series 2007C Bonds**

<b>Turbo Redemption Date (June 1)</b>	<b>\$191,265,480* Series 2007B Bonds Maturing June 1, 2047</b>	<b>\$128,182,923 * Series 2007C Bonds Maturing June 1, 2052</b>
2008	-	-
2009	-	-
2010	-	-
2011	-	-
2012	-	-
2013	-	-
2014	-	-
2015	-	-
2016	-	-
2017	-	-
2018	-	-
2019	-	-
2020	-	-
2021	-	-
2022	-	-
2023	-	-
2024	-	-
2025	-	-
2026	-	-
2027	-	-
2028	\$138,426,699	-
2029	492,874,715	-
2030	266,775,872	\$232,673,395
2031	-	477,579,351

\* Turbo Redemptions of Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds are shown at the Accreted Value thereof. Assumes Turbo Redemptions are made based on the receipt of Surplus Collections projected in accordance with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and other structuring assumptions. No assurance can be given that these structuring assumptions will be realized. The ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds do not reflect any assessment by any Rating Agency of the probability, timing or amount of Turbo Redemptions. See "SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION" herein.

## **Prohibition on Open Market Purchases**

Moneys in the Pledged Accounts may not be used to make open market purchases of the Bonds.

## **Optional Redemption**

The Series 2007A-1 Bonds are not subject to optional redemption. All other Series 2007 Bonds are subject to redemption at the option of the Authority (i) in whole or in part at any time, but only in an amount that may not exceed the amount of the Projected Turbo Redemptions that were projected to be paid but, as of the date of such redemption, have not been paid with respect to such Turbo Term Bonds and (ii) in whole or in part on any day on or after June 1, 2017, with respect to the Series 2007A-2 Bonds, Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds, and June 1, 2022, with respect to the Series 2007A-3 Bonds, from any Maturity Date selected by the Authority in its discretion and if redeemed in part in accordance with DTC's standard procedures, or if such Series 2007 Bonds are not then held by DTC or other Securities Depository, on such basis as the Trustee deems fair and appropriate, including by lot, within a Maturity Date, in either case at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued to the redemption date.

## **Redemption of Defeased Bonds**

In the event of a full or partial defeasance of the Series 2007 Bonds, the defeasance escrow will be structured to redeem the Series 2007 Bonds in accordance with the Projected Turbo Schedule until the date fixed for any optional redemption of the Series 2007 Bonds.

## **Application of Redemptions with Respect to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities**

All redemptions of Series 2007 Bonds made under the Indenture from Collections will be paid and credited as follows:

(1) the amount of any Turbo Redemptions will be paid and credited against both Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities in accordance with the Payment Priorities and within a priority in direct chronological order, and as set forth in clause (3) below, unless otherwise set forth in the applicable Series Supplement;

(2) the amount of any Sinking Fund Installments made will be paid and credited against Turbo Term Bond Maturities in accordance with the Payment Priorities, within a priority in direct chronological order, and as set forth in clause (3) below, unless otherwise set forth in the applicable Series Supplement; and

(3) with respect to Bonds within the same Payment Priority for which Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities are scheduled to be paid on the same date, the amount of any Turbo Redemption shall be paid, and credited against such Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities, and the amount of any Sinking Fund Installments shall be paid, and credited against such Turbo Term Bond Maturities, on a Pro Rata basis from among all such Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities scheduled to be paid on such date, regardless of Maturity Date.

## **Partial Redemptions**

If less than all of the Series 2007 Bonds of a specific maturity are to be redeemed, the Series 2007 Bonds within such maturity to be redeemed on such basis as the Trustee will deem fair and appropriate, including by lot.

So long as Cede & Co. is the registered owner of the Series 2007 Bonds, as nominee of DTC, all notices of redemption, including partial redemptions, will go only to DTC. In the case of a partial redemption of the Series 2007 Bonds, DTC will determine the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant (as defined in Appendix E) to be redeemed.

### **Mandatory Clean-Up Calls**

The Outstanding Senior Bonds, including the Series 2007A Bonds, are subject to mandatory redemption in whole or in part at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued, if any, to the date fixed for redemption, at any time, to the extent of the transfer to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account pursuant to the Indenture.

The Bonds are subject to mandatory redemption in whole at a redemption price equal to 100% of the Bond Obligation being redeemed, plus interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption, at any time that the available amounts on deposit in the Pledged Accounts equal or exceed the Bond Obligation of, and accrued interest on, all Outstanding Bonds and Parity Swap Payments (each such mandatory redemption, a “**Mandatory Clean-Up Call**”).

### **Notice of Redemption**

When a Bond is to be redeemed prior to its stated Maturity Date, the Trustee will give notice to the Holder thereof and each Rating Agency in the name of the Authority, which notice will identify the Bond to be redeemed, state the date fixed for redemption, state any conditions for the redemption of such Bonds, and state that such Bond will be redeemed at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee or a Paying Agent. The notice will further state that on such date, if any conditions to such redemption shall have been satisfied, there will become due and payable upon each Bond to be redeemed the redemption price thereof, together with interest accrued or accreted to the redemption date, and upon money therefor having been deposited with the Trustee or Paying Agent, from and after such date, interest on Current Interest Bonds to be redeemed will cease to accrue and the value of Capital Appreciation Bonds and Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds to be redeemed will cease to accrete. The Trustee will give at least 15 days’ notice by mail, or otherwise transmit the redemption notice in accordance with any appropriate provisions under the Indenture, to the registered owners of any Bonds which are to be redeemed, at their addresses shown on the registration books of the Authority. Such notice may be waived by any Holders holding Bonds to be redeemed. Failure by a particular Holder to receive notice, or any defect in the notice to such Holder, will not affect the proceedings for the redemption of any other Bond. Any notice of redemption given pursuant to the Indenture may be rescinded by Written Notice to the Trustee by the Authority no later than five days prior to the date specified for redemption if any conditions to redemption stated in the redemption notice were not satisfied. The Trustee will give notice of such rescission as soon thereafter as practicable in the same manner and to the same persons, as notice of such redemption was given as described above. In making the determination as to how much money will be available in the Turbo Redemption Account on any Distribution Date for the purpose of giving notice of redemption, the Trustee will take into account investment earnings which it reasonably expects to be available for application.

### **Refunding Bonds and Additional Bonds**

Subsequent to the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds, additional Series of Bonds (each a “**Series**”) may be issued as either “**Refunding Bonds**,” or “**Additional Bonds**” at the discretion of the Authority but only if upon the issuance of such Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds: (A) the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account immediately following the issuance of the Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds will be at least equal to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement; (B) no Event of Default has occurred and is continuing after the date of issuance of such Bonds; (C) the expected weighted average life of each Turbo Term Bond that will remain Outstanding after issuance of the Refunding Bonds or Additional

Bonds as computed on the basis of new projections on the date of sale of the Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds will not exceed (x) the remaining expected weighted average life of each such Turbo Term Bond as computed by the Authority on the basis of new projections, assuming that no such Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds are issued, plus (y) one year; and (D) a Rating Confirmation is received for any Bonds that will remain Outstanding after the date of issuance of the Additional Bonds or Refunding Bonds which are then rated by a Rating Agency.

Refunding Bonds may also be issued under the Indenture to refund all Outstanding Bonds in whole without satisfaction of any of the foregoing conditions.

### **Fully Subordinate Bonds**

One or more Series of Bonds (the “**Fully Subordinate Bonds**”) may be issued for any lawful purpose by the Authority if there is no payment permitted for such bonds until all then outstanding Bonds are Fully Paid. Fully Subordinate Bonds may be issued without satisfying the requirements of the Indenture relating to Additional Bonds and Refunding Bonds.

## **SECURITY FOR THE BONDS**

### **Pledge of Collateral**

Pursuant to the Indenture, the Bonds will be secured by a pledge and assignment of the “Collateral,” consisting of: (i) the Collections, (ii) all rights to receive the Collections and the proceeds of such rights, (iii) the Pledged Accounts and money and investments on deposit in or credited to the Pledged Accounts, (iv) subject to the terms, provisions and limitations of the Indenture and the 2007 Sale Agreement, all rights and remedies with respect to any breach by the State of any of its covenants, obligations, representations, and warranties under the 2007 Sale Agreement or under the Act, (v) all interests in the Pledged Tobacco Receipts of the Authority under the 2007 Sale Agreement, to which the State has consented to an assignment pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement and (vi) any and all other property of every kind and nature from time to time hereafter, by delivery or by writing of any kind, conveyed, pledged, assigned or transferred as and for additional security under the Indenture. The pledge and assignment of the Collateral is not subject or subordinate to any other pledge, assignment or encumbrance.

Except as specifically provided in the Indenture, the assignment and pledge described above does not include: (i) the rights of the Authority pursuant to provisions for consent or other action by the Authority, notice to the Authority, indemnity or the filing of documents with the Authority, or otherwise for its benefit and not for that of the Bondholders or other Benefited Parties or (ii) any right or power reserved to the Authority pursuant to the Act or other law; nor does the Indenture preclude the Authority’s enforcement of its rights under and pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement for the benefit of the Holders as provided in the Indenture.

In the Indenture, the Authority covenants that it will implement, protect and defend the pledge and assignment of the Collateral by all appropriate legal action for the benefit of the Holders of the Bonds, the costs of which are Operating Expenses.

None of the proceeds of the Bonds or any earnings therefrom, unless deposited in the Pledged Accounts, will in any way be pledged to the payment of the Bonds or be part of the Collateral.

Amounts in the Operating Account and the Costs of Issuance Account are not pledged as security for the Bonds under the Indenture.



## 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts

The “**2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts**” consist of the right, title and interest in and to 100% of (i) except as excluded as described in the last sentence of this paragraph, all tobacco settlement payments that are required to be made by the tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State under the terms of the MSA on and after the Delivery Date, (ii) all lump sum or partial lump sum payments, received on and after the Delivery Date, that are allocable to, or in substitution for, payments required under the terms of the MSA by tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State, and (iii) the State’s rights under the MSA to receive the tobacco settlement payments referred to in (i) and (ii). The 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts specifically include 100% of any amounts due to the State and withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account (as defined herein), on or after the Delivery Date, by the tobacco manufacturers as a result of a dispute as to the amount of a payment required to be made by them under the MSA and that are subsequently paid by the tobacco manufacturers or released from the Disputed Payments Account, including all earnings thereon, but specifically exclude any right to or interest in amounts withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account before the Delivery Date, including all earnings thereon.

## Percentage of Pledged Tobacco Receipts

The Pledged Tobacco Receipts pledged under the Indenture represent the right, title and interest of the Authority in and to 100% of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts.

## Accounts

All of the following funds and accounts will be established and held by the Trustee for the benefit of the holders of the Bonds and Benefited Parties. All money on deposit in the following accounts will be invested in Eligible Investments as defined in the Indenture.

*Collection Account.* Under the Indenture, the Trustee will establish and hold a segregated trust account (the “**Collection Account**”) into which the Trustee will deposit all Collections. Funds on deposit in the Collection Account will be transferred to various other accounts under the Indenture and applied to certain other purposes as described below under “Application of Collections.”

*Bond Service Fund.* Under the Indenture, the Trustee will establish and hold a segregated trust fund (the “**Bond Service Fund**”) which will include the Senior Debt Service Account and the Capitalized Interest Subaccount therein, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account.

*Senior Debt Service Account.* Under the Indenture, the Trustee will establish and hold within the Bond Service Fund a segregated trust account (the “**Senior Debt Service Account**”) into which the Trustee will deposit amounts transferred from the Collection Account in respect of interest on and Principal or Accreted Value of the Senior Bonds and from which the Trustee will make payments on the Senior Bonds in accordance with the priority of payments as described below under “Application of Collections.”

*Senior Liquidity Reserve Account.* Upon the Delivery Date of the Series 2007 Bonds, the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be not less than \$389,231,603.13 (the “**Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement**”), which level is required to be maintained for so long as any Series 2007A Bonds or any other Senior Bonds remain Outstanding. However, the Authority may amend the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement in connection with the issuance of Refunding Bonds or Additional Bonds. Rating Confirmations are a condition to the issuance of Refunding Bonds and Additional Bonds.

Amounts on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be available to pay the Principal of and interest on the Series 2007A Bonds and any other Senior Bonds to the extent Collections are insufficient

for such purpose. Money in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account is not available as security for the Series 2007B Bonds or the Series 2007C Bonds, or any other Bonds which are not Senior Bonds. After a Payment Default, money in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be available to pay Pro Rata first, the accrued interest on the Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds (including, in each case, interest at the stated rate on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible) and all Parity Swap Payments, and second, to pay and prepay the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding. Amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will not be available to make Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions on any Bonds. Unless a Payment Default has occurred, amounts withdrawn from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be replenished from Collections as described herein.

A Bond will be deemed **“Fully Paid”** only if: (i) such Bond has been canceled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or (ii) such Bond will have matured or been called for redemption and, on such Maturity Date or redemption date, money for the payment of the Bond Obligation, redemption premium, if any, and interest on such Bond is held by the Trustee in trust for the benefit of the person entitled thereto; or (iii) such Bond is alleged to have been lost, stolen, destroyed, partially destroyed, or defaced and has been replaced as provided the Indenture; (iv) or such Bond has been defeased as provided in the Indenture (whether as part of a defeasance of all or less than all of the Bonds).

Unless a Payment Default has occurred, on any Distribution Date on which the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amount necessary to be paid in connection with the liquidation of the investments of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, including a Termination Payment) equals or exceeds the Bond Obligation and interest on all Outstanding Senior Bonds, the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amounts necessary to be paid in connection with liquidating investments in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, including a Termination Payment) will be transferred first, to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of all Outstanding Senior Bonds, and, if all Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, second, will be transferred to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding First Subordinate Bonds, and, if all Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, third, will be transferred to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding Second Subordinate Bonds.

The Indenture provides that, upon Rating Confirmation and with an opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel if any Tax-Exempt Bonds are Outstanding, the Authority may replace amounts and investments held in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account with sureties and other **“Cash Equivalents”** (as defined in the Indenture) and then transfer such replaced amounts to the Authority, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.

*Partial Lump Sum Payment Account.* Under the Indenture, the Trustee will hold a segregated trust account (the **“Partial Lump Sum Payment Account”**) into which the Trustee will deposit all Pledged Tobacco Receipts consisting of Partial Lump Sum Payments. The Trustee will apply amounts in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account to pay interest on and principal of Senior Bonds due on any Distribution Date to the extent of any insufficiency of amounts available in the Senior Debt Service Account. Amounts will be transferred from the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account to the Turbo Redemption Account at the written direction of the Authority, accompanied by a Rating Confirmation.

*Turbo Redemption Accounts.* Under the Indenture, the Trustee will hold the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, each a segregated trust account (collectively, the **“Turbo Redemption Accounts”**), into which the Trustee will deposit all Surplus Collections in order of Payment Priority. The Trustee will make Turbo Redemptions of the Series 2007 Bonds, other than the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, from the Turbo Redemption Accounts.

## Application of Collections

The Trustee will deposit all Pledged Tobacco Receipts in the Collection Account, except as described below. As used herein, the term “**Deposit Date**” means the date of actual receipt by the Trustee of any Collections.

All Collections that have been identified by an Officer’s Certificate as consisting of Partial Lump Sum Payments received by the Trustee will be promptly (and in any event, no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Distribution Date) transferred to the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account. All Collections that have been identified by an Officer’s Certificate as consisting of Total Lump Sum Payments received by the Trustee will be promptly (and in any event, no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Distribution Date) applied pursuant to the Indenture, as described below.

Not later than on each Distribution Date the Trustee will deposit in the Collection Account and apply as described in the next paragraph all Collections consisting of investment earnings on amounts on deposit with the Trustee in the Pledged Accounts (excluding amounts in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account), except that, unless otherwise specified in a Series Supplement relating to a Series of Senior Bonds, all amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in excess of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement determined to exist pursuant to the valuation procedure described in the Indenture will be transferred to the Senior Debt Service Account (except as otherwise provided in the Indenture).

*Transfers to Accounts.* As soon as is practicable, but in any event no later than the earlier of (x) the fifth Business Day following each Deposit Date, or (y) the Distribution Date following each Deposit Date, the Trustee will withdraw the funds on deposit in the Collection Account and transfer such amounts as follows in the following order of priority:

- (i) to the Operating Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein to equal the amount specified by an Officer’s Certificate in order to pay, for the twelve-month period applicable to such Officer’s Certificate, (x) the Operating Expenses to the extent that the amount thereof does not exceed the Operating Cap\* (provided, that any such Operating Expenses consisting of Enforcement Expenses must be identified in such Officer’s Certificate as to be paid in accordance with the provisions described in this paragraph), (y) the Tax Obligations, and (z) Priority Payments;
- (ii) to the Senior Debt Service Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein (taking into account any amounts already on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Subaccount or the Senior Debt Service Account) to equal the sum of (x) interest at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, plus (y) interest at the Applicable Periodic Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds through the next Distribution Date (after the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period), at the Assumed Rate to the next succeeding Distribution Date, and all Parity Swap Payments that will come due (i) in the next succeeding Bond Year, if the Deposit Date is on or after December 1 and on or before May 31 of any Bond Year, or (ii) in the then-current Bond Year, if the Deposit Date is on or after June 1 and on or before November 30 of any Bond Year, plus (z) any such unpaid interest on the Outstanding Senior Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds and all Parity Swap Payments from prior Distribution Dates (including interest at the stated rate or Applicable Periodic Rate on such unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible); and the amounts to be so deposited will be calculated assuming that the Bond Obligation of the Outstanding Current

---

\* The “**Operating Cap**” is \$250,000 in the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2008 and adjusted for inflation in subsequent Fiscal Years by the greater of 3% or the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics for the December of the prior year.

Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds will have been paid as described in clauses (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) of the following paragraph;

- (iii) to the Senior Debt Service Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein to equal the amount specified in clause (ii) above plus the sum of (a) if the Deposit Date is on or after December 1 and on or before May 31 of any Bond Year, the Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installment or Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) due for Senior Bonds in or scheduled for the next succeeding Bond Year, plus (b) any such Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installment or Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) unpaid from prior Distribution Dates, but the amount of each Sinking Fund Installment will first be adjusted as described in the Indenture;
- (iv) unless a Payment Default has occurred, to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account an amount sufficient to cause the amount on deposit therein to equal the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement; provided that, on any Distribution Date on which the amount in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amount necessary to be paid in connection with the liquidation of the investment of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, including a Termination Payment) equals or exceeds the Bond Obligation of and interest on all Outstanding Senior Bonds, the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amounts necessary to be paid in connection with liquidating investments in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account including a Termination Payment) will first be transferred to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of all Outstanding Senior Bonds, and if all Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, second, will be transferred to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding First Subordinate Bonds, and, if all Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, third, will be transferred to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding Second Subordinate Bonds;
- (v) to the Operating Account, the amount, if any, necessary to make the amount therein equal to the amount specified by the Officer's Certificate delivered or deemed to be delivered pursuant to the Indenture in order to pay, for the twelve-month period applicable to such Officer's Certificate, the Operating Expenses (other than Enforcement Expenses), if any, in excess of the Operating Cap;
- (vi) to the Authority for payment or reimbursement of Enforcement Expenses, the amount as specified in an Officer's Certificate (provided, that any such Enforcement Expenses must be identified in such Officer's Certificate as to be paid in accordance with the provisions described in this paragraph), provided that such amount and all such prior transfers for Enforcement Expenses for the current Fiscal Year shall not exceed the Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap;\*
- (vii) in the amounts and to the Funds and Accounts established by the Series Supplement for Junior Payments;

---

\* The "**Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap**" means the aggregate limitation, applicable to each Fiscal Year, on the transfer of amounts from the Collection Account pursuant to the Indenture for payment or reimbursement of Enforcement Expenses equal to (i) \$2,500,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2008 through and including June 30, 2013, without inflation, (ii) \$2,000,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2014 and thereafter, such \$2,000,000 to be inflated in each Fiscal Year beginning with the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2015 by the greater of 3% or the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics for December of the prior year, less (iii) with respect to both clauses (i) and (ii), the amount disbursed in such Fiscal Year for such purpose from the Operating Account, if any, pursuant to paragraph (i) of "*Transfers to Accounts*" above. The State has covenanted in the 2007 Sale Agreement to diligently enforce the Qualifying Statute and enforce the MSA, the Consent Decree and related legislation. The Authority is not the only source of funding for enforcement activities.

- (viii) to or at the direction of the Authority, to pay any Termination Amount due under an Ancillary Facility executed in connection with the Senior Bonds, not to exceed the related Termination Payment Cap (if any);
- (ix) to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account (the “**Surplus Collections**”) until no Senior Bonds are Outstanding;
- (x) to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no First Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding;
- (xi) to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account, until no Second Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding; and
- (xii) to the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no Fully Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding.

*Distribution Date Transfers.* Unless a Payment Default has occurred and continues, on each Distribution Date the Trustee will apply amounts in the various Accounts in the following order of priority:

- (i) from the Capitalized Interest Subaccount, the Senior Debt Service Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, and the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, in that order, to pay interest at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, interest at the Applicable Periodic Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds and all Parity Swap Payments due on such Distribution Date;
- (ii) from the Senior Debt Service Account and the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, in that order, to pay, in the following order, the Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installments, and Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) (Pro Rata among Bonds within the same Payment Priority for which Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities are scheduled to be paid on the same date) for Senior Bonds first, for such Senior Bonds unpaid from prior Distribution Dates and second, for such Senior Bonds due on or scheduled for such Distribution Date, provided (A) that the amount of such Sinking Fund Installment will first have been adjusted as described in the Indenture, (B) the Trustee will not pay a Sinking Fund Installment or a Term Bond maturity (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) unless the Senior Debt Service Account will contain, after giving effect to such payment, sufficient funds to pay interest due on Senior Bonds on the next succeeding Distribution Date, such interest to be calculated at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds and at the Periodic Interest Amount for the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period and then at the Assumed Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds through the next succeeding Distribution Date, and (C) all Senior Bonds will be paid in accordance with clause (a) of the definition of Payment Priorities;
- (iii) from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account to pay in the following order, the Serial Bond maturities and Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) for Senior Bonds due on or scheduled for such Distribution Date or unpaid from prior Distribution Dates (Pro Rata among Bonds within the same Payment Priority for which Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities are scheduled to be paid on the same date), and then to reimburse the provider of any Eligible Investment provided in lieu of or in substitution for amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account for any payment under or draw on such investment for a purpose for which the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account is otherwise available provided (A) that the amount of such Turbo Term Bond Maturities will first have been adjusted as described in the Indenture and (B) the Trustee will not pay a Serial Bond maturity or Term Bond maturity (including a Turbo Term Bond Maturity) pursuant to this

paragraph unless the Senior Debt Service Account and the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in the aggregate will, after giving effect to such payment, contain sufficient funds to pay interest due on the next succeeding Distribution Date, such interest to be calculated at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds and at the Periodic Interest Amount for the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period and then at the Assumed Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Senior Bonds through the next succeeding Distribution Date, and (C) all Senior Bonds will be paid in accordance with clause (a) of the definition of Payment Priorities;

- (iv) from the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Senior Bonds which are Turbo Term Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture in accordance with the Indenture; provided that all Senior Bonds will be redeemed in accordance with clause (a) of the definition of Payment Priorities;
- (v) from the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, but only as directed in an Officer's Certificate delivered by the Authority and accompanied by Rating Confirmation, to redeem Turbo Term Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture in accordance with the Indenture, provided that any redemptions shall redeem Bonds in accordance with the Payment Priorities;
- (vi) from the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem First Subordinate Bonds on such Distribution Date (or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture) in accordance with the Indenture;
- (vii) from the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Second Subordinate Bonds on such Distribution Date (or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Indenture) in accordance with the Indenture; and
- (viii) from the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Fully Subordinate Bonds as provided in the applicable Series Supplement.

Upon the occurrence of a Payment Default and continuing on each succeeding Distribution Date commencing with the Distribution Date following a Payment Default:

- (i) until the Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, the Trustee will apply all funds in the Senior Debt Service Account, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the Senior Turbo Redemption Account to pay Pro Rata, first, the accrued interest on the Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds (including Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds on and after the Conversion Date) and all Parity Swap Payments (including, in each case, interest at the stated rate or the Applicable Periodic Rate, as the case may be, on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible) and, second, to pay and prepay the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding;
- (ii) until the First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, the Trustee will apply all funds in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account (but only if no Senior Bonds are Outstanding) to pay and prepay, Pro Rata, the Bond Obligation of and interest on all First Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;
- (iii) until the Second Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, the Trustee will apply all funds in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account (but only if no Senior Bonds or First Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding) to pay and prepay, Pro Rata, the Bond Obligation of and interest on all Second Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;

- (iv) the application of funds with respect to Fully Subordinate Bonds will be in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement; and
- (v) notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Indenture, the value of any Capital Appreciation Bonds will continue to accrete at the Default Rate (including accretion on any unpaid Accreted Value), to the extent legally permissible, after the Maturity Date for such Bonds if not Fully Paid on the Maturity Date.

Upon the receipt of a sum that has been identified by an Officer's Certificate as a Total Lump Sum Payment, the Trustee will after making provision for the amounts required to be deposited as described above and giving the notices required by the Indenture, use all remaining proceeds of such Total Lump Sum Payments to make the following payments and prepayments, each Pro Rata, in the following order of priority:

- (i) pay the accrued interest on the Current Interest Senior Bonds (including Convertible Capital Appreciation Senior Bonds on and after the Conversion Date) (including interest at the stated rate or the Applicable Periodic Rate, as the case may be, on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible);
- (ii) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding;
- (iii) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all First Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;
- (iv) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest, if any on all Second Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding; and
- (v) pay and prepay Fully Subordinate Bonds in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement.

After making all deposits and payments set forth above, and provided that there are no Outstanding Bonds and no obligations to make payments under any Ancillary Facility, the Trustee will deliver any amounts remaining to the holder of the 2007 Residual Certificate.

Money in the Operating Account will be applied by the Authority or by the Trustee at the request of the Authority at any time in accordance with an Officer's Certificate to pay Operating Expenses, Tax Obligations and Priority Payments.

### **2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; State Covenant**

The State has provided through the 2007 Sale Agreement for the Authority's ownership and receipt of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts. Under the Indenture, the Authority acknowledges that the 2007 Sale Agreement constitutes an important security provision of the Bonds and waives any right to assert any claim to the contrary.

The Authority includes in the Indenture the pledges made by the State in the Act and the 2007 Sale Agreement. For a description of certain of such covenants of the State contained in the Indenture, see "THE 2007 Sale Agreement—Covenants of the State" below.

### **No Indebtedness or Funds of the State**

The Indenture does not create indebtedness of the State for any purpose, including constitutional or statutory limitations. The Authority's revenues are not funds of the State.

## THE 2007 SALE AGREEMENT

*The following summary describes certain terms of the 2007 Sale Agreement. This summary does not purport to be complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to, the provisions of the 2007 Sale Agreement. A copy of the 2007 Sale Agreement may be obtained upon written request to the Trustee.*

### **Conveyance of 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts**

The 2007 Sale Agreement provides that the State will irrevocably sell and assign to the Authority, without recourse (subject to the obligations in the 2007 Sale Agreement), all right, title and interest of the State in and to the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts.

The purchase price paid by the Authority to the State under the 2007 Sale Agreement consists of: (i) a payment from the Series 2007 Bond proceeds shown in this Offering Circular under “ESTIMATED APPLICATION OF PROCEEDS” and (ii) a security representing the right to receive the residual interest in 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts on and after the date on which all Bonds have been Fully Paid, all payments under each Ancillary Facility have been paid and all incurred Operating Expenses have been satisfied (the “**2007 Residual Certificate**”). Initially, the State will own the sole beneficial interest in the 2007 Residual Certificate.

### **Notification of Transfer**

Under the 2007 Sale Agreement, the State is required to notify the Escrow Agent on or before the Delivery Date of the Series 2007 Bonds that the State has sold the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts to the Authority and is also required to irrevocably instruct the Escrow Agent to pay the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts directly to the Trustee.

### **Covenants of the State**

*Protection of MSA and Qualifying Statute.* The State in the 2007 Sale Agreement has covenanted and agreed to: (i) maintain statutory authority for, and cause to be collected and be paid directly to the Authority or its assignee, the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (ii) enforce the rights of the Authority to receive 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (iii) diligently enforce the Qualifying Statute and enforce the MSA and the Consent Decree to effectuate the collection of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (iv) irrevocably instruct the Escrow Agent under the MSA to transfer all 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts directly to the Trustee as assignee of the Authority; and (v) not amend the MSA, or amend or repeal the Qualifying Statute, in any manner that would materially impair the rights of the Beneficiaries, until the Series 2007 Bonds, together with the interest thereon, all Ancillary Facilities, and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of Bondholders, are fully paid and discharged pursuant to the Indenture.

*Non-Impairment Covenant.* In the 2007 Sale Agreement, the State has agreed that it will not materially impair the rights of the Authority to fulfill the terms of its agreements with the Bondholders or Benefited Parties under the Indenture and that it will not materially impair the rights and remedies of the Bondholders and Benefited Parties or materially impair the security for those Bonds or Benefited Parties.

*No Bankruptcy of the Authority Covenant.* Under the Act, the Authority is prohibited from filing a voluntary petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code, or voluntarily commencing any similar bankruptcy proceeding under state law including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors. In addition, as provided in the Act, the State has agreed in the 2007 Sale Agreement, not to permit the Authority, or permit any public officer or organization, entity, or other person to authorize the Authority, prior to the date which is one year and one day after which the Authority no longer has any Bonds Outstanding, (i) to file a voluntary petition under the United States Bankruptcy Code, or (ii) to voluntarily commence any similar bankruptcy



proceeding under state law including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors. This covenant, as authorized by the 2007 Sale Agreement and the Act, has also been included in the Indenture.

*Tax Covenant.* Under the terms of the 2007 Sale Agreement, the State has agreed to perform all acts and things permitted by law and necessary or desirable to assure that interest paid by the Authority on the tax-exempt Bonds shall be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes pursuant to Section 103(a) of the Code.

*Further Actions.* Upon request of the Authority or the Trustee, the State has also agreed in the 2007 Sale Agreement to execute and deliver such further instruments and to take such further action as may be reasonably necessary or proper to carry out more effectively the purposes of the 2007 Sale Agreement. The State has also agreed to promptly pay over to the Trustee the proceeds of any 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts received by the State in error.

### **Amendment**

Subject to certain limitations set forth in the Indenture and described in Appendix D under “DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE — The Trust Indenture — Amendment of Agreement,” the 2007 Sale Agreement may be amended by written agreement of the State and the Authority.

### **Assignment and Pledge by the Authority**

As permitted under the Act, the State has authorized the Authority in the 2007 Sale Agreement to include all of the covenants, pledges and agreements described above in the Indenture. In addition, the State has consented to the pledge and assignment by the Authority to the Trustee for the benefit of the Bondholders and Benefited Parties of all right, title and interest of the Authority in, to and under the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts and the assignment of the Authority’s rights and obligations under the 2007 Sale Agreement to the Trustee.

### **No Liability for Officers or Employees**

Notwithstanding anything in the 2007 Sale Agreement to the contrary, no officer or employee of the State will have any liability for the representations, warranties, covenants, agreements or other obligations of the State in the 2007 Sale Agreement or in any of the certificates, notices or agreements delivered pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement.

## **SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT**

*The following is a brief summary of certain provisions of the MSA. This summary is not complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to, the copy of the MSA, as amended, which is attached hereto as Appendix B. Several amendments have been made to the MSA which are not included in Appendix B. Except for those amendments pursuant to which certain tobacco companies became SPMs (as defined below), such amendments involve technical and administrative provisions not material to the summary below.*

### **General**

The MSA is an industry-wide settlement of litigation between the Settling States and the OPMs and was entered into between the attorneys general of the Settling States and the OPMs on November 23, 1998. The MSA provides for other tobacco companies (the “SPMs”) to become parties to the MSA. The three OPMs together with the 44 SPMs are referred to as the “PMs.” The settlement represents the resolution of a large potential financial liability of the PMs for smoking-related injuries, the costs of which have been borne

and will likely continue to be borne by cigarette consumers. Pursuant to the MSA, the Settling States agreed to settle all their past, present and future smoking-related claims against the PMs in exchange for agreements and undertakings by the PMs concerning a number of issues. These issues include, among others, making payments to the Settling States, abiding by more stringent advertising restrictions and funding educational programs, all in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in the MSA. Distributors of PMs' products are also covered by the settlement of such claims to the same extent as the PMs.

## Parties to the MSA

The Settling States are all of the states, territories and the District of Columbia, except for the four states (Florida, Minnesota, Mississippi and Texas) that separately settled with the OPMs prior to the adoption of the MSA (the "**Previously Settled States**"). According to NAAG, as of September 24, 2007, 47 PMs have signed the MSA. The chart below identifies each of the PMs which was a party to the MSA as of September 24, 2007:

OPMs	SPMs
Lorillard Tobacco Company Philip Morris, USA (formerly Philip Morris Incorporated)	Bekenton, S.A.* Lignum-2, Inc. Mac Baren Tobacco Company A/S
Reynolds American, Inc. (formerly R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company and Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation)	Canary Islands Cigar Co. Monte Paz (Compania Industrial de Tabacos Monte Paz S.A.)
	Caribbean-American Tobacco Corp. (CATCORP) NASCOPRODUCTS, INC.
	Chancellor Tobacco Company, UK Ltd. Commonwealth Brands, Inc. P.T. Djarum Pacific Stanford Manufacturing Corporation
	Cutting Edge Enterprises, Inc.* Daughters & Ryan, Inc. Peter Stokkebye Tobaksfabrik A/S Planta Tabak-manufaktur GmbH & Co. M/s. Dhanraj International* Eastern Company S.A.E. Poschl Tabak GmbH & Co. KG Farmer's Tobacco Co. of Cynthiana, Inc. Premier Manufacturing Incorporated General Jack's Incorporated Santa Fe Natural Tobacco Company, Inc. General Tobacco (Vibo Corporation d/b/a General Tobacco) Sherman's 1400 Broadway N.Y.C. Inc. House of Prince A/S Societe Nationale d'Exploitation Industrielle des Tabacs et Allumettes (SEITA)
	Imperial Tobacco Limited/ITL (USA) Limited Tabacalera del Este, S.A. ("TABESA")
	International Tobacco Group (Las Vegas), Inc. Top Tobacco, LP
	Japan Tobacco International USA, Inc. U.S. Flue Cured Tobacco Growers, Inc. King Maker Marketing Vector Tobacco Inc. Konci G&D Management Group (USA) Inc. Virginia Carolina Corporation, Inc.
	Kretek International Von Eicken Group Lane Limited Wind River Tobacco Company, LLC Liberty Brands, LLC* VIP Tobacco USA, LTD. (formerly Winner Sales Company)
	Liggett Group, Inc. ZNF International, LLC (no current brands)

The MSA restricts PMs from transferring their tobacco product brands, cigarette product formulas and cigarette businesses (unless they are being transferred exclusively for use outside the United States) to any

\* Currently in bankruptcy.

entity that is not a PM under the MSA, unless the transferee agrees to assume the obligations of the transferring PM under the MSA related to such brands, formulas or businesses. The MSA expressly provides that the payment obligations of each PM are not the obligation or responsibility of any affiliate of such PM and, further, that the remedies, penalties or sanctions that may be imposed or assessed in connection with a breach or violation of the MSA will only apply to the PMs and not against any other person or entity. Obligations of the SPMs, to the extent that they differ from the obligations of the OPMs, are described below under “— Subsequent Participating Manufacturers” herein.

### Scope of Release

Under the MSA, the PMs and the other “Released Parties” (defined below) are released from:

- claims based on past conduct, acts or omissions (including any future damages arising therefrom) in any way relating to the use, sale, distribution, manufacture, development, advertising, marketing or health effects of, or exposure to, or research statements or warnings regarding, tobacco products; and
- monetary claims based on future conduct, acts or omissions in any way relating to the use of or exposure to tobacco products manufactured in the ordinary course of business, including future claims for reimbursement of healthcare costs.

This release is binding upon each Settling State and any of its past, present and future agents, officials acting in their official capacities, legal representatives, agencies, departments, commissions and divisions. The MSA is further stated to be binding on the following persons, to the full extent of the power of the signatories to the MSA to release past, present and future claims on their behalf: (i) any Settling State’s subdivisions (political or otherwise, including, but not limited to, municipalities, counties, parishes, villages, unincorporated districts and hospital districts), public entities, public instrumentalities and public educational institutions; and (ii) persons or entities acting in a *parens patriae*, sovereign, quasi-sovereign, private attorney general, *qui tam*, taxpayer, or any other capacity, whether or not any of them participate in the MSA (a) to the extent that any such person or entity is seeking relief on behalf of or generally applicable to the general public in such Settling State or the people of such Settling State, as opposed solely to private or individual relief for separate and distinct injuries, or (b) to the extent that any such entity (as opposed to an individual) is seeking recovery of healthcare expenses (other than premium or capitation payments for the benefit of present or retired state employees) paid or reimbursed, directly or indirectly, by a Settling State. All such persons or entities are referred to collectively in the MSA as “**Releasing Parties.**”

To the extent that the Ohio Attorney General does not have the power or authority to bind any of the Releasing Parties in Ohio, the release of claims contemplated by the MSA may be ineffective as to the Releasing Parties and any amounts that become payable by the PMs on account of their claims, whether by way of settlement, stipulated judgment or litigated judgment, will trigger the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset. See “— Adjustments to Payments” below.

The release inures to the benefit of all PMs and their past, present and future affiliates, and the respective divisions, officers, directors, employees, representatives, insurers, lenders, underwriters, tobacco-related organizations, trade associations, suppliers, agents, auditors, advertising agencies, public relations entities, attorneys, retailers and distributors of any PM or any such affiliate (and the predecessors, heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns of each of the foregoing). They are referred to in the MSA individually as a “**Released Party**” and collectively as the “**Released Parties.**” However, the term “Released Parties” does not include any person or entity (including, but not limited to, an affiliate) that is an NPM at any time after the MSA execution date, unless such person or entity becomes a PM.

## Overview of Payments by the Participating Manufacturers; MSA Escrow Agent

The MSA requires that the PMs make several types of payments, including Initial Payments, Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments.\* See “— Initial Payments,” “— Annual Payments” and “— Strategic Contribution Payments” below. These payments (with the exception of the up-front Initial Payment) are subject to various adjustments and offsets, some of which could be material. See “—Adjustments to Payments” and “—Subsequent Participating Manufacturers” below. SPMs were not required to make Initial Payments. Thus far, the OPMs have made all of the Initial Payments, and the PMs have made the Annual Payments for 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006 and 2007 (subject to certain withholdings described in “RISK FACTORS — Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA” herein). The 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts do not include any payments made before the Delivery Date, nor do they include amounts deposited in the Disputed Payments Account before the Delivery Date but released after such date. Strategic Contribution Payments are scheduled to begin April 15, 2008 and continue through April 15, 2017.

Payments required to be made by the OPMs are calculated by reference to the OPM’s domestic shipments of cigarettes, with the amount of the payments adjusted annually roughly in proportion to the changes in total volume of cigarettes shipped by the OPMs in the United States in the preceding year. Payments to be made by the PMs are recalculated each year, based on the United States market share of each individual PM for the prior year, with consideration under certain circumstances, for the profitability of each OPM. The Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments required to be made by the SPMs are based on increases in their shipment market share. See “—Subsequent Participating Manufacturers” below. Pursuant to an escrow agreement (the “**MSA Escrow Agreement**”) established in conjunction with the MSA, remaining Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments are to be made to Citibank, N.A., as escrow agent (the “**MSA Escrow Agent**”), which in turn will disburse the funds to the Settling States.

Beginning with the payments due in the year 2000, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP (the “**MSA Auditor**”) has, among other things, calculated and determined the amount of all payments owed pursuant to the MSA, the adjustments, reductions and offsets thereto (and all resulting carry-forwards, if any), the allocation of such payments, adjustments, reductions, offsets and carry-forwards among the PMs and among the Settling States. This information is not publicly available and, the MSA Auditor has agreed to maintain the confidentiality of all such information, except that the MSA Auditor may provide such information to PMs and the Settling States as set forth in the MSA.

### Initial Payments

Initial Payments were made only by the OPMs. In December 1998, the OPMs collectively made an up-front Initial Payment of \$2.40 billion. The 2000 Initial Payment, which had a scheduled base amount of \$2.47 billion, was paid in December 1999 in the approximate amount of \$2.13 billion due to various adjustments. The 2001 Initial Payment, which had a scheduled base amount of \$2.55 billion, was paid in December 2000 in the approximate amount of \$2.04 billion after taking into account various adjustments and an earlier overpayment. The 2002 Initial Payment, which had a scheduled base amount of \$2.62 billion, was paid in December 2001, in the approximate amount of \$1.89 billion after taking into account various adjustments and a deposit made to the Disputed Payments Account. Approximately \$204 million, which was substantially all of the money previously deposited in the Disputed Payments Account for payment to the Settling States, was distributed to the Settling States with the Annual Payment due April 15, 2002. The 2003 Initial Payment, which had a scheduled base amount of \$2.70 billion, was paid in December 2002 and January 2003, in the approximate aggregate amount of \$2.14 billion after taking into account various adjustments.

---

\* Other payments that are required to be made by the PMs, such as payments of attorneys’ fees and payments to a national foundation established pursuant to the MSA, are not allocated to the Settling States and are not available to the Authority, and consequently are not discussed here.

## Annual Payments

The OPMs and the other PMs are required to make Annual Payments on each April 15 in perpetuity. The PMs made the first eight Annual Payments due April 15 in each of the years 2000 through 2007, the scheduled base amounts of which (before adjustments discussed below) were \$4.5 billion, \$5.0 billion, \$6.5 billion, \$6.5 billion, \$8.0 billion, \$8.0 billion, \$8.0 billion and \$8.0 billion, respectively. After application of the adjustments, the Annual Payment made (i) in April 2000 was approximately \$3.5 billion, (ii) in April 2001 was approximately \$4.1 billion, (iii) in April 2002 was approximately \$5.2 billion, (iv) in April 2003 was approximately \$5.1 billion, (v) in April 2004 was approximately \$6.2 billion, (vi) in April 2005 was approximately \$6.3 billion, (vii) in April 2006 was approximately \$5.8 billion and (viii) in April 2007 was approximately \$6 billion. The scheduled base amount (before adjustments discussed below) of each Annual Payment, subject to adjustment, is set forth below:

### Annual Payments

<u>Year</u>	<u>Base Amount</u>	<u>Year</u>	<u>Base Amount</u>
2000*	\$4,500,000,000	2010	\$8,139,000,000
2001*	5,000,000,000	2011	8,139,000,000
2002*	6,500,000,000	2012	8,139,000,000
2003*	6,500,000,000	2013	8,139,000,000
2004*	8,000,000,000	2014	8,139,000,000
2005*	8,000,000,000	2015	8,139,000,000
2006*	8,000,000,000	2016	8,139,000,000
2007*	8,000,000,000	2017	8,139,000,000
2008	8,139,000,000	Thereafter	9,000,000,000
2009	8,139,000,000		

\* The 2000 through 2007 Annual Payments have been made. However, subsequent adjustments to these Annual Payments may impact subsequent Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments.

The respective portion of each base amount applicable to each OPM is calculated by multiplying the base amount by the OPM's Relative Market Share during the preceding calendar year. The base annual payments in the above table will be increased by at least the minimum 3% Inflation Adjustment, adjusted by the Volume Adjustment, reduced by the Previously Settled States Reduction, and further adjusted by the other adjustments described below. Each SPM has Annual Payment and Strategic Contribution Payment obligations under the MSA (separate from the payment obligations of the OPMs) according to its market share. However, any SPM that became a party to the MSA within 90 days after it became effective pays only if its market share exceeds the higher of its 1998 market share or 125% of its 1997 market share.

**“Relative Market Share”** is defined as an OPM's percentage share of the number of cigarettes shipped by all OPMs in or to the 50 states, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico (defined hereafter as the **“United States”**), as measured by the OPM's reports of shipments to Management Science Associates, Inc. (or any successor acceptable to all the OPMs and a majority of the attorneys general of the Settling States who are also members of the NAAG executive committee). The term **“cigarette”** is defined in the MSA to mean any product that contains nicotine, is intended to be burned, contains tobacco and is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette and includes “roll-your-own” tobacco.

The base amounts shown in the table above are subject to the following adjustments applied in the following order:

- the Inflation Adjustment,
- the Volume Adjustment,

- the Previously Settled States Reduction,
- the Non-Settling States Reduction,
- the NPM Adjustment,
- the Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments,
- the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset, and
- the Offset for Claims-Over.

Application of these adjustments resulted in a material reduction of the Annual Payments made to the State from the scheduled base amounts of the Annual Payments made by the PMs in April of the years 2000 through 2007, as discussed below under the heading “— Payments Made to Date.”

### **Strategic Contribution Payments**

In addition, the OPMs are required to make Strategic Contribution Payments on April 15, 2008 and on April 15 of each year thereafter through 2017. The base amount of each Strategic Contribution Payment is \$861 million. The respective portion of each base amount applicable to each OPM is calculated by multiplying the base amount by the OPM’s Relative Market Share during the preceding calendar year. The SPMs will be required to make Strategic Contribution Payments in accordance with formula provided for Annual Payments. See “— Overview of Payments by Participating Manufacturers.”

The base amounts of the Strategic Contribution Payments are subject to the following adjustments, applied in the following order:

- the Inflation Adjustment
- the Volume Adjustment
- the Non-Settling States Reduction
- the NPM Adjustment
- the Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments
- the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset
- the Offset for Claims-Over

### **Adjustments to Payments**

The base amounts of the Initial Payments were, and the Annual Payments shown in the tables above and the Strategic Contribution Payments are, subject to certain adjustments to be applied sequentially and in accordance with formulas contained in the MSA.

*Inflation Adjustment.* The base amounts of the Annual Payments and the Strategic Contribution Payments are increased each year to account for inflation. The increase in each year will be 3% or a percentage equal to the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index (the “**CPI**”) (or such other similar measures as may be agreed to by the Settling States and the PMs) for the preceding year, whichever is greater (the “**Inflation Adjustment**”). The inflation adjustment percentages are compounded annually on a cumulative basis beginning in 1999 and were first applied in 2000.

*Volume Adjustment.* Each of the Initial Payments was, and each of the Annual Payments and the Strategic Contribution Payments, if any, are increased or decreased by an adjustment which accounts for fluctuations in the number of cigarettes shipped by the OPMs in or to the United States (the “**Volume Adjustment**”).

If the aggregate number of cigarettes shipped in or to the United States by the OPMs in any given year (the “**Actual Volume**”) is greater than 475,656,000,000 cigarettes (the “**Base Volume**”), the base amount allocable to the OPMs is adjusted to equal the base amount (in the case of Annual Payments and Strategic

Contribution Payments, after application of the Inflation Adjustment) multiplied by a ratio, the numerator of which is the Actual Volume and the denominator of which is the Base Volume.

If the Actual Volume in a given year is less than the Base Volume, the base amount due from the OPMs (in the case of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments, after application of the Inflation Adjustment) is decreased by 98% of the percentage by which the Actual Volume is less than the Base Volume, multiplied by such base amount. If, however, the aggregate operating income of the OPMs from sales of cigarettes in the United States during the year (the “**Actual Operating Income**”) is greater than \$7,195,340,000, as adjusted for inflation in accordance with the Inflation Adjustment (the “**Base Operating Income**”), all or a portion of the volume reduction is added back (the “**Income Adjustment**”). The amount by which the Actual Operating Income of the OPMs exceeds the Base Operating Income is multiplied by the percentage of the allocable shares under the MSA represented by Settling States in which State-Specific Finality has been reached and divided by four, then added to the payment due. However, in no case will the amount added back due to the increase in operating income exceed the amount deducted due to the decrease in domestic volume. Any add-back due to an increase in Actual Operating Income will be allocated among the OPMs on a Pro Rata basis in accordance with their respective increases in Actual Operating Income over 1997 Base Operating Income.

*Previously Settled States Reduction.* The base amounts of the Annual Payments (as adjusted by the Inflation Adjustment and the Volume Adjustment, if any) are subject to a reduction reflecting the four states that had settled with the OPMs prior to the adoption of the MSA (Mississippi, Florida, Texas and Minnesota) (the “**Previously Settled States Reduction**”). The Previously Settled States Reduction reduces by 12.4500000% each applicable payment on or before December 31, 2007, by 12.2373756% each applicable payment between January 1, 2008 and December 31, 2017, and by 11.0666667% each applicable payment on or after January 1, 2018. The SPMs are not entitled to any reduction pursuant to the Previously Settled States Reduction. Initial Payments were not and Strategic Contribution Payments are not subject to the Previously Settled States Reduction.

*Non-Settling States Reduction.* In the event that the MSA terminates as to any Settling State, the remaining Annual Payments and the Strategic Contribution Payments, if any, due from the PMs shall be reduced to account for the absence of such state. This adjustment has no effect on the amounts to be collected by states which remain a party to the MSA, and the reduction is therefore not detailed.

*Non-Participating Manufacturers Adjustment.* The NPM Adjustment is based upon market share increases, measured by domestic sales of cigarettes by NPMs, and operates to reduce the payments of the PMs under the MSA in the event that the PMs incur losses in market share to NPMs during a calendar year as a result of the MSA. Three conditions must be met in order to trigger an NPM adjustment: (1) the aggregate market share of the PMs in any year must fall more than 2% below the aggregate market share held by those same PMs in 1997, (2) a nationally recognized firm of economic consultants must determine that the disadvantages experienced as a result of the provisions of the MSA were a significant factor contributing to the market share loss for the year in question, and (3) the Settling States in question must be proven to not have diligently enforced their Model Statutes. The “**NPM Adjustment**” is applied to the subsequent year’s Annual Payment and Strategic Contribution Payment and the decrease in total funds available as a result of the NPM Adjustment is then allocated on a Pro Rata basis among those Settling States that have been found (i) to not diligently enforce their Qualifying Statutes, or (ii) to have enacted a Model Statute or Qualifying Statute that is declared invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction. The 1997 market share percentage for the PMs, less 2%, is defined in the MSA as the “**Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share.**” If the PMs’ actual aggregate market share is between 0% and 16 ⅔% less than the Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share, the amounts paid by the PMs would be decreased by three times the percentage decrease in the PMs’ actual aggregate market share. If, however, the aggregate market share loss from the Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share is greater than 16 ⅔%, the NPM Adjustment will be calculated as follows:

$$\text{NPM Adjustment} = 50\% + [50\% / (\text{Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share} - 16\frac{2}{3}\%)] \times [\text{market share loss} - 16\frac{2}{3}\%]$$

Regardless of how the NPM Adjustment is calculated, it is always subtracted from, and may not exceed, the total Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments due from the PMs in any given year. The NPM Adjustment for any given year for a specific state cannot exceed the amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments due to such state. The NPM Adjustment applies only to the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments, and does not apply at all if the number of cigarettes shipped in or to the United States in the year prior to the year in which the payment is due by all manufacturers that were PMs prior to December 7, 1998 exceeds the number of cigarettes shipped in or to the United States by all such PMs in 1997.

The NPM Adjustment is also state-specific, in that a Settling State may avoid or mitigate the effects of an NPM Adjustment by enacting and diligently enforcing the Model Statute or a Qualifying Statute. Any Settling State that adopts and diligently enforces a Model Statute or Qualifying Statute is exempt from the NPM Adjustment. The State has adopted the Model Statute. The decrease in total funds available due to the NPM Adjustment is allocated on a Pro Rata basis among those Settling States that either (i) did not enact and diligently enforce the Model Statute or Qualifying Statute, or (ii) enacted a Model Statute or Qualifying Statute that is declared invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction. If a Settling State enacts and diligently enforces a Qualifying Statute that is the Model Statute but it is declared invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the NPM Adjustment for any given year will not exceed 65% of the amount of such state's allocated payment for the subsequent year. If a Qualifying Statute that is not the Model Statute is held invalid or unenforceable, however, such state is not entitled to any protection from the NPM Adjustment. Moreover, if a state adopts a Model Statute or a Qualifying Statute but then repeals it or amends it in such fashion that it is no longer a Qualifying Statute, then such state will no longer be entitled to any protection from the NPM Adjustment. At all times, a state's protection from the NPM Adjustment is conditioned upon the diligent enforcement of its Model Statute or Qualifying Statute, as the case may be. See "RISK FACTORS—Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA" above and "—MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes" below.

The MSA provides that if any Settling State resolves claims against any NPM that are comparable to any of the claims released in the MSA on overall terms more favorable to such NPM than the MSA does to the PMs, or relieves in any respect the obligation of any PM to make payments under the MSA, the terms of the MSA will be deemed modified to match the NPM settlement or such payment terms, but only with respect to the particular Settling State.

*Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments.* If the MSA Auditor receives notice of a miscalculation of an Initial Payment made by an OPM, an Annual Payment made by a PM within four years or a Strategic Contribution Payment made by a PM within four years, the MSA Auditor will recalculate the payment and make provisions for rectifying the error (the "**Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments**"). There are no time limits specified for recalculations although the MSA Auditor is required to determine amounts promptly. Disputes as to determinations by the MSA Auditor may be submitted to binding arbitration governed by the Federal Arbitration Act. In the event that mispayments have been made, they will be corrected through payments with interest (in the event of underpayments) or withholdings with interest (in the event of overpayments). Interest will be at the prime rate, except where a party fails to pay undisputed amounts or fails to provide necessary information readily available to it, in which case a penalty rate of prime plus 3% applies. If a PM disputes any required payment, it must determine whether any portion of the payment is undisputed and pay that amount for disbursement to the Settling States. The disputed portion is required to be paid into the Disputed Payments Account pending resolution of the dispute. Failure to pay such disputed amounts into the Disputed Payments Account can result in liability for interest at the penalty rate if the disputed amount was in fact properly due and owing. See "RISK FACTORS—Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA" herein.



*Litigating Releasing Parties Offset.* If any Releasing Party initiates litigation against a PM for any of the claims released in the MSA, the PM may be entitled to an offset against such PM's payment obligation under the MSA (the "**Litigating Releasing Parties Offset**"). A defendant PM may offset dollar-for-dollar any amount paid in settlement, stipulated judgment or litigated judgment against the amount to be collected by the applicable Settling State under the MSA only if the PM has taken all ordinary and reasonable measures to defend that action fully and only if any settlement or stipulated judgment was consented to by the state attorney general. The Litigating Releasing Parties Offset is state-specific. Any reduction in MSA payments as a result of the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset would apply only to the Settling State of the Releasing Party.

*Offset for Claims-Over.* If a Releasing Party pursues and collects on a released claim against an NPM or a retailer, supplier or distributor arising from the sale or distribution of tobacco products of any NPM or the supply of component parts of tobacco products to any NPM (collectively, the "**Non-Released Parties**"), and the Non-Released Party in turn successfully pursues a claim for contribution or indemnification against a Released Party (as defined herein), the Releasing Party must (i) reduce or credit against any judgment or settlement such Releasing Party obtains against the Non-Released Party the full amount of any judgment or settlement such Non-Released Party may obtain against the Released Party, and (ii) obtain from such Non-Released Party for the benefit of such Released Party a satisfaction in full of such Non-Released Party's judgment or settlement against the Released Party. In the event that such reduction or satisfaction in full does not fully relieve the Released Party of its duty to pay to the Non-Released Party, the PM is entitled to a dollar-for-dollar offset from its payment to the applicable Settling State (the "**Offset for Claims-Over**"). For purposes of the Offset for Claims-Over, any person or entity that is enumerated in the definition of Releasing Party set forth above is treated as a Releasing Party without regard to whether the applicable attorney general had the power to release claims of such person or entity. The Offset for Claims-Over is state-specific and would apply only to MSA payments owed to the Settling State of the Releasing Party.

### **Subsequent Participating Manufacturers**

SPMs are obligated to make Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments which are made at the same times as the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by OPMs. Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments for SPMs are calculated differently, however, from Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments for OPMs. Each SPM's payment obligation is determined according to its market share if, and only if, its "**Market Share**" (defined in the MSA to mean a manufacturer's share, expressed as a percentage, of the total number of cigarettes sold in the United States in a given year, as measured by excise taxes (or similar taxes, in the case of Puerto Rico)), for the year preceding the payment exceeds its "**Base Share,**" defined as the higher of its 1998 Market Share or 125% of its 1997 Market Share. If an SPM executes the MSA after February 22, 1999, its 1997 or 1998 Market Share, as applicable, is deemed to be zero. Fourteen of the current 44 SPMs signed the MSA on or before the February 22, 1999 deadline.

For each Annual Payment and Strategic Contribution Payment, each SPM is required to pay an amount equal to the base amount of the Annual Payment and the Strategic Contribution Payment owed by the OPMs, collectively, adjusted for the Volume Adjustment described above but prior to any other adjustments, reductions or offsets, multiplied by (i) the difference between that SPM's Market Share for the preceding year and its Base Share, divided by (ii) the aggregate Market Share of the OPMs for the preceding year. Other than the application of the Volume Adjustment, payments by the SPMs are also subject to the same adjustments (including the Inflation Adjustment), reductions and offsets as are the payments made by the OPMs, with the exception of the Previously Settled States Reduction.

Because the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by the SPMs are calculated in a manner different from the calculations for Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by the OPMs, a change in market share between the OPMs and the SPMs could cause the amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments required to be made by the PMs in the aggregate to be greater or less than the amount that would be payable if their market share remained the same.

In certain circumstances, an increase in the market share of the SPMs could increase the aggregate amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments because the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by the SPMs are not adjusted for the Previously Settled States Reduction. However, in other circumstances, an increase in the market share of the SPMs could decrease the aggregate amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments because the SPMs are not required to make any Annual Payments or Strategic Contribution Payments unless their market share increases above their Base Share, or because of the manner in which the Inflation Adjustment is applied to each SPM's payments.

### Payments Made to Date

As required, the OPMs have made all of the Initial Payments, the PMs have made the first eight Annual Payments and the MSA Escrow Agent has disbursed to the State its allocable portions thereof and certain other amounts under the MSA totaling \$2,701,993,168 to date. These amounts are not pledged to payment of the Series 2007 Bonds. Under the MSA, the computation of Initial Payments, Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments by the MSA Auditor is confidential and may not be used for purposes other than those stated in the MSA. The sole sources of information regarding the computation and amount of such payments are the reports and accountings furnished to the Authority by the State.

With respect to each of the Initial Payments and the Annual Payments made to date, the following table sets forth: (i) the State's allocable portion of the scheduled base amount of such payment under the MSA before taking into account any adjustments; and (ii) the State's allocable portion of the actual amount paid by the PMs under the MSA after all adjustments:

	<b>Base Payment Allocable to the State</b>	<b>The State's Actual Receipts*</b>
Up-Front Initial Payment	\$120,900,235	\$124,377,649
2000 Initial Payment	124,527,242	108,338,701
2000 Annual Payment	226,687,941	179,554,083
2001 Initial Payment	128,263,060	109,299,663
2001 Annual Payment	251,875,490	206,438,214
2002 Initial Payment	132,110,951	97,925,389
2002 Annual Payment	327,438,137	265,854,831
2003 Initial Payment	136,074,280	80,785,459
2003 Annual Payment	327,438,137	292,013,127
2004 Annual Payment	403,000,784	316,657,666
2005 Annual Payment	403,000,784	321,141,242
2006 Annual Payment	403,000,784	293,822,143
2007 Annual Payment	403,000,784	305,785,001

\* As reported by the State, amounts reflect the State's actual receipts after applicable adjustments or disputes. Any subsequent recalculation is reflected in the period that it impacted the State's receipts.

The terms of the MSA relating to such payments and various adjustments thereto are described above under the headings "Initial Payments" and "Annual Payments" and "Adjustment to Payments." The State has advised the Authority that both the Settling States and one or more of the PMs are disputing or have disputed the calculations of some of the Initial Payments for the years 2000 through 2003, and some Annual Payments for the years 2000 through 2007. In addition, subsequent revisions in the information delivered to the MSA Auditor (on which the MSA Auditor's calculations of the Initial and Annual Payments are based) have in the past and may in the future result in a recalculation of the payments shown above. Such revisions may also result in routine recalculation of future payments. No assurance can be given as to the magnitude of any such recalculation and such recalculation could trigger the Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments.

### **“Most Favored Nation” Provisions**

In the event that any non-foreign governmental entity other than the federal government should reach a settlement of released claims with PMs that provides more favorable terms to the governmental entity than does the MSA to the Settling States, the terms of the MSA will be modified to match those of the more favorable settlement. Only the non-economic terms may be considered for comparison.

In the event that any Settling State should reach a settlement of released claims with NPMs that provides more favorable terms to the NPMs than the MSA does to the PMs, or relieves in any respect the obligation of any PM to make payments under the MSA, the terms of the MSA will be deemed modified to match the NPM settlement or such payment terms, but only with respect to the particular Settling State. In no event will the adjustments discussed in this paragraph modify the MSA with regard to other Settling States. See “RISK FACTORS – Disputed or Recalculated Payments and Disputes under the Terms of the MSA” herein.

### **State-Specific Finality and Final Approval**

The MSA provides that payments could not be disbursed to the individual Settling States until the occurrence of each of two events: State-Specific Finality and Final Approval.

“**State-Specific Finality**” means, with respect to an individual Settling State, that (i) such state has settled its pending or potential litigation against the tobacco companies with a consent decree, which decree has been approved and entered by a court within the Settling State and (ii) the time for all appeals against the consent decree has expired. If any Settling State failed to achieve State Specific Finality on or before December 28, 2001, its participation in the MSA would automatically terminate. State-Specific Finality for the State was achieved on December 28, 1998. As of December 12, 2000 all Settling States had achieved State Specific Finality.

“**Final Approval**” marked the approval of the MSA by the Settling States and means the earlier of (i) the date on which at least 80% of the Settling States, both in terms of number and dollar volume entitlement to the proceeds of the MSA, have reached State-Specific Finality, or (ii) June 30, 2000. Final Approval was achieved on November 12, 1999.

### **Disbursement of Funds from Escrow**

The MSA Auditor makes all calculations necessary to determine the amounts to be paid by each PM, as well as the amounts to be disbursed to each of the Settling States. Not less than 40 days prior to the date on which any payment is due, the MSA Auditor must provide copies of the disbursement calculations to all parties to the MSA, who must within 30 days prior to the date on which such payment is due advise the other parties if it questions or challenges the calculations. The final calculation is due from the MSA Auditor not less than 15 days prior to the payment due date. The calculation is subject to further adjustments if previously missing information is received. In the event of a challenge to the calculations, the non-challenged part of a payment shall be processed in the normal course. Challenges will be submitted to binding arbitration. The information provided by the MSA Auditor to the State with respect to calculations of amounts to be paid by PMs is confidential under the terms of the MSA and may not be disclosed to the Authority or the Holders.

The MSA provides that disbursement of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments by the MSA Escrow Agent from the escrow accounts will occur within ten business days of receipt of the particular funds. The MSA Escrow Agent will disburse the funds due to, or as directed by, each Settling State in accordance with instructions received from that state.

## **Advertising and Marketing Restrictions; Educational Programs**

The MSA prohibits the PMs from certain advertising, marketing and other activities that may promote the sale of cigarettes and smokeless tobacco products (“**Tobacco Products**”). Under the MSA, the PMs are generally prohibited from targeting persons under 18 years of age within the Settling States in the advertising, promotion or marketing of Tobacco Products and from taking any action to initiate, maintain or increase smoking by underage persons within the Settling States. Specifically, the PMs may not: (i) use any cartoon characters in advertising, promoting, packaging or labeling Tobacco Products; (ii) distribute any free samples of Tobacco Products except in a restricted facility where the operator thereof is able to ensure that no underage persons are present; or (iii) provide to any underage person any item in exchange for the purchase of Tobacco Products or for the furnishing of proofs-of-purchase coupons. The PMs are also prohibited from placing any new outdoor and transit advertising, and are committed to remove any existing outdoor and transit advertising for Tobacco Products in the Settling States. Other examples of prohibited activities include, subject to limited exceptions: (i) the sponsorship of any athletic, musical, artistic or other social or cultural event in exchange for the use of tobacco brand names as part of the event; (ii) the making of payments to anyone to use, display, make reference to or use as a prop any Tobacco Product or item bearing a tobacco brand name in any motion picture, television show, theatrical production, music performance, commercial film or video game; (iii) the sale or distribution in the Settling States of any non-tobacco items containing tobacco brand names or selling messages; and (iv) the sale of packs of cigarettes containing fewer than 20 cigarettes until at least December 31, 2001.

In addition, the PMs have agreed under the MSA to provide funding for the organization and operation of a charitable foundation (the “**Foundation**”) and educational programs to be operated within the Foundation. The main purpose of the Foundation will be to support programs to reduce the use of Tobacco Products by underage persons and to prevent diseases associated with the use of Tobacco Products. On March 31, 1999, and on March 31 of each subsequent year for a period of nine years thereafter, each OPM was required to pay its Relative Market Share of \$25,000,000 (which is not subject to any adjustments, offsets or reductions pursuant to the MSA) to fund the Foundation. In addition, each OPM is required to pay its Relative Market Share of \$250,000,000 on March 31, 1999, and \$300,000,000 on March 31 of each of the subsequent four years to fund the Foundation. Furthermore, each PM may be required to pay its Relative Market Share of \$300,000,000 on April 15, 2004, and on April 15 of each year thereafter in perpetuity if, during the year preceding the year when payment is due, the sum of the Market Shares of the PMs equals or exceeds 99.05%. The Foundation may also be funded by contributions made by other entities.

## **Remedies upon the Failure of a PM to Make a Payment**

Each PM is obligated to pay when due the undisputed portions of the total amount calculated as due from it by the MSA Auditor’s final calculation. Failure to pay such portion shall render the PM liable for interest thereon from the date such payment is due to (but not including) the date paid at the prime rate published from time to time by The Wall Street Journal or, in the event The Wall Street Journal is no longer published or no longer publishes such rate, an equivalent successor reference to rate determined by the MSA Auditor, plus three percentage points. In addition, any Settling State may bring an action in court to enforce the terms of the MSA. Before initiating such proceeding, the Settling State is required to provide thirty (30) days’ written notice to the attorney general of each Settling State, to NAAG and to each PM of its intent to initiate proceedings.

## **Termination of Agreement**

The MSA is terminated as to a Settling State if (i) the MSA or consent decree in that jurisdiction is disapproved by a court and the time for an appeal has expired, the appeal is dismissed or the disapproval is affirmed, or (ii) the representations and warranties of the attorney general of that jurisdiction relating to the ability to release claims are breached or not effectively given. In addition, in the event that a PM enters bankruptcy and fails to perform its financial obligations under the MSA, the Settling States, by vote of at least

75% of the Settling States, both in terms of number and of entitlement to the proceeds of the MSA, may terminate certain financial obligations of that particular manufacturer under the MSA.

The MSA provides that if it is terminated, then the statute of limitations with respect to released claims will be tolled from the date the Settling State signed the MSA until the later of the time permitted by applicable law or one year from the date of termination and the parties will jointly move for the reinstatement of the claims and actions dismissed pursuant to the MSA. The parties will return to the positions they were in prior to the execution of the MSA.

### **Non-Severability**

By its terms, most of the major provisions of the MSA are not severable from its other terms. If a court materially modifies, renders unenforceable or finds unlawful any non-severable provision, the attorneys general of the Settling States and the OPMs are to attempt to negotiate substitute terms. If any OPM does not agree to the substitute terms, the MSA terminates in all Settling States affected by the court's ruling.

### **Amendments and Waivers**

The MSA may be amended by all PMs and Settling States affected by the amendment. The terms of any amendment will not be enforceable against any Settling State which is not a party to the amendment. Any waiver will be effective only against the parties to such waiver and only with respect to the breach specifically waived.

### **MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes**

*General.* The MSA sets forth the schedule and calculation of payments to be made by OPMs to the Settling States. As described above, the Annual Payments and the Strategic Contribution Payments are subject to, among other adjustments and reductions, the NPM Adjustment, which may reduce the amount of money that a Settling State receives pursuant to the MSA. The NPM Adjustment will reduce payments of a PM if such PM experiences certain losses of market share in the United States as a result of participation in the MSA.

Settling States may eliminate or mitigate the effect of the NPM Adjustment by taking certain actions, including the adoption and diligent enforcement of a statute, law, regulation or rule (a **“Qualifying Statute”**) which eliminates the cost disadvantages that PMs experience in relation to NPMs as a result of the provisions of the MSA. **“Qualifying Statute,”** as defined in Section IX(d)(2)(E) of the MSA, means a statute, regulation, law, and/or rule adopted by a Settling State that **“effectively and fully neutralizes the cost disadvantages that PMs experience vis-à-vis NPMs within such Settling State as a result of the provisions of the MSA.”** Exhibit T to the MSA sets forth a model form of Qualifying Statute (a **“Model Statute”**) that will qualify as a Qualifying Statute so long as the statute is enacted without modification or addition (except for particularized state procedural or technical requirements) and is not enacted in conjunction with any other legislative or regulatory proposal. The MSA also provides a procedure by which a Settling State may enact a statute that is not the Model Statute and receive a determination from a nationally recognized firm of economic consultants that such statute is a Qualifying Statute. See **“RISK FACTORS – Other Potential Payment Decreases under the Terms of the MSA – NPM Adjustment”** and **“RISK FACTORS – Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statute and Related Legislation”** herein.

If a Settling State continuously has a Qualifying Statute in full force and effect and diligently enforces the provisions of such statute, the MSA states that the payments allocated to such Settling State will not be subject to a reduction due to the NPM Adjustment. Furthermore, the MSA dictates that the aggregate amount of the NPM Adjustment is to be allocated, in a Pro Rata manner, among all Settling States that do not adopt and enforce a Qualifying Statute. In addition, if the NPM Adjustment allocated to a particular Settling State exceeds its allocated payment, that excess is to be reallocated equally among the remaining Settling States that have not adopted and enforced a Qualifying Statute. Thus, Settling States that do not adopt and enforce a

Qualifying Statute will receive reduced allocated payments if an NPM Adjustment is in effect. The MSA provides an economic incentive for most states to adopt and diligently enforce a Qualifying Statute. The State has enacted a Model Statute, which is a Qualifying Statute.

The MSA provides that if a Settling State enacts a Qualifying Statute that is a Model Statute and uses its best efforts to keep the Model Statute in effect, but a court invalidates the statute, then, although that state remains subject to the NPM Adjustment, the NPM Adjustment is limited to no more, on a yearly basis, than 65% of the amount of such state's allocated payment (including reallocations described above). The determination from a nationally recognized firm of economic consultants that a statute constitutes a Qualifying Statute is subject to reconsideration in certain circumstances and such statute may later be deemed not to constitute a Qualifying Statute. In the event that a Qualifying Statute that is not a Model Statute is invalidated or declared unenforceable by a court, or, upon reconsideration by a nationally recognized firm of economic consultants, is determined not to be a Qualifying Statute, the Settling State that adopted such statute will become fully subject to the NPM Adjustment. Moreover, if a state adopts a Model Statute or a Qualifying Statute but then repeals it or amends it in such fashion that it is no longer a Qualifying Statute, then such state will no longer be entitled to any protection from the NPM Adjustment. At all times, a state's protection from the NPM Adjustment is conditioned upon the diligent enforcement of its Model Statute or Qualifying Statute, as the case may be.

*Summary of the Model Statute.* One of the objectives of the MSA (as set forth in the Findings and Purpose section of the Model Statute) is to shift the financial burdens of cigarette smoking from the Settling States to the tobacco product manufacturers. The Model Statute provides that any tobacco manufacturer who does not join the MSA would be subject to the provisions of the Model Statute because, as provided under the MSA,

[i]t would be contrary to the policy of the state if tobacco product manufacturers who determine not to enter into such a settlement could use a resulting cost advantage to derive large, short-term profits in the years before liability may arise without ensuring that the state will have an eventual source of recovery from them if they are proven to have acted culpably. It is thus in the interest of the state to require that such manufacturers establish a reserve fund to guarantee a source of compensation and to prevent such manufacturers from deriving large, short-term profits and then becoming judgment-proof before liability may arise.

Accordingly, pursuant to the Model Statute, a tobacco manufacturer that is an NPM under the MSA must deposit an amount for each cigarette it sells into an escrow account (which amount increases on a yearly basis, as set forth in the Model Statute).

The State's Qualifying Statute defines "**units sold**" as the number of individual cigarettes sold in the State by the applicable tobacco product manufacturer (whether directly or through a distributor, retailer, or similar intermediary or intermediaries) during the year in question, as measured by excise taxes collected by the State on packs (or roll-your-own tobacco containers) bearing the excise tax stamp of the State.

The amounts deposited into the escrow accounts by the NPMs may only be used in limited circumstances. Although the NPM receives the interest or other appreciation on such funds, the principal may only be released (i) to pay a judgment or settlement on any claim of the type that would have been released by the MSA brought against such NPM by the applicable Settling State or any Releasing Party located within such state; (ii) with respect to Settling States that have enacted and have in effect Allocable Share Release Amendments (described below in the next paragraph), to the extent that the NPM establishes that the amount it was required to deposit into the escrow account was greater than the total payments that such NPM would have been required to make if it had been a PM under the MSA (as determined before certain adjustments or offsets)

or, with respect to Settling States that do not have in effect such Allocable Share Release Amendments, to the extent that the NPM establishes that the amount it was required to deposit into the escrow account was greater than such state's allocable share of the total payments that such NPM would have been required to make if it had been a PM under the MSA (as determined before certain adjustments or offsets); or (iii) 25 years after the date that the funds were placed into escrow (less any amounts paid out pursuant to (i) or (ii)).

In recent years legislation has been enacted in at least 44 of the Settling States, including the State, to amend the Qualifying or Model Statutes in those states by eliminating the reference to the allocable share and limiting the possible release an NPM may obtain under a Model Statute to the excess above the total payment that the NPM would have paid for its cigarettes had it been a PM (each an "**Allocable Share Release Amendment**").

If the NPM fails to place funds into escrow as required, the attorney general of the applicable Settling State may bring a civil action on behalf of the state against the NPM. If a court finds that an NPM violated the statute, it may impose civil penalties in the following amounts: (i) an amount not to exceed 5% of the amount improperly withheld from escrow per day of the violation and in an amount not to exceed 100% of the original amount improperly withheld from escrow; (ii) in the event of a knowing violation, an amount not to exceed 15% of the amount improperly withheld from escrow per day of the violation and in an amount not to exceed 300% of the original amount improperly withheld from escrow; and (iii) in the event of a second knowing violation, the court may prohibit the NPM from selling cigarettes to consumers within such state (whether directly or through a distributor, retailer or similar intermediary) for a period not to exceed two years. NPMs include foreign tobacco manufacturers that intend to sell cigarettes in the United States that do not themselves engage in an activity in the United States but may not include the wholesalers of such cigarettes. However, enforcement of the Model Statute against such foreign manufacturers that do not do business in the United States may be difficult. See "RISK FACTORS — Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statutes and Related Legislation" herein.

*State's Qualifying Statute.* Both houses of the Ohio Legislature passed a Qualifying Statute, codified as Chapter 1346, Ohio Revised Code, which was signed by the Governor on June 30, 1999 and became effective on such date. Counsel to the OPMs confirmed that the OPMs will not dispute that the Ohio Qualifying Statute constitutes a Model Statute under the MSA.

On June 30, 2003, the State enacted an Allocable Share Release Amendment which became effective September 26, 2003 to amend the Qualifying Statute by eliminating the provision authorizing an NPM to obtain the release of the amount by which its annual escrow deposit exceeds the total payments that the NPM would have made as a PM for that year. Under the State's Allocable Share Release Amendment, an NPM would have been entitled to the release of its escrow deposit only to the extent that it exceeded the total amount that the NPM would have paid as a PM. A majority of the PMs, including all three OPM's had indicated in writing that in the event a Settling State enacted legislation substantially in the form of the Allocable Share Release Amendment, the Settling State's previously enacted Qualifying Statute would continue to constitute a Model Statute and a Qualifying Statute within the meaning of the MSA.

As discussed above under the caption "RISK FACTORS — Litigation Challenging the MSA, the Qualifying Statute and Related Legislation — *Grand River, Freedom Holdings* and Related Cases," the Southern District granted the plaintiffs' request for an injunction to enjoin the State of New York from enforcing its Allocable Share Release Amendment.

*Complementary Legislation.* Pursuant to the State's Complementary Legislation, each tobacco product manufacturer whose cigarettes are sold in the State is required to annually certify that (i) it is a PM or an NPM and (ii) it is in full compliance with the State's Qualifying Statute. The State's administrative code allows the Attorney General to impose quarterly rather than annual filing requirements and payment obligations on certain NPMs, including those NPMs which are new, have extensive cigarette sales, or which the Attorney General reasonably believes might not make the required annual payment. No cigarette tax stamps may be

affixed to the cigarettes of any tobacco product manufacturers that do not make such certification. In addition to any other penalties that may be imposed by law, a civil penalty can be imposed on any tobacco product manufacturer who files a false certification or any cigarette tax agent who affixes a cigarette tax stamp in violation of the Complementary Legislation, and such cigarettes can be seized and are subject to forfeiture.

## **CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE DOMESTIC TOBACCO INDUSTRY**

*The following description of the domestic tobacco industry has been compiled from certain publicly available documents of the tobacco companies and their parent companies and certain publicly available analyses of the tobacco industry and other public sources. Certain of the companies file annual, quarterly, and certain other reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”). Such reports are available on the SEC’s website (www.sec.gov). The following information does not, nor is it intended to, provide a comprehensive description of the domestic tobacco industry, the business, legal and regulatory environment of the participants therein, or the financial performance or capability of such participants. The Authority has not independently verified this information and cannot and does not warrant the accuracy or completeness of this information. To the extent that reports submitted to the MSA Auditor by the PMs pursuant to the requirements of the MSA provide information that is pertinent to the following discussion, including market share information, the State’s Attorney General has not consented to the release of such information pursuant to the confidentiality provisions of the MSA. Prospective investors in the Series 2007 Bonds should conduct their own independent investigations of the domestic tobacco industry to determine if an investment in the Series 2007 Bonds is consistent with their investment objectives.*

Retail market share information, based upon shipments or sales as reported by the OPMs for purposes of their filings with the SEC, may be different from Relative Market Share for purposes of the MSA and the respective obligations of the PMs to contribute to Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments. The Relative Market Share information reported is confidential under the MSA. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT — Overview of Payments by the Participating Manufacturers; MSA Escrow Agent,” “— Annual Payments” and “— Strategic Contribution Payments” herein. Additionally, aggregate market share information, based upon shipments as reported by Loews Corporation and reflected in the chart herein entitled “Manufacturers’ Domestic Market Share Based on Shipments” is different from that utilized in the bond structuring assumptions. See “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION” herein.

MSA payments are computed based in part on cigarette shipments in or to the 50 states of the United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico. The Global Insight Consumption Report states that the quantities of cigarettes shipped and cigarettes consumed within the 50 states of the United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico may not match at any given point in time as a result of various factors, such as inventory adjustments, but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time.

**Retail market share information, based upon shipments or sales as reported by the OPMs for purposes of their filings with the SEC, may be different from Relative Market Share for purposes of the MSA and the respective obligations of the PMs to contribute to Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments. The Relative Market Share information reported is confidential under the MSA. See “SUMMARY OF THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT– Overview of Payments by the Participating Manufacturers; MSA Escrow Agent,” “–Annual Payments” and “–Strategic Contribution Payments” herein. Additionally, aggregate market share information, based upon shipments as reported by Loews Corporation and reflected in the chart below entitled “Manufacturers’ Domestic Market Share Based on Shipments” is different from that utilized in the bond structuring assumptions. See “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION” herein.**



## Industry Overview

According to publicly available documents of Loews Corporation, the parent company of Lorillard, the three leading manufacturers of tobacco products in the U.S. in 2006 collectively accounted for approximately 86.8% of the domestic cigarette retail industry when measured by shipment volume. The market for cigarettes in the U.S. divides generally into premium and discount sales, approximately 72.5% and 27.5%, respectively, measured by volume of all domestic cigarette sales for calendar year 2006, as reported by Loews Corporation.

Philip Morris USA Inc. (“Philip Morris”), a wholly-owned subsidiary of Altria Group, Inc. (“**Altria**”), is the largest tobacco company in the U.S. Prior to a name change on January 27, 2003, the Altria Group, Inc. was named Philip Morris Companies Inc. In its Form 10-K filed with the SEC for calendar year 2006, Altria reported that Philip Morris’s domestic retail market share for calendar year 2006 was 50.3% (based on sales), which represents an increase of 0.3 share points from its reported domestic retail market share (based on sales) of 50.0% for calendar year 2005. In its Form 10-Q filed with the SEC for the three months ended June 30, 2007, Altria reported that Philip Morris’s domestic retail market share for the quarter ended June 30, 2007 was 50.50% (based on sales), which is the same as its reported sales-based domestic retail market share for the comparable quarter of 2006. Philip Morris’s major premium brands are Marlboro, Virginia Slims and Parliament. Its principal discount brand is Basic. Marlboro is the largest selling cigarette brand in the U.S., with approximately 40.5% of the U.S. domestic retail share for calendar year 2006, up from 40.0% from calendar year 2005, and has been the world’s largest-selling cigarette brand since 1972. Philip Morris’s market share information is based on data from the IRI/Capstone Total Retail Panel (“**IRI/Capstone**”), which was designed to measure market share in retail stores selling cigarettes, but was not designed to capture Internet or direct mail sales.

Reynolds American Inc. (“**Reynolds American**”), is the second largest tobacco company in the U.S. Reynolds American became the parent company of R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company (“**Reynolds Tobacco**”) on July 30, 2004, following a transaction that combined Reynolds Tobacco and the U.S. operations of Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp. (“**B&W**”), previously the third largest tobacco company in the U.S., under the Reynolds Tobacco name. In connection with this merger, Reynolds American assumed all pre-merger liabilities, costs and expenses of B&W, including those related to the MSA and related agreements and with respect to pre-merger litigation of B&W. Reynolds American is also the parent company of Lane Limited, a manufacturer and marketer of specialty tobacco products, and Santa Fe Natural Tobacco Company, Inc., both of which are SPMs.

In its Form 10-K filed with the SEC for calendar year 2006, Reynolds American reported that its domestic retail market share for calendar year 2006 was 29.78% (measured by sales volume), which represents a decrease of 0.50 share points from the 30.28% for calendar year 2005 combined domestic retail market share of Reynolds Tobacco and B&W. In its Form 10-Q filed with the SEC for the three months ended June 30, 2007, Reynolds American reported that its’ domestic retail market share for the quarter ended June 30, 2007 was 29.14% (based on sales), which represents a decrease of 0.64 share points from its reported sales-based domestic retail market share for the comparable quarter of 2006. Reynolds American’s major premium brands are Camel, Kool, Winston and Salem. Its discount brands include Doral and Pall Mall. Reynolds American’s market share information is based on IRI/Capstone data.

Lorillard, Inc. (“**Lorillard**”), a wholly-owned subsidiary of Loews Corporation, is the third largest tobacco company in the U.S. On February 6, 2002, in an initial public offering, Loews Corporation issued shares of Carolina Group stock, which is intended to reflect the economic performance of Loews Corporation’s stock in Lorillard. Carolina Group is not a separate legal entity. In its Form 10-K filed with the SEC for calendar year 2006, Loews Corporation reported that Lorillard’s domestic retail market share for calendar year 2006 was 9.7% (measured by shipment volume), which represents an increase of 0.5 share points from its self-reported domestic retail market share of 9.2% (measured by shipment volume) for calendar year 2005. In its Form 10-Q filed with the SEC for the three months ended June 30, 2007, Loews Corporation reported that

Lorillard's domestic retail market share for the three months ended June 30, 2007 was 10.2% (measured by shipment volume), which represents an increase of 0.8 share points from the 9.4% domestic retail market share for the comparable quarter of 2006. Lorillard's principal brands are Newport, Kent, True, Maverick, and Old Gold. Its largest selling brand is Newport, which accounted for approximately 91.8% of Lorillard's unit sales for calendar year 2006. Market share data reported by Lorillard is based on data made available by Management Science Associates, Inc. ("MSAI"), an independent third-party database management organization that collects wholesale shipment data.

Based on the domestic retail market shares discussed above, the remaining share of the U.S. retail cigarette market for calendar year 2006 was held by a number of other domestic and foreign cigarette manufacturers, including Liggett Group, Inc. ("**Liggett**"), a wholly-owned subsidiary of Vector Group Ltd. ("**Vector**"). Liggett, the operating successor to the Liggett & Myers Tobacco Company, is the fourth largest tobacco company in the U.S. In its Form 10-K filed with the SEC for calendar year 2006, Vector reported that Liggett's domestic retail market share in 2006 was 2.4% (measured by shipment volume), which represents an increase of 0.2 share points from its self-reported 2005 domestic retail market share of 2.2%. All of Liggett's unit volume for 2006 was in the discount segment. Its brands include Liggett Select, Grand Prix, Eve, Pyramid and USA. In November 2001, Vector Group launched OMNI, which Vector Group claims is the first reduced-carcinogen cigarette that tastes, smokes and burns like other premium cigarettes. Additionally, Vector Group announced that it has introduced three varieties of a low nicotine cigarette in eight states, one of which is reported to be virtually nicotine free, under the brand name QUEST. Vector has determined to postpone the national launch of QUEST indefinitely. Liggett and Vector Group Ltd. are SPMs under the MSA.

Altria, Reynolds American, Lowes Corporation and Vector are not expected to file their 10Qs for the quarter ended September 30, 2007 until some time in November 2007. However, they are expected to release earnings and shipment volumes in October. On October 17, 2007 Altria Group released its third quarter results. These results reported a 50.6% market share and domestic shipment volume for the quarter of 47.1 billion down from 47.6 billion in the corresponding quarter in the prior year but above what had been estimated when adjusted for changes in trade inventories and calendar differences. No assurance can be given as to what the other PMS' reported shipment volumes will be. They may be materially below those reported for the corresponding quarter in the prior year.

## **Shipment Trends**

The following table sets forth the approximate comparative positions of the leading producers in the U.S. domestic tobacco industry, each of which is an OPM under the MSA, based upon cigarette shipments. Individual domestic OPM shipments are as reported in the publicly available documents of the OPMs. Total industry shipments are based on data made available by MSAI, as reported in publicly available documents of Loews Corporation.

Effective in June of 2004, MSAI changed the way it reports market share information to include actual units shipped by Commonwealth Brands, Inc. ("**CBI**"), an SPM who markets deep discount brands, and implemented a new model for estimating unit sales of smaller, primarily deep discount marketers. MSAI has restated its reports to reflect these changes as of January 1, 2001. As a result of these changes, market shares for the three OPMs are lower than had been reflected under MSAI's prior methodology and market shares for CBI and other low volume companies are higher. All industry volume and market share information herein reflects MSAI's revised reporting data. Despite the effects of MSAI's new estimation model for deep discount manufacturers, Lorillard management has indicated that it continues to believe that volume and market share information for the deep discount manufacturers are understated and, correspondingly, market share information for the larger manufacturers are overstated by MSAI.

**Manufacturers' Domestic Market Share Based on Shipments\***

<b>Manufacturer</b>	<b>2003</b>	<b>2004</b>	<b>2005</b>	<b>2006</b>
Philip Morris	46.7%	47.4%	48.6%	49.2%
Reynolds American**	29.6	28.8	28.1	27.9
Lorillard	8.6	8.8	9.2	9.7
Other***	15.1	15.0	14.1	13.2

\* Aggregate market share as reported by Loews Corporation (or as derived from such reports) is different from that utilized in the bond structuring assumptions and may differ from the market share information reported by the OPMs for purposes of their filings with the SEC.

\*\* Prior to July 2004, represents the combined market share of Reynolds Tobacco and B&W.

\*\*\* The market share based on shipments of the tobacco manufacturers, other than the OPMs, has been determined by subtracting the total retail market share percentages of the OPMs as reported in publicly available documents of Loews Corporation from 100%. Results may not total 100% due to rounding.

The following table sets forth the industry's cigarette shipments in the U.S. for the four years ended December 31, 2006. The MSA payments are calculated in part on shipments by the OPMs in or to the U.S. rather than consumption.

<b>Years Ended December 31</b>	<b>Shipments (Billions of Cigarettes)*</b>
2003	401.2
2004	394.5
2005	381.7
2006	372.5

\* As reported in SEC filings and other publicly available documents of the Loews Corporation, based on MSAI data.

The information in the foregoing tables, which has been obtained from publicly available documents but has not been independently verified, may differ materially from the amounts used by the MSA Auditor for calculating Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments under the MSA.

**Consumption Trends**

According to the September 28, 2007 estimates of the U.S. Department of Agriculture (the "USDA") Economic Research Service ("USDA-ERS"), smokers in the U.S. consumed 372 billion cigarettes in 2006, which represents a decrease of approximately 1.1% from the previous year. USDA-ERS attributes declining cigarette use to a combination of higher consumer costs due to tax and price increases, restrictions on where people can smoke and greater awareness of the health risks associated with smoking. Annual per capita consumption (per adult over 18) has dropped from 2,445 cigarettes in 1996 to 1,654 in 2006 (based on April 24, 2007 USDA-ERS). The following chart sets forth domestic cigarette consumption from 2001 through 2007, according to the USDA:

Years Ended December 31	U.S. Domestic Consumption (Billions of Cigarettes) *
2001	425
2002	415
2003	400
2004	388
2005	376
2006	372
2007	360**

\* USDA-ERS. The MSA Payments are calculated in part based on domestic industry shipments rather than consumption. The Global Insight Consumption Report states that the quantities of cigarettes shipped and cigarettes consumed within the 50 states of the U.S., the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico may not match at any given time as a result of various factors, such as inventory adjustments, but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time.

\*\* Estimated.

### **Distribution, Competition and Raw Materials**

Cigarette manufacturers sell tobacco products to wholesalers (including distributors), large retail organizations, including chain stores, and the armed services. They and their affiliates and licensees also market cigarettes and other tobacco products worldwide, directly or through export sales organizations and other entities with which they have contractual arrangements.

The market for tobacco products is highly competitive and is characterized by brand recognition and loyalty, with product quality, price, marketing and packaging constituting the significant methods of competition. Promotional activities include, in certain instances, allowances, the distribution of incentive items, price reductions and other discounts. Considerable marketing support, merchandising display and competitive pricing are generally necessary to maintain or improve a brand's market position. Increased selling prices and taxes on cigarettes have resulted in additional price sensitivity of cigarettes at the consumer level and in a proliferation of discounts and of brands in the discount segment of the market. Generally, sales of cigarettes in the discount segment are not as profitable as those in the premium segment.

The tobacco products of the cigarette manufacturers and their affiliates and licensees are advertised and promoted through various media, although television and radio advertising of cigarettes is prohibited in the U.S. The domestic tobacco manufacturers have agreed to additional marketing restrictions in the U.S. as part of the MSA and other settlement agreements. They are still permitted, however, to conduct advertising campaigns in magazines, at retail cigarette locations, in direct mail campaigns targeted at adult smokers, and in other adult media.

### **Grey Market**

A price differential exists between cigarettes manufactured for sale abroad and cigarettes manufactured for U.S. sale. Consequently, a domestic grey market has developed in cigarettes manufactured for sale abroad, but instead diverted for domestic sales that compete with cigarettes manufactured for domestic sale. The U.S. federal government and all states, except Massachusetts, have enacted legislation prohibiting the sale and distribution of grey market cigarettes. In addition, Reynolds American has reported that it has taken legal action against certain distributors and retailers who engage in such practices.

### **Regulatory Issues**

*Regulatory Restrictions and Legislative Initiatives.* The tobacco industry is subject to a wide range of laws and regulations regarding the marketing, sale, taxation and use of tobacco products imposed by local, state, federal and foreign governments. Various state governments have adopted or are considering, among other things, legislation and regulations that would increase their excise taxes on cigarettes, restrict displays

and advertising of tobacco products, establish ignition propensity standards for cigarettes, raise the minimum age to possess or purchase tobacco products, ban the sale of “flavored” cigarette brands, require the disclosure of ingredients used in the manufacture of tobacco products, impose restrictions on smoking in public and private areas, restrict the sale of tobacco products directly to consumers or other unlicensed recipients, including over the Internet, and charging state employees who smoke higher health insurance premiums than non-smoking state employees. Five states, Alabama, Georgia, Idaho, Kentucky and West Virginia, charge higher health insurance premiums to state employee smokers than non-smokers, and a number of states have implemented legislation that allows employers to provide incentives to employees who do not smoke. Several large corporations, including Meijer Inc., Gannett Co., American Financial Group Inc., PepsiCo Inc. and Northwest Airlines, are now charging smokers higher premiums. In addition, the U.S. Congress may consider legislation further increasing the federal excise tax, regulation of cigarette manufacturing and sale by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the “FDA”), amendments to the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act to require additional warnings, reduction or elimination of the tax deductibility of advertising expenses, implementation of a national standard for “fire-safe” cigarettes, regulation of the retail sale of cigarettes over the Internet and in other non-face-to-face retail transactions, such as by mail order and telephone, and banning the delivery of cigarettes by the U.S. Postal Service. In March 2005, for example, bipartisan legislation was reintroduced in the U.S. Congress which would provide the FDA with authority to broadly regulate tobacco products. A bi-partisan group of lawmakers, Massachusetts Senator Edward M. Kennedy, Texas Senator John Cornyn, California Representative Henry Waxman and Virginia Representative Tom Davis, on February 15, 2007 introduced the Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act, legislation aimed at placing tobacco products under the authority of the FDA. The bill would give the FDA broad regulatory authority over the sale, distribution, and advertising of tobacco products. Such legislation would, among other anticipated changes, permit the FDA to regulate tar and other ingredients in cigarettes, permit the FDA to strengthen warning labels, reduce nicotine levels in tobacco products, police false or misleading advertising and marketing aimed at children and would require manufacturers to provide the FDA with lists of ingredients and additives in their products, including nicotine. Philip Morris has indicated its strong support for this legislation. The Senate Health Committee approved the legislation on August 1, 2007 by a 13 to 8 vote, including an amendment requiring that all cigarette packages be half-covered by warning labels with colored graphic. A committee of the House of Representatives began holding hearings on October 3, 2007 on whether the FDA should be given the power to regulate tobacco products.

In 1964, the Report of the Advisory Committee to the Surgeon General of the U.S. Public Health Service concluded that cigarette smoking was a health hazard of sufficient importance to warrant appropriate remedial action. Since 1966, federal law has required a warning statement on cigarette packaging. Since 1971, television and radio advertising of cigarettes has been prohibited in the U.S. Cigarette advertising in other media in the U.S. is required to include information with respect to the “tar” and nicotine yield of cigarettes, as well as a warning statement.

During the past four decades, various laws affecting the cigarette industry have been enacted. In 1984, Congress enacted the Comprehensive Smoking Education Act. Among other things, the Smoking Education Act:

- establishes an interagency committee on smoking and health that is charged with carrying out a program to inform the public of any dangers to human health presented by cigarette smoking;
- requires a series of four health warnings to be printed on cigarette packages and advertising on a rotating basis;
- increases type size and area of the warning required in cigarette advertisements; and

- requires that cigarette manufacturers provide annually, on a confidential basis, a list of ingredients added to tobacco in the manufacture of cigarettes to the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

Since the initial report in 1964, the Secretary of Health, Education and Welfare (now the Secretary of Health and Human Services) and the Surgeon General have issued a number of other reports which find the nicotine in cigarettes addictive and link cigarette smoking and exposure to cigarette smoke with certain health hazards, including various types of cancer, coronary heart disease and chronic obstructive lung disease. These reports have recommended various governmental measures to reduce the incidence of smoking. In 1992, the federal Alcohol, Drug Abuse and Mental Health Act was signed into law. This act requires states to adopt a minimum age of 18 for purchases of tobacco products and to establish a system to monitor, report and reduce the illegal sale of tobacco products to minors in order to continue receiving federal funding for mental health and drug abuse programs. Federal law prohibits smoking in scheduled passenger aircraft, and the U.S. Interstate Commerce Commission banned smoking on buses transporting passengers interstate. Certain common carriers have imposed additional restrictions on passenger smoking.

*State and Local Regulation; Private Restrictions.* Legislation imposing various restrictions on public smoking also has been enacted in all of the states and many local jurisdictions. A number of states have enacted legislation designating a portion of increased cigarette excise taxes to fund either anti-smoking programs, healthcare programs or cancer research. In addition, educational and research programs addressing healthcare issues related to smoking are being funded from industry payments made or to be made under the MSA.

Several states have enacted or have proposed legislation or regulations that would require cigarette manufacturers to disclose the ingredients used in the manufacture of cigarettes. In September 2003, the Massachusetts Department of Public Health (“**MDPH**”) announced its intention to hold public hearings on amendments to its tobacco regulations. The proposed regulations would delete any ingredients-reporting requirement. (The U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit previously affirmed a ruling that the Massachusetts ingredient-reporting law was unconstitutional.) MDPH has proposed to inaugurate extensive changes to its regulations requiring tobacco companies to report nicotine yield rating for cigarettes according to methods prescribed by MDPH. Because MDPH withdrew its notice for a public hearing in November 2003, it is impossible to predict the final form any new regulations will take or the effect they will have on the PMs.

On May 21, 1999, the OPMs filed lawsuits in the U.S. District Court for the District of Massachusetts to enjoin implementation of certain Massachusetts attorney general regulations concerning the advertisement and display of tobacco products. The regulations went beyond those required by the MSA, and banned outdoor advertising of tobacco products within 1,000 feet of any school or playground, as well as any indoor tobacco advertising placed lower than five feet in stores within the 1,000-foot zone. The district court ruled against the industry on January 25, 2000, and the U.S. Court of Appeals for the First Circuit affirmed. The U.S. Supreme Court granted the industry’s petition for writ of certiorari on January 8, 2001, and ruled in favor of RJR Tobacco and the rest of the industry on June 28, 2001. The U.S. Supreme Court found that the regulations were preempted by the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act, which precludes states from imposing any requirement or prohibition based on smoking and health with respect to the advertising or promotion of cigarettes labeled in conformity with federal law.

In June 2000, the New York state legislature passed legislation charging New York’s Office of Fire Prevention and Control (“**OFPC**”) with developing standards for “fire-safe” or self-extinguishing cigarettes. On December 31, 2003, OFPC issued a final standard with accompanying regulations that requires all cigarettes offered for sale in New York State after June 28, 2004 to achieve specified test results when placed on 10 layers of filter paper in controlled laboratory conditions. Reynolds American’s operating companies that sell cigarettes in New York State have provided written certification to both the OFPC and the Office of the Attorney General for New York that each of their cigarette brand styles currently sold in New York has been tested and has met the performance standards set forth in the OFPC’s regulations. Design and manufacturing

changes were made for cigarettes manufactured for sale in New York to comply with the standard. Similar laws have been enacted in Alaska, California, Connecticut, Delaware, Illinois, Iowa, Kentucky, Louisiana, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Montana, New Hampshire, New Jersey, North Carolina, Oregon, Rhode Island, Texas, Utah and Vermont. A number of other states are also considering similar legislation. Varying standards from state to state could have an adverse effect on the PMs.

According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, all of the states and the District of Columbia now require smoke-free indoor air to some degree or in some public places. The most comprehensive bans have been enacted since 1998 in 26 states and a number of large cities. In 1998, California imposed a comprehensive smoking ban for all indoor workplaces, including restaurants and bars. Delaware followed suit in 2002, and in 2003, Connecticut, Maine, New York, and Florida passed similar comprehensive bans, as did the cities of Boston and Dallas. Since then, Arizona, Arkansas, Colorado, the District of Columbia, Hawaii, Illinois, Louisiana, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Montana, Nevada, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New Mexico, Ohio, Oregon, Rhode Island, Tennessee, Utah, Vermont, Washington, and Puerto Rico established similar bans, as did the cities of Baltimore, Chicago, Houston, and Philadelphia. The New Mexico, Washington State and Chicago restrictions are stronger than those in other states as they include a ban on outdoor smoking within 25 feet of the entrances of restaurants and other public places. It is expected that these restrictions will continue to proliferate. For example, in September 2007, two states, Michigan and Wisconsin, were considering legislation which would enact comprehensive bans.

The American Nonsmokers' Rights Foundation documents clean indoor air ordinances by local governments throughout the U.S. As of October 1, 2007, there were 2,650 municipalities with local laws that restrict where smoking is allowed, including 1,109 municipalities that restrict smoking in one or more outdoor areas. Of these, 507 local governments required workplaces to be 100% smoke-free, and 100% smoke-free conditions were required for restaurants by 461 governments, and for bars by 344. The number of such ordinances grew rapidly beginning in the 1980s, from less than 200 in 1985 to over 1,000 by 1993, and 1,500 by 2001. The ordinances completely restricting smoking in restaurants and bars have generally appeared in the past decade. In 1993 only 13 municipalities prohibited all smoking in restaurants, and 6 in bars. These numbers grew to 49 for restaurants and 32 for bars in 1998, and doubled again by 2001, to 100 and 74, respectively.

The first extensive outdoor smoking restrictions were instituted in March 2006 in Calabasas, California. The City of Oakland and California municipalities of Belmont, Beverly Hills, Dublin, El Cajon, Emeryville and Santa Monica have also established extensive outdoor restrictions, as have Davis County and the City of Murray in Utah. Burbank, California, is expected to follow suit. In the most restrictive version to date, the Belmont City Council has approved an ordinance which restricts smoking anywhere in the city except for single-family detached homes. Many landlords and condominium associations have also established smoke-free apartment policies. The Massachusetts Department of Public Health is conducting a survey of landlords, tenants, and condominium associations to assess the feasibility of making residences smoke-free.

In the past year, San Diego City and Los Angeles, Santa Cruz and San Mateo Counties have banned smoking at beaches and parks, joining over 30 other Southern California cities in prohibiting smoking on the beach. The beach restrictions may soon become statewide. Chicago approved beach and parkground smoking restrictions in October 2007. Nassau County, New York and Volusia County, Florida are also considering park and beach bans. At least 50 colleges nationwide now prohibit smoking everywhere on campus. California and Nevada have banned smoking in state prisons. Arkansas, Louisiana, Puerto Rico, Texas and Rockland County, New York, now prohibit smoking in a car where there are children present, and similar legislation has been proposed in Arizona, California, Connecticut, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Massachusetts, Montana, New Jersey, New York, Oregon, Rhode Island, South Carolina, Utah, West Virginia, and Bangor, Maine.

In June 2006, the Office of the Surgeon General released a report, "The Health Consequences of Involuntary Exposure to Tobacco Smoke." It is a comprehensive review of health effects of involuntary

exposure to tobacco smoke. It concludes definitively that secondhand smoke causes disease and adverse respiratory effects. It also concludes that policies creating completely smoke-free environments are the most economical and efficient approaches to providing protection to non-smokers. On September 18, 2007, the Office of the Surgeon General released the report, "Children and Secondhand Smoke Exposure," which concludes that many children are exposed to secondhand smoke in the home and that establishing a completely smoke-free home is the only way to eliminate secondhand smoke exposure in that setting. These reports are expected to strengthen arguments in favor of further smoking restrictions across the country. Further, the California Environmental Protection Agency Air Resources Board declared environmental tobacco smoke to be a toxic air contaminant in 2006.

In August 2007, the President's Cancer Panel issued a report which included a series of recommendations to reduce Americans' cancer risk. These include FDA regulation of the tobacco industry, increased federal and state excise taxes on tobacco, increased funding of tobacco prevention and cessation programs, and the enactment in all states of smoke-free laws which cover restaurants and bars.

*Smokeless Tobacco Products.* Smokeless tobacco products have been available for centuries. As cigarette consumption expanded in the last century, the use of smokeless products declined. Chewing tobacco and snuff are the most significant components. Snuff is a ground or powdered form of tobacco that is placed under the lip to dissolve. It delivers nicotine effectively to the body. Moist snuff is both smoke-free and can be spit-free. According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, chewing tobacco and dry snuff consumption has been declining in the U.S. in this decade, but moist snuff consumption has increased at an annual rate of more than 5% since 2002, and by 10.4% in 2006, when over 5 million consumers purchased 1.1 billion cans. Snuff is now being marketed to adult cigarette smokers as an alternative to cigarettes. UST Inc., the largest producer of moist smokeless tobacco, is explicitly targeting adult smoker conversion in its growth strategy. The industry is responding to both the proliferation of indoor smoking bans and to a perception that smokeless use is a less harmful mode of tobacco and nicotine usage than cigarettes. In 2006, the three largest U.S. cigarette manufacturers entered the market. Philip Morris introduced a snuff product, Taboka, Reynolds American acquired Conwood Company, L.P., the nation's second largest smokeless-tobacco manufacturer, and introduced Camel Snus, a snuff product, and Lorillard entered into an agreement with Swedish Match North America to develop smokeless products in the United States. Product development has continued in 2007, most recently with the introduction by Philip Morris of a Snus product. In October 2007, Altria announced that it would accelerate the development of snuff and less-harmful cigarettes to counter a decline in smoking.

Advocates of the use of snuff as part of a tobacco harm reduction strategy point to Sweden, where 'snus,' a moist snuff manufactured by Swedish Match, use has increased sharply since 1970, and where cigarette smoking incidence among males has declined to levels well below that of other countries. A review of the literature on the Swedish experience concludes that snus, relative to cigarettes, delivers lower concentrations of some harmful chemicals, and does not appear to cause cancer or respiratory diseases. They conclude that snus use appears to have contributed to the unusually low rates of smoking among Swedish men. The Sweden experience is unique, even with respect to its Northern European neighbors. It is not clear whether it could be replicated elsewhere. Public health advocates in the U.S. emphasize that smokeless use results in both nicotine dependence and to increased risks of oral cancer among other health concerns. Snuff use is also often criticized as a gateway to cigarette use.

*Voluntary Private Sector Regulation.* In recent years, many employers have initiated programs restricting or eliminating smoking in the workplace and providing incentives to employees who do not smoke, including charging higher health insurance premiums to employees who smoke, and many common carriers have imposed restrictions on passenger smoking more stringent than those required by governmental regulations. Similarly, many restaurants, hotels and other public facilities have imposed smoking restrictions or prohibitions more stringent than those required by governmental regulations, including outright bans.

*International Agreements.* On March 1, 2003, the member nations of the World Health Organization concluded four years of negotiations on an international treaty, the Framework Convention on Tobacco



Control (the “FCTC”), aimed at imposing greater legal liability on tobacco manufacturers, banning advertisements of tobacco products (especially to youths), raising taxes and requiring safety labeling and comprehensive listing of ingredients on packaging, among other things. The FCTC entered into force on February 27, 2005 for the first forty countries, including the U.S., that had ratified the treaty prior to November 30, 2004. As of April 27, 2005, 168 countries signed and 64 countries ratified the FCTC. On June 29, 2004 the FCTC was closed for signature, but there is no deadline for ratification. It has been reported that as of December 20, 2006, at least 191 countries had ratified the FCTC.

*Excise Taxes.* Cigarettes are also currently subject to substantial excise taxes in the U.S. The federal excise tax has remained constant, at \$0.39 per pack, since 2002. The U.S. Congress has adopted legislation which would raise the federal excise tax. In August, the Senate and House of Representatives passed bills with \$0.61 and \$0.45 increases to the tax, respectively. The increase to the federal excise tax is designed to provide funding for the State Children’s Health Insurance Program (“SCHIP”). On September 25, 2007, the House of Representatives passed a new bill with a \$0.61 increase by a vote of 265 to 159. On September 27, 2007, the Senate voted 67 to 29 to reauthorize and expand SCHIP funded in part by a \$0.61 increase in the federal excise tax on cigarettes. On October 3, 2007, the President vetoed the bill, and on October 18, 2007, the House of Representatives failed to override the Presidential veto. It has been reported that Congress will consider revised legislation covering SCHIP, possibly as early as October 25, 2007. It is not possible at this time to predict with certainty the outcome of this legislation or any future legislative action or its effect upon the level of federal excise taxes on cigarettes.

All states, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico currently impose taxes at levels ranging from \$0.07 per pack in South Carolina to \$2.575 per pack in New Jersey. In addition, certain municipalities also impose an excise tax on cigarettes ranging up to \$1.50 per pack in New York City and \$2.68 per pack in Chicago, which includes the Cook County tax of \$2.00 per pack. According to the Global Insight Consumption Report, excise tax increases were enacted in 20 states and in New York City in 2002, in 13 states in 2003, in 11 states in 2004, and in 8 states (Kentucky, Maine, Minnesota, New Hampshire, North Carolina, Ohio, Virginia, and Washington) in 2005. The increase in Minnesota was not a tax increase, but rather the imposition of a “Health Impact Fee,” which has the same effect on consumer prices. Global Insight’s Consumption Report considers any such fees as equivalent to excise taxes. In 2006, Texas passed a budget that raised the state excise tax by \$1.00 in January 2007, and Hawaii, New Jersey, North Carolina and Vermont enacted legislation which raised excise taxes. In the November 2006 elections, referenda passed in Arizona and South Dakota raising excise taxes. In 2007, Connecticut, Delaware, Iowa, Indiana, New Hampshire and Tennessee have increased excise taxes. These actions increased the average state excise tax to \$1.074 per pack in July 2007. It is expected that other states will also enact increases in 2007 and in future years. Wisconsin is expected to approve a \$1.25 increase and Maryland and Illinois are considering excise tax increases, of \$1.00 and \$0.84, respectively. In Oregon, voters will decide in November on an \$0.81 increase. After California voters rejected a ballot initiative on November 7, 2006 that would have raised the tax from \$0.87 to \$3.47 per pack, California lawmakers introduced three new smoking related bills that would: (a) raise the tax by \$1.90 per pack; (b) impose a fine of \$100 on anyone smoking in a car with a child under the age of 18 present; and (c) ban smoking in state parks and on beaches.

As mentioned above, at least one state, Minnesota (a Previously-Settled State), currently imposes a 75-cent “health impact fee” on tobacco manufacturers for each pack of cigarettes sold. The purpose of this fee is to recover the state’s health costs related to or caused by tobacco use. The imposition of this fee was contested by Philip Morris and upheld by the Minnesota Supreme Court as not in violation of Minnesota’s settlement with the tobacco companies. On February 20, 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court declined to hear Philip Morris’s appeal of that decision. See “RISK FACTORS—Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA–NPM Adjustment” herein.

These tax increases and other legislative or regulatory measures could severely increase the cost of cigarettes, limit or prohibit the sale of cigarettes, make cigarettes less appealing to smokers or reduce the addictive qualities of cigarettes.

## Civil Litigation

The tobacco industry has been the target of litigation for many years. Both individual and class action lawsuits have been brought by or on behalf of smokers alleging that smoking has been injurious to their health, and by non-smokers alleging harm from environmental tobacco smoke, also known as “secondary smoke.” Plaintiffs in these actions seek compensatory and punitive damages aggregating billions of dollars. Philip Morris, for example, has reported that, as of August 1, 2007, there were ten cases on appeal in which verdicts were returned against Philip Morris, including (i) a \$74 billion (out of total a verdict of \$145 billion) punitive damages judgment against Philip Morris in the *Engle* class action, which has been overturned on appeal by the Florida Supreme Court; and (ii) a compensatory and punitive damages verdict totaling approximately \$10.1 billion in the *Price* case in Illinois. The Supreme Court of Illinois subsequently reversed the verdict in *Price* and instructed the trial court to dismiss the case in its entirety. In January 2006 the plaintiffs filed a motion asking the court to reconsider its decision. On May 5, 2006, the Supreme Court of Illinois denied this motion. In October 2006, plaintiffs filed a petition for certiorari with the U.S. Supreme Court. On November 27, 2006, the U.S. Supreme Court denied plaintiff’s petition for certiorari. In December 2006, the trial court entered an order of dismissal. In January 2007, the plaintiff filed a motion to vacate the dismissal, which motion is pending. It has been reported that on May 2, 2007 the state trial court judge in the *Price* case asked the Illinois Fifth District Appellate Court whether he has the authority to reopen the *Price* case, citing possible new evidence presented in a case pending before the U.S. Supreme Court. It has also been reported that on May 17, 2007, Philip Morris petitioned the Illinois Supreme Court for an order that would prevent the trial court judge from reopening the *Price* case. See “–Class Action Lawsuits” below. The MSA does not release PMs from liability in either individual or class action cases. Healthcare cost recovery cases have also been brought by governmental and non-governmental healthcare providers seeking, among other things, reimbursement for healthcare expenditures incurred in connection with the treatment of medical conditions allegedly caused by smoking. The PMs are also exposed to liability in these cases, because the MSA only settled healthcare cost recovery claims of the Settling States. Litigation has also been brought against certain PMs and their affiliates in foreign countries.

Pending claims related to tobacco products generally fall within four categories: (1) smoking and health cases alleging personal injury and purporting to be brought on behalf of a class of individual plaintiffs, including cases brought pursuant to a 1997 settlement agreement involving claims by flight attendants alleging injury from exposure to ETS in aircraft cabins (the *Broin II* cases, discussed below); (2) smoking and health cases alleging personal injury brought on behalf of individual plaintiffs; (3) healthcare cost recovery cases brought by governmental (both domestic and foreign) and non-governmental plaintiffs seeking reimbursement for healthcare expenditures allegedly caused by cigarette smoking and/or disgorgement of profits; and (4) other tobacco-related litigation, including class action suits alleging that the use of the terms “Lights” and “Ultra Lights” constitute deceptive and unfair trade practices, suits by former asbestos manufacturers seeking contribution or reimbursement for amounts expended in connection with the defense and payment of asbestos claims that were allegedly caused in whole or in part by cigarette smoking, and various antitrust suits and suits by foreign governments seeking to recover damages for taxes lost as a result of the allegedly illegal importation of cigarettes into their jurisdictions. Plaintiffs seek various forms of relief, including compensatory and punitive damages, treble/multiple damages and other statutory damages and penalties, creation of medical monitoring and smoking cessation funds, disgorgement of profits, legal fees, and injunctive and equitable relief. Defenses raised in these cases include lack of proximate cause, statutes of limitation and preemption by the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act. A recent California Supreme Court decision (*Grisham v. Philip Morris*) regarding a statute of limitations issue in an individual case has held that the plaintiff need not have filed suit when she realized she was addicted, thus permitting her lawsuit to go forward after a lower court had held her claim to be time-barred. This decision could lead to an increase in individual lawsuits in California.

According to Altria, since January 1999 and through August 1, 2007, verdicts have been returned in 45 smoking and health cases, Lights/Ultra Lights cases and healthcare cost recovery cases in which Philip Morris was a defendant. Verdicts in favor of Philip Morris and other tobacco industry defendants were

returned in 28 of these cases. Verdicts in favor of plaintiffs were returned in 17 cases. Appeals or post-trial motions by defendants and by plaintiffs are pending in many of these cases. Of the 17 cases in which verdicts were returned in favor of plaintiffs, the *Carter* case (discussed below) was the first to reach final resolution in March 2001, when the plaintiff received payments from a trust in the full amount of the judgment and Brown & Williamson's petition for review of the judgment against it was denied by the U.S. Supreme Court. In addition, eight of the 17 cases have reached final resolution with respect to Philip Morris. A \$17.8 million verdict against defendants in a healthcare cost recovery case in New York was reversed, and all claims were dismissed with prejudice in February 2005 in the *Blue Cross/Blue Shield* case. In October 2004, after exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid \$3.3 million in an individual smoking and health case in Florida (the Eastman case, discussed below). In March 2005, after exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid \$17 million in an individual smoking and health case in California (the *Henley* case, discussed below). Altria has reported that in December 2005, after exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid \$328,759 as its share of the judgment amount and interest in a flight attendant ETS case in Florida (the *French* case, discussed below) and will pay attorneys' fees yet to be determined. In addition, in February 2005, after exhausting all appeals, Reynolds Tobacco, due to its obligation to indemnify B&W, paid approximately \$9.1 million in the *Boerner* case (see below) and on June 17, 2005, after exhausting all appeals, Reynolds Tobacco paid a \$196,416 plus interest and costs judgment in an individual case in Kansas (the *Burton* case, discussed below). In March 2006, after exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid approximately \$82.5 million (including interest of approximately \$27 million) in an individual smoking and health case in California (the *Boeken* case, described below). In October 2006, after exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid approximately \$1.1 million in judgment, interest and attorneys' fees in an individual smoking and health case in Florida (the *Arnitz* case described below) and in January 2007, after exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid approximately \$1.1 million in judgment and interest in an individual smoking and health case in Missouri (the *Thompson* case described below).

*Class Action Lawsuits.* The MSA does not release the PMs from liability in class action lawsuits. Plaintiffs have brought claims as class actions on behalf of large numbers of individuals for damages allegedly caused by smoking, price fixing and consumer fraud. One OPM (Altria) has reported that, as of August 1, 2007, there were 32 such class actions pending against it in the U.S., as well as one in Brazil, four in Israel, four in Nigeria, one in Canada and one in Spain. Plaintiffs in class action smoking and health lawsuits allege essentially the same theories of liability against the tobacco industry as those in the individual lawsuits. Other class action plaintiffs allege consumer fraud or violations of consumer protection or unfair trade statutes. Plaintiffs historically have had limited success in obtaining class certification, a prerequisite to proceeding as a class action lawsuit, because of the individual circumstances related to each smoker's election to smoke and the individual nature of the alleged harm. One OPM (Altria) reports that class certification has been denied or reversed in 57 smoking and health class actions involving that OPM.

To date, plaintiffs have successfully maintained class certification in federal and state court class action cases in at least the following states: California, Florida, Illinois, Louisiana, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Missouri, New York, North Carolina, Ohio, Oregon, Washington, and West Virginia. One OPM (Reynolds) reports that 18 federal courts that have considered the issue, including two courts of appeals, have rejected class certification in smoking and health cases. Only two federal district courts have certified a smoker class action. See *In re Simon (II) Litigation* and *Schwab v. Philip Morris USA Inc.*, each discussed below. The class in the *Simon* case was subsequently dismissed by the plaintiffs after being decertified by the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

On September 6, 2000, in *In re Simon (II) Litigation*, lawyers for plaintiffs in ten tobacco-related cases pending in U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of New York filed suit in the same court (before Judge Weinstein) to consolidate the pending cases and seek certification of a class and subclasses to obtain compensatory and punitive damages from the tobacco industry defendants. The pending cases included individual and purported nationwide class action lawsuits alleging tobacco-related personal injuries, as well as healthcare cost recovery cases brought by union trust funds, an insurance plan and an asbestos fund. The suit sought to certify a nationwide class action to consolidate all punitive damage aspects of the pending cases for a single trial and to try the compensatory damage aspects of the pending claims separately. On September 19,

2002, Judge Weinstein certified a class to hear the punitive damages claims. The class consisted of all smokers diagnosed with a variety of illnesses, including lung cancer, emphysema and some forms of heart disease, after April 9, 1993. In May 2005, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, in a unanimous opinion, decertified the class. Plaintiffs' motion for rehearing en banc was denied on August 8, 2005, and the time for plaintiffs to petition the U.S. Supreme Court for further review has expired. On February 6, 2006, Judge Weinstein dismissed the case upon the plaintiffs' motion. He stayed the order for 30 days to allow potential plaintiffs who expressed interest in the case to receive notices and to protect their interest. On March 22, 2006, a final judgment was entered dismissing the case. Two of the 10 original cases, *Falise v. American Tobacco Co.*, and *H.K. Porter Company, Inc. v. The American Tobacco Company* were dismissed in June 2001 and July 2001, respectively. Other plaintiffs who would have been part of the Simon II class remain free to pursue their own individual lawsuits.

On December 14, 2006, in *Donovan v. Philip Morris*, a federal class action complaint was filed by a group of Massachusetts residents who are fifty years of age or older, have smoked a pack of cigarettes a day for at least twenty years, continue to smoke or have quit smoking within one year of filing, have not been diagnosed with lung cancer, and have smoked Marlboro cigarettes within Massachusetts. The class seeks to compel Philip Morris to fund each member's CT scans to support the early detection of lung cancer. The case is pending in the U.S. District Court for the District of Massachusetts.

A number of state courts have rejected class certification. In May 2000, Maryland's highest court ordered the trial court to vacate its certification of a class in *Richardson v. Philip Morris*. The parties agreed to dismiss the case in March 2001. In September 2000, in *Walls v. American Tobacco Co.*, an Oklahoma state court answered a series of state law questions, certified to the state court by the federal court where the purported class was filed, in such a way that led the parties to stipulate that the case should not be certified as a class action in federal court and that the individual plaintiffs would dismiss their federal court cases without prejudice. In October 2000, the federal court issued its order refusing to certify the case as a class action, and dismissed the individual plaintiffs' cases.

In December 2000, in *Geiger v. American Tobacco Co.*, the Appellate Division of the Supreme Court of New York affirmed the trial court's denial of class action status to a purported class defined as all New York residents, including their heirs, representatives, and estates, who contracted lung or throat cancer as a result of smoking cigarettes. Plaintiffs filed a motion for leave to appeal the order denying certification to the New York Court of Appeals, the highest court in the state. The New York Court of Appeals dismissed the plaintiff's appeal in February 2001.

In *Engle v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.*, a Florida state court certified a class of Florida smokers alleging injury due to their tobacco use. The estimated size of the class ranges from 300,000 to 700,000 members. The court determined that the lawsuit could be tried as a class action because, even though certain factual issues are unique to individual plaintiffs and must be tried separately, certain other factual issues were common to all class members and could be tried in one proceeding for the whole class. In July 1999, in the first phase of a three-phase trial, the jury found against the defendants regarding the issues common to the class, such as whether smoking caused certain diseases, whether tobacco was addictive, and whether the tobacco companies withheld information from the public. In July 2000, in the second phase of the *Engle* trial, the jury returned a verdict assessing punitive damages totaling approximately \$145 billion against the tobacco industry defendants. Following entry of judgment, the defendants appealed. The defendants posted bonds to stay collection of the final judgment with respect to the punitive damages against them and statutory interest thereon pending the exhaustion of all appeals. In May 2003, the Florida Third District Court of Appeal reversed the judgment entered by the trial court and instructed the trial court to order the decertification of the class. The plaintiffs petitioned the Florida Supreme Court for further review and, in May 2004, the Florida Supreme Court agreed to review the case.

On July 6, 2006, the Florida Supreme Court remanded the *Engle* case to the District Court with directions to decertify the class, and it approved the District Court's reversal of the \$145 billion class action

punitive damages award. The court also reinstated the compensatory damages awards to two purported class members of \$2.8 million and \$4 million, and approved the District Court's findings (the "**Findings**") as to the adverse health effects of smoking, that nicotine is addictive, that the defendants placed defective and unreasonably dangerous products in the market, that defendants concealed or omitted information about the health effects and addictive nature of cigarettes, and otherwise that defendants were negligent. The Florida Supreme Court stated that certain individual members of the purported class could bring actions within one year of the court's decision, in which the courts would be bound by the conclusions reached in the Findings, and in which the plaintiffs would be expected to address causation, reliance, and apportionment of fault among the defendants. One result of the court's decision may be an increase in the number of individual plaintiffs' suits in Florida from members of the decertified *Engle* class. One such individual suit was filed in Florida state court on July 10, 2006 against Philip Morris and Reynolds Tobacco (*Pummer v. Philip Morris*). On November 16, 2006, that case was removed to the U.S. District Court for the Southern District of Florida. On December 15, 2006, the court dismissed the case without prejudice, pursuant to stipulation, due to the wrongful joinder of defendant Publix Supermarkets, Inc., a Florida corporation not named in the *Engle* case, and thus not privy to the allowance of one year for plaintiffs to sue (it had been nearly ten years since the initial cause of action, which exceeds Florida's statute of limitations).

On August 7, 2006, the *Engle* defendants filed a motion for rehearing with the Florida Supreme Court, asking the court to reverse its decision to uphold the Findings. On December 21, 2006, the Florida Supreme Court declined to reconsider and clarify its ruling, with the exception of invalidating the conspiracy to misrepresent charge against the tobacco companies. The court withdrew the July 6th opinion, issuing the December 21st opinion in lieu thereof. In January 2007, the Florida Supreme Court issued the mandate from its revised opinion (which begins the one-year period for individual class members to file lawsuits) and defendants filed a motion with the Florida Third District Court of Appeals requesting the court's review of legal errors previously raised but not ruled on. On February 21, 2007, the court denied the defendants' motion. In March 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court granted defendants' motion for an extension of time in which to file a petition for a writ of certiorari, and the *Engle* defendants filed their petition on May 21, 2007. On October 1, 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court denied the petition for a writ of certiorari. In addition, defendants' motion for a partial stay of the mandate pending the completion of appellate review is pending before the District Court of Appeal. Reynolds American has stated that it is likely that individual case filings in Florida will increase as a result of the *Engle* case.

Florida has enacted legislation capping the amount of the appeal bond necessary to stay execution of the punitive judgment pending appeal to the lesser of: (1) the amount of punitive damages, plus twice the statutory rate of interest; or (2) 10% of a defendant's net worth, but in no case more than \$100 million. Forty-one other states have passed and several additional states are considering statutes limiting the amount of bonds required to file an appeal of an adverse judgment in state court. The limitation on the amount of such bonds generally ranges from \$25 million to \$150 million. Such bonding statutes allow defendants that are subject to large adverse judgments, such as cigarette manufacturers, to reasonably bond such judgments and pursue the appellate process. In six jurisdictions – Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Vermont and Puerto Rico – the filing of a notice of appeal automatically stays the judgment of the trial court.

One *Engle* purported class member has previously received a judgment at trial. In *Lukacs v. Reynolds Tobacco*, a Florida appellate court granted the plaintiff the right to proceed before he died, but stated that any award in favor of the plaintiff would not be enforced until after the *Engle* appeal is decided. On June 11, 2002, a Florida jury awarded \$37.5 million in compensatory damages to the plaintiff. On April 1, 2003, the Miami-Dade County Circuit Court granted in part the defendants' motion for remittitur, reducing the total award to \$25.125 million. Because the *Engle* appeal is now resolved, subject to motions for rehearing, the defendants' time to appeal the case is expected to begin to run. On August 2, 2006, plaintiff filed a motion for partial judgment on the compensatory damages award, and trial was scheduled to begin on November 27, 2006. However, on September 27, 2006, the trial court granted the defendants' motion to strike as premature the plaintiff's motions and removed the case from the trial calendar. On January 2, 2007, the defendants moved to set aside the June 11, 2002 verdict to dismiss the plaintiff's punitive damage claim. On January 3, 2007, the

plaintiffs filed a motion for entry of judgment. A hearing on the motion was held in March 2007. One OPM (Vector) reports that it is a defendant in 11 separate cases pending in Florida courts in which the plaintiffs claim that they are members of the *Engle* class, that all liability issues associated with their claims were resolved in the earlier phases of the *Engle* proceedings, and that trials on their claims should proceed immediately. Vector also reported that settlement of the appellate activity in *Engle* would be a prerequisite for those cases proceeding.

On June 6, 2007, a plaintiff representing the estates of her deceased mother and grandmother filed suit against several PMs in Miami-Dade County Circuit Court, Florida, in which she alleges that her mother and grandmother died of health problems related to smoking PMs' tobacco products. In that case, *Gloria Tucker v. Philip Morris U.S.A. et al*, the plaintiff alleges that the PMs engaged in cynical and exploitative marketing that targeted African-American communities and asserts theories of strict liability, negligent design, fraud by concealment and civil conspiracy. The plaintiff in *Tucker* also reportedly is requesting more than \$1 billion in compensatory and punitive damages. This action was removed to federal court and is currently pending in the District Court for the Southern District of Florida.

In October 1997, the tobacco industry defendants settled another class action case, *Broin I*. *Broin I* was brought in Florida state court by flight attendants alleging injuries related to ETS. See "Individual Plaintiffs' Lawsuits" below. The *Broin I* settlement established a protocol for the resolution of individual claims by class members against the tobacco companies. In addition to shifting the burden of proof to defendants as to whether ETS causes certain illnesses such as lung cancer and emphysema, the *Broin I* settlement required defendants to pay \$300 million to be used to establish a foundation to sponsor research with respect to the early detection and cure of tobacco-related diseases. Individual members of the *Broin I* class retained the right to bring individual claims, although they are limited to non-fraud type claims and may not seek punitive damages. Altria has reported that as of August 1, 2007, approximately 2,623 of these individual cases (known as *Broin II* cases) are pending against it in Florida. In October 2000, Judge Robert P. Kaye, the presiding judge of the original *Broin I* class action, held that the flight attendants will not be required to prove the substantive liability elements of their claims for negligence, strict liability and breach of implied warranty in order to recover damages, if any. The court also ruled that the trials of these suits will address whether the plaintiffs' alleged injuries were caused by their exposure to ETS and, if so, the amount of damages. The defendants' appeal of these rulings was dismissed by the intermediate appellate court on the basis that the appeal was premature and that the court lacked jurisdiction. On January 23, 2002, the defendants asked the Florida Supreme Court to review the district court's order. That request was denied.

Seven *Broin II* cases have gone to trial since Judge Kaye's ruling in October 2000. Six of these cases have resulted in verdicts for the defendants: *Fontana* in June 2001, *Tucker* in June 2002, *Janoff* in October 2002, *Seal* in February 2003, *Routh* in October 2003 and *Swaty* in May 2005. Appeals are pending in some of these cases. On September 12, 2002, the plaintiff in the *Janoff* case filed a motion for a new trial, which the judge granted on January 8, 2003. The defendants appealed to the Florida Third District Court of Appeal, which, on October 27, 2004, affirmed the trial court's order granting a new trial. The defendants' motion for rehearing was denied. The defendants filed a notice of intent to invoke the discretionary jurisdiction of the Florida Supreme Court on June 17, 2005. On November 1, 2005, the Florida Supreme Court refused to hear the case. In *Swaty*, the plaintiff filed a motion for a new trial on May 12, 2005, which was denied on June 23, 2005. On May 17, 2005, the court entered a final judgment in favor of the defendants. The plaintiff's motion for a new trial was denied on June 23, 2005. The plaintiff's appeal to the Third District Court of Appeal was denied and the Court of Appeal affirmed the trial court's verdict in November 2006. The one plaintiff's verdict was returned in *French v. Philip Morris*. On June 18, 2002, the *French* jury awarded the plaintiff \$5.5 million in damages, finding that the flight attendant's sinus disease was caused by ETS. On September 13, 2002, the judge reduced the award to \$500,000. The defendants appealed the trial court's final judgment to the Florida Third District Court of Appeal on various grounds, the primary one being that under Judge Kaye's October 2000 ruling, the burden of proof was erroneously shifted and the plaintiff was not required to show that the tobacco companies' cigarettes were defective, that the tobacco company defendants acted negligently or that a warranty was made and breached. In December 2004, the Florida Third District

Court of Appeal affirmed the judgment awarding plaintiff \$500,000 and directed the trial court to hold the defendants jointly and severally liable. In April 2005, the appellate court denied defendants' motion for a rehearing. On May 11, 2005, the defendants filed a notice of intent to invoke the discretionary jurisdiction of the Florida Supreme Court. On November 28, 2005, the Florida Supreme Court declined to hear the appeal. The defendants satisfied the judgment on December 6, 2005.

In *Scott v. American Tobacco Company, Inc.*, a Louisiana medical monitoring and smoking cessation case, the court certified a class consisting of smokers desiring to participate in a program designed to assist them in the cessation of smoking and monitor the medical condition of class members to ascertain whether they might be suffering from diseases caused by cigarette smoking. The class members may also choose to bring individual smoking and health lawsuits. On July 28, 2003, following the first phase of a trial, the jury returned a verdict in favor of the tobacco industry defendants on the medical monitoring claim and found that cigarettes were not defective products. The jury found against the defendants, however, on claims relating to fraud, conspiracy, marketing to minors and smoking cessation. On March 31, 2004, phase two of the trial began to address the scope and cost of smoking cessation programs. On May 21, 2004, the jury returned a verdict in the amount of \$591 million (\$590 million plus prejudgment interest accruing from the date the suit commenced) on the class's claim for a smoking cessation program. On July 1, 2004, the judge upheld the jury's verdict and awarded the plaintiffs prejudgment interest, which, as of November 1, 2006, totals approximately \$430 million, as reported by Altria. On August 31, 2004, the defendants' motion for judgment notwithstanding the verdict or, in the alternative, for a new trial was denied. On September 29, 2004, pursuant to a stipulation of the parties, the defendants posted a \$50 million bond (pursuant to legislation that limits the amount of the bond to \$50 million collectively for MSA signatories) and noticed their appeal. Oral argument occurred on April 27, 2006. The defendants filed post-argument briefs on April 28, 2006. Under the terms of the stipulation, the plaintiffs reserved the right to contest the constitutionality of the bond cap law. On February 7, 2007, the state appeals court upheld part of the jury's verdict but reduced the \$591 million by approximately \$312 million, eliminated the award of prejudgment interest, and remanded the case back to the trial court. On March 6, 2007, the state appeals court refused to reconsider its verdict. It has been reported that both the plaintiffs and the defendants have filed petitions for a writ of certiorari with the Louisiana Supreme Court.

In August 2000, a West Virginia state court conditionally certified, only to the extent of medical monitoring, in *In re Tobacco Litigation* (formerly known as Blankenship), a class of West Virginia residents. The plaintiffs proposed that the class include all West Virginia residents who: (1) on or after January 1, 1995, smoked cigarettes supplied by defendants; (2) smoked at least a pack a day for five years without having developed any of a specified list of tobacco-related illness; and (3) do not receive healthcare paid or reimbursed by the state of West Virginia. Trial began in January 2001. On January 25, 2001, the trial court granted a motion for a mistrial, ruling that the plaintiffs had improperly introduced testimony about addiction to smoking as a basis for claiming damages. In March 2001, the court denied the defendants' motion to decertify the class. The retrial began in September 2001, and on November 14, 2001 the jury returned a verdict that defendants were not liable for funding the medical monitoring program. On July 18, 2002, the plaintiffs petitioned the Supreme Court of West Virginia for leave to appeal, which was granted on February 25, 2003. The Supreme Court of West Virginia affirmed the judgment for the defendants on May 6, 2004. On July 1, 2004, the class's petition for rehearing was denied. The plaintiffs did not seek review by the U.S. Supreme Court.

Altria has reported that approximately 933 cases against Philip Morris and other tobacco industry defendants are pending in a single West Virginia court in a consolidated proceeding. The West Virginia court has scheduled a single trial for these consolidated cases, but it has certified a question to the Supreme Court of Appeals of West Virginia requesting a determination of the extent to which the claims in these individual cases can be consolidated in a single trial. On December 2, 2005, the Supreme Court of Appeals of West Virginia held that the Due Process Clause of the 14th Amendment, as interpreted by *State Farm v. Campbell*, does not preclude a bifurcated trial plan in which a punitive damages multiplier is established prior to compensatory damages.

In *Daniels v. Philip Morris* (also known as *In re Tobacco Case II*), a California state court certified a class comprised of individuals who were minors residing in California, who were exposed to defendants' marketing and advertising activities, and who smoked one or more cigarettes within the applicable time period. Certification was granted as to plaintiffs' claims that defendants violated the state's unfair business practice laws. On September 12, 2002, the trial court judge granted the defendants' motion for summary judgment on First Amendment and preemption (Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act) claims. In November 2002, the court confirmed its earlier rulings granting defendant's motion for summary judgment. The plaintiffs filed a petition for review with the California Supreme Court. On August 2, 2007, the California Supreme Court affirmed the grant of summary judgment.

During April 2001, a California state court issued an oral ruling in the case of *Brown v. The American Tobacco Company, Inc.*, in which it granted in part plaintiffs' motion for class certification and certified a class comprised of residents of California who smoked at least one of defendants' cigarettes during the period from June 10, 1993 through April 23, 2001 and who were exposed to defendants' marketing and advertising activities in California. Certification was granted as to plaintiffs' claims that defendants violated California Business and Professions Code Sections 17200 and 17500. The court denied the motion for class certification as to plaintiffs' claims under the California Legal Remedies Act. Defendants' writ with the court of appeals challenging the trial court's class certification was denied on January 16, 2002. The defendants filed a motion for summary judgment on January 31, 2003. On August 4, 2004, the defendants' motion for summary judgment was granted in part and denied in part. Following the November 2004 election, and the passage of a proposition in California that brought about a change in the law regarding the requirements for filing cases of this nature, the defendants filed a motion to decertify the class based on the changes in the law. On March 7, 2005, the court granted the defendants' motion to decertify the class. On March 17, 2005, plaintiffs filed a motion for reconsideration of the court's ruling decertifying the class. The trial judge denied the plaintiffs' motion on April 20, 2005, and the plaintiffs appealed on May 19, 2005. On September 5, 2006, the California Court of Appeals affirmed the judge's order decertifying the class. On October 13, 2006, the plaintiffs filed a petition for review with the California Supreme Court, which review was granted on November 1, 2006.

Altria has reported that, as of August 1, 2007, there are 17 putative class actions pending against Philip Morris in the U.S. on behalf of individuals who purchased and consumed various brands of cigarettes, including Marlboro Lights, Marlboro Ultra Lights, Virginia Slims Lights, Merit Lights, and Cambridge Lights. These actions allege, among other things, that the use of the term "Lights" or "Ultra Lights" constitutes deceptive and unfair trade practices and seek injunctive and equitable relief, including restitution. As reported by Altria, trial courts have certified classes in cases pending against Philip Morris in Massachusetts (*Aspinall*), Minnesota (*Curtis*), Missouri (*Craft*), and New York (*Schwab*). Philip Morris has appealed or otherwise challenged these class certification orders. Additionally, an appellate court in Florida has overturned a class certification by the trial court in the "lights" case styled *Hines v. Philip Morris, Inc.*, and the plaintiffs have petitioned the Florida Supreme Court for further review. On December 10, 2004, the Florida Supreme Court stayed further proceedings pending its decision in the *Engle* case, which was entered thereafter on December 21, 2006. On January 8, 2007, the court ordered the plaintiff in *Hines* to respond by January 23, 2007 as to why the decision in *Engle* should not control the outcome in *Hines*.

In August 2004, the Massachusetts Supreme Judicial Court affirmed class certification in the "lights" case *Aspinall v. Philip Morris Cos.* In April 2006, plaintiffs filed a motion to redefine the class to include all persons who after November 25, 1994 purchased packs or cartons of Marlboro Lights in Massachusetts that displayed the legend "Lower Tar & Nicotine" (the original class definition did not include a reference to lower tar and nicotine). In August 2006, the trial court denied Philip Morris's motion for summary judgment based on the state consumer protection statutory exemption and federal preemption. On motion of the parties, the trial court subsequently reported its decision to deny summary judgment to the appeals court for review and the trial court proceedings are stayed pending completion of the appellate review. Motions for direct appellate review with the Massachusetts Supreme Judicial Court were granted in April 2007. Arguments are scheduled to be heard in November 2007.



In *Watson v. Philip Morris*, the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Arkansas upheld the federal officer removal statute as a basis for removal of “lights” cases from state to federal court, and the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Eighth Circuit affirmed. The U.S. Supreme Court granted plaintiffs a writ of certiorari and requested comment from the U.S. Solicitor General as to whether federal jurisdiction of the matter, based on the involvement of the Federal Trade Commission (“FTC”), was appropriate. The U.S. Solicitor General filed its brief amicus curiae on December 19, 2006, recommending that the petition for writ of certiorari be denied, despite its belief that the Eighth Circuit erred, because the error below (that Philip Morris marketed its cigarettes as “light” pursuant to the FTC’s comprehensive direction and control) was fact-specific and insufficient to warrant review. On January 12, 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court granted the petition for a writ of certiorari. On June 11, 2007, the Supreme Court issued a ruling in which it reversed the trial court’s order and directed that the *Watson* case be remanded and transferred back for further proceedings to the Arkansas state court where it had originally been filed. The Court held that the *Watson* case did not qualify under applicable federal law for removal and transfer from the Arkansas state court to the Arkansas federal court.

In April 2005, the Minnesota Supreme Court declined to review the trial court’s class certification order in the “lights” case *Curtis v. Altria*. In September 2005, the case was removed to the U.S. District Court for the District of Minnesota, based on the Eighth Circuit’s decision in *Watson*. In February 2006, the U.S. District Court denied plaintiffs’ motion to remand the case to state court, and the case is pending in federal court. On July 31, 2006, the court stayed all proceedings pending resolution of the appeal in *Dahl* (described below). In February 2007, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Eighth Circuit issued its ruling in *Dahl*, and reversed the federal district court’s denial of plaintiff’s motion to remand that case to the state trial court. *Curtis* continues to be stayed pending an appeal in the Minnesota state trial court in *Dahl* of the dismissal of that Lights class action based on preemption.

In August 2005, the Missouri Court of Appeals, Eastern District, affirmed the class certification order in *Craft v. Philip Morris Cos.* In September 2005, Philip Morris removed the case to federal court based on *Watson*. In March 2006, the federal trial court granted plaintiffs’ motion and remanded the case to the Missouri state trial court. Philip Morris filed a motion for appellate review of the trial court’s class certification. In May 2006, the Missouri Supreme Court declined to review the class certification decision. A status conference is scheduled for June 30, 2007 in the trial court.

On May 11, 2004, smokers of “Lights” cigarettes filed a purported class action suit, presently styled *Schwab v. Philip Morris USA, Inc.* (but originally filed as *McLaughlin et al. v. Philip Morris USA, Inc.*), in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of New York against the OPMs and their parent companies, Liggett and certain other entities. Plaintiffs allege that the defendants formed an “association-in-fact” enterprise, in violation of the federal RICO statute, to defraud the public into believing that “light” cigarettes were healthier alternatives to regular cigarettes. Plaintiffs seek to certify a nationwide class of smokers comprising all purchasers of “light” cigarettes manufactured by the defendants since the 1970s. Oral argument on the plaintiffs’ motion for class certification occurred on September 12, 2005. The defendants filed a motion to deny class certification and to dismiss the complaint, asserting that the plaintiffs’ request – that any determination as to damages payable to a certified class be allocated among class members on a “fluid recovery” basis – is illegal. On November 14, 2005, the court denied the defendants’ motion, ruling that the plaintiffs’ request for “fluid recovery” is not illegal and does not require denial of class certification or dismissal of the action. The trial judge ordered several months of additional discovery before deciding the class certification issue. On September 25, 2006, the court granted class certification and set a trial date of January 22, 2007. On October 6, 2006, the defendants filed a petition seeking review by the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit of the class certification decision along with a motion to stay that decision pending review. On October 24, 2006, the Second Circuit ordered a temporary stay of all pretrial and trial proceedings pending the disposition of the petition for review and motion to stay. In November 2006, the Second Circuit granted the defendants’ petition for review of the class certification order. Oral argument on that appeal was heard by the Second Circuit on July 10, 2007 and no decision has yet been issued with respect to the appeal.

In *Marrone v. Philip Morris, USA, Inc.*, smokers of “Lights” cigarettes manufactured and sold by Philip Morris, Inc. filed class-action complaints in an Ohio state court against Philip Morris, alleging violations of Ohio’s Consumer Sales Practices Act (“OCSPA”) in that, among other allegations, Philip Morris falsely represented the cigarettes as “light” to mislead smokers into believing that the cigarettes delivered lower tar and nicotine and therefore were safer than their “regular” cigarette counterparts. The trial court certified a limited class of consumers from an area of Ohio on the OCSPA claims and Philip Morris appealed. The Ohio appellate court affirmed the trial court’s judgment certifying the class. In contrast to the above “lights” cases, on June 14, 2006, the Supreme Court of Ohio reversed the judgment of the appellate court and ruled that the plaintiffs did not meet the standard to qualify for class-action certification under the OCSPA, concluding that the plaintiffs had not shown prior rules or court decisions determining that conduct sufficiently similar to the alleged acts of Philip Morris constituted a deceptive act or practice.

Moreover, the Supreme Court of Illinois has overturned a judgment in favor of a plaintiff class in *Price v. Philip Morris Cos., Inc.* (formerly known as *Miles v. Philip Morris, Inc.*). A Madison County Illinois state court certified a class comprised of all residents of Illinois who purchased and consumed Cambridge Lights and Marlboro Lights within a specified time period but who did not have a claim for personal injury resulting from the purchase or consumption of cigarettes. The plaintiffs alleged consumer fraud claims and sought economic damages in the form of a refund of purchase costs of the cigarettes. On March 21, 2003, after a non-jury trial, the trial court judge ruled in favor of the plaintiffs, ordering Philip Morris to pay \$10.1 billion (\$7.1 billion in compensatory damages, \$3.0 billion in punitive damages) to the State of Illinois, and \$1.78 billion in plaintiff lawyer fees to be paid from the \$10.1 billion. The court also stayed execution of the judgment for 30 days. After entry of the judgment on March 21, 2003, Philip Morris had 30 days within which to file a notice of appeal. Under Illinois court rules then-applicable, the enforcement of a trial court’s money judgment may be stayed only if, among other things, an appeal bond in an amount sufficient to cover the amount of the judgment, interest, and costs is posted by a defendant within the 30-day period during which an appeal may be taken. With the approval of the trial court, such 30-day period may be extended for up to an additional 15 days. The trial court judge initially set the bond at \$12 billion. Because of the difficulty of posting a bond of that magnitude, Philip Morris pursued various avenues of relief from the \$12 billion bond requirement. In April 2003, the judge reduced the amount of the appeal bond. He ordered the bond to be secured by \$800 million, payable in four equal quarterly installments beginning in September 2003, and a pre-existing 7.0%, \$6 billion long-term note from Altria Group, Inc. to Philip Morris to be placed in an escrow account pending resolution of the case. The plaintiffs appealed the judge’s order reducing the amount of the bond. On July 14, 2003, the Illinois Fifth District Court of Appeals ruled that the trial court had exceeded its authority in reducing the bond and ordered the trial judge to reinstate the original bond. On September 16, 2003, the Illinois Supreme Court upheld the reduced bond set by the trial court and agreed to hear Philip Morris’s appeal without the need for intermediate appellate court review. On December 15, 2005, the Illinois Supreme Court reversed the trial court’s judgment and remanded the case to the trial court with instructions to dismiss the case in its entirety. In its decision, the court held that the defendant’s conduct alleged by the plaintiffs to be fraudulent under the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act was specifically authorized by the Federal Trade Commission, and that the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act specifically exempts conduct so authorized by a regulatory body acting under the authority of the U.S. The court declined to review the case on the merits, concluding that the action was barred entirely by the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act. The plaintiffs filed a motion asking the court to reconsider its decision, which was denied on May 5, 2006 by the Supreme Court of Illinois. In June 2006, the Illinois Supreme Court ordered the return to Philip Morris of approximately \$2.15 billion held in escrow to secure the appeal bond and terminated Philip Morris’s obligations to pay administrative fees. The pre-existing 7.0%, \$6 billion long-term note from Altria Group, Inc. to Philip Morris was being held in escrow pending the outcome of plaintiffs’ petition for writ of certiorari to the U.S. Supreme Court, filed on October 2, 2006. On November 27, 2006, the U.S. Supreme Court denied plaintiff’s petition for certiorari. In December 2006, the trial court then entered an order of dismissal. In January 2007, the plaintiff filed a motion to vacate the dismissal, which motion is pending. In May 2007, the state trial court judge in the *Price* case asked the Illinois Fifth District Appellate Court whether he has the authority to reopen the *Price* case, citing possible new evidence presented in a case pending before the U.S. Supreme Court. On May 30, 2007, Philip Morris filed a motion to stay the Fifth District proceeding, which motion was granted by

the Illinois Fifth District Appellate Court on June 1, 2007. It has also been reported that on May 17, 2007, Philip Morris petitioned the Illinois Supreme Court for an order that would prevent the trial court judge from reopening the *Price* case.

According to Reynolds American, “lights” class-action cases are pending against Reynolds or Brown & Williamson in Illinois (*Turner* and *Howard*), Missouri (*Collora* and *Black*), Minnesota (*Dahl* and *Thompson*), Louisiana (*Harper* and *Brown*), Florida (*Rios*), Washington (*Huntsberry*), and New York (*Schwab*). Illinois state courts have certified classes in *Turner v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.* and *Howard v. Brown & Williamson*. In *Turner*, the state court certified a class defined as “[a]ll persons who purchased defendants’ Doral Lights, Winston Lights, Salem Lights and Camel Lights, in Illinois, for personal consumption, between the first date that defendants sold Doral Lights, Winston Lights, Salem Lights and Camel Lights through the date the court certifies this suit as a class action....” On June 6, 2003, Reynolds Tobacco filed a motion to stay the case pending Philip Morris’s appeal of the *Price* case. On July 11, 2003, the court denied the motion, and Reynolds Tobacco appealed to the Illinois Fifth District Court of Appeals. The Court of Appeals denied this motion on October 17, 2003. On October 20, 2003, the trial judge ordered that the case be stayed for 90 days, or pending the result of the *Price* appeal. The order stated that a hearing would be held at the end of the 90-day period to determine if the stay should be continued. However, on October 24, 2003, the Illinois Supreme Court ordered an emergency stay of all proceedings pending review by the entire Illinois Supreme Court of Reynolds Tobacco’s emergency stay order request filed on October 15, 2003. On November 5, 2003, the Illinois Supreme Court granted Reynolds Tobacco’s motion for a stay pending the court’s final appeal decision in *Price*. The *Howard* case also remains stayed by order of the trial judge, although the plaintiffs appealed this stay order to the Illinois Fifth District Court of Appeals, which appeal was denied on August 19, 2005. Both cases remain stayed, notwithstanding the *Price* decision.

On December 31, 2003, a Missouri state court judge certified a similar class in the “lights” case *Collora v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.* On January 14, 2004, Reynolds Tobacco removed the case to the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Missouri. On September 30, 2004, the case was remanded to the Circuit Court for the City of St. Louis. Reynolds Tobacco removed the case once again, and on April 18, 2006, the case was remanded for the second time to the Circuit Court for the City of St. Louis. *Black v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp.* is another “lights” case pending in Missouri. Brown & Williamson removed the case to the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Missouri on September 23, 2005. On October 25, 2005, the plaintiffs filed a motion to remand, which was granted on March 17, 2006. A consolidated hearing in both *Black* and *Collora* has been set for December 25, 2007. On December 22, 2006, the plaintiffs filed a motion to reassign both *Black* and *Collora* to a single general division, which motion was granted on April 19, 2007.

In May 2005, a Minnesota state court dismissed in its entirety the “lights” case *Dahl v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company*, ruling that the plaintiffs’ claims conflicted with the federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act. On July 11, 2005, the plaintiffs appealed. Pending appeal, Reynolds Tobacco removed the case to the U.S. District Court for the District of Minnesota. The plaintiffs filed a motion to remand, which was denied on February 14, 2006. On March 9, 2006, the case was transferred to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Eighth Circuit. On February 28, 2007, the Eighth Circuit reversed and remanded the case to the Minnesota Court of Appeals where briefing is underway. In *Thompson v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.*, also pending in Minnesota, Reynolds removed the case on September 23, 2005 to the United States District Court for the District of Minnesota. On October 21, 2005, the plaintiffs filed a motion to remand, which was denied on February 14, 2006. On August 7, 2006, the parties filed a stipulation to stay the case, pending resolution of the appeal in *Dahl*.

On August 31, 2005, a Louisiana federal district court ruled in a proposed class action, *Sullivan v. Philip Morris*, that the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act (FCLAA) does not preempt plaintiffs’ claims of a breach of express warranty and certain state law remedies with respect to manufacturing defects. On September 14, 2005, the same district court ruled in the proposed class action *Brown v. Brown & Williamson* that the FCLAA does not preempt plaintiffs’ fraudulent misrepresentation/concealment and

defective product claims. Brown & Williamson filed a petition to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit for permission to appeal, which was granted on February 10, 2006. In February 2007, the Fifth Circuit reversed the judgment and remanded the case with directions to dismiss all claims with prejudice. Philip Morris also filed a petition to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit for permission to appeal the Sullivan ruling, which was granted on March 31, 2006. On January 27, 2005, also in Louisiana, a federal judge denied the plaintiffs' motion to remand in *Harper v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.* The plaintiffs appealed, and on July 17, 2006, the Fifth Circuit Court of Appeals affirmed the district court's order.

Pending in the state of Washington is the "lights" case *Huntsberry v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.*, in which the plaintiffs' motion for class certification was denied on April 21, 2006. On September 18, 2006, the court denied the plaintiffs' motion for discretionary review. The plaintiffs filed a motion to modify the ruling with the Washington Court of Appeals on October 17, 2006, which motion was denied in December 2006. In January 2007, plaintiffs filed a motion with the Washington Supreme Court, asking the court to review the rulings that denied their motions for class certification, which motion was denied on March 1, 2007. The plaintiffs filed a motion to modify the ruling of that court on April 2, 2007, which motion is set for reconsideration on June 5, 2007. Pending in Florida is the "lights" case *Rios v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.*, which is currently dormant pending plaintiffs' counsel's attempt to appeal decertification in the Florida case *Hines v. Philip Morris, Inc.* Also pending in Florida is *Rivera v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp.* which was filed in October 2006 and removed by the defendant in November 2006 to the federal District Court for the Southern District of Florida.

On June 9, 2005, a proposed "lights" class action was filed in U.S. District Court for the District of New Mexico (*Mulford v. Altria Group, Inc.*). Philip Morris's motions for summary judgment on preemption and consumer protection statutory exemption grounds are pending resolution of the plaintiffs' amended motion for class certification. On June 27, 2005, a similar class action was filed in Kansas state court against Philip Morris and its parent, Altria (*Benedict v. Altria Group, Inc.*). The case has been transferred to U.S. District Court for the District of Kansas, where plaintiffs' motion for class certification and Philip Morris's motion for summary judgment are pending.

It is also reported that on August 15, 2005, three individuals filed a "lights" class action in the U.S. District Court for the District of Maine against the same defendants (*Good v. Altria Group, Inc.*). In May 2006, the court granted Philip Morris's motion for summary judgment on the grounds that plaintiffs' claims are preempted by the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act (the "FCLAA") and dismissed the case. In June 2006, plaintiffs appealed to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the First Circuit. On August 31, 2007, the First Circuit issued an opinion holding that plaintiffs' claims are not preempted. The court reasoned that plaintiffs' claims of fraudulent misrepresentation are neither expressly nor implicitly preempted by the FCLAA. The court also disagreed with those courts, including the *Price* court, which have held that "lights" advertising is authorized by the FTC and therefore beyond the reach of state consumer protection statutes. The First Circuit remanded the case to the district court.

On April 3, 2002, in *Deloach v. Philip Morris*, a federal district court in North Carolina granted class certification to a group of tobacco growers and quota-holders from Alabama, Florida, Georgia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Tennessee. The class accused cigarette manufacturers of conspiring to set prices offered for tobacco in violation of antitrust laws. In June 2002, the defendants' petition to the Fourth Circuit Court of Appeals seeking permission to appeal the class certification was denied. In May 2003, the plaintiffs reached a settlement with all of the tobacco industry defendants other than Reynolds Tobacco. The settling defendants agreed to pay \$210 million to the plaintiffs, to pay plaintiffs' attorney fees of \$75.3 million as set by the court and to purchase a minimum amount of U.S. leaf for ten years. The case continued against Reynolds Tobacco. On April 22, 2004, after the trial began, the parties settled the case. Under the settlement, Reynolds Tobacco has paid \$33 million into a settlement fund, which, after deductions for attorneys' fees and administrative costs, will be distributed to the class pending final settlement approval. Reynolds Tobacco has also agreed to purchase a minimum amount of U.S. leaf for the next ten years. On March 21, 2005, the court approved the settlement and dismissed the suit.

On May 23, 2001, a lawsuit was filed in the U.S. District Court for the District of Columbia styled *Simms v. Philip Morris Incorporated*, which sought class action status for millions of youths who began smoking cigarettes before they were legally allowed to buy cigarettes. Plaintiffs sought to recover moneys that underage smokers spent on cigarettes before they were legally allowed to buy cigarettes, whether or not they have suffered health problems, and/or profits the tobacco manufacturers have earned from sales to children. The lawsuit alleged that tobacco manufacturers concealed the addictive nature of cigarettes and concealed the health risks of smoking in their advertising. In February 2003, the court denied plaintiffs' motion for class certification. The plaintiffs have filed several motions for reconsideration of the order denying class certification, which motions were denied in December 2006. The case has been stayed pending resolution of the U.S. Department of Justice case described below under "*Healthcare Cost Recovery Lawsuits*."

On January 19, 2006, a lawsuit styled *Caronia v. Philip Morris USA, Inc.* was filed in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of New York to require Philip Morris to pay for low dose CAT scans (on an annual basis) for a class of smokers over the age of 50 who have been smoking at least a pack of Marlboro a day for 20 years and have not been diagnosed with lung cancer. Motions for summary judgment and class certification are pending in district court. On November 3, 2006, plaintiffs filed a Third Amended Complaint, which Philip Morris answered on November 13, 2006. Class certification discovery ended in February 2007, and briefing was due in April. A similar lawsuit, styled *Donovan, et al. v. Philip Morris USA, Inc. et al.*, was filed on March 2, 2007 in the United States District Court in Massachusetts.

On December 2006, a lawsuit styled *Espinosa, et al. v. Philip Morris USA, Inc. et al.* was filed in the Cook County, Illinois circuit court on behalf of individuals from throughout Illinois and/or the United States who purchased cigarettes manufactured by certain defendants from 1996 through the date of any judgment in plaintiffs' favor. Excluded from the class are any individuals who allege personal injury or healthcare costs. The complaint alleges, among other things, that defendants were negligent and violated the Illinois consumer fraud statute by certain defendants' steadily and purposefully increasing the nicotine level and absorption of their cigarettes into the human body, including the brands most popular with young people and minorities. On January 12, 2007, Philip Morris removed the case to the United States District Court for the Northern District of Illinois. In March 2007, the District Court rejected plaintiffs' motion to remand the case to the Circuit Court of Cook County. On June 18, 2007, the District Court granted Philip Morris's motion to dismiss the action.

*Individual Plaintiffs' Lawsuits.* The MSA does not release PMs from liability in individual plaintiffs' cases. Numerous cases have been brought by individual plaintiffs who allege that their cancer or other health effects have resulted from their use of cigarettes, addiction to smoking, or exposure to environmental tobacco smoke. Individual plaintiffs' allegations of liability are based on various theories of recovery, including but not limited to, negligence, gross negligence, strict liability, fraud, misrepresentation, design defect, failure to warn, breach of express and implied warranties, breach of special duty, conspiracy, concert of action, restitution, indemnification, violations of deceptive trade practice laws and consumer protection statutes, and claims under federal and state RICO statutes. The tobacco industry has traditionally defended individual health and smoking lawsuits by asserting, among other defenses, assumption of risk and/or comparative fault on the part of the plaintiff, as well as lack of proximate cause.

Altria has reported that as of August 1, 2007, there were approximately 195 individual plaintiff smoking and health cases and 10 smoking and health class actions and aggregated claims pending in the U.S. against it (many of which cases include other tobacco industry defendants), including 933 cases pending before a single West Virginia state court in a consolidated proceeding. In addition, approximately 2,623 additional individual cases (referred to herein as the *Broin II* cases) are pending in Florida by individual current and former flight attendants claiming personal injury allegedly related to ETS in airline cabins. The individuals in the *Broin II* cases are limited by the settlement of a previous class action lawsuit, *Broin v. Philip Morris* (known as *Broin I*), to the recovery of compensatory damages only, and are precluded from seeking or recovering punitive damages. As a result of the settlement, however, the burden of proof as to whether ETS causes certain illnesses such as lung cancer and emphysema was shifted to the tobacco industry defendants. To date, seven individual *Broin II* flight attendant cases have gone to trial, one of which has resulted in a jury

verdict against the tobacco industry defendants. The defendants' appeal in that case is pending. See also "Class Action Lawsuits" above.

In the last ten years, juries have returned verdicts in individual smoking and health cases against the tobacco industry, including one or more of the PMS. Thus far, a number of those cases have resulted in significant verdicts against the defendants – some have been appealed, some have been overturned, and others have been affirmed.

By way of example only, and not as an exclusive or complete list, the following individual matters are illustrative of individual cases.

- In February 1999, a California jury in *Henley v. Philip Morris* awarded \$1.5 million in compensatory damages and \$50 million in punitive damages. The award was subsequently reduced by the trial judge to \$25 million in punitive damages, and both Philip Morris and the plaintiff appealed. In September 2003, a California Court of Appeal further reduced the punitive damage award to \$9 million, but otherwise affirmed the judgment for compensatory damages, and Philip Morris appealed to the California Supreme Court. In September 2004, the California Supreme Court dismissed Philip Morris's appeal. In October 2004, the California Court of Appeal issued an order allowing the execution of the judgment. In December 2004, Philip Morris filed with the U.S. Supreme Court a petition for a writ of certiorari. On March 21, 2005, the U.S. Supreme Court denied Philip Morris's petition. Philip Morris subsequently satisfied the judgment, paying \$1.5 million in compensatory damages, \$9 million in punitive damages and \$6.4 million in accumulated interest.
- In March 1999, an Oregon jury in *Williams-Branch v. Philip Morris* awarded \$821,500 in actual damages and \$79.5 million in punitive damages. The trial judge subsequently reduced the punitive damages award to \$32 million, but the reduction was overturned and the full amount of the punitive damages award was reinstated by the Oregon Court of Appeals. The Oregon Supreme Court declined to review the reinstated punitive damage award and Philip Morris petitioned the U.S. Supreme Court for further review. In October 2003, the U.S. Supreme Court set aside the Oregon appellate court's ruling and directed the Oregon court to reconsider the case in light of *State Farm v. Campbell*. In June 2004, the Oregon Court of Appeals reinstated the punitive damages award. In December 2004, the Oregon Supreme Court granted Philip Morris's petition for review of the case. On February 2, 2006, the Oregon Supreme Court affirmed the Court of Appeals decision, holding that the punitive damage award does not violate the due process guarantees of the U.S. Constitution. On March 30, 2006, Philip Morris filed a petition for certiorari review with the U.S. Supreme Court challenging the ruling of the Oregon Supreme Court as a violation of the principles set forth in *State Farm v. Campbell* regarding the permissible size of punitive damage awards relative to compensatory damage awards. The U.S. Supreme Court granted Philip Morris's petition for review in May 2006, and oral argument was heard on October 31, 2006. On February 20, 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that a punitive damage award may not be based on a jury's desire to punish a defendant for harming persons who were not parties to the case in question and held that such an award would amount to an unconstitutional taking of property from a defendant without due process. The Court vacated the judgment of the Oregon Supreme Court and remanded the case for further proceedings not inconsistent with its opinion. Oral argument was heard in the Oregon appeals court on September 11, 2007. The court has not yet issued a decision.
- In April 1999, a Maryland jury in *Connor v. Lorillard* awarded \$2.225 million in damages. An appellate court has remanded the case for a determination of the date of injury to determine whether a statutory cap on non-economic damages applies.

- In March 2000, a California jury in *Whiteley v. Raybestos-Manhattan, Inc.* returned a verdict in favor of the plaintiff and found the defendants, including Philip Morris and Reynolds Tobacco, liable for negligent product design and fraud, and awarded \$1.72 million in compensatory damages and \$20 million in punitive damages. Both damage awards were upheld by the trial judge, who denied the defendants' post-verdict challenge. The defendants appealed the verdict. In April 2004, the California Court of Appeal reversed the judgment and remanded the case for a new trial. The plaintiff's motion for rehearing was denied on April 29, 2004. In May 2006, the plaintiff filed an amended consolidated complaint. In September 2006, the trial court granted the plaintiff's motion for a preferential trial date and trial began on January 22, 2007. On May 2, 2007, the jury awarded plaintiffs \$2.5 million in compensatory damages against Philip Morris and the other defendant in the case. The jury also found that plaintiffs are entitled to punitive damages against the other defendant, but not Philip Morris, in an amount to be determined in a later phase of the trial. Philip Morris has stated it intends to seek review of the compensatory damage verdict.
- In October 2000, a Tampa, Florida jury in *Jones v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.* found Reynolds Tobacco liable for negligence and strict liability and returned a verdict in favor of the widower of a deceased smoker, awarding approximately \$200,000 in compensatory damages; the jury rejected the plaintiff's conspiracy claim and did not award punitive damages. Reynolds Tobacco filed a motion for judgment notwithstanding the verdict, or, in the alternative, for a new trial. On December 28, 2000, the court granted the motion for a new trial and on August 30, 2002 the Second District Court of Appeal of Florida affirmed the decision to grant a new trial. The plaintiff has filed for permission to appeal to the Florida Supreme Court. On December 9, 2002, the Supreme Court of Florida issued an order to show cause as to why Jones's notice of appeal should not be treated as a notice to invoke discretionary jurisdiction. On April 27, 2005 the Florida Supreme Court denied the plaintiff's notice of appeal without prejudice. On May 25, 2005 the plaintiff served an amended notice of intent to invoke discretionary jurisdiction. On August 31, 2005, the Florida Supreme Court denied review for lack of jurisdiction. On April 20, 2006, the plaintiff voluntarily dismissed all claims against Reynolds Tobacco.
- In November 2000, the Supreme Court of Florida reinstated the verdict by a Florida jury in *Carter v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation* to award \$750,000 in damages to the plaintiff. In 1996, the jury had found that cigarettes were a defective product and that B&W was negligent for not warning people of the danger, but an appeals court reversed this decision. In March 2001, the plaintiff received slightly over \$1 million from a trust account that contained the \$750,000 jury award plus interest and became the first smoker to be paid by a tobacco company in an individual lawsuit. On June 29, 2001, the U.S. Supreme Court denied B&W's petition for a writ of certiorari, thus leaving the jury verdict intact.
- In March 2001, a Massachusetts lower court in *Haglund v. Philip Morris* dismissed, without factual inquiries, a claim brought on behalf of a deceased smoker for breach of implied warranty of merchantability, based upon the applicability of a defense as to "unreasonable" use of the product by the smoker and the stipulation by the plaintiff that the defendant would prevail if the defense was made applicable. In May 2006, the Massachusetts Supreme Judicial Court, in reversing and remanding the case for further factual proceedings as to reasonableness of use, noted that such defense will not be available in most cases involving the manufacture and sale of cigarettes, but will only be available in situations where the plaintiff has acted so overwhelmingly unreasonable that imposing liability would be unfair.
- In June 2001, in *Boeken v. Philip Morris Incorporated*, a California state court jury found against Philip Morris on all six claims of fraud, negligence and making a defective product alleged by the plaintiff. The jury awarded the plaintiff \$5.5 million in compensatory damages

and \$3 billion in punitive damages. The \$3 billion punitive damages award was reduced to \$100 million post-trial. Philip Morris appealed. In September 2004, the California Second District Court of Appeal further reduced the punitive damage award to \$50 million, but otherwise affirmed the judgment entered in the case. In October 2004 the Court of Appeal granted the parties' motions for rehearing and, in April 2005, reaffirmed the amount of the September 2004 ruling. On August 10, 2005, the California Supreme Court denied Philip Morris's request for review. Philip Morris and the plaintiff petitioned the U.S. Supreme Court for review. Plaintiff agreed not to execute on the judgment pending the disposition of Philip Morris's petition. On March 20, 2006, the U.S. Supreme Court denied all parties' petitions for review. After exhausting all appeals, Philip Morris paid approximately \$82.5 million (including interest of approximately \$27 million) to the plaintiffs.

- In December 2001, a Florida state court jury awarded the plaintiff \$165,000 in compensatory damages but no punitive damages in *Kenyon v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.* Reynolds Tobacco appealed to the Second District Court of Appeal of Florida, which, on May 30, 2003, affirmed per curiam (that is, without writing an opinion) the trial court's judgment in favor of the plaintiff. Reynolds Tobacco paid \$196,000, which represents the amount of the judgment plus accrued interest, in order to pursue further appeals. On September 5, 2003, Reynolds Tobacco petitioned the Florida Supreme Court to require the Second District Court of Appeal to write an opinion. On April 22, 2004, the Florida Supreme Court denied the petition. On January 26, 2004, the U.S. Supreme Court denied Reynolds Tobacco's petition for a writ of certiorari, thus leaving the jury verdict intact. Reynolds Tobacco subsequently paid approximately \$1.3 million in attorneys' fees to the plaintiff's counsel.
- In February 2002, a federal jury in Kansas City awarded \$198,000 in compensatory damages to a former smoker in *Burton v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.* The jury also determined that punitive damages were appropriate and, after a separate hearing was held to address that issue, the court awarded the plaintiff \$15 million in punitive damages. On February 9, 2005, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Tenth Circuit upheld the compensatory damages award, but unanimously reversed the award of punitive damages in its entirety. On May 17, 2005, the District Court entered a second amended judgment for \$196,416 plus interest and costs. On June 17, 2005, Reynolds Tobacco paid the judgment.
- In March 2002, a Portland, Oregon jury awarded approximately \$168,500 in compensatory damages and \$150 million in punitive damages to the family of a light cigarette smoker in *Schwarz v. Philip Morris Incorporated.* The trial judge subsequently reduced the punitive damages awarded to \$100 million. Philip Morris and the plaintiffs appealed this judgment. In May 2006, the Oregon Court of Appeals affirmed the compensatory damages verdict and reversed the award of punitive damages and remanded the case to the trial court for a second trial to determine the amount of punitive damages, if any. In June 2006, plaintiffs filed a petition to the Oregon Supreme Court to review the portion of the Oregon Court of Appeals decision reversing the punitive damages and remanding the case for a new trial on punitive damages. In October 2006, the Oregon Supreme Court announced that it would hold this petition in abeyance until the U.S. Supreme Court decides the *Williams* case described above. In February 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court vacated the punitive damages judgment in the *Williams* case and remanded the case to the Oregon Supreme Court for proceedings consistent with its decision. The parties have submitted their briefs to the Oregon Supreme Court setting forth their respective views on how the *Williams* decision impacts the plaintiffs pending petition for review.
- In June 2002, in *Lukacs v. Philip Morris, Inc.*, a Florida jury awarded a smoker \$37.5 million in compensatory damages against Philip Morris and other defendants. In March 2003, the trial court reduced the damages award to \$24.9 million. The court has not yet entered the



judgment in the jury verdict. In January 2007, defendants petitioned the trial court to set aside the jury's verdict and plaintiff filed a motion for entry of judgment. Philip Morris has stated it intends to appeal if a judgment is entered in this case.

- In September 2002, in *Figueroa-Cruz v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.*, a Puerto Rico jury awarded two sons of a deceased smoker \$500,000 each. The trial judge vacated one of the awards on statute of limitations grounds, and granted Reynolds Tobacco's motion for judgment as a matter of law on the other award on October 9, 2002. On October 28, 2003, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the First Circuit affirmed the trial court's ruling. The plaintiffs' petition for a writ of certiorari was denied by the U.S. Supreme Court in November 2004.
- In October 2002, in *Bullock v. Philip Morris, Inc.*, a Los Angeles, California jury awarded a smoker \$850,000 in compensatory damages. In October 2002, the same jury awarded the plaintiff \$28 billion in punitive damages. In December 2002, the trial judge reduced the punitive damage award to \$28 million. Philip Morris and the plaintiff each appealed and the appeal was argued on January 18, 2006. On April 21, 2006, the California Court of Appeal, Second Appellate District, Division Three, upheld the \$28 million punitive damages award. In August 2006, the California Supreme Court denied the plaintiff's petition to overturn the trial court's reduction in the punitive damage award and granted Philip Morris's petition for review challenging the punitive damage award, with further action deferred pending the U.S. Supreme Court's decision on punitive damages in the *Williams* case described above. In February 2007, the U.S. Supreme Court vacated the punitive damages judgment in *Williams* and remanded the case to the Oregon Supreme Court for proceedings consistent with its decision. Parties to the appeal in *Bullock* have requested that the court establish a briefing schedule on the merits of the pending appeal.
- In April 2003, in *Eastman v. Philip Morris*, a Florida jury awarded a smoker \$3.26 million in damages, after reducing the award to reflect the plaintiff's partial responsibility. Defendants Philip Morris and B&W appealed to the Second District of Florida Court of Appeal. In May 2004, the Second District Court of Appeal rejected the appeal in a per curium decision (that is, without a written opinion). The defendants' petition for a written opinion and rehearing was denied on October 14, 2004, and that ruling is not subject to review by the Florida Supreme Court. On October 29, 2004, Philip Morris and Reynolds Tobacco, due to their obligation to indemnify B&W, satisfied their respective portions the judgment.
- In May 2003, in *Boerner v. Brown & Williamson*, an Arkansas jury awarded the plaintiff \$15 million in punitive damages and \$4 million in compensatory damages. Following a series of appeals, on January 7, 2005, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Eighth Circuit affirmed the trial court's May 2003 judgment, but reduced the punitive damages award to \$5 million. Reynolds Tobacco, due to its obligation to indemnify B&W, satisfied the approximately \$9.1 million judgment on February 16, 2005.
- In November 2003, in *Thompson v. Philip Morris, Inc.*, a Missouri jury returned a split verdict, awarding approximately \$1.6 million in compensatory damages to the plaintiff and an additional \$500,000 in damages to his wife. The jury apportioned 40% of fault to Philip Morris, 10% of fault to B&W and the remaining 50% to the plaintiff. Accordingly, under Missouri law, the court must reduce the damages award by half. On March 8, 2004, the defendants appealed to the Missouri Court of Appeals for the Western District, which affirmed the judgment entered in favor of the plaintiffs on August 22, 2006. On September 26, 2006, the Court of Appeals denied the defendants' motion to transfer the case to the Missouri Supreme Court. The defendants filed an application to transfer in the Missouri Supreme Court on October 10, 2006, and on December 19, 2006, the application

was denied. In January 2007, Philip Morris and Reynolds Tobacco paid approximately \$1.1 million and \$268,100, respectively, in judgment and interest to the plaintiff.

- In December 2003, in *Frankson v. Brown & Williamson*, a New York jury awarded the plaintiff \$350,000 in compensatory damages and \$20 million in punitive damages. On June 22, 2004, the trial judge granted a new trial unless the parties agree to an increase in compensatory damages to \$500,000 and a decrease in punitive damages to \$5 million. On January 21, 2005, the plaintiff stipulated to the court's reduction in the amount of punitive damages. The defendants' appeal was denied by the appellate division in July 2006. On August 4, 2006, the defendants filed a motion for rehearing, or, in the alternative, for leave to appeal to the New York Court of Appeals. That motion was denied on October 5, 2006. The defendants' motion to stay entry and enforcement of the final judgment pending further appeal was granted in January 2007 and the defendants also appealed the judgment that same month. Judgment was entered against the defendants on March 7, 2007 and they have filed a notice of appeal. The appeals will be consolidated.
- In April 2004, a Florida jury returned a verdict in favor of the plaintiff in *Davis v. Liggett Group, Inc.*, awarding a total of \$540,000 in actual damages. In addition, the jury awarded legal fees of \$752,000. The jury did not award punitive damages. Liggett has appealed.
- In October 2004, in *Arnitz v. Philip Morris, Inc.*, a Florida jury returned a verdict in favor of the plaintiff, who claims that as a result of his smoking he developed lung cancer and emphysema. The jury awarded a total of \$240,000 in compensatory damages. Philip Morris, the sole defendant in the case, appealed to the Florida Second District Court of Appeals. In July 2006, the appellate court affirmed the judgment of the trial court. In September 2006, the appellate court denied Philip Morris's motion for rehearing. Philip Morris subsequently filed a motion to stay the issuance of the mandate with the appellate court. On October 6, 2006, the appellate court denied this motion, and the mandate was issued. On October 16, 2006, Philip Morris paid \$1,094,352 in judgment, interest, and attorneys' fees. On October 19, 2006, Philip Morris filed a petition for discretionary review with the Florida Supreme Court. The petition was denied on December 20, 2006.
- In February 2005, in *Smith v. Brown & Williamson*, a Missouri state court jury returned a split verdict, finding in favor of the defendant on counts of fraudulent concealment and conspiracy and in favor of the plaintiffs on a negligence count. The jury awarded the plaintiffs \$500,000 in compensatory damages and \$20 million in punitive damages. On March 10, 2005, the defendant filed a motion for judgment notwithstanding the verdict or, in the alternative, for a new trial. On May 23, 2005, the trial court denied defendant's motion, and on June 1, 2005, the defendant appealed. Oral argument occurred on October 5, 2006. On July 31, 2007 a majority of the judges of the Missouri Appeals Court for the Western District issued a decision affirming the jury's finding of negligence and its award of compensatory damages, but reversing the \$20 million punitive damages award based on its determination that plaintiffs had not shown by clear and convincing evidence that B&W had engaged in intentional wrongdoing with respect to that portion of its negligence claim based on theories of negligent failure to warn and negligent product design. However, the majority of the Court also found that plaintiffs had submitted sufficient evidence of B&W's intentional wrongdoing with respect to their strict liability product defect theory, and the majority indicated its intent to remand the case for a new trial on punitive damages on the strict liability product defect claim only. Because one of the justices of the Appeals Court dissented from several of the rulings of the majority opinion, the case has been transferred in accordance with the Missouri Constitution to the Missouri Supreme Court where it remains pending.

- In March 2005, in *Rose v. Philip Morris*, a New York jury awarded \$3.42 million in compensatory damages against B&W and Philip Morris. On August 18, 2005, B&W filed a notice of appeal. Pursuant to its agreement to indemnify B&W, on February 7, 2006, Reynolds Tobacco posted a supersedeas bond in the approximate amount of \$2.058 million. The jury also returned a punitive damages award totaling \$17.1 million against Philip Morris. In December 2005, Philip Morris's post-trial motions challenging the verdict were denied by the trial court. Philip Morris has appealed. Oral argument occurred on December 12, 2006, and a decision is pending.
- Also in March 2005, the Ninth Circuit Court of Appeals referred the case *Grisham v. Philip Morris* to the California Supreme Court to determine the statute of limitations in tobacco cases, noting an inconsistency in federal and California state law. The plaintiff, who was diagnosed with severe periodontal disease caused by toxins in cigarette smoke, alleged that Philip Morris and Brown & Williamson deceived her for four decades about the safety of their products. The case had reached the Ninth Circuit after a Los Angeles federal court dismissed the case as being time-barred. On December 6, 2006, the California Supreme Court heard arguments regarding whether long-term smokers who relied on manufacturers' false safety claims are required to file suit when health problems emerge or much earlier, when smokers realize they are addicted. On February 15, 2007, the California Supreme Court ruled that such smokers need not have filed suit when they realized they were addicted, thus permitting the *Grisham* lawsuit to proceed in federal court in California.

In August 2002, the California Supreme Court issued a decision limiting evidence of wrongdoing between 1988 and 1998 by tobacco companies. One OPM has reported that this decision worked to the advantage of the tobacco industry defendants in the *Whiteley* case, and it believes that it will have a favorable impact for tobacco industry defendants in other California cases, both at the trial court level and on appeal.

*Healthcare Cost Recovery Lawsuits.* In certain pending proceedings, domestic and foreign governmental entities and non-governmental plaintiffs, including Native American tribes, insurers and self-insurers such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield plans, hospitals and others, are seeking reimbursement of healthcare cost expenditures allegedly caused by tobacco products and, in some cases, of future expenditures and damages as well. Relief sought by some but not all plaintiffs includes punitive damages, multiple damages and other statutory damages and penalties, injunctions prohibiting alleged marketing and sales to minors, disclosure of research, disgorgement of profits, funding of anti-smoking programs, additional disclosure of nicotine yields, and payment of attorney and expert witness fees. The PMs are exposed to liability in these cases, because the MSA only settled healthcare cost recovery claims belonging to the Settling States. Altria has reported that as of August 1, 2007, there were three healthcare cost recovery actions pending against Philip Morris in the U.S. For example, on August 4, 2005, a national senior citizens' organization filed a lawsuit (*United Senior Association, Inc. v. Philip Morris Inc., et al.*) in Boston against cigarette manufacturers under the federal "Medicare as Secondary Payer" statute, which permits Medicare beneficiaries or others to bring actions on behalf of Medicare to recover healthcare costs paid by Medicare for which another party may be liable. The plaintiffs are reportedly seeking to recover more than \$60 billion in alleged Medicare spending on treatment of smoking related illnesses since August 4, 1999. On October 24, 2005, the defendants filed a motion to dismiss, or, in the alternative, to transfer the case to the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Florida, where a similar lawsuit involving Medicare payments in Florida was dismissed on July 26, 2005. The Boston lawsuit reportedly does not seek to recover Medicare payments in Florida. On August 28, 2006, the defendants' motion to dismiss was granted. On September 7, 2006, the plaintiffs filed a notice of appeal with the U.S. Court of Appeals for the First Circuit. On August 20, 2007, the First Circuit issued an opinion affirming the District Court's dismissal of the action.

The claims asserted in the healthcare cost recovery actions include the equitable claim that the tobacco industry was "unjustly enriched" by plaintiffs' payment of healthcare costs allegedly attributable to smoking, the equitable claim of indemnity, common law claims of negligence, strict liability, breach of express and

implied warranty, violation of a voluntary undertaking or special duty, fraud, negligent misrepresentation, conspiracy, public nuisance, claims under federal and state statutes governing consumer fraud, antitrust, deceptive trade practices and false advertising, and claims under federal Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organizations Act (“**RICO**”) and parallel state statutes.

Defenses raised include lack of proximate cause, remoteness of injury, failure to state a valid claim, lack of benefit, adequate remedy at law, “unclean hands” (namely, that plaintiffs cannot obtain equitable relief because they participated in, and benefited from, the sale of cigarettes), lack of antitrust standing and injury, federal preemption, lack of statutory authority to bring suit, and statutes of limitations. In addition, defendants argue that they should be entitled to “set off” any alleged damages to the extent the plaintiff benefits economically from the sale of cigarettes through the receipt of excise taxes or otherwise. Defendants also argue that these cases are improper because plaintiffs must proceed under principles of subrogation and assignment. Under traditional theories of recovery, a payor of medical costs (such as an insurer) can seek recovery of healthcare costs from a third party solely by “standing in the shoes” of the injured party. Defendants argue that plaintiffs should be required to bring any actions as subrogees of individual healthcare recipients and should be subject to all defenses available against the injured party.

Although there have been some decisions to the contrary, most courts that have decided motions in these cases have dismissed all or most of the claims against the industry. In addition, eight federal Courts of Appeals (the Second, Third, Fifth, Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, Eleventh, and District of Columbia Circuits), as well as California, Florida, New York, and Tennessee intermediate appellate courts, relying primarily on grounds that plaintiffs’ claims were too remote, have affirmed dismissals of, or reversed trial courts that had refused to dismiss, healthcare cost recovery actions. The U.S. Supreme Court has refused to consider plaintiffs’ appeals from the cases decided by the U.S. Courts of Appeals for the Second, Third, Fifth, Ninth, and District of Columbia Circuits.

A number of foreign governmental entities have filed suit in state and federal courts in the U.S. against tobacco industry defendants to recover funds for healthcare and medical and other assistance paid by those foreign governments to their citizens. Such suits have been brought in the U.S. by 13 countries, a Canadian province, 11 Brazilian states and 11 Brazilian cities. All of these suits have been dismissed. In addition to these cases brought in the U.S., healthcare cost recovery actions have also been brought in Israel, the Marshall Islands (where the suit was dismissed), Canada and France. In September 2003, the case pending in France was dismissed and the plaintiff has appealed. Other governmental entities have stated that they are considering filing such actions. On September 29, 2005, the Supreme Court of Canada upheld legislation passed in 1998 by the province of British Columbia allowing the provincial government to seek damages from tobacco companies for healthcare costs incurred during the past 50 years, as well as for future illness-related expenses in connection with tobacco use. The legislation also lightens the required burden of proof and curtails certain traditional defenses in civil suits. Other provinces are reported to have already adopted or are expected to adopt similar legislation. See discussion of HHCR Act, below.

In September 1999, the U.S. government filed a lawsuit in the U.S. District Court for the District of Columbia against the OPMs, certain related parent companies and two tobacco industry research and lobbying organizations, seeking medical cost recovery for federal funds spent to treat alleged tobacco-related illnesses and asserting violation of RICO. In September 2000, the trial court dismissed the government’s medical cost recovery claims, but permitted discovery to proceed on the government’s claims for relief under RICO. The government alleged that disgorgement by defendants of approximately \$280 billion is an appropriate remedy. In May 2004, the court issued an order denying defendants’ motion for partial summary judgment limiting the disgorgement remedy. In June 2004, the trial court certified that order for immediate appeal, and in July 2004, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia agreed to hear the appeal on an expedited basis. On February 4, 2005, the appeals court, in a 2-1 decision, ruled that disgorgement is not an available remedy in this case. This ruling eliminated the government’s claim for \$280 billion and limits the government’s potential remedies principally to forward-looking relief, including funding for anti-smoking programs. The government appealed this ruling to seek a rehearing en banc. On April 20, 2005, the appeals court denied the government’s

appeal. On July 18, 2005, the government appealed the ruling with regard to the \$280 billion disgorgement decision to the U.S. Supreme Court. On October 17, 2005 the U.S. Supreme Court, without comment, denied the appeal.

In addition to the claim for disgorgement, the government sought relief consisting of, among other things: (1) prohibitory injunctions (including prohibitions on committing acts of racketeering, making false or misleading statements about cigarettes, and on youth marketing); (2) disclosure of documents concerning the health risks and addictive nature of smoking, the ability to develop less hazardous cigarettes and youth marketing campaigns; (3) mandatory corrective statements about the health risks of smoking and the addictive properties of nicotine in future marketing campaigns; and (4) funding of remedial programs (including research, public education campaigns, medical monitoring programs, and smoking cessation programs). The trial phase of the case concluded on June 9, 2005. In its closing argument and submissions, the government requested that the tobacco industry be required to fund an up to ten-year, \$14 billion smoking cessation program. The government reportedly also asked the court to appoint a lawyer as monitor with power to order the defendants to sell off their research and development facilities related to developing so-called safer cigarettes. The monitor would also have power to review the business policies of the defendants. The government also reportedly requested that restrictions be placed on the defendants' ability to sell their cigarette businesses and that the defendants be compelled to run public advertisements regarding the dangers of smoking. The defendants filed a motion to dismiss the government's request for the \$14 billion award, arguing that the award was barred by the February 4, 2005 appellate decision. On July 22, 2005, the District Court judge granted the motion made under Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 24 by six public interest groups to intervene in this action for the very limited purpose of being heard on the issue of permissible and appropriate remedies in this case, should the government prevail on its claims with respect to smoking cessation programs. On August 15, 2005, the parties filed their proposed findings of fact. Post-trial briefing was completed on October 9, 2005. In August 2006, the District Court entered judgment in favor of the government, finding the defendants liable for the RICO claims, but imposing no direct financial penalties on the defendants, instead ordering the defendants to make certain "corrective communications" in a variety of media and enjoining the defendants from using certain brand descriptors. Both parties appealed – the defendants filed on September 11, 2006, and the government filed on October 16, 2006. In March 2007, the trial court denied defendants' post-trial motion for clarification of those portions of the court's remedial order prohibiting defendants from making certain statements to consumers about their products both within and outside the United States, but granted defendants' post-trial motion for clarification that the court's remedial order requiring corrective statements on display at retail points of sale do not apply outside the United States. The defendants have filed amended notices of appeal. The District Court's stay of the proceedings remains in effect pending appeal to the Court of Appeals.

In January of 2001, the Canadian Province of British Columbia enacted the Damages and Healthcare Costs Recovery Act (the "**HCCR Act**"). The HCCR Act authorizes an action by the government of British Columbia against a manufacturer of tobacco products for the recovery by the government of the present value of past and reasonably expected future healthcare expenditures incurred by the government in treating British Columbians with diseases caused by exposure to tobacco products, where such exposure was caused by a manufacturer's tort in British Columbia or a breach of a duty owed to persons in British Columbia. The HCCR Act allows the government to bring such action for expenditures related to a particular individual or on an aggregate basis for a population of persons. In an action brought on an aggregate basis, the Act does not require the government to identify a particular person or to prove particular injury, healthcare costs or causation of harm with respect to any particular person. Where the government proves in an aggregate claim with respect of a type of tobacco product that a manufacturer breached a legal duty owed to persons who have been or might become exposed to the tobacco product and that exposure to the tobacco product can cause or contribute to a disease, the court is required to presume that: (1) the population of persons who were exposed to the tobacco product would not have been exposed to the product but for the breach of duty; and (2) such exposure caused or contributed to disease or risk of disease in such population of persons. In such cases, the court is required to determine on an aggregate basis the cost of healthcare benefits provided after the date of the breach of duty and to assess liability among defendants based on the proportion of the aggregate cost equal

to each defendant's market share in the type of tobacco product. Statistical information and information derived from epidemiological and other relevant studies is admissible as evidence under the HCCR Act to establish causation and for quantifying damages in an action brought by the government under the HCCR Act or in an action brought by a class of persons under Canada's class action statute.

Subsequently to the enactment of the HCCR Act, the government of British Columbia brought an action under the HCCR Act against certain foreign and domestic tobacco manufacturers, including Philip Morris International, a subsidiary of Altria. The defendants challenged the constitutionality of the HCCR Act, and in a decision dated June 5, 2003, British Columbia's trial level court held that the HCCR Act was unconstitutional as exceeding the territorial jurisdiction of the Province. On appeal, British Columbia's highest court reversed the lower court in a decision dated May 20, 2004, holding that the HCCR Act was constitutional. The matter was appealed to the Canadian Supreme Court, Canada's highest court. By a unanimous decision dated September 29, 2005 the Canadian Supreme Court affirmed the lower court, holding that the HCCR Act was constitutional. In the decision, the court also vacated the stay of proceedings and the action was allowed to continue. On September 15, 2006, the British Columbia Court of Appeal unanimously ruled that the foreign defendants served ex juris are subject to British Columbia law, allowing the government to proceed with its lawsuit against them. On November 10, 2006, the ex juris defendants applied for leave to appeal the judgment to the Supreme Court of Canada. On April 5, 2007, the Supreme Court of Canada dismissed the defendants' application. While the judgment only applies to British Columbia, it is expected that other provincial governments may follow suit. It has been reported that Newfoundland has enacted, and Saskatchewan and Nova Scotia are considering enacting, legislation similar to the HCCR Act.

*Other Tobacco-Related Litigation.* The tobacco industry is also the target of other litigation. By way of example only, and not as an exclusive or complete list, the following are additional tobacco-related litigation:

- *Asbestos Contribution Cases.* These cases, which have been brought against cigarette manufacturers on behalf of former asbestos manufacturers, their personal injury settlement trusts and insurers, seek, among other things, contribution or reimbursement for amounts expended in connection with the defense and payment of asbestos claims that were allegedly caused in whole or in part by cigarette smoking. Two of the cases were dismissed.
- *Cigarette Price-Fixing Cases.* According to one OPM, as of August 1, 2007, there were two cases pending against domestic cigarette manufacturers in Kansas (*Smith v. Philip Morris*) and New Mexico (*Romero v. Philip Morris*), alleging that defendants conspired to fix cigarette prices in violation of antitrust laws. The plaintiffs' motions for class certification have been granted in both cases. In February 2005, the New Mexico Court of Appeals affirmed the class certification decision in the *Romero* case. On April 19, 2005, the defendants filed motions for summary judgment. In June 2006, the court granted defendant's motion, and the plaintiffs appealed on August 14, 2006. In the *Smith* case, on July 14, 2006, the court issued an order confirming that fact discovery is closed, except for such privilege issues that the court determines, based on a Special Master's report, justify further limited fact discovery. Expert discovery, as necessary, will begin in early 2007.
- *Cigarette Contraband Cases.* In May 2001 and August 2001, various governmental entities of Colombia, the European Community and ten member states filed suits in the U.S. against certain PMs, alleging that defendants sold to distributors cigarettes that would be illegally imported into various jurisdictions. The claims asserted in these cases include negligence, negligent misrepresentation, fraud, unjust enrichment, violations of RICO and its state-law equivalents and conspiracy. Plaintiffs in these cases seek actual damages, treble damages and undisclosed injunctive relief. In February 2002, the trial court granted defendants' motions to dismiss all of the actions. Plaintiffs in each case have appealed. In January 2004, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit affirmed the dismissals of the cases. In April 2004,

plaintiffs petitioned the U.S. Supreme Court for further review. The European Community and the 10 member states moved to dismiss their petition in July 2004 following an agreement entered into among Philip Morris, the European Commission and 10 member states of the European Community. The terms of this cooperation agreement provide for broad cooperation with European law enforcement agencies on anti-contraband and anti-counterfeit efforts and resolve all disputes between the parties on these issues. In May 2005, the U.S. Supreme Court granted the petitions for review, vacated the judgment of the Second Circuit Court of Appeals and remanded the case to that court for further review in light of the Supreme Court's recent decision in *U.S. v. Pasquantino*. On September 13, 2005, the Second Circuit Court of Appeals found that *Pasquantino* was inapplicable to the case and affirmed its earlier decision that the revenue rule bars foreign sovereigns' civil claims for recovery of lost tax revenue and law enforcement costs related to cigarette smuggling. In January 2006, the U.S. Supreme Court rejected the European Union's petition for review.

- *Patent Litigation.* In 2001 and 2002, Star Scientific, Inc. (“**Star**”) filed two patent infringement actions against Reynolds Tobacco in the U.S. District Court for the District of Maryland. Such actions have been consolidated. Reynolds Tobacco filed various motions for summary judgment, which were all denied. Reynolds Tobacco has also filed counterclaims seeking a declaration that the claims of the two Star patents in dispute are invalid, unenforceable and not infringed by Reynolds Tobacco. Between January 31, 2005 and February 8, 2005, the District Court held a first bench trial on Reynolds Tobacco's affirmative defense and counterclaim based upon inequitable conduct. The District Court has not yet issued a ruling on this issue. Additionally, in response to the court's invitation, Reynolds Tobacco filed two summary judgment motions on January 20, 2005. The District Court has indicated that it will rule on Reynolds Tobacco's two pending summary judgment motions and the issue of inequitable conduct at the same time. The District Court has not yet set a trial date for the remaining issues in the case.
- *Vermont Litigation.* On July 22, 2005, Vermont announced that it had sued Reynolds Tobacco in the Vermont Superior Court for using false and misleading advertising to promote its “Eclipse” brand of cigarettes. The lawsuit charges that Reynolds Tobacco's advertising, which claims that smoking Eclipse cigarettes is less harmful than smoking other brands of cigarettes, violated Vermont's consumer protection statutes. The State of Vermont is seeking declaratory, injunctive, and monetary relief. Reynolds Tobacco has answered the complaint. Discovery is underway. No trial date has been set. According to the Vermont Attorney General, the offices of Attorneys General across the country, including California, Connecticut, the District of Columbia, Idaho, Illinois, Iowa, Maine, New York, and Tennessee, have actively participated in the investigation leading up to this lawsuit and will continue to assist Vermont in it.
- *Foreign Lawsuits.* Lawsuits have been filed in foreign jurisdictions against certain OPMs and/or their subsidiaries and affiliates, including individual smoking and health actions, class actions and healthcare cost recovery suits.

The foregoing discussion of civil litigation against the tobacco industry is not exhaustive and is not based upon the Authority's examination or analysis of the court records of the cases mentioned or of any other court records. It is based on SEC filings by OPMs and on other publicly available information published by the OPMs or others. Prospective purchasers of the Series 2007 Bonds are referred to the reports filed with the SEC by certain of the OPMs and applicable court records for additional descriptions thereof.

Litigation is subject to many uncertainties. In its SEC filing, one OPM states that it is not possible to predict the outcome of litigation pending against it, and that it is unable to make a meaningful estimate of the amount or range of loss that could result from an unfavorable outcome of pending litigation, and that it is

possible that its business, volume, results of operations, cash flows, or financial position could be materially affected by an unfavorable outcome or settlement of certain pending litigation or by the enactment of federal or state tobacco legislation. It can be expected that at any time and from time to time there will be developments in the litigation presently pending and filing of new litigation that could adversely affect the business of the PMs and the market for or prices of securities such as the Series 2007 Bonds payable from tobacco settlement payments made under the MSA.

## THE GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT

*The following information has been extracted from the Global Insight Consumption Report, a copy of which is attached hereto as Appendix A. This summary does not purport to be complete and the Global Insight Consumption Report should be read in its entirety for an understanding of the assumptions on which it is based and the conclusions it reaches. The Global Insight Consumption Report forecasts future United States domestic cigarette consumption. The MSA payments are based in part on cigarettes shipped in and to the United States. Cigarette shipments and cigarette consumption may not match as a result of various factors such as inventory adjustments but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time.*

### General

Global Insight has prepared a report, dated October 24, 2007 (the “Global Insight Consumption Report”) for the Authority on the consumption of cigarettes in the United States from 2007 through 2052 entitled, “A Forecast of U. S. Cigarette Consumption (2007-2052) for the Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority.” Global Insight is an internationally recognized econometric and consulting firm of over 325 economists in 23 offices worldwide. Global Insight is a privately held subsidiary of Global Insight (USA), Inc., a publicly traded company which is a provider of financial, economic and market research information.

Global Insight has developed a cigarette consumption model based on historical United States data between 1965 and 2003. Global Insight constructed this cigarette consumption model after considering the impact of demographics, cigarette prices, disposable income, employment and unemployment, industry advertising expenditures, the future effect of the incidence of smoking among underage youth and qualitative variables that captured the impact of anti-smoking regulations, legislation, and health warnings. After determining which variables were effective in building this cigarette consumption model (real cigarette prices, real per capita disposable personal income, the impact of restrictions on smoking in public places, and the trend over time in individual behavior and preferences), Global Insight employed standard multivariate regression analysis to determine the nature of the economic relationship between these variables and adult per capita cigarette consumption in the United States. The multivariate regression analysis showed: (i) long run price elasticity of demand of -0.33; (ii) income elasticity of demand of 0.27; and (iii) a trend decline in adult per capita cigarette consumption of 2.40% per year holding other recognized significant factors constant.

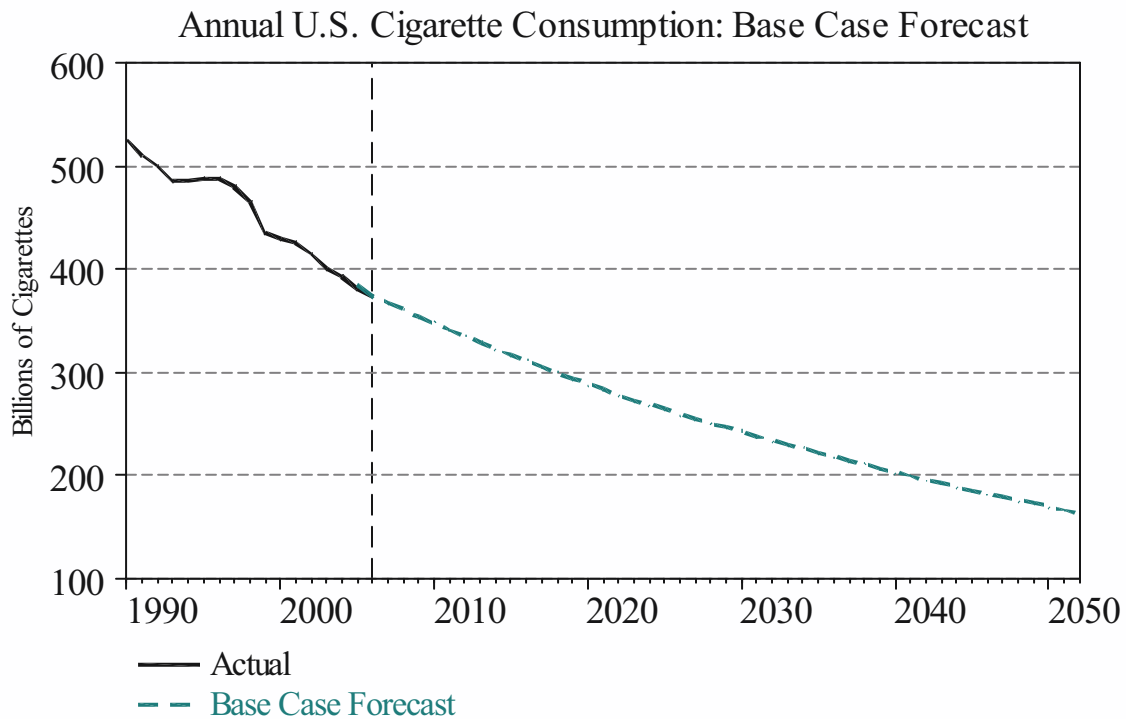
Global Insight’s model, coupled with its long term forecast of the United States economy, was then used to project total United States cigarette consumption from 2004 through 2052 (the “**Global Insight Base Case Forecast**”). The Global Insight Base Case Forecast indicates that the total United States cigarette consumption in 2052 will be 163 billion cigarettes (approximately 8 billion packs), a 59% decline from the 2003 level. After 2006, the rate of decline in total cigarette consumption is projected to moderate and average less than 2% per year. From 2004 through 2052, the average annual rate of decline is projected to be 1.81%. On a per capita basis, consumption is forecast to fall during the same period at an average annual rate of 2.52%. Total consumption of cigarettes in the United States is forecast to fall from an estimated 381 billion in 2005 to 373 billion in 2006, to 367 billion in 2007, to under 300 billion by 2018, and to under 200 billion by 2041, as set forth in the following table. The Global Insight Consumption Report states that Global Insight believes that the assumptions on which the Global Insight Base Case Forecast is based are reasonable.



**Global Insight Base Case Forecast of Cigarette Consumption**

<b>Year</b>	<b>Cigarettes (billions)</b>	<b>Year</b>	<b>Cigarettes (billions)</b>
2006	373.34	2029	246.48
2007	366.86	2030	242.34
2008	360.59	2031	238.16
2009	353.96	2032	234.12
2010	347.62	2033	230.14
2011	341.27	2034	226.19
2012	334.93	2035	221.88
2013	328.54	2036	217.98
2014	322.14	2037	214.19
2015	316.45	2038	210.53
2016	310.82	2039	206.72
2017	305.06	2040	203.02
2018	299.41	2041	199.44
2019	293.71	2042	195.80
2020	288.43	2043	192.24
2021	283.17	2044	188.76
2022	278.11	2045	185.34
2023	273.09	2046	182.02
2024	268.43	2047	178.77
2025	263.84	2048	175.61
2026	259.36	2049	172.52
2027	254.97	2050	169.46
2028	250.69	2051	166.45
		2052	163.47

The following graph displays the projected time trend of cigarette consumption in the United States:



The Global Insight Consumption Report also presents alternative forecasts that project higher and lower paths of cigarette consumption, predicting that by 2052 total United States consumption could be as low as 150 billion or as high as 176 billion cigarettes. In addition, the Global Insight Consumption Report presents scenarios with more extreme variations in assumptions for the purposes of illustrating alternative paths of consumption. Another alternative to the Global Insight Base Case Forecast will result from a sharp increase in the federal excise tax on cigarettes. In September 2007, the U.S. Congress adopted legislation which would raise the excise tax by \$0.61. On October 3, the President vetoed the bill, and on October 18, Congress failed to override the veto. Global Insight forecasts that, if the tax increase were to be enacted, U.S. cigarettes consumption would fall by an additional 4.3%, or 15.5 billion cigarettes, by 2009, and in 2052 will be 156 billion.

### Historical Cigarette Consumption

The USDA, which has compiled data on cigarette consumption since 1900, reports that consumption (which is defined as taxable United States consumer sales, plus shipments to overseas armed forces, ship stores, Puerto Rico and other United States possessions, and small tax-exempt categories, as reported by the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms) grew from 2.5 billion in 1900 to a peak of 640 billion in 1981. Consumption declined in the 1980's and 1990's, reaching a level of 465 billion cigarettes in 1998, and decreasing to less than 400 billion cigarettes in 2004.

The following table sets forth United States domestic cigarette consumption for the nine years ended December 31, 2006.\* The data in this table vary from statistics on cigarette shipments in the United States. While the Global Insight Consumption Report is based on consumption, payments under the MSA are computed based in part on shipments in or to the 50 states of the United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico. The quantities of cigarettes shipped and cigarettes consumed may not match at any given point in time as a result of various factors such as inventory adjustments, but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time.

### U.S. Cigarette Consumption

<b>Year Ended December 31</b>	<b>Consumption (Billions of Cigarettes)</b>	<b>Percentage Change</b>
2006	373(est.)	-2.01%
2005	381(est.)	-3.05
2004	393(est.)	-1.75
2003	400	-3.61
2002	415	-2.35
2001	425	-1.16
2000	430	-1.15
1999	435	-6.45
1998	465	-3.13

---

\*Source: USDA-ERS; 2004, 2005, 2006, estimates by Global Insight. USDA estimates for 2004, 2005, and 2006 diverge significantly from estimates based on independent data from the industry and from the US Tobacco and Tax Bureau. In 2004, the manufacturers report domestic shipments of 394.5 billion, and the TTB reports a total of 397.7 billion. These contrast with a USDA estimate of 388 billion. In 2005, the manufacturers report 381.7 billion, TTB reports 381.1 billion, and USDA 376 billion. In 2006, the manufacturers report 372.5 billion, TTB reports 380.9 billion, and USDA 372 billion.

### Factors Affecting Cigarette Consumption

Most empirical studies have found a common set of variables that are relevant in building a model of cigarette demand. These conventional analyses usually evaluate one or more of the following factors: (i) general population growth, (ii) price increases, (iii) changes in disposable income, (iv) youth consumption, (v) trends over time, (vi) smoking bans in public places, (vii) nicotine dependence, and (viii) health warnings. While some of these factors were not found to have a measurable impact on changes in demand for cigarettes, all of these factors are thought to affect smoking in some manner and to affect current levels of consumption. Since 1964 there has been a significant decline in United States adult per capita cigarette consumption. The 1964 Surgeon General's health warning and numerous subsequent health warnings, together with the increased health awareness of the population over the past 30 years, may have contributed to decreases in cigarette consumption levels. If, as assumed by Global Insight, the awareness of the adult population continues to change in this way, overall consumption of cigarettes will decline gradually over time. Global Insight's analysis includes a time trend variable in order to capture the impact of these changing health trends and the effects of other such variables which are difficult to quantify.

## SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION

### Introduction

The following discussion describes the methodology and assumptions used to calculate projections of Collections to be received by the Trustee (the “**Cash Flow Assumptions**”), as well as the methodology and assumptions used to structure Serial Bond maturities, Turbo Term Bond Maturities and Sinking Fund Installments for the Series 2007 Bonds and calculate the projected Turbo Redemptions (the “**Bond Structuring Methodology**”). In addition, sensitivity analyses are provided which evaluate the impact of different consumption levels on Turbo Redemptions. The assumptions are only assumptions and no guarantee can be made as to the ultimate outcome of certain events assumed herein. If actual results are different from those assumed, it could have a material effect on the forecast of Pledged Tobacco Receipts as well as projected Turbo Redemptions.

### Cash Flow Assumptions

In calculating projections of Collections to be received by the Trustee, different assumptions of cigarette consumption in the United States, including the forecast developed by Global Insight described as the Global Insight Base Case Forecast, were applied to calculate Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by the PMs pursuant to the MSA. The calculations of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments required to be made were performed in accordance with the terms of the MSA; however, as described below, certain assumptions were made with respect to consumption of cigarettes in the United States and the applicability of certain adjustments and offsets to such payments set forth in the MSA. In addition, it was assumed that the PMs make all payments required to be made by them pursuant to the MSA, and that the relative market share for each remains constant throughout the forecast period at 84.87%\* for the OPMs, 9.99%\* for the SPMs and 5.14%\* for the NPMs. It was further assumed that each company that is currently a PM remains such throughout the term of the Series 2007 Bonds.

In applying consumption forecasts from the Global Insight Consumption Report, it was assumed that United States consumption, which was forecasted by Global Insight, was equal to the number of cigarettes shipped in and to the United States, the District of Columbia and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico. This is the number that is applied to determine the Volume Adjustment. The Global Insight Consumption Report states that the quantities of cigarettes shipped and cigarettes consumed may not match at any given point in time as a result of various factors such as inventory adjustments, but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time. Global Insight’s Base Case Forecast for United States cigarette consumption is set forth herein in Appendix A – “GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” attached hereto. See Appendix A for a discussion of the assumptions underlying the projections of cigarette consumption contained in the Global Insight Consumption Report.

### Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments

For each projection, the amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by the PMs was calculated by applying the adjustments applicable to the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments in that order, and in the amounts, set out in the MSA, as follows:

*Inflation Adjustment.* First, the Inflation Adjustment was applied to the schedule of base amounts for the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments set forth in the MSA. The inflation rate is

---

\* The aggregate market share information utilized in the Cash Flow Assumptions may differ materially from the market share information used by the MSA Auditor in calculating adjustments to Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments. See “SUMMARY OF THE MSA—Adjustments to Payments” herein.

compounded annually at the greater of 3.0% or the percentage increase in the actual Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers (the “CPI”) in the prior year as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics (released each January). The calculations of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments assume the minimum Inflation Adjustment rate provided in the MSA of 3.0% in every year except for calendar years 2000, 2004 and 2005, where actual CPI results of 3.40%, 3.256% and 3.416% respectively were used.

*Volume Adjustment.* Next, the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments calculated for each year after application of the Inflation Adjustment were adjusted for the Volume Adjustment by applying the projected cigarette consumption for each scenario to the market share of the OPMs for the prior year. No add back or benefit was assumed from any Income Adjustment. See “SUMMARY OF THE MSA–Adjustments to Payments–*Volume Adjustment*” herein for a description of the formula used to calculate the Volume Adjustment.

*Previously Settled States Reduction.* Next, the annual amounts calculated for each year after application of the Inflation Adjustment and the Volume Adjustment were reduced by the Previously Settled States Reduction which applies only to the Annual Payments owed by the OPMs. The Previously Settled States Reduction does not apply to Strategic Contribution Payments. The Previously Settled States Reduction is as follows for each year of the following period:

In or Prior to 2007	12.4500000%
2008 through 2017	12.2373756%
2018 and after	11.0666667%

*Non-Settling States Reduction.* The Non-Settling States Reduction was not applied to the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments because such reduction has no effect on the amount of payments to be received by a state that remains a party to the MSA. The Cash Flow Assumptions include an assumption that the State will remain a party to the MSA.

*NPM Adjustment.* The NPM Adjustment will not apply to the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments payable to any state that enacts and diligently enforces a Qualifying Statute so long as such statute is not held to be unenforceable. The State has a Qualifying Statute, and the Cash Flow Assumptions include an assumption that the State will diligently enforce it and that it is not held to be unenforceable. For a discussion of the State’s Qualifying Statute, see “SUMMARY OF THE MSA–MSA Provisions Relating to Model/Qualifying Statutes–*Status of the State’s Qualifying Statute*” herein. For a description of the opinion of Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP to be delivered to each Rating Agency with respect to the State’s Qualifying Statute, see “CERTAIN LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS–Qualifying Statute Constitutionality” herein. See also “RISK FACTORS - Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA – NPM Adjustment” herein.

*Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed Payments.* The Cash Flow Assumptions include an assumption that there will be no adjustments to the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments due to miscalculated or disputed payments. See also “RISK FACTORS- Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA –Disputed or Recalculated Payments and Disputes under the Terms of the MSA” herein.

*Litigating Releasing Parties Offset.* The Cash Flow Assumptions include an assumption that the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset will have no effect on payments.

*Offset for Claims-Over.* The Cash Flow Assumptions include an assumption that the Offset for Claims-Over will not apply. See also “RISK FACTORS- Other Potential Payment Decreases Under the Terms of the MSA –Disputed or Recalculated Payments and Disputes under the Terms of the MSA” herein.

*Subsequent Participating Manufacturers.* The Cash Flow Assumptions assume that the relative market share of the SPMs remains constant at 9.99%. Because the 9.99% market share is greater than 3.125% (125% of 2.5%, the SPMs' estimated 1997 market share), the Cash Flow Assumptions assume that the SPMs are required to make Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments in each year.

*Allocation Percentages for the State under the MSA.* The amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments, after application of the Inflation Adjustment, the Volume Adjustment and the Previously Settled States Reduction (where applicable) for each year were multiplied by the respective State Allocation Percentages for the State (5.0375098% for Annual Payments and 2.7819695% for Strategic Contribution Payments) in order to determine the amount of Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments to be made by the PMs in each year to be allocated to the Ohio State-Specific Account.

### **Interest Earnings**

The Cash Flow Assumptions assume that the Trustee will receive ten days after April 15 the Annual Payment portion of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts owed by the PMs in 2008 and each year thereafter. It is further assumed that the Trustee will receive ten days after April 15 the Strategic Contribution Payment portion of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts in each year from 2008 through 2017. Earnings are assumed at 4.00% per annum, on the Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments received by the Trustee until the applicable Distribution Date. Interest earnings have been assumed to begin accruing upon receipt by the Trustee of the Annual Payments and the Strategic Contribution Payments.

Amounts on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account are assumed to be invested at a rate of 4.682% per annum.

### **Other Assumptions**

*Serial Bond Maturities.* The schedule of Serial Bond maturities is as set forth in the inside cover.

*Sinking Fund Installments.* The schedules of Sinking Fund Installments for the Series 2007A-2 Bonds and Series 2007A-3 are as indicated under "THE SERIES 2007 BONDS—Sinking Fund Installments" herein. There is no schedule of Sinking Fund Installments for the Series 2007A-1, Series 2007B Bonds or Series 2007C Bonds.

*Turbo Term Bond Maturities.* The Turbo Term Bonds mature as set forth on the inside front cover hereof.

*Senior Liquidity Reserve Account.* The Senior Liquidity Reserve Account Requirement was established for the Senior Bonds at \$389,231,603.13.

*Operating Expense Assumptions.* Annual operating expenses of the Authority have been assumed at the sum of Operating Cap and Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap for each year. Operating Cap was assumed at \$250,000 in the fiscal year ending June 30, 2008. In each year thereafter, the Operating Cap was assumed to be inflated at 3% per year. Other than Enforcement Expenses, no Operating Expenses are assumed in excess of the annual Operating Cap and no arbitrage rebate expense was assumed since it has been assumed that the yield on the Authority's investments will not exceed the yield on the Series 2007 Bonds. No Tax Obligations, Priority Payments or Termination Payments were assumed. The Enforcement Expenses are assumed at the Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap which is assumed to be (i) \$2,500,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2008 through and including June 30, 2013 and (ii) \$2,000,000 for the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2014 inflated at 3% per year thereafter.

*Delivery Date.* The Series 2007 Bonds were assumed to be issued on October 29, 2007.

*Interest and Accretion Rates and Computation of Interest.* The Series 2007A-1 Bonds, Series 2007A-2 Bonds, Series 2007A-3 Bonds, Series 2007B Bonds and Series 2007C Bonds were assumed to bear interest or accrete at the rates set forth on the inside front cover hereof. Computation of interest was assumed to be made on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months.

*Miscellaneous.* The Cash Flow Assumptions assume that no Swap Payments are required to be made, that there is no optional redemption or refunding of the Bonds, that no Event of Default occurs, that no Lump Sum Payment, Partial Lump Sum Payment or Total Lump Sum Payment is received, that no Turbo Redemptions occur on any Distribution Date in December and that Senior Turbo Term Bonds are redeemed when the balance in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account exceeds the outstanding Senior Bond Obligation, without taking into consideration any potential Termination Payments. It is further assumed that all Distribution Dates occur on the first day of each June and December, whether or not such date is a Business Day.

### **Bond Structuring Methodology**

*Cigarette Consumption.* The Series 2007 Bonds have been structured utilizing the Global Insight Base Case Forecast. The following tables present the projections of Annual Payments, Strategic Contribution Payments and total payments to be received by the Trustee in each year through 2052, calculated in accordance with the Cash Flow Assumptions and using Global Insight's Base Case Forecast. Global Insight's Base Case Forecast for United States cigarette consumption is set forth under "GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT" herein. See Appendix A hereto for a discussion of the assumptions underlying the projections of cigarette consumption contained in the Global Insight Consumption Report.

**Projection of Annual Payments to be Received by the Trustee**

<u>Year</u>	<u>Global Insight Base Case Consumption Forecast</u>	<u>OPM-Adjusted Consumption</u>	<u>Base Annual Payments</u>	<u>Inflation Adjustment</u>	<u>Volume Adjustment</u>	<u>Previously Settled States Reduction</u>	<u>Subtotal</u>	<u>State's Allocation of Annual Payments</u>	<u>Total OPM Annual Payments to Trustee</u>	<u>Total SPM Annual Payments to Trustee</u>	<u>Total Annual Payments to Trustee</u>
2007	366,861,230,978	311,355,126,731									
2008	360,592,250,500	306,034,642,999	\$8,139,000,000	\$2,591,450,817	(\$3,632,377,161)	(\$868,617,934)	\$6,229,455,722	5.03750980%	\$313,809,442	\$28,922,961	\$342,732,403
2009	353,958,548,815	300,404,620,379	8,139,000,000	2,913,364,342	(3,862,502,937)	(879,850,345)	6,310,011,060	5.03750980%	317,867,426	29,296,974	347,164,399
2010	347,623,207,570	295,027,816,265	8,139,000,000	3,244,935,272	(4,110,427,188)	(890,086,503)	6,383,421,580	5.03750980%	321,565,488	29,637,814	351,203,302
2011	341,269,091,951	289,635,078,339	8,139,000,000	3,586,453,330	(4,363,633,365)	(900,893,560)	6,460,926,405	5.03750980%	325,469,801	29,997,664	355,467,465
2012	334,929,406,672	284,254,587,443	8,139,000,000	3,938,216,930	(4,628,729,006)	(911,499,444)	6,536,988,481	5.03750980%	329,301,435	30,350,815	359,652,251
2013	328,543,528,729	278,834,892,832	8,139,000,000	4,300,533,438	(4,905,489,232)	(921,969,287)	6,612,074,919	5.03750980%	333,083,922	30,699,437	363,783,359
2014	322,136,994,313	273,397,667,074	8,139,000,000	4,673,719,441	(5,195,724,124)	(932,120,326)	6,684,874,991	5.03750980%	336,751,233	31,037,443	367,788,676
2015	316,449,072,302	268,570,327,663	8,139,000,000	5,058,101,024	(5,499,434,843)	(941,992,323)	6,755,673,858	5.03750980%	340,317,733	31,366,157	371,683,890
2016	310,818,572,122	263,791,722,160	8,139,000,000	5,454,014,055	(5,799,611,664)	(953,707,923)	6,839,694,469	5.03750980%	344,550,279	31,756,260	376,306,539
2017	305,058,219,080	258,902,910,533	8,139,000,000	5,861,804,477	(6,111,443,823)	(965,450,696)	6,923,909,958	5.03750980%	348,792,643	32,147,267	380,939,909
2018	299,406,730,342	254,106,492,041	9,000,000,000	6,946,364,111	(7,121,312,909)	(976,639,003)	7,848,412,199	5.03750980%	395,364,534	35,959,983	431,324,517
2019	293,712,626,318	249,273,905,956	9,000,000,000	7,424,755,034	(7,497,263,712)	(987,975,709)	7,939,515,613	5.03750980%	399,953,877	36,377,402	436,331,279
2020	288,433,887,303	244,793,840,154	9,000,000,000	7,917,497,685	(7,890,623,015)	(998,974,133)	8,027,900,537	5.03750980%	404,406,276	36,782,366	441,188,642
2021	283,166,892,135	240,323,741,355	9,000,000,000	8,425,022,616	(8,288,180,511)	(1,011,143,863)	8,125,698,242	5.03750980%	409,332,845	37,230,457	446,563,302
2022	278,108,962,559	236,031,076,524	9,000,000,000	8,947,773,294	(8,702,121,337)	(1,023,185,486)	8,222,466,471	5.03750980%	414,207,554	37,673,831	451,881,385
2023	273,088,988,991	231,770,624,957	9,000,000,000	9,486,206,493	(9,126,681,257)	(1,035,787,463)	8,323,737,774	5.03750980%	419,309,106	38,137,837	457,446,943
2024	268,432,396,802	227,818,575,166	9,000,000,000	10,040,792,688	(9,567,619,138)	(1,048,364,543)	8,424,809,008	5.03750980%	424,400,579	38,600,927	463,001,507
2025	263,840,890,183	223,921,763,498	9,000,000,000	10,612,016,469	(10,014,337,724)	(1,062,143,118)	8,535,535,627	5.03750980%	429,978,444	39,108,256	469,086,700
2026	259,355,239,128	220,114,791,448	9,000,000,000	11,200,376,963	(10,476,949,607)	(1,076,059,297)	8,647,368,058	5.03750980%	435,612,013	39,620,652	475,232,665
2027	254,972,660,003	216,395,296,545	9,000,000,000	11,806,388,272	(10,954,454,085)	(1,090,280,720)	8,761,653,466	5.03750980%	441,369,152	40,144,287	481,513,439
2028	250,690,537,728	212,761,059,370	9,000,000,000	12,430,579,920	(11,447,317,139)	(1,104,814,418)	8,878,448,363	5.03750980%	447,252,706	40,679,419	487,932,126
2029	246,481,176,364	209,188,574,380	9,000,000,000	13,073,497,317	(11,956,015,590)	(1,119,667,981)	8,997,813,746	5.03750980%	453,265,749	41,226,330	494,492,079
2030	242,335,477,591	205,670,119,831	9,000,000,000	13,735,702,237	(12,482,040,727)	(1,134,738,544)	9,118,922,966	5.03750980%	459,366,638	41,781,230	501,147,868
2031	238,162,154,355	202,128,220,401	9,000,000,000	14,417,773,304	(13,026,260,100)	(1,149,994,131)	9,241,519,072	5.03750980%	465,542,429	42,342,943	507,885,372
2032	234,118,269,099	198,696,174,985	9,000,000,000	15,120,306,503	(13,593,063,902)	(1,165,014,851)	9,362,227,750	5.03750980%	471,623,140	42,896,008	514,519,148
2033	230,143,876,193	195,323,107,725	9,000,000,000	15,843,915,698	(14,176,529,285)	(1,180,524,100)	9,486,862,313	5.03750980%	477,901,619	43,467,060	521,368,679
2034	226,191,454,076	191,968,687,074	9,000,000,000	16,589,233,169	(14,779,659,398)	(1,196,259,501)	9,613,314,270	5.03750980%	484,271,648	44,046,440	528,318,089
2035	221,879,771,769	188,309,362,300	9,000,000,000	17,356,910,164	(15,405,205,865)	(1,211,988,613)	9,739,715,686	5.03750980%	490,639,132	44,625,588	535,264,720
2036	217,980,877,344	185,000,370,602	9,000,000,000	18,147,617,469	(16,072,037,500)	(1,225,697,520)	9,849,882,449	5.03750980%	496,188,794	45,130,352	541,319,146
2037	214,189,741,500	181,782,833,611	9,000,000,000	18,962,045,993	(16,744,831,466)	(1,241,371,745)	9,975,842,782	5.03750980%	502,534,058	45,707,479	548,241,537
2038	210,528,500,720	178,675,538,561	9,000,000,000	19,800,907,373	(17,438,101,417)	(1,257,483,863)	10,105,322,093	5.03750980%	509,056,591	46,300,729	555,357,320
2039	206,721,286,892	175,444,356,185	9,000,000,000	20,664,934,594	(18,151,159,336)	(1,274,191,132)	10,239,584,126	5.03750980%	515,820,054	46,915,893	562,735,947
2040	203,023,794,708	172,306,294,568	9,000,000,000	21,554,882,632	(18,899,105,469)	(1,289,906,010)	10,365,871,154	5.03750980%	522,181,775	47,494,517	569,676,293
2041	199,440,290,532	169,264,974,575	9,000,000,000	22,471,529,111	(19,669,554,265)	(1,306,085,220)	10,495,889,626	5.03750980%	528,731,468	48,090,238	576,821,707
2042	195,795,300,038	166,171,471,142	9,000,000,000	23,415,674,984	(20,462,759,768)	(1,322,789,288)	10,630,125,928	5.03750980%	535,493,635	48,705,284	584,198,920
2043	192,236,299,892	163,150,947,718	9,000,000,000	24,388,145,234	(21,289,444,702)	(1,338,922,863)	10,759,777,669	5.03750980%	542,024,855	49,299,325	591,324,179
2044	188,756,822,864	160,197,915,564	9,000,000,000	25,389,789,591	(22,142,143,344)	(1,355,406,189)	10,892,240,059	5.03750980%	548,697,660	49,906,243	598,603,903
2045	185,342,462,206	157,300,147,674	9,000,000,000	26,421,483,279	(23,021,917,936)	(1,372,218,569)	11,027,346,774	5.03750980%	555,503,674	50,525,277	606,028,952
2046	182,017,591,749	154,478,330,118	9,000,000,000	27,484,127,777	(23,930,396,932)	(1,389,279,551)	11,164,451,294	5.03750980%	562,410,328	51,153,465	613,563,793
2047	178,772,019,507	151,723,812,956	9,000,000,000	28,578,651,610	(24,866,784,580)	(1,406,779,956)	11,305,087,075	5.03750980%	569,494,869	51,797,832	621,292,702
2048	175,609,647,890	149,039,908,164	9,000,000,000	29,706,011,159	(25,832,451,161)	(1,424,673,977)	11,448,886,020	5.03750980%	576,738,755	52,456,693	629,195,448
2049	172,521,357,889	146,418,876,440	9,000,000,000	30,867,191,493	(26,827,877,610)	(1,443,017,407)	11,596,296,476	5.03750980%	584,164,571	53,132,100	637,296,672
2050	169,463,884,093	143,823,998,430	9,000,000,000	32,063,207,238	(27,854,461,187)	(1,461,767,901)	11,746,978,150	5.03750980%	591,755,176	53,822,496	645,577,672
2051	166,448,335,715	141,264,702,522	9,000,000,000	33,295,103,455	(28,916,215,625)	(1,480,596,924)	11,898,290,906	5.03750980%	599,377,570	54,515,783	653,893,354
2052	163,467,505,827	138,734,872,196	9,000,000,000	34,563,956,559	(30,013,412,630)	(1,499,593,533)	12,050,950,396	5.03750980%	607,067,807	55,215,241	662,283,048



## Projection of Strategic Contribution Payments to be Received by the Trustee

Year	Strategic Contribution Payments						Total Payments					
	Global Insight Base Case Consumption Forecast	OPM-Adjusted Consumption	Strategic Contribution Payments	Inflation Adjustment	Volume Adjustment	Subtotal	State's Allocation of Strategic Contribution Payments	OPM Strategic Contribution Payments to Trustee	SPM Strategic Contribution Payments to Trustee	Total Annual Payments to Trustee	Total Strategic Contribution Payments to Trustee	Total Payments to Trustee
2007	366,861,230,978	311,355,126,731	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
2008	360,592,250,500	306,034,642,999	\$861,000,000	\$274,141,682	(\$384,258,107)	\$750,883,575	2.7819695%	\$20,889,352	\$1,689,707	\$342,732,403	\$22,579,059	\$365,311,462
2009	353,958,548,815	300,404,620,379	861,000,000	308,195,933	(408,602,412)	760,593,521	2.7819695%	21,159,480	1,711,557	347,164,399	22,871,037	370,035,436
2010	347,623,207,570	295,027,816,265	861,000,000	343,271,811	(434,829,562)	769,442,248	2.7819695%	21,405,649	1,731,469	351,203,302	23,137,118	374,340,419
2011	341,269,091,951	289,635,078,339	861,000,000	379,399,965	(461,615,472)	778,784,493	2.7819695%	21,665,547	1,752,492	355,467,465	23,418,039	378,885,504
2012	334,929,406,672	284,254,587,443	861,000,000	416,611,964	(489,659,132)	787,952,832	2.7819695%	21,920,607	1,773,123	359,652,251	23,693,731	383,345,981
2013	328,543,528,729	278,834,892,832	861,000,000	454,940,323	(518,936,753)	797,003,571	2.7819695%	22,172,396	1,793,490	363,783,359	23,965,886	387,749,245
2014	322,136,994,313	273,397,667,074	861,000,000	494,418,533	(549,639,817)	805,778,716	2.7819695%	22,416,518	1,813,237	367,788,676	24,229,755	392,018,430
2015	316,449,072,302	268,570,327,663	861,000,000	535,081,089	(581,768,448)	814,312,641	2.7819695%	22,653,929	1,832,440	371,683,890	24,486,370	396,170,260
2016	310,818,572,122	263,791,722,160	861,000,000	576,963,521	(613,523,239)	824,440,282	2.7819695%	22,935,677	1,855,231	376,306,539	24,790,908	401,097,447
2017	305,058,219,080	258,902,910,533	861,000,000	620,102,427	(646,511,013)	834,591,415	2.7819695%	23,218,079	1,878,074	380,939,909	25,096,152	406,036,062
2018	299,406,730,342	254,106,492,041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	431,324,517	-	431,324,517
2019	293,712,626,318	249,273,905,956	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	436,331,279	-	436,331,279
2020	288,433,887,303	244,793,840,154	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	441,188,642	-	441,188,642
2021	283,166,892,135	240,323,741,355	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	446,563,302	-	446,563,302
2022	278,108,962,559	236,031,076,524	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	451,881,385	-	451,881,385
2023	273,088,988,991	231,770,624,957	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	457,446,943	-	457,446,943
2024	268,432,396,802	227,818,575,166	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	463,001,507	-	463,001,507
2025	263,840,890,183	223,921,763,498	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	469,086,700	-	469,086,700
2026	259,355,239,128	220,114,791,448	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	475,232,665	-	475,232,665
2027	254,972,660,003	216,395,296,545	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	481,513,439	-	481,513,439
2028	250,690,537,728	212,761,059,370	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	487,932,126	-	487,932,126
2029	246,481,176,364	209,188,574,380	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	494,492,079	-	494,492,079
2030	242,335,477,591	205,670,119,831	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	501,147,868	-	501,147,868
2031	238,162,154,355	202,128,220,401	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	507,885,372	-	507,885,372
2032	234,118,269,099	198,696,174,985	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	514,519,148	-	514,519,148
2033	230,143,876,193	195,323,107,725	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	521,368,679	-	521,368,679
2034	226,191,454,076	191,968,687,074	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	528,318,089	-	528,318,089
2035	221,879,771,769	188,309,362,300	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	535,264,720	-	535,264,720
2036	217,980,877,344	185,000,370,602	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	541,319,146	-	541,319,146
2037	214,189,741,500	181,782,833,611	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	548,241,537	-	548,241,537
2038	210,528,500,720	178,675,538,561	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	555,357,320	-	555,357,320
2039	206,721,286,892	175,444,356,185	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	562,735,947	-	562,735,947
2040	203,023,794,708	172,306,294,568	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	569,676,293	-	569,676,293
2041	199,440,290,532	169,264,974,575	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	576,821,707	-	576,821,707
2042	195,795,300,038	166,171,471,142	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	584,198,920	-	584,198,920
2043	192,236,299,892	163,150,947,718	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	591,324,179	-	591,324,179
2044	188,756,822,864	160,197,915,564	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	598,603,903	-	598,603,903
2045	185,342,462,206	157,300,147,674	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	606,028,952	-	606,028,952
2046	182,017,591,749	154,478,330,118	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	613,563,793	-	613,563,793
2047	178,772,019,507	151,723,812,956	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	621,292,702	-	621,292,702
2048	175,609,647,890	149,039,908,164	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	629,195,448	-	629,195,448
2049	172,521,357,889	146,418,876,440	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	637,296,672	-	637,296,672
2050	169,463,884,093	143,823,998,430	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	645,577,672	-	645,577,672
2051	166,448,335,715	141,264,702,522	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	653,893,354	-	653,893,354
2052	163,467,505,827	138,734,872,196	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	662,283,048	-	662,283,048

## Debt Service Coverage

Set forth below is a schedule showing estimated debt service for the Senior Bonds and the resulting estimated debt service coverage ratios, assuming the Series 2007A-1 Bonds, Series 2007A-2 Bonds and Series 2007A-3 Bonds (after the Conversion Date) bear interest at the rates shown on the inside front cover hereof, cigarette consumption is consistent with the Global Insight Base Case Forecast, Collections are received in accordance with the Cash Flow Assumptions, no Turbo Redemptions are made in advance of the Sinking Fund Installments, and interest rates for the Series 2007 Bonds are as described under “Other Assumptions” above. As used herein, “**Debt Service Coverage**” means, for any period, a fraction, expressed as a multiple, the numerator of which is the amount of Collections received in such period which includes earnings on the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account and other Pledged Accounts and earnings on Pledged Tobacco Receipts until the applicable Distribution Date and the denominator of which is the sum of interest, Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities required to be paid in such period plus Enforcement Expenses up to the Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap and other Operating Expenses at the Operating Cap. The denominator does not include Turbo Redemptions. Sinking Fund Installments are based on the assumption that no such Turbo Redemptions will occur. The average debt service coverage ratio is 1.52x with a minimum debt service coverage ratio of 1.20x.

[The remainder of this page intentionally left blank]

## Estimated Senior Bonds Debt Service Coverage

Revenue Year	Total Available Funds <sup>(1)</sup>	Serial Bond Maturities and Sinking Fund Installments	Interest	Operating Expenses <sup>(2)</sup>	Total Debt Service and Operating Expenses <sup>(3)</sup>	Debt Service Coverage for Senior Bonds
2008	\$389,194,877	\$13,325,000	\$308,918,826	\$2,750,000	\$324,993,826	1.20x
2009	392,289,142	42,495,000	282,301,259	2,757,500	327,553,759	1.20x
2010	396,584,120	47,865,000	280,108,922	2,765,225	330,739,147	1.20x
2011	401,118,344	54,265,000	277,590,594	2,773,182	334,628,776	1.20x
2012	405,564,470	60,880,000	274,730,588	2,781,377	338,391,965	1.20x
2013	410,186,799	42,810,000	295,645,881	2,789,819	341,245,700	1.20x
2014	414,452,788	50,655,000	293,291,606	2,298,513	346,245,119	1.20x
2015	418,588,196	56,240,000	290,571,831	2,367,468	349,179,300	1.20x
2016	423,503,083	64,165,000	287,512,197	2,438,493	354,115,689	1.20x
2017	428,421,862	71,490,000	284,068,872	2,511,647	358,070,519	1.20x
2018	453,744,618	96,600,000	279,757,863	2,586,997	378,944,859	1.20x
2019	458,715,494	106,240,000	274,515,975	2,664,607	383,420,582	1.20x
2020	463,527,503	115,100,000	268,796,000	2,744,545	386,640,545	1.20x
2021	468,855,750	125,505,000	262,578,172	2,826,881	390,910,053	1.20x
2022	474,102,227	130,635,000	255,958,878	2,911,688	389,505,566	1.22x
2023	479,590,516	135,165,000	249,089,947	2,999,038	387,253,985	1.24x
2024	485,090,782	147,445,000	241,786,603	3,089,009	392,320,612	1.24x
2025	490,928,299	107,700,000	234,812,569	3,181,680	345,694,248	1.42x
2026	496,993,773	109,600,000	228,429,381	3,277,130	341,306,511	1.46x
2027	503,192,524	111,500,000	221,934,569	3,375,444	336,810,013	1.49x
2028	509,541,829	117,700,000	215,201,819	3,476,707	336,378,526	1.51x
2029	516,011,259	119,000,000	208,248,756	3,581,008	330,829,765	1.56x
2030	522,581,408	122,100,000	201,166,444	3,688,439	326,954,882	1.60x
2031	529,195,651	114,035,000	194,301,250	3,799,092	312,135,342	1.70x
2032	535,770,543	123,405,000	187,474,850	3,913,065	314,792,915	1.70x
2033	542,543,921	129,790,000	180,195,494	4,030,457	314,015,950	1.73x
2034	549,418,085	137,970,000	172,497,394	4,151,370	314,618,764	1.75x
2035	556,174,147	115,300,000	164,927,631	4,275,911	284,503,543	1.95x
2036	562,160,009	124,600,000	157,430,756	4,404,189	286,434,945	1.96x
2037	569,012,371	135,900,000	149,290,131	4,536,314	289,726,446	1.96x
2038	576,148,246	176,750,000	139,678,438	4,672,404	321,100,841	1.79x
2039	583,404,438	184,290,000	128,719,966	4,812,576	317,822,542	1.84x
2040	590,229,605	195,965,000	117,178,328	4,956,953	318,100,281	1.86x
2041	597,242,105	205,190,000	105,002,291	5,105,662	315,297,952	1.89x
2042	604,484,683	216,235,000	92,210,975	5,258,832	313,704,807	1.93x
2043	611,537,014	249,160,000	78,054,950	5,416,597	332,631,547	1.84x
2044	618,659,428	264,725,000	62,395,109	5,579,095	332,699,204	1.86x
2045	625,917,118	281,195,000	45,759,053	5,746,467	332,700,520	1.88x
2046	633,270,349	297,515,000	28,123,775	5,918,861	331,557,636	1.91x
2047	631,688,353	312,690,000	9,528,738	6,096,427	328,315,165	1.92x

(1) Includes Pledged Tobacco Receipts plus earnings on the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account and other Pledged Accounts until distributed.

(2) Includes Enforcement Expenses at the Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap and other Operating Expenses at the Operating Cap.

(3) Includes interest on the Bonds, Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installments, Turbo Term Bond Maturities and Operating Expenses.

The estimated debt service coverage ratios shown in the preceding table assume that Collections are received in accordance with the Cash Flow Assumptions and applied, subject to the Payment Priorities set forth in the Indenture, to pay operating expenses, interest as due, Serial Bond maturities, Turbo Term Bond Maturities and Sinking Fund Installments for the Series 2007 Bonds. The above table does not reflect the actual amortization of Series 2007 Bonds which will occur if the Global Insight Base Case Forecast is realized. If actual Collections are received in the amounts projected based on the Global Insight Base Case Forecast and the Cash Flow Assumptions, Surplus Collections would be applied to make Turbo Redemptions, as required pursuant to the Indenture. See “Effect of Changes in Cigarette Consumption Levels on Turbo Redemptions” below.

## **Effect of Changes in Cigarette Consumption Levels on Turbo Redemptions**

*Weighted Average Lives and Final Principal Payments.* The tables on the following pages have been prepared to show the effect of changes in cigarette consumption on the weighted average lives and final principal payments of the Turbo Term Bonds. The tables are based on the Cash Flow Assumptions and the Bond Structuring Methodology, except that the annual cigarette consumption varies in each case. In addition to the Global Insight Base Case Forecast, several alternative cigarette consumption scenarios are presented below, including four alternative forecasts of Global Insight (the Global Insight FET Increase Case, the Global Insight High Forecast, the Global Insight Low Case 1, the Global Insight Low Case 2, and the Global Insight Low Case 3, each as hereinafter defined) and three of the other consumption scenarios prepared by Global Insight (assuming 3.0%, 3.5% and 4.0% annual consumption declines). In each scenario, if actual cigarette consumption in the United States is as forecast and assumed, and events occur as assumed by the Cash Flow Assumptions, the final principal payments and weighted average lives (in years) of each of the Turbo Term Bonds will be as set forth in such tables. The tables presented below are for illustrative purposes only. Actual cigarette consumption in the United States cannot be definitively forecast. To the degree actual consumption and other structuring assumptions vary from the alternative scenarios presented below, the weighted average lives (and final projected principal payment dates) for the Turbo Term Bonds will be either shorter (sooner) or longer (later) than projected on the following pages.

[The remainder of this page intentionally left blank]

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$200,000,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2024\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000	\$200,000,000
June 1, 2008	186,195,000	186,195,000	185,980,000	186,500,000	186,850,000	194,440,000	187,645,000	188,285,000	188,920,000
June 1, 2009	168,725,000	170,595,000	168,210,000	169,540,000	170,430,000	189,180,000	172,540,000	174,165,000	175,780,000
June 1, 2010	150,790,000	155,610,000	149,860,000	152,335,000	154,005,000	184,240,000	157,870,000	160,850,000	163,795,000
June 1, 2011	131,410,000	139,355,000	129,930,000	133,885,000	136,555,000	178,660,000	142,725,000	147,435,000	152,080,000
June 1, 2012	109,665,000	120,945,000	107,500,000	113,290,000	117,190,000	171,590,000	126,235,000	133,085,000	139,810,000
June 1, 2013	88,580,000	103,390,000	85,580,000	93,575,000	98,940,000	166,070,000	111,450,000	120,855,000	130,060,000
June 1, 2014	67,480,000	86,040,000	63,485,000	74,090,000	81,170,000	161,480,000	97,740,000	110,130,000	122,235,000
June 1, 2015	44,785,000	67,325,000	39,625,000	53,275,000	62,370,000	156,295,000	83,550,000	99,395,000	114,825,000
June 1, 2016	21,250,000	48,010,000	14,745,000	31,865,000	43,225,000	151,330,000	69,830,000	89,610,000	108,810,000
June 1, 2017	-	27,235,000	-	9,010,000	22,935,000	145,770,000	55,770,000	79,995,000	103,430,000
June 1, 2018	-	-	-	-	-	129,060,000	30,615,000	59,990,000	88,325,000
June 1, 2019	-	-	-	-	-	110,735,000	4,125,000	39,235,000	73,000,000
June 1, 2020	-	-	-	-	-	90,735,000	-	17,685,000	57,425,000
June 1, 2021	-	-	-	-	-	68,895,000	-	-	41,585,000
June 1, 2022	-	-	-	-	-	45,130,000	-	-	25,455,000
June 1, 2023	-	-	-	-	-	19,300,000	-	-	9,010,000
June 1, 2024	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2025	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2026	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2027	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2028	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2029	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2017	1-Jun-2018	1-Jun-2017	1-Jun-2018	1-Jun-2018	1-Jun-2024	1-Jun-2020	1-Jun-2021	1-Jun-2024
Average Life:	5.4	6.1	5.3	5.7	6.0	11.4	6.8	7.7	9.1

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$949,530,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2024\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000	\$949,530,000
June 1, 2008	883,960,000	883,960,000	882,950,000	885,400,000	887,050,000	923,085,000	890,845,000	893,870,000	896,885,000
June 1, 2009	801,000,000	809,895,000	798,570,000	804,875,000	809,115,000	898,130,000	819,140,000	826,850,000	834,505,000
June 1, 2010	715,885,000	738,750,000	711,465,000	723,215,000	731,155,000	874,665,000	749,495,000	763,625,000	777,605,000
June 1, 2011	623,850,000	661,590,000	616,845,000	635,620,000	648,290,000	848,190,000	677,585,000	699,955,000	722,010,000
June 1, 2012	520,640,000	574,175,000	510,355,000	537,845,000	556,350,000	814,605,000	599,300,000	631,800,000	663,750,000
June 1, 2013	420,520,000	490,845,000	406,270,000	444,245,000	469,725,000	788,410,000	529,120,000	573,745,000	617,470,000
June 1, 2014	320,335,000	408,465,000	301,375,000	351,715,000	385,340,000	766,635,000	464,005,000	522,845,000	580,305,000
June 1, 2015	212,595,000	319,605,000	188,100,000	252,915,000	296,085,000	742,000,000	396,640,000	471,870,000	545,110,000
June 1, 2016	100,860,000	227,915,000	69,975,000	151,260,000	205,195,000	718,445,000	331,510,000	425,420,000	516,565,000
June 1, 2017	-	129,265,000	-	42,750,000	108,870,000	692,050,000	264,760,000	379,745,000	491,010,000
June 1, 2018	-	-	-	-	-	612,700,000	145,330,000	284,790,000	419,310,000
June 1, 2019	-	-	-	-	-	525,700,000	19,575,000	186,255,000	346,540,000
June 1, 2020	-	-	-	-	-	430,750,000	-	83,935,000	272,610,000
June 1, 2021	-	-	-	-	-	327,070,000	-	-	197,405,000
June 1, 2022	-	-	-	-	-	214,240,000	-	-	120,820,000
June 1, 2023	-	-	-	-	-	91,615,000	-	-	42,735,000
June 1, 2024	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2025	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2026	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2027	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2028	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2029	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2017	1-Jun-2018	1-Jun-2017	1-Jun-2018	1-Jun-2018	1-Jun-2024	1-Jun-2020	1-Jun-2021	1-Jun-2024
Average Life:	5.4	6.1	5.3	5.7	6.0	11.4	6.8	7.7	9.1

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$687,600,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2030\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000	\$687,600,000
June 1, 2008	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2009	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2010	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2011	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2012	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2013	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2014	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2015	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2016	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2017	664,460,000	687,600,000	618,070,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2018	443,735,000	652,390,000	386,530,000	535,120,000	632,655,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2019	204,695,000	444,875,000	135,215,000	314,730,000	432,170,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2020	-	220,185,000	-	77,250,000	216,865,000	687,600,000	550,495,000	687,600,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2021	-	-	-	-	-	687,600,000	380,050,000	660,410,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2022	-	-	-	-	-	687,600,000	199,285,000	525,890,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2023	-	-	-	-	-	687,600,000	7,575,000	384,925,000	687,600,000
June 1, 2024	-	-	-	-	-	637,400,000	-	237,105,000	642,695,000
June 1, 2025	-	-	-	-	-	461,890,000	-	81,990,000	543,405,000
June 1, 2026	-	-	-	-	-	270,670,000	-	-	441,080,000
June 1, 2027	-	-	-	-	-	62,680,000	-	-	335,480,000
June 1, 2028	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	226,355,000
June 1, 2029	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	113,445,000
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2020	1-Jun-2021	1-Jun-2020	1-Jun-2021	1-Jun-2021	1-Jun-2028	1-Jun-2024	1-Jun-2026	1-Jun-2030
Average Life:	11.5	12.5	11.2	11.9	12.5	18.7	14.2	16.3	19.9

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$505,200,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2034\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000	\$505,200,000
June 1, 2008	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2009	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2010	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2011	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2012	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2013	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2014	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2015	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2016	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2017	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2018	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2019	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2020	451,630,000	505,200,000	368,415,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2021	172,635,000	482,000,000	74,120,000	326,335,000	490,260,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2022	-	219,025,000	-	50,810,000	241,460,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2023	-	-	-	-	-	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2024	-	-	-	-	-	505,200,000	309,570,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2025	-	-	-	-	-	505,200,000	94,305,000	505,200,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2026	-	-	-	-	-	505,200,000	-	424,370,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2027	-	-	-	-	-	505,200,000	-	253,460,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2028	-	-	-	-	-	342,105,000	-	74,015,000	505,200,000
June 1, 2029	-	-	-	-	-	97,515,000	-	-	505,200,000
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	501,665,000
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	380,400,000
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	254,620,000
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	124,005,000
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2022	1-Jun-2023	1-Jun-2022	1-Jun-2023	1-Jun-2023	1-Jun-2030	1-Jun-2026	1-Jun-2029	1-Jun-2034
Average Life:	13.8	15.0	13.5	14.3	15.0	21.5	17.4	20.1	25.1

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.



**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$250,000,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2042\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000	\$250,000,000
June 1, 2008	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2009	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2010	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2011	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2012	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2013	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2014	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2015	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2016	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2017	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2018	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2019	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2020	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2021	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2022	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2023	230,050,000	250,000,000	195,495,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2024	140,210,000	250,000,000	100,140,000	201,265,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2025	43,275,000	166,100,000	-	112,910,000	186,990,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2026	-	74,390,000	-	17,870,000	101,835,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2027	-	-	-	-	10,420,000	250,000,000	249,705,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2028	-	-	-	-	-	250,000,000	183,695,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2029	-	-	-	-	-	250,000,000	113,470,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	250,000,000	38,975,000	250,000,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	229,835,000	-	212,025,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	150,390,000	-	155,260,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	64,550,000	-	95,270,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	32,010,000	250,000,000
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	250,000,000
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	250,000,000
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	229,145,000
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	187,520,000
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	143,860,000
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	98,030,000
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	50,000,000
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2026	1-Jun-2027	1-Jun-2025	1-Jun-2027	1-Jun-2028	1-Jun-2034	1-Jun-2031	1-Jun-2035	1-Jun-2042
Average Life:	17.2	18.6	16.8	17.9	18.8	25.4	21.9	25.6	32.4

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$750,000,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2047\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000	\$750,000,000
June 1, 2008	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2009	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2010	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2011	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2012	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2013	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2014	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2015	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2016	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2017	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2018	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2019	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2020	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2021	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2022	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2023	729,565,000	750,000,000	694,170,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2024	637,585,000	750,000,000	596,600,000	700,080,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2025	538,275,000	664,070,000	490,080,000	609,685,000	685,460,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2026	409,625,000	570,180,000	337,020,000	512,260,000	598,340,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2027	254,570,000	460,220,000	171,845,000	377,685,000	504,625,000	750,000,000	749,700,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2028	-	313,455,000	-	226,130,000	373,055,000	750,000,000	682,085,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2029	-	155,305,000	-	-	227,790,000	750,000,000	610,255,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	750,000,000	533,870,000	750,000,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	729,345,000	438,550,000	711,100,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	647,990,000	322,660,000	652,965,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	560,080,000	199,470,000	591,600,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	455,295,000	-	526,735,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	317,830,000	-	445,930,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	170,015,000	-	348,590,000	750,000,000
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	245,620,000	728,640,000
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	686,005,000
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	641,320,000
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	594,435,000
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	545,165,000
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	493,205,000
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	420,055,000
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	343,035,000
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	261,885,000
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	176,325,000
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2028	1-Jun-2030	1-Jun-2028	1-Jun-2029	1-Jun-2030	1-Jun-2037	1-Jun-2034	1-Jun-2038	1-Jun-2047
Average Life:	19.0	20.5	18.6	19.8	20.8	27.4	24.3	28.3	36.1

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$1,383,715,000 Series 2007A-2 Senior Current Interest Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2047\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000	\$1,383,715,000
June 1, 2008	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2009	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2010	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2011	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2012	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2013	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2014	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2015	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2016	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2017	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2018	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2019	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2020	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2021	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2022	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2023	1,346,005,000	1,383,715,000	1,280,710,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2024	1,176,325,000	1,383,715,000	1,100,700,000	1,291,620,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2025	993,090,000	1,225,180,000	904,175,000	1,124,845,000	1,264,655,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2026	755,735,000	1,051,950,000	621,790,000	945,090,000	1,103,905,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2027	469,670,000	849,085,000	317,045,000	696,810,000	931,005,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,150,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2028	-	578,310,000	-	417,200,000	688,270,000	1,383,715,000	1,258,415,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2029	-	286,535,000	-	-	420,265,000	1,383,715,000	1,125,895,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	1,383,715,000	984,960,000	1,383,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	1,345,605,000	809,100,000	1,311,950,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	1,195,520,000	595,300,000	1,204,700,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	1,033,320,000	368,010,000	1,091,480,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	839,995,000	-	971,800,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	586,385,000	-	822,715,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	313,665,000	-	643,125,000	1,383,715,000
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	453,150,000	1,344,300,000
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,265,650,000
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,183,205,000
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,096,710,000
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,005,800,000
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	909,940,000
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	774,980,000
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	632,880,000
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	483,160,000
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	325,310,000
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2028	1-Jun-2030	1-Jun-2028	1-Jun-2029	1-Jun-2030	1-Jun-2037	1-Jun-2034	1-Jun-2038	1-Jun-2047
Average Life:	19.0	20.5	18.6	19.8	20.8	27.4	24.3	28.3	36.1

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$274,751,138 Series 2007A-3 Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2037\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138	\$274,751,138
June 1, 2008	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499	284,891,499
June 1, 2009	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685	302,975,685
June 1, 2010	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809	322,207,809
June 1, 2011	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739	342,660,739
June 1, 2012	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969	364,411,969
June 1, 2013	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2014	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2015	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2016	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2017	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2018	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2019	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2020	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2021	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2022	247,360,000	375,800,000	131,545,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2023	-	310,845,000	-	129,565,000	350,040,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2024	-	3,870,000	-	-	62,900,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2025	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2026	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000	241,730,000	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2027	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000	-	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2028	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000	-	375,800,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2029	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000	-	261,020,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2030	-	-	-	-	-	208,345,000	-	61,785,000	375,800,000
June 1, 2031	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	375,800,000
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	363,990,000
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	222,255,000
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	73,850,000
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2023	1-Jun-2025	1-Jun-2023	1-Jun-2024	1-Jun-2025	1-Jun-2031	1-Jun-2027	1-Jun-2031	1-Jun-2037
Average Life:	15.2	16.4	14.9	15.9	16.7	23.1	19.2	22.4	28.3

\*Outstanding amounts represent principal balances after application of available Surplus Collections to Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$191,265,480 Series 2007B First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2047\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480	\$191,265,480
June 1, 2008	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606	199,457,606
June 1, 2009	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558	214,180,558
June 1, 2010	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285	229,990,285
June 1, 2011	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006	246,967,006
June 1, 2012	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862	265,196,862
June 1, 2013	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355	284,772,355
June 1, 2014	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811	305,792,811
June 1, 2015	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892	328,364,892
June 1, 2016	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129	352,603,129
June 1, 2017	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511	378,630,511
June 1, 2018	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102	406,579,102
June 1, 2019	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717	436,590,717
June 1, 2020	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638	468,817,638
June 1, 2021	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387	503,423,387
June 1, 2022	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558	540,583,558
June 1, 2023	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705	580,486,705
June 1, 2024	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301	623,335,301
June 1, 2025	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764	669,346,764
June 1, 2026	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560	718,754,560
June 1, 2027	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390	771,809,390
June 1, 2028	690,353,761	828,780,460	431,424,485	828,780,460	828,780,460	828,780,460	828,780,460	828,780,460	828,780,460
June 1, 2029	248,437,473	889,956,846	-	684,165,447	889,956,846	889,956,846	889,956,846	889,956,846	889,956,846
June 1, 2030	-	534,216,704	-	258,694,792	773,822,047	955,648,964	955,648,964	955,648,964	955,648,964
June 1, 2031	-	88,870,331	-	-	375,350,051	1,026,190,142	1,026,190,142	1,026,190,142	1,026,190,142
June 1, 2032	-	-	-	-	-	1,101,938,314	1,101,938,314	1,101,938,314	1,101,938,314
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	-	1,183,277,833	1,183,277,833	1,183,277,833	1,183,277,833
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	1,270,621,424	1,079,573,216	1,270,621,424	1,270,621,424
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	1,364,412,278	781,476,632	1,364,412,278	1,364,412,278
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	1,465,126,299	461,049,436	1,465,126,299	1,465,126,299
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	1,223,339,630	116,623,592	1,573,274,520	1,573,274,520
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	857,780,715	-	1,686,450,051	1,689,405,696
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	459,173,220	-	1,487,373,670	1,814,109,089
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	25,436,596	-	1,274,684,670	1,948,017,456
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,047,345,429	2,091,810,263
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	804,241,143	2,246,217,128
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	544,174,110	2,412,021,527
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	265,857,589	2,590,064,770
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,781,250,265
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,986,548,108
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3,064,412,284
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2030	1-Jun-2032	1-Jun-2029	1-Jun-2031	1-Jun-2032	1-Jun-2041	1-Jun-2038	1-Jun-2045	N/A**
Average Life:	21.7	23.2	21.1	22.6	23.8	31.1	28.4	34.2	N/A**

\* Outstanding amounts represent Accreted Value after application of available Surplus Collections to Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

\*\* In the event of an Annual Consumption Decline of 3.58% and taking into account the Cash Flow Assumptions outlined herein, the Series 2007B Bonds would be repaid by their Maturity Date. In the scenario that assumes an Annual Consumption Decline of 4.0% and taking into account the Cash Flow Assumptions outlined herein, the Series 2007B Bonds may never be paid.

**Projected Outstanding Principal Balances for \$128,182,923 Series 2007C Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
Maturing June 1, 2052\***

Date	Global Insight Base Case Forecast	Global Insight FET Increase Case	Global Insight High Forecast	Global Insight Low Case 1	Global Insight Low Case 2	Global Insight Low Case 3	3.0% Annual Consumption Decline	3.5% Annual Consumption Decline	4.0% Annual Consumption Decline
Settlement	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923	\$128,182,923
June 1, 2008	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298	133,863,298
June 1, 2009	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806	144,091,806
June 1, 2010	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875	155,101,875
June 1, 2011	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224	166,953,224
June 1, 2012	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136	179,710,136
June 1, 2013	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805	193,441,805
June 1, 2014	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713	208,222,713
June 1, 2015	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031	224,133,031
June 1, 2016	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057	241,259,057
June 1, 2017	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686	259,693,686
June 1, 2018	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906	279,536,906
June 1, 2019	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348	300,896,348
June 1, 2020	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868	323,887,868
June 1, 2021	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171	348,636,171
June 1, 2022	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495	375,275,495
June 1, 2023	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333	403,950,333
June 1, 2024	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217	434,816,217
June 1, 2025	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567	468,040,567
June 1, 2026	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593	503,803,593
June 1, 2027	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275	542,299,275
June 1, 2028	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415	583,736,415
June 1, 2029	628,339,772	628,339,772	581,369,637	628,339,772	628,339,772	628,339,772	628,339,772	628,339,772	628,339,772
June 1, 2030	443,677,881	676,351,276	107,945,668	676,351,276	676,351,276	676,351,276	676,351,276	676,351,276	676,351,276
June 1, 2031	-	728,031,343	-	524,388,679	728,031,343	728,031,343	728,031,343	728,031,343	728,031,343
June 1, 2032	-	388,026,610	-	77,495,088	726,637,095	783,660,289	783,660,289	783,660,289	783,660,289
June 1, 2033	-	-	-	-	317,429,790	843,539,849	843,539,849	843,539,849	843,539,849
June 1, 2034	-	-	-	-	-	907,994,811	907,994,811	907,994,811	907,994,811
June 1, 2035	-	-	-	-	-	977,374,784	977,374,784	977,374,784	977,374,784
June 1, 2036	-	-	-	-	-	1,052,056,087	1,052,056,087	1,052,056,087	1,052,056,087
June 1, 2037	-	-	-	-	-	1,132,443,796	1,132,443,796	1,132,443,796	1,132,443,796
June 1, 2038	-	-	-	-	-	1,218,973,937	965,381,288	1,218,973,937	1,218,973,937
June 1, 2039	-	-	-	-	-	1,312,115,855	659,933,854	1,312,115,855	1,312,115,855
June 1, 2040	-	-	-	-	-	1,412,374,756	330,738,141	1,412,374,756	1,412,374,756
June 1, 2041	-	-	-	-	-	1,074,103,638	-	1,520,294,450	1,520,294,450
June 1, 2042	-	-	-	-	-	676,605,920	-	1,636,460,298	1,636,460,298
June 1, 2043	-	-	-	-	-	242,876,400	-	1,761,502,390	1,761,502,390
June 1, 2044	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,896,098,960	1,896,098,960
June 1, 2045	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,008,889,273	2,040,980,067
June 1, 2046	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,845,692,149	2,196,931,554
June 1, 2047	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,670,864,557	2,364,799,310
June 1, 2048	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,483,480,435	2,545,493,857
June 1, 2049	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,282,542,220	2,739,995,292
June 1, 2050	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,066,975,355	2,949,358,601
June 1, 2051	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	835,622,386	3,174,719,381
June 1, 2052	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	587,236,597	3,417,300,000
Final Maturity:	1-Jun-2031	1-Jun-2033	1-Jun-2031	1-Jun-2033	1-Jun-2034	1-Jun-2044	1-Jun-2041	N/A**	N/A**
Average Life:	23.2	25.1	22.7	24.4	25.9	34.8	32.1	N/A**	N/A**

\* Outstanding amounts represent Accreted Value after application of available Surplus Collections to Turbo Redemptions on the referenced date.

\*\* In the event of an Annual Consumption Decline of 3.45% and taking into account the Cash Flow Assumptions outlined herein, the Series 2007C Bonds would be repaid by their Maturity Date. In the scenarios that assume an Annual Consumption Decline of 3.5% or 4.0% and taking into account the Cash Flow Assumptions outlined herein, the Series 2007C Bonds may never be paid.

## Explanation of Alternative Global Insight Forecasts

The alternative Global Insight forecasts of cigarette consumption decline, used in the analysis above, are based upon the assumptions described below. See also “GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT” herein and Appendix A hereto.

Should the federal excise tax increase to \$1.00 per pack, the resulting price increase, would, according to Global Insight, lead to a sharper, one-time, consumption decline of 4.3%, or 15.5 billion cigarettes, by 2009. This is illustrated in an alternative low case (the “**Global Insight FET Increase Case**”). The difference with the Global Insight Base Case forecast would be somewhat lower over the longer term, because the Global Insight Base Case forecast assumptions incorporate the likelihood of significant excise tax increases over time. By 2052 consumption would equal 156 billion, resulting in an average rate of decline of 1.90%.

Global Insight’s high forecast of consumption (the “**Global Insight High Forecast**”) deviates from the Global Insight Base Case Forecast by using a lower price forecast, under which prices are increasing at an annual rate of 0.5% more slowly than the Global Insight Base Case Forecast. Under the Global Insight High Forecast, the average annual rate of decline in cigarette consumption is reduced slightly, from an average annual rate in the Global Insight Base Case Forecast of 1.81%, to 1.66%, resulting in consumption of 176 billion in 2052.

Global Insight’s low forecast of consumption (the “**Global Insight Low Case 1**”) deviates from the Global Insight Base Case Forecast by assuming a sharper price elasticity of demand. The Global Insight Base Case Forecast applies a price elasticity of demand of -0.33. However, in order to develop the lowest consumption forecast that Global Insight believes may be reasonably anticipated, a price elasticity of -0.4 is applied. Under the Global Insight Low Case 1 Forecast, the average annual rate of decline in cigarette consumption is increased from an average annual rate in the Global Insight Base Case Forecast of 1.81%, to 1.98%, resulting in consumption of 150 billion in 2052.

Although beyond the range of Global Insight’s reasonably anticipated decline in consumption, Global Insight also prepared an alternative low case (the “**Global Insight Low Case 2**”) that deviates from the Global Insight Base Case Forecast by assuming a price elasticity of demand of -0.5. This produces a decline in consumption of an average annual rate of 2.17% to 137 billion in 2052. Global Insight prepared another alternative low case (the “**Global Insight Low Case 3**”) that deviates from the Global Insight Base Case Forecast by assuming an adverse federal government settlement or tort claims of three times the size of the MSA, resulting in an immediate real price increase of 57% and a decline of 18% in consumption over two years. Under the Global Insight Low Case 3, the average annual rate of decline in cigarette consumption is increased from an average annual rate in the Global Insight Base Case Forecast of 1.81%, to 2.21%, resulting in consumption of 134 billion in 2052.

### Average Annual Rate of Cigarette Consumption Decline (2007-2052)

<u>Global Insight Base Case Forecast</u>	<u>Global Insight FET Increase Case</u>	<u>Global Insight High Forecast</u>	<u>Global Insight Low Case 1</u>	<u>Global Insight Low Case 2</u>	<u>Global Insight Low Case 3</u>
1.81%	1.90%	1.66%	1.98%	2.17%	2.21%

Finally, for comparative purposes Global Insight calculated the volume of total cigarette consumption under several alternative annual rates of decline, including 3.0%, 3.5% and 4.0%. Global Insight states that at 3.0% per year consumption falls to 91 billion by 2052, at 3.5% per year it falls to 71 billion, and at 4.0% it falls to 56 billion. These calculations are simple arithmetic examples and are neither forecasts nor projections.

No assurance can be given that actual cigarette consumption in the United States during the term of the Series 2007 Bonds will be as assumed, or that the other assumptions underlying the Cash Flow Assumptions, including that certain adjustments and offsets will not apply to payments due under the MSA, will be consistent with future events. If actual events deviate from one or more of the assumptions underlying the Cash Flow Assumptions, the amount of Surplus Collections available to make Turbo Redemptions will be affected and the resulting weighted average lives and final principal payment dates of the Turbo Term Bonds will vary. See "RISK FACTORS" herein.

### THE AUTHORITY

The Authority is a body, both corporate and politic, constituting a public body, agency and instrumentality of the State, separate and distinct from the State, performing essential functions of the State and created and governed by the Act. The Authority is governed by a three member board of directors consisting of the Governor, the Treasurer and the Director of the Office of Budget and Management, or their designees.

### THE 2007 RESIDUAL CERTIFICATE

The 2007 Residual Certificate will be transferred by the Authority to the State as part of the purchase price of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts.

The 2007 Residual Certificate represents the entitlement to receive all amounts required to be distributed pursuant to the Indenture in respect of the 2007 Residual Certificate.

### CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT

To the extent that Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule") of the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "1934 Act"), requires the Underwriters to determine, as a condition to purchasing the Series 2007 Bonds, that the Authority had made such covenants, the Authority will covenant for the sole benefit of the Bondholders (the "Undertaking") to the effect that:

- (a) The Ohio Office of Budget and Management ("OBM") for the Authority, not later than seven calendar months after the first day of the Authority's Fiscal Year, will deliver to each nationally recognized municipal securities information repository (each a "National Repository") and to any state information depository for the State (the "State Repository" and each National Repository and State Repository, a "Repository"):



(1) an Annual Report for the preceding Fiscal Year consisting of (A) its audited financial statements for such preceding Fiscal Year, or, if the audited financial statements for such preceding Fiscal Year are not then available, unaudited financial statements for such preceding Fiscal Year in a format similar to the audited financial statements then most recently prepared for the Authority, and (B) an update of the (x) operating data for such preceding Fiscal Year set forth under the column titled “Total Annual Payments to Trustee” in the table captioned “Projection of Annual Payment Portion of Pledged Tobacco Receipts to be Received by the Trustee” under “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION — Bond Structuring Methodology,” contained in the Offering Circular relating to the Series 2007 Bonds and (y) the actual debt service coverage ratio for such preceding Fiscal Year, determined in substantially the manner described in “SUMMARY OF BOND STRUCTURING ASSUMPTIONS AND AMORTIZATION — Estimated Senior Bonds Debt Service Coverage” set forth in the Offering Circular; and

(2) if the Authority is unable, within seven calendar months after the first day of its Fiscal Year, to provide the Repositories an Annual Report for the preceding Fiscal Year, a written notice, in the form prescribed by the Securities Exchange Commission, to each National Repository or to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the “MSRB”) and to the State Repository of its failure to file such information;

(b) If the audited financial statements for the preceding Fiscal Year have not been so filed within seven calendar months after the first day of the Authority’s subsequent Fiscal Year, the Authority will file such audited financial statements when available; and

(c) The Authority will file, in a timely manner, to each Repository and to the MSRB, notice of any of the following events with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds, if material:

- (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) non-payment related defaults;
- (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
- (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
- (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) adverse tax opinions or events affecting the tax-exempt status of the Series 2007 Bonds which have become Tax-Exempt Bonds (as defined in the Indenture);
- (7) modifications to rights of Bondholders;
- (8) bond calls;
- (9) defeasances;
- (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2007 Bonds; and
- (11) rating changes.

In order to provide certain continuing disclosure with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds in accordance with the Rule, the State has entered into a Disclosure Dissemination Agent Agreement (the “**Disclosure Dissemination Agreement**”), which will apply to OBM’s filings for the Authority, with Digital Assurance Certification, L.L.C. (“**DAC**”), under which the State has designated DAC as Disclosure Dissemination Agent (“**Disclosure Dissemination Agent**”).

The Disclosure Dissemination Agent has only the duties specified in the Disclosure Dissemination Agreement. The Disclosure Dissemination Agent’s obligation to deliver the information at the times and with the contents described in the Disclosure Dissemination Agreement is limited to the extent the State has provided that information to the Disclosure Dissemination Agent as required by that Disclosure Dissemination Agreement. The Disclosure Dissemination Agent has no duty with respect to the content of any disclosures or notice made pursuant to the terms of the Disclosure Dissemination Agreement or duty or obligation to review or verify any information in the Annual Report, Audited Financial Statements, notice of Notice Event or Voluntary Report (as defined in the Disclosure Dissemination Agreement), or any other information, disclosure or notices provided to it by the State, and the Disclosure Dissemination Agent shall not be deemed to be acting in any fiduciary capacity for the State, the holders of the Series 2007 Bonds or any other party. The Disclosure Dissemination Agent has no responsibility for any failure to report a Notice Event or a duty to determine the materiality thereof, as to determine or liability for failing to determine whether the State has complied with the Disclosure Dissemination Agreement, and the Disclosure Dissemination Agent may conclusively rely upon certification of the State at all times.

The Authority will not undertake to provide any notice with respect to (i) credit enhancement if the credit enhancement is added after the primary offering of the Series 2007 Bonds, the Authority does not apply for or participate in obtaining the enhancement and the enhancement is not described in this Offering Circular or (ii) tax exemption other than pursuant to Section 103 of the Code.

The Authority will not undertake to provide the above-described event notice of a mandatory scheduled redemption, not otherwise contingent upon the occurrence of an event, if (i) the terms, dates and amounts of redemption are set forth in detail herein, (ii) the only open issue is which Series 2007 Bonds will be redeemed in the case of a partial redemption, (iii) notice of redemption is given to the Bondholders as required under the terms of the Series 2007 Bonds and (iv) public notice of the redemption is given pursuant to 1934 Act Release No. 23856 of the SEC, even if the originally scheduled amounts are reduced by prior optional redemptions or Series 2007 Bond purchases.

The Authority will not undertake to provide updates or revisions to any forward-looking statements contained in this Offering Circular, including but not limited to, those that include the words “expects,” “forecasts,” “projects,” “intends,” “anticipates,” “estimates,” “assumes,” or analogous expressions.

In the event of a failure of the Authority to comply with any provision of the Undertaking, any Bondholder or Beneficial Owner may bring an action to obtain specific performance of the obligations of the Authority under the Undertaking, but no person or entity shall be entitled to recover monetary damages under the Undertaking under any circumstances, and any failure to comply with the obligations under the Undertaking shall not constitute a default with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds or under the Indenture.

An amendment to the Undertaking may only take effect if the amendment is made in connection with a change in circumstances that arises from a change in legal requirements, change in law, or change in the identity, nature, or status of the Authority, or type of business conducted; the Undertaking, as amended, would have complied with the requirements of the Rule at the time of sale of the Series 2007 Bonds, after taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule, as well as any change in circumstances; and the amendment does not materially impair the interests of Bondholders.

In the event of any amendment to, or waiver of a provision of, the Undertaking, the Authority shall describe such amendment waiver in the next Annual Report and shall include an explanation of the reason for

such amendment or waiver. If the amendment results in a change to the accounting principles to be followed in preparing financial statements as set forth in the Undertaking, the Annual Report for the year in which the change is made shall include a comparison between the financial statements or information prepared on the basis of the new accounting principles and those prepared on the basis of the former accounting principles.

If all or any part of the Rule, as interpreted by the staff of the SEC at the date of the Series 2007 Bonds, ceases to be in effect for any reason, and the Authority receives an opinion of counsel to the effect those portions of the rule do not or no longer apply to the Series 2007 Bonds, the Authority may terminate the Undertaking.

For purposes of the Undertaking, a beneficial owner of a security includes any person who, directly or indirectly, through any contract, arrangement, understanding, relationship, or otherwise has or shares investment power which includes the power to dispose, or to direct the disposition of, such security, subject to certain exceptions as set forth in the Undertaking. Any assertion of beneficial ownership must be filed, with full documentary support, as part of the written request described above.

## **TAX MATTERS**

### **General**

In the opinions of Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P. and Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP, Bond Counsel, under existing law: (i) interest on the Series 2007 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), and is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations; and (ii) interest on, and any profit made on the sale, exchange or other disposition of, the Series 2007 Bonds are exempt from the Ohio personal income tax, the Ohio commercial activity tax, the net income base of the Ohio corporate franchise tax, and municipal and school district income taxes in Ohio. Bond Counsel express no opinion as to any other tax consequences regarding the Series 2007 Bonds.

The opinions on tax matters will be based on and will assume the accuracy of certain representations and certifications, and continuing compliance with certain covenants, of the Authority and the State contained in the transcript of proceedings and that are intended to evidence and assure the foregoing, including that the Series 2007 Bonds are and will remain obligations the interest on which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Bond Counsel will not independently verify the accuracy of those certifications and representations or the continuing compliance with those covenants.

The opinions of Bond Counsel are based on current legal authority and cover certain matters not directly addressed by such authority. They represent the legal judgment of Bond Counsel as to exclusion of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes but are not a guaranty of that conclusion. The opinions are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) or any court. Bond Counsel express no opinion about (i) the effect of future changes in the Code and the applicable regulations under the Code or (ii) the interpretation and the enforcement of the Code or those regulations by the IRS.

The Code prescribes a number of qualifications and conditions for the interest on state and local government obligations to be and to remain excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, some of which require future or continued compliance after issuance of the obligations. Noncompliance with these requirements by the Authority or the State may cause loss of such status and result in the interest on the Series 2007 Bonds being included in gross income for federal income tax purposes retroactively to the Delivery Date. The Authority and the State have covenanted to take the actions required of them for the interest on the Bonds to be and to remain excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, and not to take any actions that would adversely affect that exclusion. After the Delivery Date, Bond Counsel will not undertake to determine (or to so inform any person) whether any actions taken or not taken, or any events occurring or not occurring, or any other matters coming to the attention of Bond Counsel, may adversely affect the exclusion

from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds or the market prices of the Series 2007 Bonds.

A portion of the interest on the Series 2007 Bonds earned by certain corporations may be subject to a federal corporate alternative minimum tax. In addition, interest on the Series 2007 Bonds may be subject to a federal branch profits tax imposed on certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States and to a federal tax imposed on excess net passive income of certain S corporations. Under the Code, the exclusion of interest from gross income for federal income tax purposes may have certain adverse federal income tax consequences on items of income, deduction or credit for certain taxpayers, including financial institutions, certain insurance companies, recipients of Social Security and Railroad Retirement benefits, those that are deemed to incur or continue indebtedness to acquire or carry tax-exempt obligations, and individuals otherwise eligible for the earned income tax credit. The applicability and extent of these and other tax consequences will depend upon the particular tax status or other tax items of the owner of the Series 2007 Bonds. Bond Counsel will express no opinion regarding those consequences.

Payments of interest on tax-exempt obligations, including the Series 2007 Bonds, are generally subject to IRS Form 1099-INT information reporting requirements. If a Bond owner is subject to backup withholding under such requirements, then payments of interest will also be subject to backup withholding. Such requirements do not affect the exclusion of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

Tax legislation, administrative actions taken by tax authorities, and court decisions, whether at the federal or state level, may adversely affect the tax-exempt status of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds under federal or state law and could affect the market price or marketability of the Series 2007 Bonds. Legislation affecting tax-exempt obligations is regularly considered by the United States Congress, and legislation affecting the exemption of interest or other income thereon for purposes of taxation by the State may be considered by the State legislature. Court proceedings may also be filed the outcome of which could modify the tax treatment of obligations such as the Series 2007 Bonds. There can be no assurance that legislation enacted or proposed, or actions by a court, after the Delivery Date will not have an adverse effect on the tax status of interest or other income on the Bonds or the market value of the Series 2007 Bonds.

On May 21, 2007, the United States Supreme Court agreed to hear *Dep't of Revenue of Kentucky v. Davis*. In the *Davis* case, the Kentucky Court of Appeals held that Kentucky's exemption from taxation of interest on bonds issued by Kentucky or its political subdivisions and its taxation of interest on bonds issued by other states or their political subdivisions violates the Commerce Clause of the United States Constitution. The State exempts from taxation interest on bonds issued by the State or its political subdivisions and taxes interest on bonds issued by other states or their political subdivisions. It is not possible to predict how the United States Supreme Court will decide the *Davis* case or to predict any change in state law that would be occasioned by the United States Supreme Court's affirmance of the *Davis* decision, nor is it possible to predict the effect, if any, of that affirmance or any change in state law on the tax status of interest or other income on the Series 2007 Bonds for state tax purposes or on the market value of the Bonds.

Prospective purchasers of the Series 2007 Bonds should consult their own tax advisers regarding the foregoing matters and prospective purchasers of the Series 2007 Bonds at other than their original issuance at the respective prices referred to on the cover of this Offering Circular should also consult their own tax advisers regarding other tax considerations such as the consequences of market discount, as to all of which Bond Counsel express no opinion.

The engagement of Bond Counsel with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds ends with the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds, and, unless separately engaged, Bond Counsel are not obligated to defend the Authority, the State or the beneficial owners regarding the tax status of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds in the event of an audit examination by the IRS. The IRS has a program to audit tax-exempt obligations to determine whether the interest thereon is includible in gross income for federal income tax purposes. If the IRS does audit the

Series 2007 Bonds, under current IRS procedures, the IRS will treat the Authority as the taxpayer and the beneficial owners of the Series 2007 Bonds will have only limited rights, if any, to obtain and participate in judicial review of such audit. Any action of the IRS, including but not limited to selection of the Series 2007 Bonds for audit, or the course or result of such audit, or an audit of other obligations presenting similar tax issues, may affect the market prices for the Series 2007 Bonds.

### **Original Issue Discount and Original Issue Premium**

Certain of the Series 2007 Bonds (“**Discount Bonds**”) as indicated on the inside cover of this Offering Circular were offered and sold to the public at an original issue discount (“**OID**”). OID is the excess of the stated redemption price at maturity over the “issue price” of a Discount Bond. The issue price of a Discount Bond is the initial offering price to the public (other than to bond houses, brokers or similar persons acting in the capacity of underwriters or wholesalers) at which a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of the same maturity is sold pursuant to that offering. For federal income tax purposes, OID accrues to the owner of a Discount Bond over the period to maturity based on the constant yield method, compounded semiannually (or over a shorter permitted compounding interval selected by the owner). The portion of OID that accrues during the period of ownership of a Discount Bond (i) is interest excluded from the owner’s gross income for federal income tax purposes to the same extent, and subject to the same considerations discussed above, as other interest on the Bonds, and (ii) is added to the owner’s tax basis for purposes of determining gain or loss on the maturity, redemption, prior sale or other disposition of that Discount Bond. The amount of OID that accrues each year to a corporate owner of Discount Bonds is taken into account in computing the corporation’s liability for federal alternative minimum tax. A purchaser of a Discount Bond in the initial public offering at the price for that Discount Bond stated on the cover of this Offering Circular who holds that Discount Bond to maturity will realize no gain or loss upon the retirement of that Discount Bond.

Certain of the Series 2007 Bonds (“**Premium Bonds**”) referred to on the cover of this Offering Circular were offered and sold to the public at a price in excess of their stated redemption price (the principal amount) at maturity. That excess constitutes bond premium. For federal income tax purposes, bond premium is amortized over the period to maturity of a Premium Bond, based on the yield to maturity of that Premium Bond (or, in the case of a Premium Bond callable prior to its stated maturity, the amortization period and yield may be required to be determined on the basis of an earlier call date that results in the lowest yield on that Premium Bond), compounded semiannually. No portion of that bond premium is deductible by the owner of a Premium Bond. For purposes of determining the owner’s gain or loss on the sale, redemption (including redemption at maturity) or other disposition of a Premium Bond, the owner’s tax basis in the Premium Bond is reduced by the amount of bond premium that accrues during the period of ownership. As a result, an owner may realize taxable gain for federal income tax purposes from the sale or other disposition of a Premium Bond for an amount equal to or less than the amount paid by the owner for that Premium Bond. A purchaser of a Premium Bond in the initial public offering at the price for that Premium Bond stated on the cover of this Offering Circular who holds that Premium Bond to maturity (or, in the case of a callable Premium Bond, to its earlier call date that results in the lowest yield on that Premium Bond) will realize no gain or loss upon the retirement of that Premium Bond.

*Owners of Discount and Premium Bonds should consult their own tax advisers as to the determination for federal income tax purposes of the amount of OID or bond premium properly accruable in any period with respect to the Discount or Premium Bonds and as to other federal tax consequences and the treatment of OID and bond premium for purposes of state and local taxes on, or based on, income.*

### **LITIGATION**

There is no litigation pending in any court (either State or federal) to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Series 2007 Bonds or questioning the creation, organization or existence of the Authority, the validity or enforceability of the Indenture, the sale of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts by the State to the

Authority, the proceedings for the authorization, execution, authentication and delivery of the Series 2007 Bonds or the validity of the Series 2007 Bonds.

## RATINGS

It is a condition to the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase the Series 2007A Bonds that, at the date of delivery thereof to the Underwriters, the Series 2007A Bonds be assigned a rating of “Baa3” by Moody’s Investors Service (“**Moody’s**”), “BBB” by Standard & Poor’s Rating Services (“**S&P**”) and “BBB+” by Fitch Inc. (“**Fitch**” and together with Moody’s and S&P, the “**Rating Agencies**” and each a “**Rating Agency**”). It is a condition to the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase the Series 2007B Bonds that, at the date of delivery thereof to the Underwriters, the Series 2007B Bonds be assigned a rating of “BBB+” by Fitch. It is a condition to the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase the Series 2007C Bonds that, at the date of delivery thereof to the Underwriters, the Series 2007C Bonds be assigned a rating of “BBB” by Fitch.

The Serial Bond maturities and Turbo Term Bond Maturities for the applicable Series 2007 Bonds were structured to produce cash flow stress test performance necessary for the Authority to achieve the targeted credit ratings. The ratings address each Rating Agency’s assessment of (i) the payment of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds when due, and (ii) the payment of Principal of Series 2007 Bonds by their Maturity Dates. The ratings will not address the payment of Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions on Series 2007 Bonds. A credit rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities, and such ratings may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time.

The ratings by each Rating Agency of the Series 2007 Bonds reflect only the views of such organization and any desired explanation of the significance of such ratings and any outlooks or other statements given by such Rating Agency with respect thereto should be obtained from such Rating Agency.

There is no assurance that the initial ratings assigned to the Series 2007 Bonds will continue for any given period of time or that any of such ratings will not be revised downward, suspended or withdrawn entirely by any Rating Agency. Any such downward revision, suspension or withdrawal of such ratings may have an adverse effect on the availability of a market for or the market price of the Series 2007 Bonds.

Moody’s currently indicates that its ratings on all tobacco settlement securitizations, including its ratings of the Series 2007A Bonds, are “on watch direction uncertain.” S&P currently indicates that its ratings on all tobacco settlement securitizations, including its ratings of the Series 2007A Bonds, have a negative outlook. Fitch’s view of the tobacco industry is a key factor in its ratings of tobacco settlement securitizations, including its ratings of the Series 2007 Bonds. Fitch’s outlook on the unsecured credit profile of the tobacco industry is stable.

## UNDERWRITING

The underwriters listed on the cover page hereof (the “**Underwriters**”) have jointly and severally agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase all, but not less than all, of the Series 2007 Bonds from the Authority at an underwriters’ discount of \$22,855,458.62. The Underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the Series 2007 Bonds if any are purchased. The initial public offering prices of the Series 2007 Bonds may be changed from time to time by the Underwriters.

Bear, Stearns & Co. Inc. and Citigroup Global Markets Inc. are serving as joint book-running senior managers and as joint representatives on behalf of the Underwriters.

The Series 2007 Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers (including the Underwriters and other dealers depositing Series 2007 Bonds into investment trusts) at prices lower than such public offering prices.

**LEGAL MATTERS**

Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P. and Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP, New York, New York, Bond Counsel, will each render an opinion with respect to the validity of the Series 2007 Bonds in substantially the form set forth in Appendix C hereto.

Certain legal matters with respect to the State will be passed upon by the State’s Attorney General. Certain legal matters with respect to the Authority will be passed upon by Squire, Sanders & Dempsey L.L.P.

Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, New York, New York and Wilkerson & Associates Co., LPA, Cleveland, Ohio, as Co-Underwriters’ Counsel.

**OTHER PARTIES**

**Financial Advisor**

Public Financial Management, Inc. is employed as financial advisor to the Authority in connection with the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds. The financial advisor’s fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Series 2007 Bonds is not contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Series 2007 Bonds. Public Financial Management, Inc., in its capacity as financial advisor, does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants and representations contained in any of the legal documents with respect to the federal income tax status of the Series 2007 Bonds, or the possible impact of any present, pending or future actions taken by any legislative or judicial bodies.

The financial advisor to the Authority has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Offering Circular. The financial advisor has reviewed the information in this Offering Circular in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the Authority and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the financial advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

**Global Insight**

Global Insight has been retained as an independent econometric consultant. The Global Insight Consumption Report attached as Appendix A hereto is included herein in reliance on Global Insight as experts in such matters. Global Insight’s fees for acting as the Authority’s independent economic consultant are not contingent upon the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds. The Global Insight Consumption Report should be read in its entirety before purchasing any Series 2007 Bonds.

**BUCKEYE TOBACCO SETTLEMENT  
FINANCING AUTHORITY**

By: \_\_\_\_\_ /s/ J. Pari Sabety\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]



**APPENDIX A**

**GLOBAL INSIGHT CONSUMPTION REPORT**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]

**A Forecast of  
U.S. Cigarette  
Consumption  
(2007-2052) for the  
Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority**

Submitted to:

**Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority**

Prepared by:

**Global Insight (USA), Inc.**

**October 24, 2007**



**Jim Diffley**  
Group Managing Director

**Jeannine Cataldi**  
Senior Economist

Global Insight, Inc.  
800 Baldwin Tower  
Eddystone, PA 19022

**(610) 490-2642**

Copyright © 2007 Global Insight Inc.

## Executive Summary

Global Insight<sup>1</sup> has developed a cigarette consumption model based on historical U.S. data between 1965 and 2003. This econometric model, coupled with our long term forecast of the U.S. economy, has been used to project total U.S. cigarette consumption from 2007 through 2052. Our Base Case Forecast indicates that total consumption in 2052 will be 163 billion cigarettes (approximately 8 billion packs), a 59% decline from the 2003 level. From 2004 through 2052 the average annual rate of decline is projected to be 1.81%. On a per capita basis consumption is projected to fall at an average rate of 2.52% per year.

We also present alternative forecasts that project higher and lower paths of cigarette consumption. Under these, less likely, scenarios we forecast that by 2052 U.S. cigarette consumption could be as low as 150 billion and as high as 176 billion cigarettes. In addition, we also present scenarios with more extreme variations in assumptions for the purposes of illustrating alternative paths of consumption.

Another alternative to the Base Case Forecast will result from a sharp increase in the federal excise tax on cigarettes. In September 2007, the U.S. Congress adopted legislation which would raise the excise tax by \$0.61. On October 3, the President vetoed the bill and, on October 18, Congress failed to override the veto. We forecast that, if the tax increase were to be enacted, U.S. cigarette consumption would fall by an additional 4.3%, or 15.5 billion cigarettes, by 2009, and in 2052 will be 156 billion.

Our model was constructed from widely accepted economic principles and Global Insight's long experience in building econometric forecasting models. A review of the economic research literature indicates that our model is consistent with the prevalent consensus among economists concerning cigarette demand. We considered the impact of demographics, cigarette prices, disposable income, employment and unemployment, industry advertising expenditures, the future effect of the incidence of smoking amongst underage youth, and qualitative variables that captured the impact of anti-smoking regulations, legislation, and health warnings. After extensive analysis, we found the following variables to be effective in building an empirical model of adult per capita cigarette consumption: real cigarette prices, real per capita disposable personal income, the impact of restrictions on smoking in public places, and the trend over time in individual behavior and preferences. The projections and forecasts are based on reasonable assumptions regarding the future paths of these factors.

---

<sup>1</sup> On November 4, 2002, **DRI•WEFA** was re-named **Global Insight**.

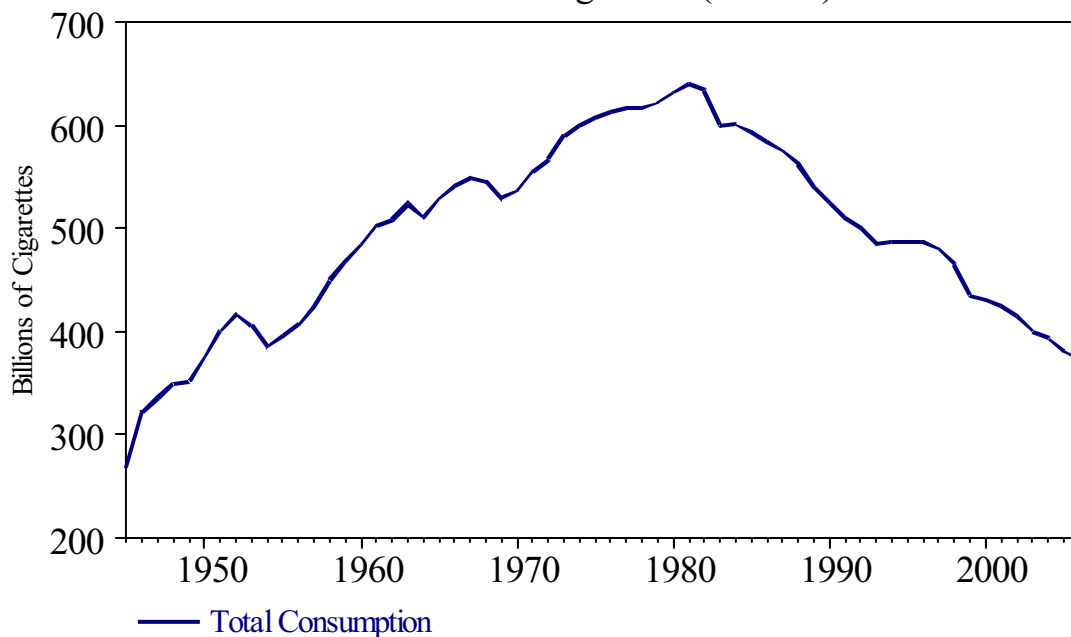
## **Disclaimer**

**The projections and forecasts included in this report, including, but not limited to, those regarding future cigarette consumption, are estimates, which have been prepared on the basis of certain assumptions and hypotheses. No representation or warranty of any kind is or can be made with respect to the accuracy or completeness of, and no representation or warranty should be inferred from, these projections and forecasts. The projections and forecasts contained in this report are based upon assumptions as to future events and, accordingly, are subject to varying degrees of uncertainty. Some assumptions inevitably will not materialize and, additionally, unanticipated events and circumstances may occur. Therefore, for example, actual cigarette consumption inevitably will vary from the projections and forecasts included in this report and the variations may be material and adverse.**

## Historical Cigarette Consumption

People have used tobacco products for centuries. Tobacco was first brought to Europe from America in the late 15<sup>th</sup> century and became America's major cash crop in the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> centuries<sup>2</sup>. Prior to 1900, tobacco was most frequently used in pipes, cigars and snuff. With the widespread production of manufactured cigarettes (as opposed to hand-rolled cigarettes) in the United States in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century, cigarette consumption expanded dramatically. Consumption is defined as taxable United States consumer sales, plus shipments to overseas armed forces, ship stores, Puerto Rico and other United States possessions, and small tax-exempt categories<sup>3</sup> as reported by the Bureau of Alcohol Tobacco and Firearms. The USDA, which has compiled data on cigarette consumption since 1900, reports that consumption grew from 2.5 billion in 1900 to a peak of 640 billion in 1981<sup>4</sup>. Consumption declined in the 1980's and 1990's, reaching a level of 465 billion cigarettes in 1998, and decreasing to less than 400 billion cigarettes in 2004<sup>5</sup>.

**Historical U.S. Cigarette Consumption: 1945-2006**  
Number of Cigarettes (Billions)



While the historical trend in consumption prior to 1981 was increasing, there was a decline in cigarette consumption of 9.82% during the Great Depression between 1931 and 1932. Notwithstanding this steep decline, consumption rapidly increased after 1932, and exceeded previous levels by 1934. Following the release of the Surgeon General's

<sup>2</sup> Source: "Tobacco Timeline," Gene Borio (1998).

<sup>3</sup> Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms reports as categories such as transfer to export warehouses, use of the U.S., and personal consumption/experimental.

<sup>4</sup> Source: "Tobacco Situation and Outlook". U.S. Department of Agriculture-Economic Research Service. September 1999 (USDA-ERS).

<sup>5</sup> Source: USDA-ERS. April 2005.

Report in 1964, cigarette consumption continued to increase at an average annual rate of 1.20% between 1965 and 1981. Between 1981 and 1990, however, cigarette consumption declined at an average annual rate of 2.18%. From 1990 to 1998, the average annual rate of decline in cigarette consumption was 1.51%; but for 1998 the decline increased to 3.13% and increased further to 6.45% for 1999. These recent declines are correlated with large price increases in 1998 and 1999 following the Master Settlement Agreement (“MSA”). In 2000 and 2001, the rate of decline moderated, to 1.15% and 1.16%, respectively. More recently, coincident with a large number of state excise tax increases, the rate of decline accelerated in 2002-2005 to an annual rate of 2.70%.

Adult per capita cigarette consumption (total consumption divided by the number of people 18 years and older) began to decline following the Surgeon General’s Report in 1964. Population growth offset this decline until 1981. The adult population grew at an average annual rate of 1.86% for the period 1965 through 1981, 1.17% from 1981 to 1990 and 1.02% from 1990 to 1999. Adult per capita cigarette consumption declined at an average annual rate of 0.65% for the period 1965 to 1981, 3.31% for the period 1981 to 1990 and 2.47% for the period 1990 to 1998. In 1998 the per capita decline in cigarette consumption was 4.21% and in 1999 the decline accelerated to 7.50%. These sharp declines are correlated with large price increases in 1998 and 1999 following the MSA. All percentages are based upon compound annual growth rates.

The following table sets forth United States domestic cigarette consumption for the nine years ended December 31, 2006<sup>6</sup>. The data in this table vary from statistics on cigarette shipments in the United States. While our Report is based on consumption, payments made under the MSA dated November 23, 1998 between certain cigarette manufacturers and certain settling states are computed based in part on shipments in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico. The quantities of cigarettes shipped and cigarettes consumed may not match at any given point in time as a result of various factors such as inventory adjustments, but are substantially the same when compared over a period of time.

---

<sup>6</sup> *Source:* USDA-ERS; 2004, 2005, 2006, estimates by Global Insight. USDA estimates for 2004, 2005, and 2006 diverge significantly from estimates based on independent data from the industry and from the US Tobacco and Tax Bureau. In 2004, the manufacturers report domestic shipments of 394.5 billion,, and the TTB reports a total of 397.7 billion. These contrast with a USDA estimate of 388 billion. In 2005, the manufacturers report 381.7 billion, TTB reports 381.1 billion, and USDA 376 billion. In 2006, the manufacturers report 372.5 billion, TTB reports 380.9 billion, and USDA 372 billion.

### U.S. Cigarette Consumption

Year Ended December 31,	Consumption (Billions of Cigarettes)	Percentage Change
2006	373est	-2.01
2005	381est	-3.05
2004	393est	-1.75
2003	400	-3.61
2002	415	-2.35
2001	425	-1.16
2000	430	-1.15
1999	435	-6.45
1998	465	-3.13

### The U.S. Cigarette Industry

The domestic cigarette market is an oligopoly in which, according to reports of the manufacturers, the three leading manufacturers accounted for 86.8% of U.S. shipments in 2006. These top companies were Philip Morris, Reynolds American Inc. (following the merger of RJ Reynolds and Brown & Williamson in 2004), and Lorillard. These companies commanded 49.2%, 27.8%, and 9.7%, respectively of the domestic market in 2006. The market share of the leading manufacturers has declined from over 96% in 1998 due to inroads by smaller manufacturers and importers following the Master Settlement Agreement.

The United States government has raised revenue through tobacco taxes since the Civil War. Although the federal excise taxes have risen through the years, excise taxes as a percentage of total federal revenue have fallen from 3.4% in 1950 to approximately 0.42% today. In fiscal year 2006, the federal government received \$7.7 billion in excise tax revenue from tobacco sales. In addition, state and local governments also raised significant revenues, \$14.0 billion in 2006, from excise and sales taxes. Cigarettes constitute the majority of these sales, which include cigars and other tobacco products. U.S. consumers spent \$86.7 billion on tobacco products in 2003.<sup>7</sup>

### Survey of the Economic Literature on Smoking

Many organizations have conducted studies on United States cigarette consumption. These studies have utilized a variety of methods to estimate levels of smoking, including interviews and/or written questionnaires. Although these studies have tended to produce varying estimates of consumption levels due to a number of factors, including different survey methods and different definitions of smoking, taken together such studies provide

---

<sup>7</sup> Ibid.



a general approximation of consumption levels and trends. Set forth below is a brief summary of some of the more recent studies on cigarette consumption levels.

## **Incidence of Smoking**

Approximately 45.1 million American adults were current smokers in 2005, representing approximately 20.9% of the population age 18 and older, according to a Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (“CDC”) study<sup>8</sup> released in October, 2006. This survey defines "current smokers" as those persons who have smoked at least 100 cigarettes in their lifetime and who smoked every day or some days at the time of the survey. Although the percentage of adults who smoke (incidence) declined from 42.4% in 1965 to 25.5% in 1990,<sup>9</sup> the incidence rate declined relatively slowly through the following decade. The decline has accelerated since 2002, when the incidence rate was 22.5%

## **Youth Smoking**

Certain studies have focused in whole or in part on youth cigarette consumption. Surveys of youth typically define a "current smoker" as a person who has smoked a cigarette on one or more of the 30 days preceding the survey. The CDC's Youth Risk Behavior Survey estimated that from 1991 to 1999 incidence among high school students (grades 9 through 12) rose from 27.5% to 34.8%, representing an increase of 26.5%. By 2003, the incidence had fallen to 21.9%, a decline of 37.1% over four years. The prevalence was unchanged from 2003 to 2005.<sup>10</sup>

In 2004, the CDC's National Youth Tobacco Survey, formerly done by the American Legacy Foundation, reported that the percentage of middle school students who were current users of cigarettes declined from 9.8% in 2002 to 8.1% in 2004. Among high school students there was no significant change, with 22.3% as current users.<sup>11</sup>

According to the Monitoring the Future Study, a school-based study of cigarette consumption and drug use conducted by the Institute for Social Research at the University of Michigan, smoking incidence over the prior 30 days among tenth and twelfth graders was lower in 2006 than in 2005, continuing trends that began in 1996. Among those students in eighth grade, incidence declined after having increased slightly in 2005 following eight consecutive years of decline. Smoking incidence in all grades is well below where it was in 1991, having fallen below that mark in 2001 for eighth graders and in 2002 for tenth and twelfth graders.

---

<sup>8</sup> *Source:* CDC. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. “Tobacco Use Among Adults – United States, 2005”. October 20, 2006.

<sup>9</sup> *Source:* CDC. Office on Smoking and Health.

<sup>10</sup> *Source:* CDC. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. “Cigarette Use Among High School Students --- United States, 1991-2005”. July 7, 2006.

<sup>11</sup> CDC. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. “Tobacco Use, Access, and Exposure to Tobacco in Media Among Middle and High School Students in the United States, 2004”. April 1, 2005.

### Prevalence of Cigarette Use Among 8<sup>th</sup>, 10<sup>th</sup>, and 12<sup>th</sup> Graders

Grade	1991 (%)	2005 (%)	2006 (%)	'05-'06 Change (%)	'91-'06 Change (%)
8 <sup>th</sup>	14.3	9.3	8.7	-6.5	-39.2
10 <sup>th</sup>	20.8	14.9	14.5	-2.7	-30.3
12 <sup>th</sup>	28.3	23.2	21.6	-6.9	-23.7

A report from the New York City Youth Risk Behavior Survey finds that smoking among New York City high school students decreased by 52% from 1997 to 2005.<sup>12</sup> Over this period New York City has raised excise taxes to the highest in the nation and instituted a comprehensive indoor smoking ban.

The 2006 National Survey on Drug Use and Health (formerly called National Household Survey on Drug Abuse) conducted by the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration of the United States Department of Health and Human Services estimated that approximately 61.6 million Americans age 12 and older were current cigarette smokers (defined by this survey to mean they had smoked cigarettes at least once during the 30 days prior to the interview). This estimate represents an incidence rate of 25.0%, unchanged from 2005, but down from 26.0% in 2002. The same survey found that an estimated 10.4% of youths age 12 to 17 were current cigarette smokers in 2006, down from 11.9% in 2004 and 13.0% in 2002.

New Jersey recently raised the minimum legal age to purchase cigarettes from 18 to 19 years. Three states, Alabama, Alaska, and Utah, also set the minimum age at 19.

### Price Elasticity of Cigarette Demand

The price elasticity of demand reflects the impact of changes in price on the demand for a product. Cigarette price elasticities from recent conventional research studies have generally fallen between an interval of -0.3 to -0.5.<sup>13</sup> (In other words, as the price of cigarettes increases by 1.0% the quantity demanded decreases by 0.3% to 0.5%.) A few researchers have estimated price elasticity as high as -1.23. Research focused on youth smoking has found price elasticity levels of up to -1.41.

Two studies published by the National Bureau of Economic Research examine the price elasticity of youth smoking. In their study on youth smoking in the United States, Gruber and Zinman estimate an elasticity of smoking participation (defined as smoking any cigarettes in the past 30 days) of -0.67 for high school seniors in the period 1991 to

<sup>12</sup> New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene. "Smoking among New York City Public High School Students". NYC Vital Signs. February 2006.

<sup>13</sup> Chaloupka FJ, Warner KE:P.5.

1997.<sup>14</sup> That is, a 1% increase in cigarette prices would result in a decrease of 0.67% in the number of those seniors who smoked. The study's findings state that the drop in cigarette prices in the early 1990's can explain 26% of the upward trend in youth smoking during the same period. The study also found that price has little effect on the smoking habits of younger teens (8<sup>th</sup> grade through 11<sup>th</sup> grade), but that youth access restrictions have a significant impact on limiting the extent to which younger teens smoke. Tauras and Chaloupka also found an inverse relationship between price and cigarette consumption among high school seniors.<sup>15</sup> The price elasticity of cessation for males averaged 1.12 and for females averaged 1.19 in this study. These estimates imply that a 1% increase in the real price of cigarettes will result in an increase in the probability of smoking cessation for high school senior males and females of 1.12% and 1.19%, respectively. A study utilizing more recent data, from 1975 to 2003, by Grossman, estimated an elasticity of smoking participation of just -0.12.<sup>16</sup> Nevertheless it concludes that price increases subsequent to the 1998 MSA explain almost all of the 12% drop in youth smoking over that time.

In another study, Czart et al. (2001) looked at several factors which they felt could influence smoking among college students. These factors included price, school policies regarding tobacco use on campus, parental education levels, student income, student marital status, sorority/fraternity membership, and state policies regarding smoking. The authors considered two ways in which smoking behavior could be affected: (1) smoking participation; and (2) the amount of cigarettes consumed per smoker. The results of the study suggest that, (1) the average estimated price elasticity of smoking participation is -0.26, and (2), the average conditional demand elasticity is -0.62. These results indicate that a 1% increase in cigarette prices, will reduce smoking participation among college students by 0.26% and will reduce the level of smoking among current college students by 0.62%.<sup>17</sup>

Tauras et al. (2001) conducted a study that looked at the effects of price on teenage smoking initiation.<sup>18</sup> The authors used data from the Monitoring the Future study which examines smoking habits, among other things, of 8<sup>th</sup>, 10<sup>th</sup>, and 12<sup>th</sup> graders. They defined smoking initiation in three different ways: smoking any cigarettes in the last 30 days, smoking at least one to five cigarettes per day on average, or smoking at least one-half pack per day on average. The results suggest that the estimated price elasticities of initiation are -0.27 for any smoking, -0.81 for smoking at least one to five cigarettes, and -0.96 for smoking at least one-half pack of cigarettes. These results above indicate that a

---

<sup>14</sup> Source: Gruber, Jonathon and Zinman, Jonathon. "Youth Smoking in the U.S.: Evidence and Implications". Working Paper No. W7780. National Bureau of Economic Research. 2000.

<sup>15</sup> Source: Tauras, John A. and Chaloupka, Frank, J.. "Determinants of Smoking Cessation: An Analysis of Young Adult Men and Women". Working Paper No. W7262. National Bureau of Economic Research. 1999.

<sup>16</sup> Michael Grossman. "Individual Behaviors and Substance Use: The Role of Price". Working Paper No. W10948. National Bureau of Economic Research. December 2004.

<sup>17</sup> Czart et al. "The impact of prices and control policies on cigarette smoking among college students". Contemporary Economic Policy. Western Economic Association. Copyright April 2001.

<sup>18</sup> Tauras et al. "Effects of Price and Access Laws on Teenage Smoking Initiation: A National Longitudinal Analysis". University of Chicago Press. Copyright 2001.

10% increase in the price of cigarettes will decrease the probability of smoking initiation between approximately 3% and 10% depending on how initiation is defined. In a related study, Powell et al. (2003) estimated a price elasticity of youth smoking participation of  $-0.46$ , implying that a 1% increase in price leads to a 0.46% reduction in smoking participation.<sup>19</sup>

In conclusion, economic research suggests the demand for cigarettes is price inelastic, with an elasticity generally found to be between  $-0.3$  and  $-0.5$ .

## Nicotine Replacement Products

Nicotine replacement products, such as Nicorette Gum and Nicoderm patches, are used to aid those who are attempting to quit smoking. Before 1996, these products were only available with a doctor's prescription. Currently, they are available as over-the-counter products. One study, by Hu et al., examines the effects of nicotine replacement products on cigarette consumption in the United States.<sup>20</sup> One of the results of the study found that, "a 0.076% reduction in cigarette consumption is associated with the availability of nicotine patches after 1992." In October 2002, the FDA approved the Commit lozenge for over-the-counter sale. This product is similar to the gum and patch nicotine replacement products. It is unclear whether it offers a significant advantage over those other products.<sup>21</sup> NicoBloc, a liquid applied to cigarettes which blocks tar and nicotine from being inhaled, is another new cessation product on the market since 2003. Zyban is a non-nicotine drug that has been available since 2000. It has been shown to be effective when combined with intensive behavioral support.<sup>22</sup>

In 2006 the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved varenicline, a Pfizer product marketed as Chantix, for use as a prescription medicine. It is intended to satisfy nicotine cravings without being pleasurable or addictive. The drug binds to the same brain receptor as nicotine. Tests indicate that it is more effective as a cessation aid than Zyban. Pfizer introduced Chantix with a novel marketing program, GETQUIT, an integrated consumer support system which emphasizes personalized treatment advice with regular phone and e-mail contact. The company reports that through June 2007, nearly 2.5 million prescriptions have been filled.

Several new drugs may also appear on the market in the near future. On May 14, 2005, Cytos Biotechnology AG announced the successful completion of Phase II testing of a virus-based vaccine, genetically engineered to attract an immune system response against nicotine and its effects. Novartis has acquired the license to the vaccine, and has reported

---

<sup>19</sup> Powell et al. "Peer Effects, Tobacco Control Policies, and Youth Smoking Behavior". *Impacteen*. February 2003.

<sup>20</sup> Hu et al. "Cigarette consumption and sales of nicotine replacement products". *TC Online*. Tobacco Control. <http://tc.bmjournals.com>.

<sup>21</sup> Niaura, Raymond and Abrams, David B. "Smoking Cessation: Progress, Priorities, and Prospectus". *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*. June 2002.

<sup>22</sup> Roddy, Elin. "Bupropion and Other Non-nicotine Pharmacotherapies". *British Medical Journal*. 28 February 2004.

positive results toward Phase III trials. Nabi Biopharmaceuticals has also reported positive results in its Phase IIB clinical trials for NicVAX, a vaccine to prevent and treat nicotine addiction. It triggers antibodies that bind with Nicotine molecules. In 2006, NicVAX received Fast Track Designation from the FDA, which is intended to expedite its review process. The Xenova Group is set to begin Phase II testing of its similar vaccine, Ta-Nic. And positive results were reported in July 2006 by Somaxon Pharmaceuticals from a pilot Phase II study of Nalmefene. Nalmefene has been used for over 10 years for the reversal of opioid drug effects. The company is seeking to develop it as a treatment for impulse control disorders. It is expected that products such as these will continue to be developed and that their introduction and use will contribute to the trend decline in smoking. Our forecast includes a strong negative trend in smoking rates which incorporates the influence of these factors.

## **Workplace Restrictions**

In their 1996 study on the effect of workplace smoking bans on cigarette consumption, Evans, Farrelly, and Montgomery found that between 1986 and 1993 smoking participation rates among workers fell 2.6% more than non-workers.<sup>23</sup> Their results suggest that workplace smoking bans reduce smoking prevalence by 5 percentage points and reduce consumption by smokers nearly 10%. The authors also found a positive correlation between hours worked and the impact on smokers in workplaces that have smoking bans. The more hours per day that a smoker spends working in an environment where there are smoking restrictions, the greater is the decline in the quantity of cigarettes consumed by that smoker.

## **Factors Affecting Cigarette Consumption**

Most empirical studies have found a common set of variables that are relevant in building a model of cigarette demand. These conventional analyses usually evaluate one or more of the following factors: (i) general population growth, (ii) price increases, (iii) changes in disposable income, (iv) youth consumption, (v) trend over time, (vi) smoking bans in public places, (vii) nicotine dependence and (viii) health warnings. While some of these factors were not found to have a measurable impact on changes in demand for cigarettes, all of these factors are thought to affect smoking in some manner and to affect current levels of consumption.

***General Population Growth.*** Global Insight forecasts that the United States population will increase from 283 million in 2000 to approximately 409 million in 2052. This forecast is consistent with the Bureau of the Census forecast based on the 2000 Census.

---

<sup>23</sup> *Source:* Evans, William N.; Farrelly, Matthew C. and Montgomery, Edward. "Do Workplace Smoking Bans Reduce Smoking?". Working Paper No. W5567. National Bureau of Economic Research. 1996.

***Price Elasticity of Demand & Price Increases.*** Cigarette price elasticities from recent conventional research studies have generally fallen within an interval of -0.3 to -0.5. Based on Global Insight's multivariate regression analysis using data from 1965 to 2003, the long run price elasticity of consumption for the entire population is -0.33; a 1.0% increase in the price of cigarettes decreases consumption by 0.33%.

In 1998, the average price of a pack of cigarettes in nominal terms was \$2.20. This increased to \$2.88 per pack in 1999, representing a nominal growth in the price of cigarettes of 30.9% from 1998. During 1999, consumption declined by 6.45%. This was primarily due to a \$0.45 per pack increase in November 1998 which was intended to offset the costs of the MSA and agreements with previously settled states. The cigarette manufacturers then increased wholesale prices on seven occasions between August 1999 and April 2002, with the total change aggregating to \$0.82. In addition to the wholesale price increases, in 1999 New York and California each increased its state excise tax by \$0.50 per pack. In 2001, five states followed suit, and in January 2002, a scheduled increase in the federal excise tax of \$0.05 per pack went into effect. By June 2002 the average price per pack had reached \$3.73.

Severe budget shortfalls following the 2001 recession led at least 30 states to consider cigarette excise tax increases in 2002. Ultimately 20 states and New York City imposed excise tax increases that year. These increases range from \$0.07 per pack in Tennessee to \$1.42 per pack in New York City. They averaged \$0.47 per pack, and, when weighted by the state population boosted the nationwide average retail price by \$0.18. This increased the population-weighted average state excise tax to over \$0.60 per pack. The trend continued in 2003, as state fiscal difficulties persisted. Excise tax increases were enacted in 13 states, pushing the average price per pack to over \$3.80. This was followed by eleven state tax increases in 2004 and eight (Kentucky, Maine, Minnesota, New Hampshire, North Carolina, Ohio, Virginia, and Washington) in 2005. The increase in Minnesota was not a tax increase, but rather the imposition of a "Health Impact Fee" which has the same effect on consumer prices. This report will consider any such fees as equivalent to excise taxes. In 2006 Texas passed a budget that will raise the state excise tax by \$1.00 in January 2007. Also in 2006 Hawaii, New Jersey, North Carolina, and Vermont enacted legislation which raised excise taxes. As a result the population-weighted average state excise tax increased to \$0.932 per pack. In the November elections referenda passed in Arizona and South Dakota raising excise taxes. Increases in California and Missouri were rejected by voters. As a result of these actions the weighted average state excise tax increased to \$1.038 per pack. In 2007 Connecticut, Delaware, Iowa, Indiana, New Hampshire, and Tennessee have each increased excise taxes. These actions further increased the average state excise tax to \$1.074 in July. It is expected that a few other states will also enact increases in 2007 and in future years. Wisconsin is expected to approve a \$1.25 increase, and Maryland and Illinois are considering excise tax increases, of \$1.00, and \$0.84, respectively. And in Oregon, voters in November will decide on an \$0.84 increase. After California voters rejected a ballot initiative on November 7, 2006 that would have raised the tax from \$0.87 to \$3.47 per pack, California lawmakers introduced three new smoking related bills that would: (a) raise the

tax by \$1.90 per pack: (b) impose a fine of \$100 on anyone smoking in a car with a child under the age of 18 present; (c) and ban smoking in state parks and on beaches.

The federal excise tax has remained constant, at \$0.39 per pack, since 2002. The U.S. Congress adopted legislation which would have raised the tax by \$0.61. But on October 3, 2007 the President vetoed the bill, and on October 18 the House of Representatives failed to override the veto. If the tax increase were to be enacted the federal excise tax would equal \$1.00 per pack, and the total state and federal excise tax would exceed \$2.00 per pack.

During much of this period, the major manufacturers refrained from wholesale price increases, and also actively pursued extensive promotional and dealer and retailer discounting programs which served to hold down retail prices. They did this in part due to the state tax increases, but primarily to maintain their market share from its erosion by a deep discount segment which grew rapidly following the MSA. The major manufacturers were finally successful in stemming the increase in the deep discount market share, which has been stable since 2003. As 2004 came to a close, the manufacturers raised list prices for the first time since 2002. Reynolds American announced selected increases and a reduction in discounts on most brands of \$0.10 per pack. In June 2005 Philip Morris reduced its retail buydown by \$0.05 per pack for its lead brands, and Reynolds American announced price increases, effective January 2006, of up to \$0.10 per pack on many of its brands. Effective December 18, 2006, Philip Morris USA has raised its prices by \$0.10 per pack. The average price in December 2006 was \$4.24 per pack. Following the wholesale price increase and excise tax increases it increased to \$4.46 in August 2007.

Over the longer term our forecast expects price increases to continue to exceed the general rate of inflation due to increases in the manufacturers' prices as well as further increases in excise taxes.

Premium brands are typically \$0.50 to \$1.00 more expensive per pack than discount brands, allowing a margin for consumers to switch to less costly discount brands in the event of price increases. The increasing availability of cigarette outlets on Indian reservations, where sales are exempt from taxes, provides another opportunity for consumers to reduce the cost of smoking. Similarly, Internet sales of cigarettes are growing rapidly, though a recent decision by credit card companies that they would not handle cigarette sales has started to have an impact and will dampen this growth. While these sales are not technically exempt from taxation, states are currently having a difficult time enforcing existing statutes and collecting excise taxes on these sales.<sup>24</sup> Under the MSA, volume adjustments to payments are based on the quantity (and not the price or type) of cigarettes shipped. The availability of lower price alternatives lessens the negative impact of price increases on cigarette volume.

***Changes in Disposable Income.*** Analyses from many conventional models also include the effect of real personal disposable income. Most studies have found cigarette

---

<sup>24</sup> Source: United States General Accounting Office. "Internet Cigarette Sales". GAO-02-743. August 2002.

consumption in the United States increases as disposable income increases.<sup>25</sup> However, a few studies found cigarette consumption decreases as disposable income increases.<sup>26</sup> Based on our multivariate regression analysis the income elasticity of consumption is 0.27; a 1.0% increase in real disposable income per capita increases per capita cigarette consumption by 0.27%.

**Youth Consumption.** The number of teenagers who smoke is another likely determinant of future adult consumption. While this variable has been largely ignored in empirical studies of cigarette consumption,<sup>27</sup> almost all adult smokers first use cigarettes by high school, and very little first use occurs after age 20.<sup>28</sup> One study examines the effects of youth smoking on future adult smoking.<sup>29</sup> The study found that between 25% and 50% of any increase or decrease in youth smoking would persist into adulthood. According to the study, several factors may alter future correlation between youth and adult smoking: there are better means for quitting smoking than in the past, and there are more workplace bans in effect that those who are currently in their teen years will face as they age.

We have compiled data from the CDC which measures the incidence of smoking in the 12-17 age group as the percentage of the population in this category that first become daily smokers. This percentage, after falling since the early 1970s, began to increase in 1990 and increased through the decade. We assume that this recent trend peaked in the late 1990s and youth smoking has resumed its longer-term decline.

**Trend Over Time.** Since 1964 there has been a significant decline in U.S. adult per capita cigarette consumption. The Surgeon General's health warning (1964) and numerous subsequent health warnings, together with the increased health awareness of the population over the past thirty years, may have contributed to decreases in cigarette consumption levels. If, as we assume, the awareness of the adult population continues to change in this way, overall consumption of cigarettes will decline gradually over time. In order to capture the impact of these changing health trends and the effects of other such variables which are difficult to quantify, our analysis includes a time trend variable.

**Health Warnings.** Categorical variables also have been used to capture the effect of different time periods on cigarette consumption. For example, some researchers have identified the United States Surgeon General's Report in 1964 and subsequent mandatory health warnings on cigarette packages as turning points in public attitudes and knowledge of the health effects of smoking. The Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act of 1965 required a health warning to be placed on all cigarette packages sold in the United States beginning January 1, 1966. The Public Health Smoking Act of 1969 required all cigarette packages sold in the United States to carry an updated version of the warning, stating that it was a Surgeon General's warning, beginning November 1, 1970. The Comprehensive Smoking Education Act of 1984 led to even more specific health

---

<sup>25</sup> Ippolito, et al.; Fuji.

<sup>26</sup> Wasserman, et al.; Townsend et al.

<sup>27</sup> Except for those such as Wasserman, et al. that studied the price elasticity for different age groups.

<sup>28</sup> Source: Surgeon General's 1994 Report, "Preventing Tobacco Use Among Young People."

<sup>29</sup> Source: Gruber, Jonathon and Zinman, Jonathon. "Youth Smoking in the U.S.: Evidence and Implications". Working Paper No. W7780. National Bureau of Economic Research. 2000.



warnings on cigarette packages. The dangers of cigarette smoking have been generally known to the public for years. Part of the negative trend in smoking identified in our model may represent the cumulative effect of various health warnings since 1966.

Five states, Alabama, Georgia, Idaho, Kentucky and West Virginia, charge higher health insurance premiums to state employee smokers than non-smokers, and a number of states have implemented legislation that allows employers to provide incentives to employees who do not smoke. Several large corporations, including Meijer Inc., Gannett Co., American Financial Group Inc., PepsiCo Inc. and Northwest Airlines, are now charging smokers higher premiums.

***Smoking Bans in Public Places.*** Beginning in the 1970s numerous states have passed laws banning smoking in public places as well as private workplaces. In September 2003 Alabama joined the other 49 states and the District of Columbia in requiring smoke-free indoor air to some degree or in some public places.<sup>30</sup>

The most comprehensive bans have been enacted since 1998 in 26 states and a number of large cities. In 1998, California imposed a comprehensive smoking ban for all indoor workplaces, including restaurants and bars. Delaware followed suit in 2002, and in 2003, Connecticut, Maine, New York, and Florida passed similar comprehensive bans, as did the cities of Boston and Dallas. Since then, Arizona, Arkansas, Colorado, the District of Columbia, Hawaii, Illinois, Louisiana, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Montana, Nevada, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New Mexico, Ohio, Oregon, Rhode Island, Tennessee, Utah, Vermont, Washington, and Puerto Rico established similar bans, as did the cities of Baltimore, Chicago, Houston, and Philadelphia. The New Mexico, Washington State and Chicago restrictions are stronger than those in other states as they include a ban on outdoor smoking within 25 feet of the entrances of restaurants and other public places. It is expected that these restrictions will continue to proliferate. For example, in September 2007 at least 2 states, Michigan and Wisconsin, are considering legislation which would enact comprehensive bans.

The American Nonsmokers' Rights Foundation documents clean indoor air ordinances by local governments throughout the U.S. As of October 1, 2007, there were 2,650 municipalities with indoor smoking restrictions. Of these, 507 local governments required workplaces to be 100% smoke-free, and 100% smoke-free conditions were required for restaurants by 461 governments, and for bars by 344. The number of such ordinances grew rapidly beginning in the 1980s, from less than 200 in 1985 to over 1,000 by 1993, and 1,500 by 2001. The ordinances completely restricting smoking in restaurants and bars have generally appeared in the past decade. In 1993 only 13 municipalities prohibited all smoking in restaurants, and 6 in bars. These numbers grew to 49 for restaurants and 32 for bars in 1998, and doubled again by 2001, to 100 and 74, respectively.<sup>31</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> Source: American Lung Association. "State Legislated Actions on Tobacco Issues". 2002.

<sup>31</sup> Source: American Nonsmokers' Rights Foundation. <http://www.no-smoke.org>. October 2007.

Based on the regression analysis using data from 1965 to 2003, the restrictions on public smoking appear to have an independent effect on per capita cigarette consumption. We estimate that the restrictions instituted beginning in the late 1970's have reduced smoking by about 2%. However, the timing of the restrictions within and across states makes such statistical identification difficult. Bauer, et al. estimate that U.S. workers in smoke-free workplaces from 1993 to 2001 decreased their average daily consumption by 2.6 cigarettes.<sup>32</sup> Research in Canada, by the Ontario Tobacco Research Unit, concludes that consumption drops in workplaces where smoking is banned, by almost five cigarettes per person per day. Tauras, in a study based on a large survey of smokers, found that the more restrictive smoke-free air laws decrease average smoking, but have little influence on prevalence.<sup>33</sup> The study predicts that moving from no smoking restrictions at all to the most restrictive bans reduces average smoking by from 5% to 8%.

The first extensive outdoor smoking restrictions were instituted on March 2006 in Calabasas, California. The city of Oakland, and the California municipalities of Belmont, Beverly Hills, Dublin, El Cajon, Emeryville, and Santa Monica, have also established extensive outdoor restrictions, as have Davis County and the city of Murray in Utah. Burbank, CA is expected to follow suit. And in the most restrictive version to date, the Belmont City Council has approved an ordinance which restricts smoking anywhere in the city except for single-family detached homes. Many landlords and condominium associations have also established smoke-free apartment policies. And the Massachusetts Department of Public Health is conducting a survey of landlords, tenants, and condominium associations to assess the feasibility of making residences smoke-free.

In the past year, San Diego City and Los Angeles, Santa Cruz and San Mateo Counties have banned smoking at beaches and parks, joining over 30 other Southern California cities in prohibiting smoking on the beach. The beach restrictions may soon become statewide. Chicago approved beach and parkground smoking restrictions in October 2007. Nassau County, New York and Volusia County, Florida are also considering park and beach bans. At least 43 colleges nationwide now prohibit smoking everywhere on campus. California and Nevada have banned smoking in state prisons. Arkansas, Louisiana, Puerto Rico, Texas, and Rockland County, NY now prohibit smoking in a car where there are children present, and similar legislation has been proposed in Arizona, California, Connecticut, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Massachusetts, Montana, New Jersey, New York, Oregon, Rhode Island, South Carolina, Utah, West Virginia, and in Bangor, Maine.

In June 2006, the Office of The Surgeon General released a report, "The Health Consequences of Involuntary Exposure to Tobacco Smoke". It is a comprehensive review of health effects of involuntary exposure to tobacco smoke. It concludes definitively that secondhand smoke causes disease and adverse respiratory effects. It also concludes that policies creating completely smoke-free environments are the most economical and

---

<sup>32</sup> Bauer, Hyland, Li, Steger, and Cummings. "A Longitudinal Assessment of the Impact of Smoke-Free Worksite Policies on Tobacco Use". American Journal of Public Health. June 2005

<sup>33</sup> Tauras, John A. "Smoke-Free Air Laws, Cigarette Prices, and Adult Cigarette Demand" Economic Inquiry, April 2006.

efficient approaches to providing protection to non-smokers. We expect that the report will strengthen arguments in favor of further smoking restrictions across the country. Further ammunition for activists for smoke-free environments was provided by the California Environmental Protection Agency Air Resources Board, which in 2006 declared environmental tobacco smoke to be a toxic air contaminant.

The trend variable included in our econometric analysis is likely to incorporate some part of the cumulative impact of the various smoking bans and restrictions. Our forecast assumes that the factors, which have contributed to the negative trend in smoking in the U.S. population, continue to contribute to further declines in smoking rates throughout the forecast horizon. However, should there be a proliferation of the most severe bans, such as those extensively limiting outdoor smoking, or smoking anywhere children might be affected, consumption declines would very likely accelerate.

***Smokeless Tobacco Products.*** Smokeless tobacco products have been available for centuries. As cigarette consumption expanded in the last century, the use of smokeless products declined. Chewing tobacco and snuff are the most significant components. Snuff is a ground or powdered form of tobacco that is placed under the lip to dissolve. It delivers nicotine effectively to the body. Moist snuff is both smoke-free and potentially spit-free. Chewing tobacco and dry snuff consumption has been declining in the U.S. in this decade, but moist snuff consumption has increased at an annual rate of more than 5% since 2002, and by 10.4% in 2006, when over 5 million consumers purchased 1.1 billion cans. Snuff is now being marketed to adult cigarette smokers as an alternative to cigarettes. UST, the largest producer of moist smokeless tobacco, is explicitly targeting adult smoker conversion in its growth strategy. The industry is responding to both the proliferation of indoor smoking bans and to a perception that smokeless use is a less harmful mode of tobacco and nicotine usage than cigarettes. In 2006 the three largest U.S. cigarette manufacturers entered the market. Philip Morris introduced a snuff product, Taboka, Reynolds American acquired Conwood Company, the second largest domestic producer, and introduced Camel Snus, a snuff product, and Lorillard entered into an agreement with Swedish Match North America to develop smokeless products in the U.S. Product development has continued in 2007, most recently with the introduction by Philip Morris of a Marlboro snus product. In October 2007, Altria announced that it would accelerate the development of snuff and less-harmful cigarettes to counter a decline in smoking.

Advocates of the use of snuff as part of a harm reduction strategy point to Sweden, where 'snus', a moist snuff manufactured by Swedish Match, use has increased sharply since 1970, and where cigarette smoking incidence among males has declined to levels well below that of other countries. A review of the literature on the Swedish experience concludes that snus, relative to cigarettes, delivers lower concentrations of some harmful chemicals, and does not appear to cause cancer or respiratory diseases. They conclude that snus use appears to have contributed to the unusually low rates of smoking among Swedish men.<sup>34</sup> The Sweden experience is unique, even with respect to its Northern

---

<sup>34</sup> Foulds, Ramstrom, Burke, and Fagerstrom. "Effect of Smokeless Tobacco (Snus) on Smoking and Public Health in Sweden". Tobacco Control. Vol. 12, 2003.

European neighbors. It is not clear whether it could be replicated elsewhere. Public health advocates in the U.S. emphasize that smokeless use results in both nicotine dependence and to increased risks of oral cancer among other health concerns. Snuff use is also often criticized as a gateway to cigarette use.

Similar to the case of smoking bans, this report assumes that the trend decline in smoking projected in this forecast is sufficient to incorporate the negative impact that increasing use of snuff may have on cigarette consumption.

***Nicotine Dependence.*** Nicotine is widely believed to be an addictive substance. The Surgeon General<sup>35</sup> and the American Medical Association<sup>36</sup> (AMA) both conclude that nicotine is an addictive drug which produces dependence. The American Psychiatric Association has determined that cigarette smoking causes nicotine dependence in smokers and nicotine withdrawal in those who stop smoking. The American Medical Association Council on Scientific Affairs found that one-third to one-half of all people who experiment with smoking become smokers.

***Other Considerations.*** In August 1999, the CDC published Best Practices for Comprehensive Tobacco Control Programs. Citing the success of programs in California and Massachusetts, the CDC recommends comprehensive tobacco control programs to the states. On August 9, 2000, the Surgeon General issued a report, Reducing Tobacco Use (“Surgeon General’s Report”), that comprehensively assesses the value and efficacy of the major approaches that have been used to reduce tobacco use. The report concludes that a comprehensive program of educational strategies, treatment of nicotine addiction, regulation of advertising, clean air regulations, restriction of minors’ access to tobacco, and increased excise taxation can significantly reduce the prevalence of smoking. The Surgeon General called for increased spending on anti-smoking initiatives by states, up to 25% of their annual settlement proceeds, which is far higher than the approximately 9% allocated from the first year’s settlement payments.

The Surgeon General’s Report documents evidence of the effectiveness of five major modalities for reducing tobacco use. Educational strategies are shown to be effective in postponing or preventing adolescent smoking. Pharmacologic treatment of nicotine addiction, combined with behavioral support, can enhance abstinence efforts. Regulation of advertising and promotional activities of manufacturers can reduce smoking, particularly among youth. Clean air regulations and restricted minor’s access contribute to lessening smoking prevalence. And excise tax increases will reduce cigarette consumption. Further support for the efficacy of such programs is provided in an analysis by Farrelly, Pechacek, and Chaloupka.<sup>37</sup> They estimate that tobacco control program expenditures between 1988 and 1998 resulted in a decline in cigarette sales of 3%. Tauras, et al. estimate that, had state tobacco control spending been maintained at the

---

<sup>35</sup> Source: Surgeon General’s 1988 Report. “The Health Consequences of Smoking – Nicotine Addiction”.

<sup>36</sup> Source: Council on Scientific Affairs. “Reducing the Addictiveness of Cigarettes”. Report to the AMA House of Delegates. June 1998.

<sup>37</sup> “The Impact of Tobacco Control Program Expenditures on Aggregate Cigarette Sales: 1981-1998.” Working Paper No. 8691, National Bureau of Economic Research, 2001.

levels recommended by the CDC, youth smoking rates would have been from 3.3% to 13.5% lower.<sup>38</sup> Also, Farrelly et al. estimate that 22% of the decline in youth smoking from 1999 to 2002 was due to the national "truth" mass media campaign.<sup>39</sup> In 2002, New York City implemented a strategy which sharply increased excise taxes, banned smoking in bars and restaurants, distributed free nicotine patches, and expanded educational efforts. Research by Frieden et al. estimates that smoking prevalence in the City declines by 11% as a result of these measures, an effect consistent with the conclusions of the Surgeon General's Report.<sup>40</sup>

In May 2001 a Commission established by President Clinton in September 2000 released its final report on how to improve economic conditions in tobacco dependent economies while making sure that public health does not suffer in the process.<sup>41</sup> The Commission recommended moving from the current quota system to what would be called a Tobacco Equity Reduction Program (TERP). TERP would allow compensation to be rendered to quota owners for the loss in value of their quota assets as a result of a restructuring to a production permit system where permits would be issued annually to tobacco growers. Also created would be a Center for Tobacco-Dependent Communities, which would address any challenges faced during this period. Three public health proposals that were suggested by the Commission were: that states increase funding on tobacco cessation and prevention programs; that the FDA be allowed to regulate tobacco products in a "fair and equitable" manner; and that funding be included in Medicaid and Medicare coverage for smoking cessation. To be able to fund these recommendations, the Commission called for a 17-cent increase in the excise tax on all packs of cigarettes sold in the United States. The increased revenues would then be deposited into a fund and earmarked for the recommended programs. On February 13, 2003, the Interagency Committee on Smoking and Health, which reports to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, issued recommendations, which included raising the federal excise tax on cigarettes from \$0.39 to \$2.39 per pack. The purpose of the tax increase would be to discourage smoking and to fund anti-tobacco efforts.

Neither the Surgeon General's nor the Presidential Commission's report have resulted in a concerted nationwide program to implement their recommendations, though legislation to establish FDA regulation was re-introduced in 2005 and again on February 15, 2007 as the Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act. The bill would give the FDA broad authority over the sale, distribution, and advertising of tobacco products. Such legislation would, among other anticipated changes, permit the FDA to strengthen

---

<sup>38</sup> Tauras, Chaloupka, Farrelly, Giovino, Wakefield, Johnston, O'Malley, Kloska, and Pechacek. "State Tobacco Control Spending and Youth Smoking", *American Journal of Public Health*, February 2005.

<sup>39</sup> Farrelly, Davis, Haviland, Messeri, and Heaton. "Evidence of a Dose-Response Relationship Between "truth" Antismoking Ads and Youth Smoking Prevalence". *American Journal of Public Health*. March 2005.

<sup>40</sup> Frieden, Mostashari, Kerker, Miller, Hajat, and Frankel. "Adult Tobacco Use Levels After Intensive Tobacco Control Measures: New York City, 2002-2003". *American Journal of Public Health*. June 2005.

<sup>41</sup> "Tobacco at a Crossroad: A Call for Action". President's Commission on Improving Economic Opportunity in Communities Dependent on Tobacco Production While Protecting Public Health. May 14, 2001.

warning labels, reduce nicotine levels in tobacco products, police false or misleading advertising and marketing aimed at children and would require manufacturers to provide the FDA with lists of ingredients and additives in their products, including nicotine.

Research has indicated, and our model incorporates, a negative impact on cigarette consumption due to tobacco tax increases, and a negative trend decline in levels of smoking since the Surgeon General's 1964 warning, subsequent anti-smoking initiatives, and regulations which restrict smoking. Our model and forecast acknowledges the efficacy of these activities in reducing smoking and assumes that the effectiveness of such anti-smoking efforts will continue. For instance, in 2001, Canada required cigarette labels to include large graphic depictions of adverse health consequences of smoking. Recent research suggests that these warnings have some effectiveness, as one-fifth of the participants in a survey reported smoking less as a result of the labels.<sup>42</sup> Similarly, the Justice Department has indicated that, as part of a lawsuit against the tobacco companies, it may seek to require graphic health warnings covering 50% of cigarette packs. In addition, it would prohibit in-store promotions and require that all advertising and packaging be black-and-white. A similar proposal is part of the World Health Organization's Framework Convention on Tobacco Control, which the U.S. may sign. As the prevalence of smoking declines, it is likely that the achievement of further declines will require either greater levels of spending, or more effective programs. This is the common economic principle of diminishing returns.

In August 2007, the President's Cancer Panel issued a report which included a series of recommendations to reduce American's cancer risk. These included FDA regulation of the tobacco industry, increased federal and state excise taxes on tobacco, increased funding of tobacco prevention and cessation programs, and the enactment in all states of smoke-free laws which cover restaurants and bars.

Also in 2007, the Motion Picture Association of America promised to consider the amount of smoking depicted in a film as a determinant in assigning it an R rating, one which limits youth attendance. Researchers at the University of California at San Francisco have concluded that viewing on-screen smoking is linked to smoking among young adults.

New York State, in 2000, mandated that manufacturers provide, beginning in 2003, only cigarettes that self-extinguish. These standards went into effect in 2004. Similar laws have been enacted in Alaska, California, Connecticut, Delaware, Illinois, Iowa, Kentucky, Louisiana, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Montana, New Hampshire, New Jersey, North Carolina, Oregon, Rhode Island, Texas, Utah, and Vermont. We do not believe that these statutes or a nationwide agreement on such standards will affect consumption noticeably. It will probably raise the cost of manufacture slightly, but we view it as a continuation of a long series of government actions that contribute to the trend decline in consumption, which has been incorporated into our model. The expense and availability of technology required in the manufacture

---

<sup>42</sup> Hammond, Fong, McDonald, Brown, and Cameron. "Graphic Canadian Warning Labels and Adverse Outcomes: Evidence from Canadian Smokers. *American Journal of Public Health*. August 2004.

of self-extinguishing cigarettes may put the smaller manufacturers at a slight competitive disadvantage, as their cost per pack would increase more relative to the cost per pack increase for the larger manufacturers.

Similarly, in January 2001, Vector Group Ltd. announced plans for a virtually nicotine-free cigarette. The product, Quest, was introduced on January 27, 2003. This non-addictive product might be used as a tool to quit or reduce smoking. We view this as a continuation of efforts to provide products, such as the nicotine patch, that are supposed to reduce smoking addiction. These products have likely contributed to the trend decline in consumption incorporated into our model. In our forecast, we expect such efforts to continue to reduce per capita cigarette consumption.

## **An Empirical Model of Cigarette Consumption**

An econometric model is a set of mathematical equations which statistically best describes the available historical data. It can be applied, with assumptions on the projected path of independent explanatory variables, to predict the future path of the dependent variable being studied, in this case adult per capita cigarette consumption (CPC). After extensive analysis of available data measuring all of the above-mentioned factors which influence smoking, we found the following variables to be effective in building an empirical model of adult per capita cigarette consumption for the United States:

- 1) the real price of cigarettes (cigprice)
- 2) the level of real disposable income per capita (ydp96pc)
- 3) the impact of restrictions on smoking in public places (smokeban)
- 4) the trend over time in individual behavior and preferences (trend)

We used the tools of standard multivariate regression analysis to determine the nature of the economic relationship between these variables and adult per capita cigarette consumption in the U.S. Then, using that relationship, along with Global Insight's standard adult population growth, and adjustment for non-adult smoking, we projected actual cigarette consumption (in billions of cigarettes) out to 2052. It should also be noted that since our entire dataset incorporates the effect of the Surgeon General's health warning (1964), the impact of that variable too is accounted for in the forecast. Similarly the effect of nicotine dependence is incorporated into our entire dataset and influences the trend decline.

Using U.S. data from 1965 through 2003 on the variables described above, we developed the following regression equation. All of the data sources are detailed in Appendix 1 of this Report.

$$\begin{aligned} \log(\text{cpc}) &= 57.7 && - && 0.024 * \text{trend} \\ & && - && 0.223 * \log(\text{cigprice}) - && 0.106 * \log(\text{cigprice})^{-1} \\ & && + && 0.270 * \log(\text{ydp96pc}) - && 0.020 * \text{smokeban} \end{aligned}$$

The model is estimated in logarithmic form, since that allows the easy computation of the responsiveness (or elasticity) of the dependent variable (adult per capita cigarette consumption) to changes in the various explanatory (or the right hand side) variables.

This model has an R-square in excess of 0.99, meaning that it explains more than 99 percent of the variation in U.S. adult per capita cigarette consumption over the 1965 to 2003 period. In terms of explanatory power this indicates a very strong model with a high level of statistical significance.

Our model is completed with two other equations:

(1) Total adult cigarette consumption =

$$\text{cpc} * \text{U.S. adult population.}$$

(2) Total cigarette consumption =

$$\text{total adult cigarette consumption} + \text{total youth cigarette consumption.}$$

We have measured the consumption level of cigarettes in the 12-17 age group by examining the difference between total consumption and total adult consumption. We then use the expected trend of youth smoking incidence to adjust for the volume of cigarette consumption in this age group. Youth incidence is expected to gradually decline, and our estimated consumption levels will fall to 1.6 billion in 2052.

## **Dependent Variable**

### **Adult Per Capita Cigarette Consumption (CPC)**

CPC measures the average annual cigarette consumption of the American adult. It is calculated by dividing total adult cigarette consumption by the size of the population (18 years and above). Of the different measures of cigarette consumption available, this is considered to be the most reliable. It also directly reflects the changing behavior of individual smokers over the historical period. Data were obtained from the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) Economic Research Service.



## **Explanatory Variables**

### **The Real Price of Cigarettes (CIGPRICE)**

Reliable data on retail cigarette prices from the consumer price index (CPI) are only available since 1997, an inadequate time frame to build our model. However, tobacco CPI, which is available for the entire period of analysis, closely follows cigarette prices, since cigarettes constitute over 95 percent of tobacco products. We have, therefore, used the tobacco CPI in our model, as is standard. Further, we have deflated this price of cigarettes (tobacco) by the overall price level to ensure that any change in cigarette consumption is correctly attributed to a change in the price of cigarettes relative to other goods, rather than an overall change in the price level. The overall, as well as tobacco CPI, were obtained from the Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS).

The coefficient on CIGPRICE in the regression equation measures the elasticity of cigarette consumption with respect to price. In our model this effect consists of two parts. The coefficient of  $-0.223$  measures the short-run elasticity of cigarette demand. That is, a 1% increase in price reduces consumption by 0.223% in the current year. The second coefficient,  $-0.106$  relates to prices in the previous year. It indicates that, following a 1% increase, an additional decrease in cigarette consumption of 0.106% will occur. Thus, according to the data, a one percent increase in price decreases cigarette consumption by 0.329 percent in the long term. The low value of the elasticity indicates that cigarette consumption is price inelastic, or relatively unresponsive to changes in price. This coefficient is estimated such that a statistical confidence interval of 95% places its value between  $-0.25$  and  $-0.41$ . This implies that there is a probability of 5% that the price elasticity is outside this range.

### **Real Disposable Income Per Capita (YDP96PC)**

Real disposable income per capita measures the average income per person after tax in constant 1996 dollars. Data used were collected by the Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA). For goods considered “normal”, consumption increases as incomes rise. Hence the coefficient is positive. On the other hand if the coefficient is negative, it indicates that the good is “inferior” and less is purchased as incomes rise.

Our analysis indicates that the income elasticity of cigarettes, given by the regression coefficient on YDP96PC, is 0.27. The positive sign on the coefficient indicates that cigarettes are a normal good. Specifically, every percent increase in real disposable income per capita has raised adult per capita cigarette consumption by 0.27%. However, the low value of the elasticity indicates that the demand for cigarettes is income inelastic, or relatively unresponsive to changes in income. This coefficient (0.27) is estimated such that a statistical confidence interval of 95% places its value between 0.03 and 0.52. This implies that there is a probability of 5% that the income elasticity is outside this range.

## **Qualitative Variable**

The qualitative variable that we have explicitly included in our model relates to the restrictions on public smoking since the 1980s (SMOKEBAN). The negative coefficient on the variable implies that smoking decreases as a result of smoking bans. The coefficient on SMOKEBAN is estimated such that a statistical confidence interval of 95% for its value is from 0 to -0.53. This implies that there is a probability of 5% that the coefficient is outside this range.

## **Trend and Constant Term**

According to the regression equation specified above, adult cigarette consumption per capita (CPC) displays a trend decline of 2.40% per year. The trend reflects the impact of a systematic change in the underlying data that is **not** explained by the included explanatory variables. In the case of cigarette consumption, the systematic change is in public attitudes toward smoking. The trend may also reflect the cumulative impact of health warnings, advertising restrictions, and other variables which are statistically insignificant when viewed in isolation. This trend, primarily due to an increase in the health-conscious proportion of the population averse to smoking, would by itself account for 90.3% of the variation in consumption. This coefficient is estimated such that a statistical confidence interval of 95% for its value is from 0.0195 to 0.0269 (1.95% to 2.69%). This implies that there is a probability of 5% that the trend rate of decline is outside this range.

The constant term (57.7) also reflects the impact of excluded variables, those that stay fixed over time (e.g., the health warnings on cigarette packs). It should be noted that the actual decline in CPC in any given year could be above or below the trend, depending on the values of the other explanatory variables.

## **Forecast Assumptions**

Our forecast is based on assumptions regarding the future path of the explanatory variables in the regression equation. Projections of U.S. population and real per capita personal disposable income are standard Global Insight forecasts. Annual population growth is projected to average 0.8%, and real per capita personal disposable income is projected to increase over the long term at just over 2.1% per year.

The projection of the real price of cigarettes is based upon its past behavior with an adjustment for the shock to prices due to the tobacco settlement. Cigarette prices increased dramatically in November 1998, as manufacturers raised prices by \$0.45 per pack. Subsequent increases by the manufacturers and numerous federal and state hikes in excise taxes brought prices to an average of \$3.84 per pack in 2004, to \$4.04 in 2005, and to \$4.18 in 2006. After a long period of fighting to maintain market share, the large cigarette manufacturers are expected to reduce discounts and other promotions. Price

increases were announced in the fourth quarter of 2006 and again, by \$0.05, in the third quarter of 2007. In addition many states continue to discuss excise tax increases.

Our model, intended for long-term forecasting, uses annual data to describe changes in prices and other variables. When viewed over long intervals of time, the changes will appear to be gradual. The purpose of the model is to capture these broad changes and their influence on consumption. Because cigarette manufacturing is dominated by a few firms, price changes will typically be discrete events, with jumps such as occurred on August 1999 and December 2004, followed by plateaus, rather than small and continuous changes. The exact timing during the year of price changes influences only the short-term path of consumption.

The forecast assumes that average prices will reach \$4.47 per pack in 2007 and \$4.68 in 2008. Our forecast assumptions have incorporated price increases in excess of general inflation in order to meet the requirements of the MSA and offset excise and other taxes. Based upon our general inflation and cost assumptions, we anticipate that the nominal price per pack of cigarettes will rise to \$34.40 by 2052, which is \$8.94 in 2000 dollars. Relative to other goods, cigarette prices will rise by an average of 1.9% per year over the long term. The average real increase over the 30 years ending 1998 was 1.48% per year.

Prior to the MSA, only once, in 1983, have real cigarette prices appreciated at a double digit, or greater than 10%, rate. If a 10% rate of price increase were to continue, the annual rate of decline in cigarette consumption predicted by our model would increase to approximately 4%.

Our Base Case Forecast assumes that the incidence of youth smoking will continue to decline. By 2052 we assume that youth smoking will have declined at an average annual rate of 2.5% since 2001, or by 73% overall.

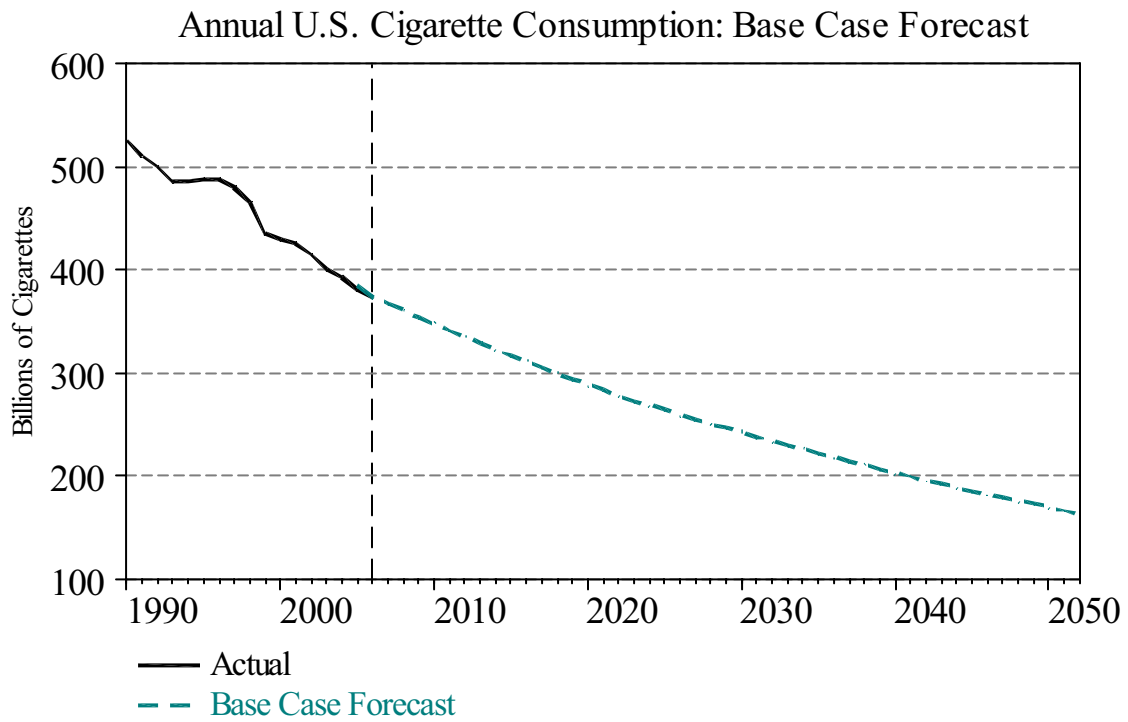
We believe the assumptions on which the Base Case Forecast are based to be reasonable.

## **Forecast of Cigarette Consumption**

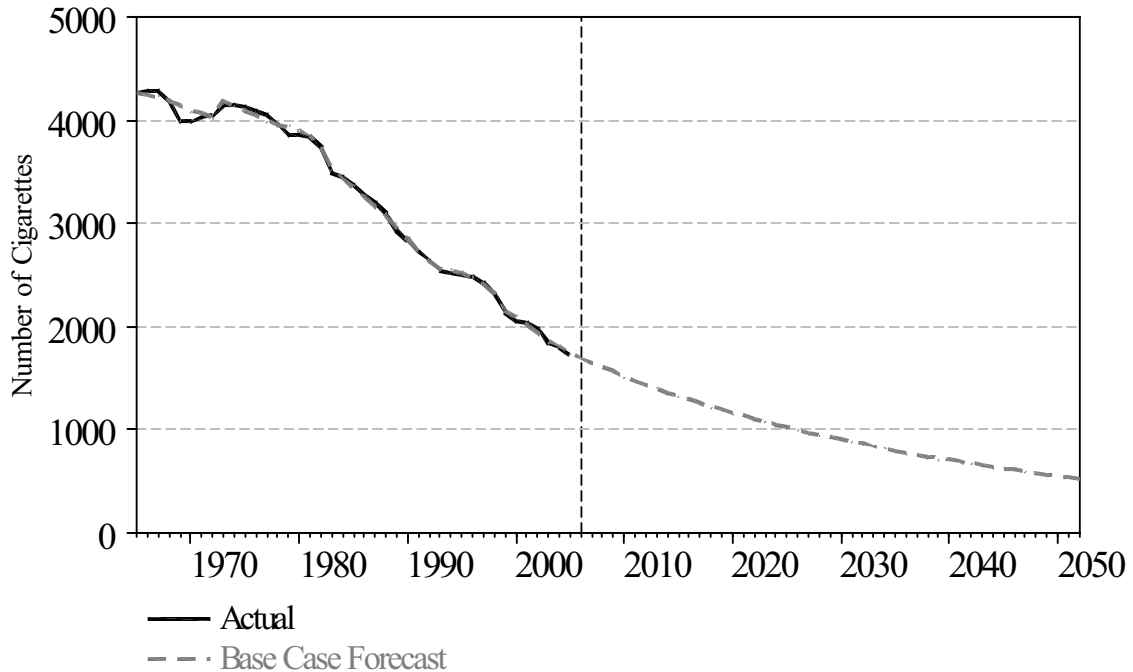
After developing the regression equation specified above, we used it to project CPC for the period 2004 through 2052. Then using the standard adult population projections of Global Insight's macroeconomic model, we converted per capita consumption to aggregate adult consumption. We then added our estimate of teenage smoking volume going forward.

In using regression equations developed on the basis of historical data to project future values of the dependent variable, we must also assume that the underlying economic structure captured in the equation will remain essentially the same. While past performance is no guarantee of future patterns, it is still the best tool we have to make such projections.

The graphs below display the projected time trend of U.S. cigarette consumption. The first graph illustrates total actual and projected cigarette consumption in the United States. The second graph illustrates actual and projected CPC in the United States. For the period 1965 through 2003 the forecast line on the second graph indicates the value of CPC our model would have projected for those years.



U.S. Adult Per Capita Cigarette Consumption: Base Case Forecast



In addition to the expected trend decline in cigarette consumption, the sharp upward shock to cigarette prices in late 1998 and 1999 contributed to a 6.45% reduction in consumption in 1999. The rate of decline has moderated considerably since that time, averaging -2.1% from 1999 to 2003. Total industry shipments for 2004 have been reported at 394.5 billion, a 1.7% decline from 2003. The deep discount share of the market has been reported by the manufacturers as having stabilized at about 12% since 2003 and 2004. These cigarettes are produced by a large number of manufacturers, including many who participate in the MSA. After significant gains earlier in the decade, imports to the U.S. have declined from a high of 23.1 billion sticks in 2003 to 18.1 billion in 2005. In 2005 industry shipments of 381 billion cigarettes were 3.4% lower than in 2004.<sup>43</sup> Part of this decline can be attributed to two extra shipping days in the leap year 2004. For 2006, industry shipments, as reported by the manufacturers, were 372.5 billion, 2.4% less than the 381.7 billion now reported for 2005. The US Tobacco and Tax Bureau (TTB) has also reported data through December 2006.<sup>44</sup> It reports 364.4 billion domestic shipments and 16.2 billion imported cigarettes. The total, 380.6 billion, is 0.1% fewer than in 2005.

<sup>43</sup> On March 8, 2006, the National Association of Attorneys General and the American Legacy Foundation jointly announced that cigarette consumption in 2005 had fallen to 378 billion sticks. The estimate in this report, of 381 billion, is slightly higher. It is based on two sources. First, Reynolds American reported in February that the market research firm, MSAI, had estimated total industry shipments in 2005 of 381 billion. Second, the Alcohol and Tobacco Tax and Trade Bureau of the U.S. Department of Treasury reported on February 14, 2006, in their "Statistical Report – Tobacco", that U.S. manufacturers removed as taxable 362.96 billion cigarettes from production in 2005, and that imported cigarettes for consumption in 2005 totaled 18.13 billion. The total shipped for U.S. consumption is then 381.09 billion.

<sup>44</sup> Statistical Report – Tobacco, December 2006. <http://www.ttb.gov>. 26-Feb-2007.

Industry shipments for the first half of 2007 were reported by the manufacturers as 176.2 billion, a 5.1% decline from a year earlier. TTB reports a 4.9% decline in first half shipments, to 180.3 billion. The manufacturers attribute part of this decline to inventory increases in 2006 in advance of price increases. In 2006 fourth quarter shipments had increased from normal levels in anticipation of announced price increases by the manufacturers and of scheduled state excise tax increases, most significantly that in Texas of \$1.00 per pack. In addition Reynolds American noted that in the second quarter of 2006 its shipments were temporarily shifted by 1 billion cigarettes. As a result shipments in the first half of 2007 would be temporarily depressed as wholesalers reduced the accumulated stock. The magnitude of the swing, though unknown, appears to be in the range of 3 to 6 billion cigarettes. Adjustment for this impact would explain up to 3 percentage points of the first half shipment decline. The estimated consumption decline would then be between 2% and 3%.

After 2006, the rate of decline of consumption is projected to moderate and average less than 2% per year. From 2004 through 2052 the average annual rate of decline is projected to be 1.81%. On a per capita basis consumption is projected to fall at an average rate of 2.52% per year. Total consumption of cigarettes in the U.S. is projected to fall from an estimated 373 billion in 2006, to 367 billion in 2007, to under 300 billion by 2018, and to under 200 billion by 2041.

### **Statistical Confidence and Forecast Error**

In addition to potential forecast errors due to incorrect forecast assumptions, there also exists possible error in the statistical estimation. The estimation and development of an econometric model is a statistical exercise. Thus, our parameters are estimated with some degree of error. We have provided confidence intervals for the coefficient (elasticity) estimates. For instance, there is a 2.5% probability (5%/2) that the price elasticity exceeds 0.38. There is similarly a 2.5% chance that the income elasticity is less than 0.03. But if these events were independent, the probability of both would be  $.025 \times .025 = .000625$ , or .0625%, less than one tenth of one percent.

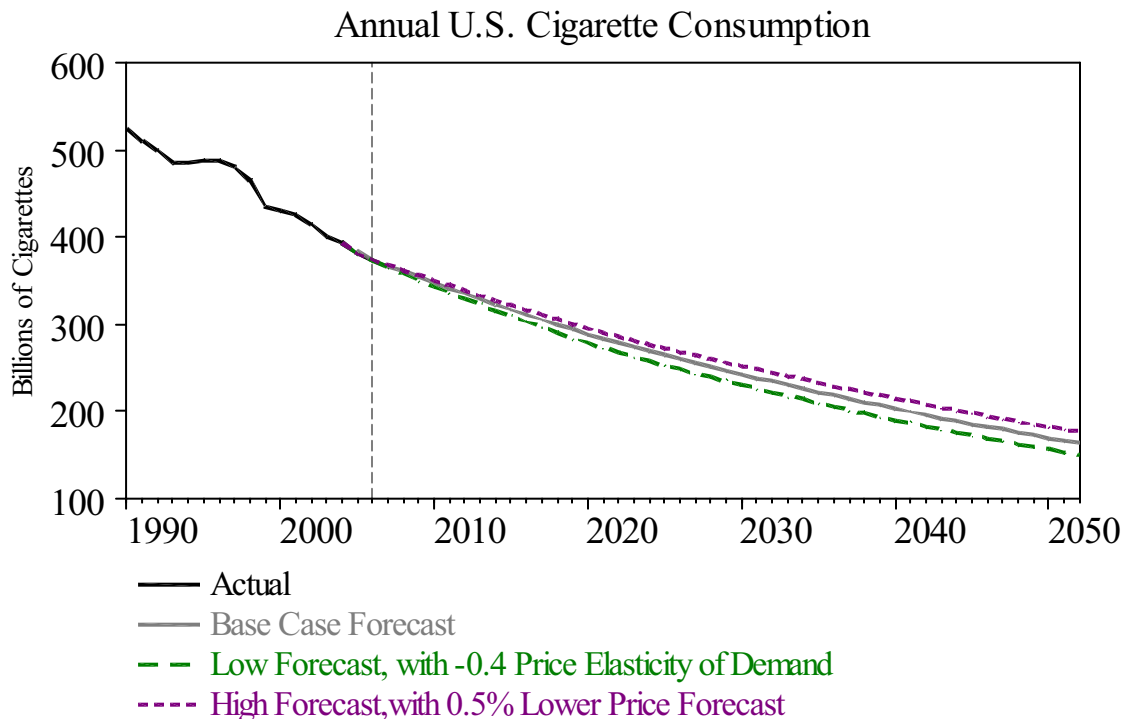
### **Alternative Forecasts**

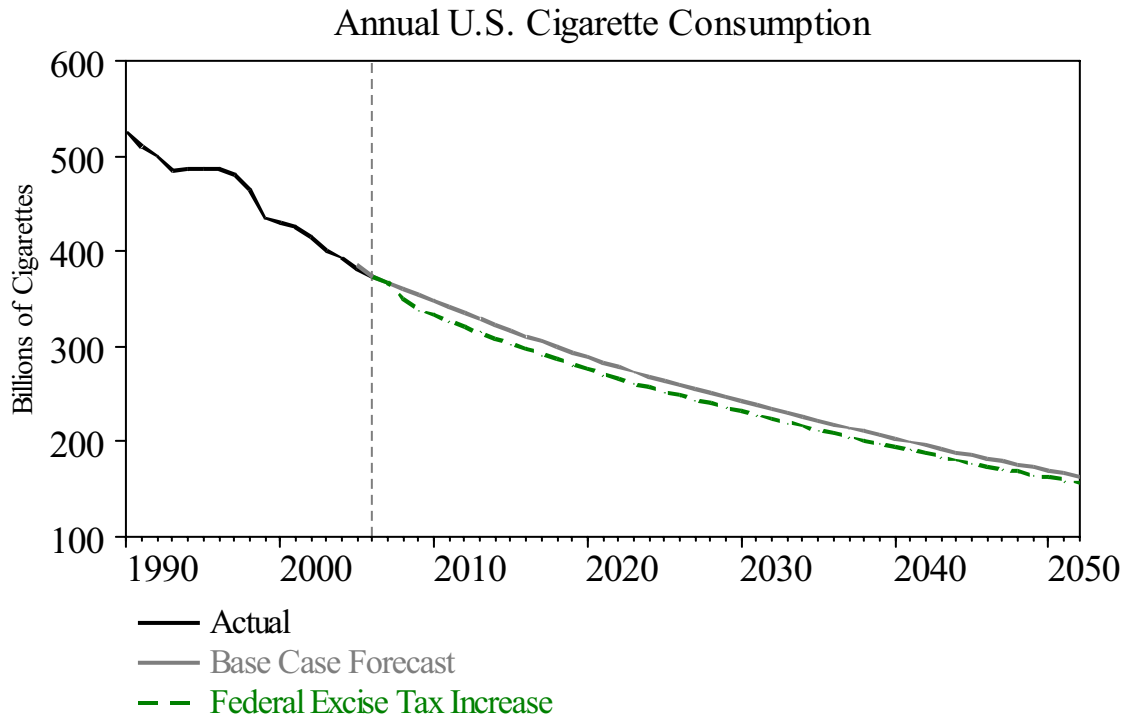
Two sources of variance may appear in the forecast derived by our model. First, as detailed in the Explanatory Variables section, there is some degree of forecast error in the parameters of the model. Second, the time paths of the explanatory variables may differ from our Base Case Forecast assumptions. Alternative forecasts are included in order to provide an interval forecast that, in our opinion, encompasses all of the likely potential realizations over time.

The high and low alternative forecasts are derived as follows. For the high scenario, we use a lower price forecast, under which prices are increasing at an annual rate of 0.5% more slowly than our current base case forecast. Under this scenario, the rate of decline is moderated slightly, from an average rate of 1.81% to 1.66%, resulting in consumption of 176 billion in 2052.

In the low forecast, Low Case 1, we posit a sharper price elasticity of demand. Our estimate of the price elasticity, -0.33, is on the low end of the range when compared to that of certain other economic researchers. Recent economic research has forged a consensus that the elasticity lies between -0.3 and -0.5. We have, therefore, used a higher elasticity of -0.4, to generate the lowest consumption forecast which might be reasonably anticipated by our model. This increases the average rate of decline to 1.98% and results in cigarette consumption of 150 billion in 2052.

Should the federal excise tax increase to \$1.00 per pack the resulting price increase would, according to our model, lead to a sharper, one-time, consumption decline of 4.3%, or 15.5 billion cigarettes, by 2009. This is illustrated in FET Increase Case. The difference with our Base Case forecast would be somewhat lower over the longer term, because our base case forecast assumptions incorporate the likelihood of significant excise tax increases over time. By 2052 consumption would equal 156 billion, resulting in an average rate of decline of 1.90%.





### Hypothetical Stress Scenarios

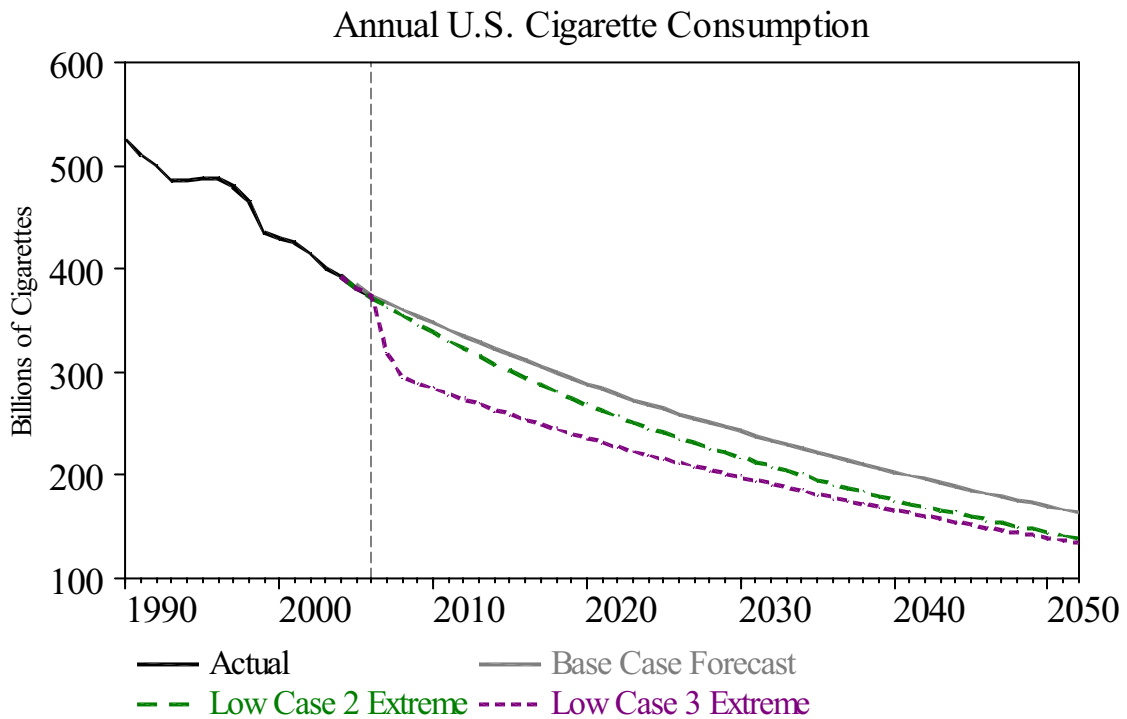
The model was also tested under more extreme, and concurrently, less likely conditions. These exercises do not represent informed anticipation of possible future conditions. Rather, they are meant only to test the model under extreme conditions. First, we increased the negative response of consumer demand to recent price increases by assuming a much larger, -0.5, elasticity. This sharpens the fall in total consumption to an average annual rate of 2.17%, and results in demand of 137 billion cigarettes in 2052 (Low Case 2). This scenario would also be the result if, instead of a greater price sensitivity of smokers, we postulated an increased rate of cigarette price increase. Indeed, if cigarette prices, instead of averaging increases in real terms of 1.93% per year, accelerated to a pace of 3.38% annually, demand would also fall to 137 billion in 2052.

A second large negative stress is placed by postulating, in 2007, either an adverse federal government settlement, or tort claims of three times the size of this MSA. This would result in a real price increase of 57%, and a large decline, 18% over two years, in consumption. By 2052, consumption will have fallen to 134 billion cigarettes, an average annual rate of decline of 2.21% (Low Case 3).



### Alternative Forecasts

	2052 Consumption Level (Bil.)	Average Annual Decline (%)
Base Case Forecast	163	1.81
FET Increase Case	156	1.90
Low Case 1	150	1.98
High Alternative	176	1.66
Low Case 2	137	2.17
Low Case 3	134	2.21



Finally, for comparative purposes we have calculated the volume of total cigarette consumption under four alternative annual rates of decline, 2.5%, 3%, 3.5% and 4%. Under these scenarios consumption in 2052 falls to 116 billion, 91 billion, 71 billion, and 56 billion respectively. These calculations are simple arithmetic examples, and are neither forecasts nor projections.

### Base Case Forecast: Assumptions for Explanatory Variables

<b>Year</b>	<b>Real Per Capita Personal Income</b>	<b>Real Price of Cigarettes</b>	<b>U.S. Adult Population</b>	<b>Incidence of Smoking in 12-17 Age Group</b>	<b>Youth Consumption</b>	<b>Average Nominal Price Per Pack</b>
	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Fraction</i>	<i>Billions</i>	<i>\$(Current)</i>
1965	4.84	4.13	1.95	0.04		
1966	4.06	0.92	1.28	0.04		
1967	3.27	0.72	1.39	0.05		
1968	3.50	1.89	1.56	0.05		
1969	2.06	0.00	1.69	0.06		
1970	3.02	2.24	2.00	0.05		
1971	3.28	0.12	2.27	0.06		
1972	3.66	2.08	2.85	0.06		
1973	5.73	-3.29	2.03	0.07		
1974	-1.62	-5.49	2.05	0.07		
1975	1.30	-1.87	2.12	0.05		
1976	2.92	-1.40	2.07	0.05		
1977	2.46	-1.60	1.91	0.07		
1978	3.58	-2.05	1.91	0.06		
1979	1.35	-4.73	2.00	0.05		
1980	0.06	-5.03	1.96	0.05		
1981	1.63	-2.11	1.73	0.06		
1982	1.20	4.80	1.64	0.05		
1983	2.35	15.84	1.46	0.04		
1984	6.63	2.10	1.48	0.05		
1985	2.45	2.31	1.16	0.05		
1986	2.21	4.84	1.38	0.06		
1987	0.83	3.36	1.23	0.05		
1988	3.32	4.83	1.26	0.05		
1989	1.82	7.64	1.35	0.05		
1990	0.72	4.71	0.89	0.06	7.96	
1991	-0.81	7.16	0.96	0.06	7.72	
1992	2.08	5.24	0.99	0.06	7.62	
1993	-0.24	0.91	1.02	0.06	7.12	
1994	1.48	-6.11	0.95	0.07	7.21	
1995	1.58	-0.21	0.85	0.07	7.76	
1996	1.77	0.18	0.89	0.08	7.54	
1997	2.30	2.31	1.27	0.08	6.58	
1998	4.63	11.03	1.15	0.08	6.30	2.20
1999	1.80	26.72	1.13	0.08	5.92	2.88
2000	3.71	7.47	1.14	0.08	5.92	3.20
2001	0.89	4.36	1.10	0.08	5.92	3.45
2002	2.06	5.76	1.02	0.08	5.91	3.71
2003	1.32	-0.64	0.96	0.08	5.87	3.77
2004	2.43	-0.75	0.96	0.08	5.84	3.84
2005	0.48	1.68	0.98	0.08	5.82	4.04
2006	2.24	1.87	0.99	0.08	5.80	4.18
2007	2.19	5.09	1.00	0.08	5.78	4.47
2008	2.22	2.71	1.00	0.08	5.77	4.68
2009	2.20	3.10	1.02	0.07	5.77	4.92
2010	2.17	2.61	1.00	0.07	5.62	5.17
2011	2.10	2.57	0.93	0.07	5.47	5.42
2012	2.02	2.52	0.88	0.07	5.32	5.71
2013	2.02	2.48	0.81	0.07	5.18	6.01
2014	2.02	2.84	0.80	0.07	5.18	6.35
2015	2.04	2.02	0.84	0.07	5.18	6.66

**Base Case Forecast: Assumptions for Explanatory Variables (Cont.)**

<b>Year</b>	<b>Real Per Capita Personal Income</b>	<b>Real Price of Cigarettes</b>	<b>U.S. Adult Population</b>	<b>Incidence of Smoking in 12-17 Age Group</b>	<b>Youth Consumption</b>	<b>Average Nominal Price Per Pack</b>
	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Fraction</i>	<i>Billions</i>	<i>\$(Current)</i>
2016	2.04	2.37	0.82	0.07	5.18	7.00
2017	2.05	2.34	0.77	0.07	5.18	7.36
2018	2.05	2.31	0.76	0.07	5.18	7.74
2019	2.06	2.27	0.74	0.06	5.03	8.13
2020	2.08	1.89	0.76	0.06	4.88	8.52
2021	2.09	2.22	0.77	0.06	4.73	8.94
2022	2.10	1.85	0.77	0.06	4.59	9.36
2023	2.11	2.17	0.78	0.06	4.44	9.83
2024	2.11	1.81	0.78	0.06	4.44	10.28
2025	2.11	1.79	0.79	0.05	4.29	10.75
2026	2.11	1.78	0.79	0.05	4.14	11.24
2027	2.11	1.76	0.79	0.05	3.99	11.76
2028	2.11	1.75	0.80	0.05	3.85	12.29
2029	2.11	1.73	0.80	0.05	3.70	12.85
2030	2.11	2.02	0.80	0.05	3.70	13.47
2031	2.11	1.70	0.79	0.04	3.55	14.07
2032	2.11	1.68	0.77	0.04	3.40	14.70
2033	2.11	1.67	0.76	0.04	3.25	15.36
2034	2.11	1.66	0.75	0.04	3.11	16.04
2035	2.11	2.50	0.74	0.04	2.96	16.90
2036	2.11	1.62	0.72	0.04	2.96	17.64
2037	2.11	1.89	0.71	0.04	2.96	18.47
2038	2.11	1.59	0.70	0.04	2.96	19.28
2039	2.11	1.85	0.69	0.03	2.81	20.18
2040	2.11	1.57	0.68	0.03	2.66	21.06
2041	2.11	1.56	0.67	0.03	2.51	21.97
2042	2.11	1.81	0.66	0.03	2.37	22.99
2043	2.11	1.53	0.66	0.03	2.22	23.98
2044	2.11	1.53	0.66	0.03	2.08	25.01
2045	2.11	1.68	0.67	0.03	2.02	26.05
2046	2.11	1.66	0.68	0.03	2.02	27.14
2047	2.11	1.67	0.69	0.03	2.02	28.28
2048	2.11	1.64	0.70	0.02	2.02	29.47
2049	2.11	1.65	0.71	0.02	1.92	30.70
2050	2.11	1.67	0.70	0.02	1.82	32.00
2051	2.11	1.65	0.69	0.02	1.71	33.34
2052	2.11	1.66	0.68	0.02	1.62	34.74

**Historical / Base Case Forecast U.S. Adult Per Capita and Total Consumption of Cigarettes (1965 – 2052)**

	Per Capita Consumption	Growth Rate	Total Consumption	Total Consumption	Growth Rate
		(%)	(billions)	(billions of packs)	(%)
1965	4259	1.53	528.70	26.44	3.42
1966	4287	0.66	541.20	27.06	2.36
1967	4280	-0.16	549.20	27.46	1.48
1968	4186	-2.20	545.70	27.29	-0.64
1969	3993	-4.61	528.90	26.45	-3.08
1970	3985	-0.20	536.40	26.82	1.42
1971	4037	1.30	555.10	27.76	3.49
1972	4043	0.15	566.80	28.34	2.11
1973	4148	2.60	589.70	29.49	4.04
1974	4141	-0.17	599.00	29.95	1.58
1975	4123	-0.43	607.20	30.36	1.37
1976	4092	-0.75	613.50	30.68	1.04
1977	4051	-1.00	617.00	30.85	0.57
1978	3967	-2.07	616.00	30.80	-0.16
1979	3861	-2.67	621.50	31.08	0.89
1980	3849	-0.31	631.50	31.58	1.61
1981	3836	-0.34	640.00	32.00	1.35
1982	3739	-2.53	634.00	31.70	-0.94
1983	3488	-6.71	600.00	30.00	-5.36
1984	3446	-1.20	600.40	30.02	0.07
1985	3370	-2.21	594.00	29.70	-1.07
1986	3274	-2.85	583.80	29.19	-1.72
1987	3197	-2.35	575.00	28.75	-1.51
1988	3096	-3.16	562.50	28.13	-2.17
1989	2926	-5.49	540.00	27.00	-4.00
1990	2826	-3.14	525.00	26.25	-2.78
1991	2727	-3.50	510.00	25.50	-2.86
1992	2647	-2.93	500.00	25.00	-1.96
1993	2542	-3.97	485.00	24.25	-3.00
1994	2524	-0.71	486.00	24.30	0.21
1995	2505	-0.75	487.00	24.35	0.21
1996	2482	-0.84	487.00	24.35	0.00
1997	2423	-2.50	480.00	24.00	-1.44
1998	2320	-4.25	465.00	23.25	-3.13
1999	2136	-7.93	435.00	21.75	-6.45
2000	2056	-3.75	430.00	21.50	-1.15
2001	2026	-1.46	425.00	21.25	-1.16
2002	1979	-2.32	415.00	20.75	-2.35
2003	1837	-7.18	400.00	20.00	-3.61
2004	1791	-2.50	393.00	19.65	-1.75
2005	1719	-3.99	381.00	19.05	-3.05
2006	1670	-2.85	373.34	18.67	-2.01
2007	1625	-2.70	366.86	18.34	-1.73
2008	1581	-2.72	360.59	18.03	-1.71
2009	1537	-2.82	353.96	17.70	-1.84
2010	1494	-2.76	347.62	17.38	-1.79
2011	1454	-2.72	341.27	17.06	-1.83
2012	1414	-2.70	334.93	16.75	-1.86
2013	1376	-2.69	328.54	16.43	-1.91
2014	1338	-2.76	322.14	16.11	-1.95
2015	1303	-2.62	316.45	15.82	-1.77

**Historical / Base Case Forecast U.S. Adult Per Capita and Total Consumption of Cigarettes (1965 – 2052) (Cont.)**

	<b>Per Capita Consumption</b>	<b>Growth Rate</b>	<b>Total Consumption</b>	<b>Total Consumption</b>	<b>Growth Rate</b>
		<i>(%)</i>	<i>(billions)</i>	<i>(billions of packs)</i>	<i>(%)</i>
2016	1269	-2.61	310.82	15.54	-1.78
2017	1236	-2.63	305.06	15.25	-1.85
2018	1203	-2.62	299.41	14.97	-1.85
2019	1172	-2.61	293.71	14.69	-1.90
2020	1142	-2.53	288.43	14.42	-1.80
2021	1113	-2.56	283.17	14.16	-1.83
2022	1085	-2.51	278.11	13.91	-1.79
2023	1058	-2.54	273.09	13.65	-1.81
2024	1032	-2.49	268.43	13.42	-1.71
2025	1006	-2.45	263.84	13.19	-1.71
2026	982	-2.44	259.36	12.97	-1.70
2027	958	-2.44	254.97	12.75	-1.69
2028	934	-2.43	250.69	12.53	-1.68
2029	912	-2.43	246.48	12.32	-1.68
2030	889	-2.49	242.34	12.12	-1.68
2031	867	-2.45	238.16	11.91	-1.72
2032	846	-2.42	234.12	11.71	-1.70
2033	826	-2.41	230.14	11.51	-1.70
2034	806	-2.41	226.19	11.31	-1.72
2035	785	-2.59	221.88	11.09	-1.91
2036	766	-2.49	217.98	10.90	-1.76
2037	747	-2.45	214.19	10.71	-1.74
2038	729	-2.42	210.53	10.53	-1.71
2039	711	-2.44	206.72	10.34	-1.81
2040	694	-2.41	203.02	10.15	-1.79
2041	677	-2.38	199.44	9.97	-1.77
2042	661	-2.43	195.80	9.79	-1.83
2043	645	-2.42	192.24	9.61	-1.82
2044	640	-2.41	188.76	9.59	-1.81
2045	625	-2.42	185.34	9.27	-1.81
2046	609	-2.41	182.02	9.10	-1.79
2047	595	-2.41	178.77	8.94	-1.78
2048	580	-2.41	175.61	8.78	-1.77
2049	566	-2.41	172.52	8.63	-1.76
2050	553	-2.41	169.46	8.47	-1.77
2051	539	-2.41	166.45	8.32	-1.78
2052	526	-2.41	163.47	8.17	-1.79

## Base Case Forecast and Low Case Projections

Year	Base Case Forecast			FET Increase Case: \$0.61 FET Increase			Low Case 1: -0.4 Price Elasticity of Demand			High Forecast: Lower Price Assumption		
	Cigarettes (billions)	Packs (billions)	Growth Rate (%)	Cigarettes (billions)	Packs (billions)	Growth Rate (%)	Cigarettes (billions)	Packs (billions)	Growth Rate (%)	Cigarettes (billions)	Packs (billions)	Growth Rate (%)
2006	373.34	18.67	-2.01	373.34	18.67	-2.01	372.50	18.62	-2.23	373.99	18.70	-1.84
2007	366.86	18.34	-1.73	366.86	18.34	-1.73	365.11	18.26	-1.98	368.10	18.40	-1.57
2008	360.59	18.03	-1.71	350.09	17.50	-4.57	357.81	17.89	-2.00	362.21	18.11	-1.60
2009	353.96	17.70	-1.84	338.46	16.92	-3.32	350.22	17.51	-2.12	356.09	17.80	-1.69
2010	347.62	17.38	-1.79	332.40	16.62	-1.79	343.12	17.16	-2.03	350.25	17.51	-1.64
2011	341.27	17.06	-1.83	326.32	16.32	-1.83	336.05	16.80	-2.06	344.41	17.22	-1.67
2012	334.93	16.75	-1.86	320.26	16.01	-1.86	329.04	16.45	-2.09	338.53	16.93	-1.71
2013	328.54	16.43	-1.91	314.16	15.71	-1.91	322.01	16.10	-2.14	332.58	16.63	-1.76
2014	322.14	16.11	-1.95	308.03	15.40	-1.95	314.92	15.75	-2.20	326.63	16.33	-1.79
2015	316.45	15.82	-1.77	302.59	15.13	-1.77	308.80	15.44	-1.95	321.35	16.07	-1.62
2016	310.82	15.54	-1.78	297.21	14.86	-1.78	302.65	15.13	-1.99	316.12	15.81	-1.63
2017	305.06	15.25	-1.85	291.70	14.58	-1.85	296.41	14.82	-2.06	310.76	15.54	-1.69
2018	299.41	14.97	-1.85	286.30	14.31	-1.85	290.33	14.52	-2.05	305.50	15.28	-1.69
2019	293.71	14.69	-1.90	280.85	14.04	-1.90	284.19	14.21	-2.11	300.15	15.01	-1.75
2020	288.43	14.42	-1.80	275.80	13.79	-1.80	278.57	13.93	-1.98	295.21	14.76	-1.65
2021	283.17	14.16	-1.83	270.77	13.54	-1.83	272.93	13.65	-2.03	290.26	14.51	-1.68
2022	278.11	13.91	-1.79	265.93	13.30	-1.79	267.62	13.38	-1.95	285.54	14.28	-1.63
2023	273.09	13.65	-1.81	261.13	13.06	-1.81	262.28	13.11	-2.00	280.84	14.04	-1.65
2024	268.43	13.42	-1.71	256.68	12.83	-1.71	257.39	12.87	-1.87	276.50	13.83	-1.55
2025	263.84	13.19	-1.71	252.29	12.61	-1.71	252.57	12.63	-1.87	272.21	13.61	-1.55
2026	259.36	12.97	-1.70	248.00	12.40	-1.70	247.88	12.39	-1.86	268.02	13.40	-1.54
2027	254.97	12.75	-1.69	243.81	12.19	-1.69	243.29	12.16	-1.85	263.90	13.19	-1.54
2028	250.69	12.53	-1.68	239.71	11.99	-1.68	238.81	11.94	-1.84	259.86	12.99	-1.53
2029	246.48	12.32	-1.68	235.69	11.78	-1.68	234.45	11.72	-1.83	255.91	12.80	-1.52
2030	242.34	12.12	-1.68	231.72	11.59	-1.68	230.06	11.50	-1.87	251.99	12.60	-1.53
2031	238.16	11.91	-1.72	227.73	11.39	-1.72	225.75	11.29	-1.87	248.05	12.40	-1.56
2032	234.12	11.71	-1.70	223.87	11.19	-1.70	221.58	11.08	-1.85	244.24	12.21	-1.54
2033	230.14	11.51	-1.70	220.07	11.00	-1.70	217.49	10.87	-1.85	240.46	12.02	-1.55
2034	226.19	11.31	-1.72	216.29	10.81	-1.72	213.42	10.67	-1.87	236.72	11.84	-1.56
2035	221.88	11.09	-1.91	212.16	10.61	-1.91	208.86	10.44	-2.14	232.56	11.63	-1.76
2036	217.98	10.90	-1.76	208.44	10.42	-1.76	204.90	10.25	-1.90	228.84	11.44	-1.60
2037	214.19	10.71	-1.74	204.81	10.24	-1.74	200.99	10.05	-1.91	225.23	11.26	-1.58
2038	210.53	10.53	-1.71	201.31	10.07	-1.71	197.27	9.86	-1.85	221.74	11.09	-1.55
2039	206.72	10.34	-1.81	197.67	9.88	-1.81	193.37	9.67	-1.98	218.06	10.90	-1.66
2040	203.02	10.15	-1.79	194.13	9.71	-1.79	189.64	9.48	-1.93	214.51	10.73	-1.63
2041	199.44	9.97	-1.77	190.71	9.54	-1.77	186.03	9.30	-1.91	211.05	10.55	-1.62
2042	195.80	9.79	-1.83	187.22	9.36	-1.83	182.31	9.12	-2.00	207.51	10.38	-1.68
2043	192.24	9.61	-1.82	183.82	9.19	-1.82	178.76	8.94	-1.95	204.09	10.20	-1.65
2044	188.76	9.59	-1.81	180.49	9.02	-1.81	175.29	8.89	-1.94	200.74	10.22	-1.64
2045	185.34	9.27	-1.81	177.23	8.86	-1.81	171.92	8.60	-1.93	197.44	9.87	-1.64
2046	182.02	9.10	-1.79	174.05	8.70	-1.79	168.63	8.43	-1.91	194.22	9.71	-1.63
2047	178.77	8.94	-1.78	170.94	8.55	-1.78	165.43	8.27	-1.90	191.08	9.55	-1.62
2048	175.61	8.78	-1.77	167.92	8.40	-1.77	162.31	8.12	-1.88	188.02	9.40	-1.60
2049	172.52	8.63	-1.76	164.97	8.25	-1.76	159.27	7.96	-1.87	185.02	9.25	-1.59
2050	169.46	8.47	-1.77	162.04	8.10	-1.77	156.26	7.81	-1.89	182.05	9.10	-1.61
2051	166.45	8.32	-1.78	159.16	7.96	-1.78	153.30	7.66	-1.89	179.11	8.96	-1.61
2052	163.47	8.17	-1.79	156.31	7.82	-1.79	150.38	7.52	-1.91	176.20	8.81	-1.63

## Base Case Forecast and Low Case Extreme Projections

Year	Base Case Forecast			Low Case 2: -0.5 Price Elasticity of Demand			Low Case 3: Large MSA in 2007		
	<i>Cigarettes (billions)</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Cigarettes (billions)</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>	<i>Cigarettes (billions)</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate (%)</i>
2006	373.34	18.67	-2.01	371.51	18.58	-2.49	373.34	18.67	-2.01
2007	366.86	18.34	-1.73	363.10	18.15	-2.26	319.24	15.96	-14.49
2008	360.59	18.03	-1.71	354.86	17.74	-2.27	294.49	14.72	-7.75
2009	353.96	17.70	-1.84	346.24	17.31	-2.43	289.07	14.45	-1.84
2010	347.62	17.38	-1.79	338.31	16.92	-2.29	283.90	14.20	-1.79
2011	341.27	17.06	-1.83	330.47	16.52	-2.32	278.71	13.94	-1.83
2012	334.93	16.75	-1.86	322.74	16.14	-2.34	273.53	13.68	-1.86
2013	328.54	16.43	-1.91	315.07	15.75	-2.38	268.32	13.42	-1.91
2014	322.14	16.11	-1.95	307.22	15.36	-2.49	263.09	13.15	-1.95
2015	316.45	15.82	-1.77	300.63	15.03	-2.15	258.44	12.92	-1.77
2016	310.82	15.54	-1.78	293.93	14.70	-2.23	253.84	12.69	-1.78
2017	305.06	15.25	-1.85	287.19	14.36	-2.29	249.14	12.46	-1.85
2018	299.41	14.97	-1.85	280.63	14.03	-2.28	244.52	12.23	-1.85
2019	293.71	14.69	-1.90	274.06	13.70	-2.34	239.87	11.99	-1.90
2020	288.43	14.42	-1.80	268.15	13.41	-2.16	235.56	11.78	-1.80
2021	283.17	14.16	-1.83	262.13	13.11	-2.25	231.26	11.56	-1.83
2022	278.11	13.91	-1.79	256.53	12.83	-2.14	227.13	11.36	-1.79
2023	273.09	13.65	-1.81	250.85	12.54	-2.22	223.03	11.15	-1.81
2024	268.43	13.42	-1.71	245.72	12.29	-2.05	219.23	10.96	-1.71
2025	263.84	13.19	-1.71	240.68	12.03	-2.05	215.48	10.77	-1.71
2026	259.36	12.97	-1.70	235.77	11.79	-2.04	211.81	10.59	-1.70
2027	254.97	12.75	-1.69	230.98	11.55	-2.03	208.23	10.41	-1.69
2028	250.69	12.53	-1.68	226.34	11.32	-2.01	204.74	10.24	-1.68
2029	246.48	12.32	-1.68	221.79	11.09	-2.01	201.30	10.06	-1.68
2030	242.34	12.12	-1.68	217.20	10.86	-2.07	197.91	9.90	-1.68
2031	238.16	11.91	-1.72	212.76	10.64	-2.04	194.50	9.73	-1.72
2032	234.12	11.71	-1.70	208.47	10.42	-2.02	191.20	9.56	-1.70
2033	230.14	11.51	-1.70	204.26	10.21	-2.02	187.96	9.40	-1.70
2034	226.19	11.31	-1.72	200.12	10.01	-2.03	184.73	9.24	-1.72
2035	221.88	11.09	-1.91	195.35	9.77	-2.39	181.21	9.06	-1.91
2036	217.98	10.90	-1.76	191.31	9.57	-2.07	178.02	8.90	-1.76
2037	214.19	10.71	-1.74	187.31	9.37	-2.09	174.93	8.75	-1.74
2038	210.53	10.53	-1.71	183.55	9.18	-2.01	171.94	8.60	-1.71
2039	206.72	10.34	-1.81	179.57	8.98	-2.17	168.83	8.44	-1.81
2040	203.02	10.15	-1.79	175.82	8.79	-2.09	165.81	8.29	-1.79
2041	199.44	9.97	-1.77	172.19	8.61	-2.07	162.88	8.14	-1.77
2042	195.80	9.79	-1.83	168.44	8.42	-2.18	159.90	8.00	-1.83
2043	192.24	9.61	-1.82	164.90	8.25	-2.10	157.00	7.85	-1.82
2044	188.76	9.59	-1.81	161.45	8.07	-2.10	154.16	7.71	-1.81
2045	185.34	9.27	-1.81	158.07	7.90	-2.10	151.37	7.57	-1.81
2046	182.02	9.10	-1.79	154.78	7.74	-2.08	148.65	7.43	-1.79
2047	178.77	8.94	-1.78	151.59	7.58	-2.07	146.00	7.30	-1.78
2048	175.61	8.78	-1.77	148.48	7.42	-2.05	143.42	7.17	-1.77
2049	172.52	8.63	-1.76	145.45	7.27	-2.04	140.90	7.04	-1.76
2050	169.46	8.47	-1.77	142.46	7.12	-2.06	138.40	6.92	-1.77
2051	166.45	8.32	-1.78	139.53	6.98	-2.06	135.94	6.80	-1.78
2052	163.47	8.17	-1.79	136.63	6.83	-2.07	133.50	6.68	-1.79

### Alternative Constant Rate Decline Projections

Year	2.5%			3.0%		
	<i>Cigarettes</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate</i>	<i>Cigarettes</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate</i>
2006	371.48	18.57	-2.50	369.57	18.48	-3.00
2007	362.19	18.11	-2.50	358.48	17.92	-3.00
2008	353.13	17.66	-2.50	347.73	17.39	-3.00
2009	344.31	17.22	-2.50	337.30	16.86	-3.00
2010	335.70	16.78	-2.50	327.18	16.36	-3.00
2011	327.31	16.37	-2.50	317.36	15.87	-3.00
2012	319.12	15.96	-2.50	307.84	15.39	-3.00
2013	311.14	15.56	-2.50	298.61	14.93	-3.00
2014	303.37	15.17	-2.50	289.65	14.48	-3.00
2015	295.78	14.79	-2.50	280.96	14.05	-3.00
2016	288.39	14.42	-2.50	272.53	13.63	-3.00
2017	281.18	14.06	-2.50	264.35	13.22	-3.00
2018	274.15	13.71	-2.50	256.42	12.82	-3.00
2019	267.29	13.36	-2.50	248.73	12.44	-3.00
2020	260.61	13.03	-2.50	241.27	12.06	-3.00
2021	254.10	12.70	-2.50	234.03	11.70	-3.00
2022	247.74	12.39	-2.50	227.01	11.35	-3.00
2023	241.55	12.08	-2.50	220.20	11.01	-3.00
2024	235.51	11.78	-2.50	213.59	10.68	-3.00
2025	229.62	11.48	-2.50	207.19	10.36	-3.00
2026	223.88	11.19	-2.50	200.97	10.05	-3.00
2027	218.29	10.91	-2.50	194.94	9.75	-3.00
2028	212.83	10.64	-2.50	189.09	9.45	-3.00
2029	207.51	10.38	-2.50	183.42	9.17	-3.00
2030	202.32	10.12	-2.50	177.92	8.90	-3.00
2031	197.26	9.86	-2.50	172.58	8.63	-3.00
2032	192.33	9.62	-2.50	167.40	8.37	-3.00
2033	187.52	9.38	-2.50	162.38	8.12	-3.00
2034	182.83	9.14	-2.50	157.51	7.88	-3.00
2035	178.26	8.91	-2.50	152.78	7.64	-3.00
2036	173.81	8.69	-2.50	148.20	7.41	-3.00
2037	169.46	8.47	-2.50	143.75	7.19	-3.00
2038	165.23	8.26	-2.50	139.44	6.97	-3.00
2039	161.09	8.05	-2.50	135.26	6.76	-3.00
2040	157.07	7.85	-2.50	131.20	6.56	-3.00
2041	153.14	7.66	-2.50	127.26	6.36	-3.00
2042	149.31	7.47	-2.50	123.45	6.17	-3.00
2043	145.58	7.28	-2.50	119.74	5.99	-3.00
2044	141.94	7.10	-2.50	116.15	5.81	-3.00
2045	138.39	6.92	-2.50	112.67	5.63	-3.00
2046	134.93	6.75	-2.50	109.29	5.46	-3.00
2047	131.56	6.58	-2.50	106.01	5.30	-3.00
2048	128.27	6.41	-2.50	102.83	5.14	-3.00
2049	125.06	6.25	-2.50	99.74	4.99	-3.00
2050	121.94	6.10	-2.50	96.75	4.84	-3.00
2051	118.89	5.94	-2.50	93.85	4.69	-3.00
2052	115.92	5.80	-2.50	91.03	4.55	-3.00



**Alternative Constant Rate Decline Projections (Cont)**

Year	3.5%			4.0%		
	<i>Cigarettes</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate</i>	<i>Cigarettes</i>	<i>Packs (billions)</i>	<i>Growth Rate</i>
2006	367.67	18.38	-3.50	365.76	18.29	-4.00
2007	354.80	17.74	-3.50	351.13	17.56	-4.00
2008	342.38	17.12	-3.50	337.08	16.85	-4.00
2009	330.40	16.52	-3.50	323.60	16.18	-4.00
2010	318.83	15.94	-3.50	310.66	15.53	-4.00
2011	307.67	15.38	-3.50	298.23	14.91	-4.00
2012	296.90	14.85	-3.50	286.30	14.32	-4.00
2013	286.51	14.33	-3.50	274.85	13.74	-4.00
2014	276.48	13.82	-3.50	263.86	13.19	-4.00
2015	266.81	13.34	-3.50	253.30	12.67	-4.00
2016	257.47	12.87	-3.50	243.17	12.16	-4.00
2017	248.46	12.42	-3.50	233.44	11.67	-4.00
2018	239.76	11.99	-3.50	224.10	11.21	-4.00
2019	231.37	11.57	-3.50	215.14	10.76	-4.00
2020	223.27	11.16	-3.50	206.53	10.33	-4.00
2021	215.46	10.77	-3.50	198.27	9.91	-4.00
2022	207.92	10.40	-3.50	190.34	9.52	-4.00
2023	200.64	10.03	-3.50	182.73	9.14	-4.00
2024	193.62	9.68	-3.50	175.42	8.77	-4.00
2025	186.84	9.34	-3.50	168.40	8.42	-4.00
2026	180.30	9.02	-3.50	161.67	8.08	-4.00
2027	173.99	8.70	-3.50	155.20	7.76	-4.00
2028	167.90	8.40	-3.50	148.99	7.45	-4.00
2029	162.02	8.10	-3.50	143.03	7.15	-4.00
2030	156.35	7.82	-3.50	137.31	6.87	-4.00
2031	150.88	7.54	-3.50	131.82	6.59	-4.00
2032	145.60	7.28	-3.50	126.55	6.33	-4.00
2033	140.50	7.03	-3.50	121.48	6.07	-4.00
2034	135.59	6.78	-3.50	116.62	5.83	-4.00
2035	130.84	6.54	-3.50	111.96	5.60	-4.00
2036	126.26	6.31	-3.50	107.48	5.37	-4.00
2037	121.84	6.09	-3.50	103.18	5.16	-4.00
2038	117.58	5.88	-3.50	99.05	4.95	-4.00
2039	113.46	5.67	-3.50	95.09	4.75	-4.00
2040	109.49	5.47	-3.50	91.29	4.56	-4.00
2041	105.66	5.28	-3.50	87.64	4.38	-4.00
2042	101.96	5.10	-3.50	84.13	4.21	-4.00
2043	98.39	4.92	-3.50	80.77	4.04	-4.00
2044	94.95	4.75	-3.50	77.54	3.88	-4.00
2045	91.63	4.58	-3.50	74.43	3.72	-4.00
2046	88.42	4.42	-3.50	71.46	3.57	-4.00
2047	85.32	4.27	-3.50	68.60	3.43	-4.00
2048	82.34	4.12	-3.50	65.85	3.29	-4.00
2049	79.46	3.97	-3.50	63.22	3.16	-4.00
2050	76.68	3.83	-3.50	60.69	3.03	-4.00
2051	73.99	3.70	-3.50	58.26	2.91	-4.00
2052	71.40	3.57	-3.50	55.93	2.80	-4.00

## Appendix : References

- Abadie A, Diamond A, Hainmueller. "Synthetic Control Methods for Comparative Case Studies: Estimating the Effect of California's Tobacco Control Program". Working Paper No. W12831, National Bureau of Economic Research, January 2007.
- American Lung Association. *State Legislated Actions on Tobacco Issues*, 2002.
- Baltagi BH, Goel RK. Quasi-experimental price elasticities of cigarette demand and the bootlegging effect. *American Journal of Agricultural Economics* 1987, 69(4):750-4.
- Bauer, Hyland, Li, Steger, and Cummings. "A Longitudinal Assessment of the Impact of Smoke-Free Worksite Policies on Tobacco Use". *American Journal of Public Health*. June 2005
- Becker GS, Murphy KM. A theory of rational addiction. *Journal of Political Economy* 1988;96(4):675-700.
- Bitton, asaf; Fichtenberg, Caroline; Glantz, Stanton. "Reducing Smoking Prevalence to 10% in Five Years. *Journal of the American Medical Association* 2001, 286:2733-4.
- Borio, Gene. "Tobacco Timeline," 1998.
- Capenhart, T. U.S. Tobacco Farming Trends. *Tobacco Situation & Outlook* U.S. Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, TBS-243; April 1999.
- Chaloupka FJ, Warner KE. *The Economics of Smoking*. National Bureau of Economic Research, Cambridge, March 1999.
- Center for Disease Control, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, "Tobacco Use Among Middle and High School Students-United States, 2002. November 14, 2003.
- Center for Disease Control, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, "Cigarette Use Among High School Students ---United States, 1991-2005". July 7, 2006...
- Center for Disease Control, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, "Tobacco Use Among Adults--United States, 2005," October 20, 2006.
- Center for Disease Control, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, "Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance – United States, 1999", June 9, 2000.
- Center for Disease Control, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, "Cigarette Smoking Among Adults – United States, 1995," December 26, 1997.
- Center for Disease Control, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, "State Laws on Tobacco Control-United States, 1995," November 3, 1995.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *CDC Surveillance Summaries*, November 2, 2001. MMWR 2001; 50 (No. SS-4).
- Center for Disease Control, Office on Smoking and Health, <http://www.cdc.gov/tobacco>.

- Chaloupka, Frank, Cummings, K M, Morley,CP, and Horan, JK. "Tax, price, and cigarette smoking: evidence from the tobacco documents and implications for tobacco company marketing strategies". *Tobacco Control* 2002; 11(Supp I):i62-i71.
- Chaloupka, Frank and Jha, Prabhat, editors. "Tobacco Control in Developing Countries". Oxford University Press, New York, NY. Copyright 2000.
- Colman, Greg and Remler, Dahlia K., "Vertical Equity Consequences of Very High Cigarette Tax Increases: If the Poor are the Ones Smoking, How Could Cigarette Tax Increases be Progressive". Working Paper No. W10906, National Bureau of Economic Research, November 2004.
- Connolly, Alpert, Rees, Carpenter, Wayne, Vallone, and Kish, "Effect of the New York State Cigarette Fire Safety Standard on Ignition Propensity, Smoke Constituents, and the Consumer Market", *Tobacco Control*, 2005:14.
- Council on Scientific Affairs, "Reducing the Addictiveness of Cigarettes, "Report to the AMA House of Delegates, June 1998.
- Cummings, K. Michael and Hyland, Andrew, "Impact of Nicotine Replacement Therapy on Smoking Behavior", *Annual Review of Public Health*, 2005-03-16.
- Czart, Christina; Pacula, Rosalie Liccardo; Chaloupka, Frank; and Wechsler, Henry. "The impact of prices and control policies on cigarette smoking among college students". Published in: *Contemporary Economic Policy*. Western Economic Association, Copyright April 2001.
- Economic Research Service. *Tobacco Summary*, U.S. Department of Agriculture, TBS-243; April 1999.
- Economic Research Service. *Tobacco Summary*, U.S. Department of Agriculture, TBS-244; September 1999.
- Economic Research Service. *Tobacco*, U.S. Department of Agriculture, TBS-254; April 2003.
- Economic Research Service. *Tobacco Outlook*, U.S. Department of Agriculture, TBS-262; April 2007.
- Elster J. *Ulysses and the Sirens: Studies in Rationality and Irrationality*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1979.
- Evans, William N.; Farrelly, Matthew C.; and Montgomery, Edward. "Do Workplace Smoking Bans Reduce Smoking?". Working Paper No. W5567, National Bureau of Economic Research, 1996.
- Farrelly, Davis, Haviland, Messeri, and Heaton, "Evidence of a Dose-Response Relationship Between "truth" Antismoking Ads and Youth Smoking Prevalence" *American Journal of Public Health*, March 2005.

- Farrelly, Matthew C.; Pechacek, Terry F.; Chaloupka, Frank A. "The Impact of Tobacco Control Program Expenditures on Aggregate Cigarette Sales: 1981-1998. Working Paper No. W8691, National Bureau of Economic Research, 2001.
- Franks, Peter, Jerant, Anthony F., Leigh, J. Paul., Lee, Dennis, Chiem, Alan, Lewis, Ilene, and Lee, Sandy. "Cigarette Prices, Smoking, and the Poor: Implications of Recent Trends" *American Journal Public Health*. Vol.97, No 10, October, 2007.
- Frieden, Mostashari, Kerker, Miller, Hajat, and Frankel. "Adult Tobacco Use Levels After Intensive Tobacco Control Measures: New York City, 2002-2003". *American Journal of Public Health*. June 2005
- Fujii ET. "The Demand for Cigarettes: Further Empirical Evidence and its Implications for Public Policy." *Applied Economics* 1980; 12:479-89.
- Gale, F. Tobacco Dollars and Jobs. *Tobacco Situation & Outlook* U.S. Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, TBS-239; Sept 1997:37-43.
- Grossman, Michael, "Individual Behaviors and Substance Use: The Role of Price" Working Paper No. W10948, National Bureau of Economic Research, December 2004.
- Gruber, Jonathan. "Tobacco At the Crossroads: The Past and Future of Smoking Regulation in the United States". *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, Volume 15, Number 2, Spring 2001:193-212.
- Gruber, Jonathan, editor. "Risky Behavior Among Youths". National Bureau of Economic Research, University of Chicago Press; Copyright 2001.
- Gruber, Jonathan and Koszegi, Botond, "Is Addiction "Rational"? Theory and Evidence", *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, 2001; 116(4), 1261-1305.
- Gruber, Jonathan, Sen, Anindya, and Stabile, Mark, "Estimating Price Elasticities When There Is Smuggling: The Sensitivity of Smoking to Price in Canada", Working Paper No. W8962, National Bureau of Economic Research, 2002.
- Gruber, Jonathan and Zinman, Jonathon. "Youth Smoking in the U.S.:Evidence and Implications". Working Paper No. W7780, National Bureau of Economic Research, 2000.
- Guindon GE, Tobin S, Yach D. "Trends and Affordability of Cigarette Prices: Ample Room for Tax Increases and Related Health Gains". *Tobacco Control*. 2002;11:35-43.
- Hammond, Fong, McDonald, Brown, and Cameron, "Graphic Canadian Warning Labels and Adverse Outcomes: Evidence from Canadian Smokers: *American Journal of Public Health*, August 2004.
- Harris, Jeffrey E. "A Working Model For Predicting the Consumption and Revenue Impacts of Large Increases in the U.S. Federal Cigarette Excise Tax" (July 1, 1994).
- Henningfield, Fant, Buchhalter, and Stitzer. "Pharmacology for Nicotine Dependence". *A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*. September/October 2005.

- Hu, The-wei; Sung, Hai-Yen; Keeler, Theodore E.; and Marciniak, Martin. "Cigarette Consumption and sales of Nicotine Replacement Products". Tobacco Control, TC Online, Summer 2000. [http://tc.bmjournals.com/cgi/content/full/9/suppl\\_2/ii60](http://tc.bmjournals.com/cgi/content/full/9/suppl_2/ii60).
- Huang, Yang , and Hwang. "New Evidence on Demand for Cigarettes: A Panel Data Approach". *International Journal of Applied Economics*. September 2004.
- Hursh SR, Bauman RA. The behavioral analysis of demand. In: Green L, Kagel JH, editors. *Advances in Behavioral Economics. Volume 1*. Norwood (NJ): Ablex Publishing Corporation, 1987:117-65.
- Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan. "Monitoring the Future Study," December 2006.
- Institute of Medicine of the National Academies. "*Ending the Tobacco Problem: A Blueprint for the Nation*". The National Academies Press, 2007.
- Ippolito RA, Murphy RD, Sant D. *Staff Report on Consumer Responses to Cigarette Health Information*. Washington: Federal Trade Commission, 1979.
- Lantz Paula M, Jacobson Peter D, Warner Kenneth E, Wasserman Jeffrey, Pollack Harold A, Berson Julie, Ahlstrom Alexis, "Investing in Youth Tobacco Control: A Review of Smoking Prevention and Control Strategies". *Tobacco Control* 2000; 9:47-63.
- Levy, David T. and Friend, Karen. "A Computer Simulation Model of Mass Media Interventions Directed at Tobacco Use". *Preventive Medicine* 2001;32: 284-294.
- Moore, Michael J. and Hughes, James W. "The Health Care Consequences of Smoking and its Regulation". National Bureau of Economic Research, Copyright 2000.
- Niaura, Raymond and Abrams, David B. "Smoking Cessation: Progress, Priorities, and Prospectus". *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 2002; 70(3): 494-509.
- National Cancer Institute, "Changing Adolescent Smoking Prevalence". *Smoking and Tobacco Control Monograph 14*, March 2002.
- President's Commission on Improving Economic Opportunity in Communities Dependent on Tobacco Production While Protecting Public Health. "Tobacco at a Crossroad: A Call for Action". May 14, 2001.
- New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene. "Smoking among New York City Public High School Students". *NYC Vital Signs*. February 2006.
- Rabin, Robert L. and Sugarman, Stephen D. eds. *Regulating Tobacco*. Oxford University Press 2001.
- Roddy, Elin, "Bupropion and Other Non-nicotine Pharmacotherapies", *British Medical Journal*, 28 February 2004.

- Ross, Hana and Chaloupka, Frank, J. "The Effect of Cigarette Prices on Youth Smoking", Research Paper Series No. 7, ImpacTeen, February 2001.
- Schelling TC. "Self-Command in Practice, in Policy and in a Theory of Rational Choice." *American Economic Review* 1984; 40 (1):141-59.
- Song, Anna V., Ling, Pamela M., Neilands, Torsten B., Glantz, Stanton A.. "Smoking in Movies and Increased Smoking Among Young Adults" *American Journal of Preventative Medicine*. Vol.33, No 5, October, 2007.
- Stillman, Frances A., Hartman, Anne M., Graubard, Barry I., Gilpin, Elizabeth A., Murray, David M., and Gibson, James T. "Evaluation of the American Stop Smoking Intervention Study (ASSIST): A Report of Outcomes" *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*. Vol.95, No 22, November 19, 2003.
- Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, National Survey on Drug Abuse and Health, September 5, 2003.
- Sumner DA, Alston JM. *Removal of Price Supports and Supply Controls for U.S. Tobacco : An Economic Analysis of the Impact*. Washington: National Planning Association, 1985.
- Surgeon General's 1994 Report, "Preventing Tobacco Use Among Young People."
- Surgeon General's 1988 Report, "The Health Consequences of Smoking - Nicotine Addiction".
- Sweanor DT, Martial LR. *The Smuggling of Tobacco Products: Lessons from Canada*. Ottawa (Canada): Non-Smokers' Rights Association/Smoking and Health Action Foundation, 1994.
- Tauras, John A. "Smoke-Free Air Laws, Cigarette Prices, and Adult Cigarette Demand" *Economic Inquiry*. April 2006.
- Tauras, John A. and Chaloupka, Frank, J.. "Determinants of Smoking Cessation: An Analysis of Young Adult Men and Women." Working Paper No. W7262, National Bureau of Economic Research, 1999.
- Taurus, John A. and Chaloupka, Frank J.. "The Demand for Nicotine Replacement Therapies". Working Paper No. 8332, National Bureau of Economic Research, June 2001.
- Tauras, Chaloupka, Farrelly, Giovino, Wakefield, Johnston, O'Malley, Kloska, and Pechacek, "State Tobacco Control Spending and Youth Smoking", *American Journal of Public Health*, February 2005.
- Tauras, John A.; O'Malley, Patrick M.; and Johnston, Lloyd D.. "Effects of Price and Access Laws on Teenage Smoking Initiation: A National Longitudinal Analysis". University of Chicago Press, Copyright 2001.
- Tengs, Tommy; Osgood, Nathaniel D; Chen, Laurie L. The Cost-Effectiveness of Intensive National School-Based Anti-Tobacco Education: Results from the Tobacco Policy Model. *Preventive Medicine* 2001; 33(6): 558-70.

Tennant RB. *The American Cigarette Industry: A Study in Economic Analysis and Public Policy*. New Haven (CT): Yale University Press, 1950.

Tobacco Institute. *Tobacco Industry Profile 1997*. Washington: Tobacco Institute, 1997.

Townsend JL, Roderick P, Cooper J. "Cigarette Smoking by Socioeconomic Group, Sex, and Age: Effects of Price, Income, and Health Publicity." *British Medical Journal* 1994; 309 (6959): 923-6.

UK Department of Health. *Effect of Tobacco Advertising on Tobacco Consumption : A Discussion Document Reviewing the Evidence*. London: U.K. Department of Health, Economics and Operational Research Division, 1992.

United States General Accounting Office, "Internet Cigarette Sales", GAO-02-743, August 2002.

Wasserman J, Manning WG, Newhouse JP, Winkler JD. "The Effects of Excise Taxes and Regulations on Cigarette Smoking." *Journal of Health Economics* 1991; 10 (1): 43-64.

Winston GC. "Addiction and Backsliding: a Theory of Compulsive Consumption." *Journal of Economic Behavior and Organization* 1980; 1 (4): 295-324.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]



**APPENDIX B**

**MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

I. RECITALS.....	1
II. DEFINITIONS.....	1
(a) "Account".....	1
(b) "Adult".....	1
(c) "Adult-Only Facility".....	1
(d) "Affiliate".....	1
(e) "Agreement".....	1
(f) "Allocable Share".....	1
(g) "Allocated Payment".....	2
(h) "Bankruptcy".....	2
(i) "Brand Name".....	2
(j) "Brand Name Sponsorship".....	2
(k) "Business Day".....	2
(l) "Carton".....	2
(m) "Cigarette".....	2
(n) "Claims".....	2
(o) "Consent Decree".....	2
(p) "Covot".....	3
(q) "Escrow".....	3
(r) "Escrow Agent".....	3
(s) "Escrow Agreement".....	3
(t) "Federal Tobacco Legislation Offset".....	3
(u) "Final Approval".....	3
(v) "Foundation".....	3
(w) "Independent Auditor".....	3
(x) "Inflation Adjustment".....	3
(y) "Litigating Releasing Parties Offset".....	3
(z) "Market Share".....	3
(aa) "MSA Execution Date".....	3
(bb) "NAAG".....	3
(cc) "Non-Participating Manufacturer".....	3
(dd) "Non-Settling States Reduction".....	3
(ee) "Notice Parties".....	3
(ff) "NPM Adjustment".....	3
(gg) "NPM Adjustment Percentage".....	3
(hh) "Original Participating Manufacturers".....	3
(ii) "Outdoor Advertising".....	3
(jj) "Participating Manufacturer".....	3
(kk) "Previously Settled States Reduction".....	4
(ll) "Prime Rate".....	4
(mm) "Relative Market Share".....	4
(nn) "Released Claims".....	4
(oo) "Released Parties".....	4
(pp) "Releasing Parties".....	4
(qq) "Settling State".....	5
(rr) "State".....	5
(ss) "State-Specific Finality".....	5
(tt) "Subsequent Participating Manufacturer".....	5
(uu) "Tobacco Product Manufacturer".....	5
(vv) "Tobacco Products".....	5
(ww) "Tobacco-Related Organizations".....	5
(xx) "Transit Advertisements".....	5

MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT

(AS AMENDED BY THE ADDENDUM OF CLARIFICATIONS)

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(continued)

	Page
(yy) "Underage".....	6
(zz) "Video Game Arcade".....	6
(aaa) "Volume Adjustment".....	6
(bbb) "Youth".....	6
PERMANENT RELIEF.....	6
(a) Prohibition on Youth Targeting.....	6
(b) Ban on Use of Cartoons.....	6
(c) Limitation of Tobacco Brand Name Sponsorships.....	6
(d) Elimination of Outdoor Advertising and Transit Advertisements.....	7
(e) Prohibition on Payments Related to Tobacco Products and Media.....	7
(f) Ban on Tobacco Brand Name Merchandise.....	7
(g) Ban on Youth Access to Free Samples.....	8
(h) Ban on Gifts to Underage Persons Based on Proofs of Purchase.....	8
(i) Limitation on Third-Party Use of Brand Names.....	8
(j) Ban on Non-Tobacco Brand Names.....	8
(k) Minimum Pack Size of Twenty Cigarettes.....	8
(l) Corporate Culture Commitments Related to Youth Access and Consumption.....	8
(m) Limitations on Lobbying.....	9
(n) Restriction on Advocacy Concerning Settlement Proceeds.....	9
(o) Dissolution of The Tobacco Institute, Inc., the Council for Tobacco Research U.S.A., Inc. and the Center for Indoor Air Research, Inc.....	9
(p) Regulation and Oversight of New Tobacco-Related Trade Associations.....	10
(q) Prohibition on Agreements to Suppress Research.....	10
(r) Prohibition on Material Misrepresentations.....	10
PUBLIC ACCESS TO DOCUMENTS.....	11
TOBACCO CONTROL AND UNDERAGE USE LAWS.....	12
(a) Foundation Purposes.....	12
(b) Base Foundation Payments.....	12
(c) National Public Education Fund Payments.....	12
(d) Creation and Organization of the Foundation.....	13
(e) Foundation Affiliation.....	13
(f) Foundation Functions.....	13
(g) Foundation Grant-Making.....	13
(h) Foundation Activities.....	14
(i) Severance of this Section.....	14
ENFORCEMENT.....	14
(a) Jurisdiction.....	14
(b) Enforcement of Consent Decree.....	14
(c) Enforcement of this Agreement.....	14
(d) Right of Review.....	15
(e) Applicability.....	15
(f) Coordination of Enforcement.....	15
(g) Inspection and Discovery Rights.....	15
CERTAIN ONGOING RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE SETTLING STATES.....	15
PAYMENTS.....	16
(a) All Payments Into Escrow.....	16
(b) Initial Payments.....	16
(c) Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments.....	16
(d) NPM Adjustment for Subsequent Participating Manufacturers.....	17
(e) Supplemental Payments.....	21
(f) Payment Responsibility.....	21
(g) Corporate Structures.....	21
(h) Accrual of Interest.....	21
(i) Payments by Subsequent Participating Manufacturers.....	21
(j) Order of Application of Allocations, Offsets, Reductions and Adjustments.....	22
EFFECT OF FEDERAL TOBACCO-RELATED LEGISLATION.....	23

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(continued)

	Page
CALCULATION AND DISBURSEMENT OF PAYMENTS.....	24
(a) Independent Auditor to Make All Calculations.....	24
(b) Identity of Independent Auditor.....	24
(c) Resolution of Disputes.....	24
(d) General Provisions as to Calculation of Payments.....	24
(e) General Treatment of Payments.....	26
(f) Disbursements and Charges Not Contingent on Final Approval.....	26
(g) Payments to be Made Only After Final Approval.....	28
(h) Applicability to Section XVII Payments.....	28
(i) Miscalculated or Disputed Payments.....	28
(j) Payments After Applicable Condition.....	29
SETTLING STATES' RELEASE, DISCHARGE AND COVENANT.....	30
(a) Release.....	30
(b) Released Claims Against Released Parties.....	31
CONSENT DECREE AND DISMISSAL OF CLAIMS.....	32
PARTICIPATING MANUFACTURERS' DISMISSAL OF RELATED LAWSUITS.....	33
VOLUNTARY ACT OF THE PARTIES.....	33
CONSTRUCTION.....	33
RECOVERY OF COSTS AND ATTORNEYS' FEES.....	33
MISCELLANEOUS.....	34
(a) Effect of Current or Future Law.....	34
(b) Limited Most-Favored Nation Provision.....	34
(c) Transfer of Tobacco Brands.....	35
(d) Payments in Settlement.....	35
(e) No Determination or Admission.....	35
(f) Non-Admissibility.....	35
(g) Representations of Parties.....	35
(h) Obligations Several, Not Joint.....	35
(i) Headings.....	36
(j) Amendment and Waiver.....	36
(k) Notices.....	36
(l) Cooperation.....	36
(m) Designees to Discuss Disputes.....	36
(n) Governing Law.....	36
(o) Severability.....	36
(p) Intended Beneficiaries.....	37
(q) Counterparts.....	37
(r) Applicability.....	37
(s) Preservation of Privilege.....	37
(t) Non-Release.....	37
(u) Termination.....	37
(v) Freedom of Information Requests.....	37
(w) Bankruptcy.....	37
(x) Notice of Material Transfers.....	39
(y) Entire Agreement.....	39
(z) Business Days.....	39
(aa) Subsequent Signatories.....	39
(bb) Decimal Places.....	39
(cc) Regulatory Authority.....	39
(dd) Successors.....	39
(ee) Export Packaging.....	39
(ff) Actions Within Geographic Boundaries of Settling States.....	39
(gg) Notice to Affiliates.....	39
STATE ALLOCATION PERCENTAGES.....	A-1
FORM OF ESCROW AGREEMENT.....	B-1
FORMULA FOR CALCULATING INFLATION ADJUSTMENTS.....	C-1
LIST OF LAWSUITS.....	D-1

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(continued)

	Page
EXHIBIT E FORMULA FOR CALCULATING VOLUME ADJUSTMENTS.....	E-1
EXHIBIT F POTENTIAL LEGISLATION NOT TO BE OPPOSED.....	F-1
EXHIBIT G OBLIGATIONS OF THE TOBACCO INSTITUTE UNDER THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT.....	G-1
EXHIBIT H DOCUMENT PRODUCTION.....	H-1
EXHIBIT I INDEX AND SEARCH FEATURES FOR DOCUMENT WEBSITE.....	I-1
EXHIBIT J TOBACCO ENFORCEMENT FUND PROTOCOL.....	J-1
EXHIBIT K MARKET CAPITALIZATION PERCENTAGES.....	K-1
EXHIBIT L MODEL CONSENT DECREE.....	L-1
EXHIBIT M LIST OF PARTICIPATING MANUFACTURERS' LAWSUITS AGAINST THE SETTLING STATES.....	M-1
EXHIBIT N LITIGATING POLITICAL SUBDIVISIONS.....	N-1
EXHIBIT O MODEL STATE FEE-PAYMENT AGREEMENT.....	O-1
EXHIBIT P NOTICES.....	P-1
EXHIBIT Q 1996 AND 1997 DATA.....	Q-1
EXHIBIT R EXCLUSION OF CERTAIN BRAND NAMES.....	R-1
EXHIBIT S DESIGNATION OF OUTSIDE COUNSEL.....	S-1
EXHIBIT T MODEL STATUTE.....	T-1
EXHIBIT U STRATEGIC CONTRIBUTION FUND PROTOCOL.....	U-1

**MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT**

This Master Settlement Agreement is made by the undersigned Settling State officials (on behalf of their respective Settling States) and the undersigned Participating Manufacturers to settle and resolve with finality all Released Claims against the Participating Manufacturers and related entities as set forth herein. This Agreement constitutes the documentation effecting this settlement with respect to each Settling State, and is intended to and shall be binding upon each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer in accordance with the terms hereof.

**I. RECITALS**

WHEREAS, more than 40 States have commenced litigation asserting various claims for monetary, equitable and injunctive relief against certain tobacco product manufacturers and others as defendants, and the States that have not filed suit can potentially assert similar claims;

WHEREAS, the Settling States that have commenced litigation have sought to obtain equitable relief and damages under state laws, including consumer protection and/or antitrust laws, in order to further the Settling States' policies regarding public health, including policies adopted to achieve a significant reduction in smoking by Youth;

WHEREAS, defendants have denied each and every one of the Settling States' allegations of unlawful conduct or wrongdoing and have asserted a number of defenses to the Settling States' claims, which defenses have been contested by the Settling States;

WHEREAS, the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers are committed to reducing underage tobacco use by discouraging such use and by preventing Youth access to Tobacco Products;

WHEREAS, the Participating Manufacturers recognize the concern of the tobacco grower community that it may be adversely affected by the potential reduction in tobacco consumption resulting from this settlement, reaffirm their commitment to work cooperatively to address concerns about the potential adverse economic impact on such community, and will, within 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, meet with the political leadership of States with grower communities to address these economic concerns;

WHEREAS, the undersigned Settling State officials believe that entry into this Agreement and uniform consent decrees with the tobacco industry is necessary in order to further the Settling States' policies designed to reduce Youth smoking, to promote the public health and to secure monetary payments to the Settling States; and

WHEREAS, the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers wish to avoid the further expense, delay, inconvenience, burden and uncertainty of continued litigation (including appeals from any verdicts), and, therefore, have agreed to settle their respective lawsuits and potential claims pursuant to terms which will achieve for the Settling States and their citizens significant funding for the advancement of public health, the implementation of important tobacco-related public health measures, including the enforcement of the mandates and restrictions related to such measures, as well as funding for a national Foundation dedicated to significantly reducing the use of Tobacco Products by Youth;

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT KNOWN THAT, in consideration of the implementation of tobacco-related health measures and the payments to be made by the Participating Manufacturers, the release and discharge of all claims by the Settling States, and such other consideration as described herein, the sufficiency of which is hereby acknowledged, the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers, acting by and through their authorized agents, memorialize and agree as follows:

**II. DEFINITIONS**

- (a) "Account" has the meaning given in the Escrow Agreement.
- (b) "Adult" means any person or persons who are not Underage.
- (c) "Adult-Only Facility" means a facility or restricted area (whether open-air or enclosed) where the operator ensures or has a reasonable basis to believe (such as by checking identification as required under state law, or by checking the identification of any person appearing to be under the age of 27) that no Underage person is present. A facility or restricted area need not be permanently restricted to Adults in order to constitute an Adult-Only Facility, provided that the operator ensures or has a reasonable basis to believe that no Underage person is present during the event or time period in question.
- (d) "Affiliate" means a person who directly or indirectly owns or controls, is owned or controlled by, or is under common ownership or control with, another person. Solely for purposes of this definition, the terms "owns," "is owned" and "ownership" mean ownership of an equity interest, or the equivalent thereof, of 10 percent or more, and the term "person" means an individual, partnership, committee, association, corporation or any other organization or group of persons.
- (e) "Agreement" means this Master Settlement Agreement, together with the exhibits hereto, as it may be amended pursuant to subsection XVIII(G).
- (f) "Allocable Share" means the percentage set forth for the State in question as listed in Exhibit A hereto, without regard to any subsequent alteration or modification of such State's percentage share agreed to by or among any States; or, solely for the purpose of calculating payments under subsection IX(c)(2) (and corresponding payments under subsection

IX(f)), the percentage disclosed for the State in question pursuant to subsection IX(c)(2)(A) prior to June 30, 1999, without regard to any subsequent alteration or modification of such State's percentage share agreed to by or among any States.

(g) "Allocated Payment" means a particular Settling State's Allocable Share of the sum of all of the payments to be made by the Original Participating Manufacturers in the year in question pursuant to subsections IX(c)(1) and IX(c)(2), as such payments have been adjusted, reduced and allocated pursuant to clause "First" through the first sentence of clause "Fifth" of subsection IX(f), but before application of the other offsets and adjustments described in clauses "Sixth" through "Thirteenth" of subsection IX(f).

(h) "Bankruptcy" means, with respect to any entity, the commencement of a case or other proceeding (whether voluntary or involuntary) seeking any of (1) liquidation, reorganization, rehabilitation, receivership, conservatorship, or other relief with respect to such entity or its debts under any bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law now or hereafter, in effect; (2) the appointment of a trustee, receiver, liquidator, custodian or similar official of such entity or any substantial part of its business or property; (3) the consent of such entity to any of the relief described in (1) above or to the appointment of any official described in (2) above in any such case or other proceeding involuntarily commenced against such entity; or (4) the entry of an order for relief as to such entity under the federal bankruptcy laws as now or hereafter in effect. Provided, however, that an involuntary case or proceeding otherwise within the foregoing definition shall not be a "Bankruptcy" if it is or was dismissed within 60 days of its commencement.

(i) "Brand Name" means a brand name (alone or in conjunction with any other word), trademark, logo, symbol, motto, selling message, recognizable pattern of colors, or any other indicia of product identification identical or similar to, or identifiable with, those used for any domestic brand of Tobacco Products. Provided, however, that the term "Brand Name" shall not include the corporate name of any Tobacco Product Manufacturer that does not alter the MSA Execution Date sell a brand of Tobacco Products in the States that includes such corporate name.

(j) "Brand Name Sponsorship" means an athletic, musical, artistic, or other social or cultural event as to which payment is made (or other consideration is provided) in exchange for use of a Brand Name or Names (1) as part of the name of the event or (2) to identify, advertise, or promote such event or an entrant, participant or team in such event in any other way. Sponsorship of a single national or multi-state series or tour (for example, NASCAR (including any number of NASCAR races)), or of one or more events within a single national or multi-state series or tour, or of an entrant, participant, or team taking part in events sanctioned by a single approving organization (e.g., NASCAR or CART), constitutes one Brand Name Sponsorship. Sponsorship of an entrant, participant, or team by a Participating Manufacturer using a Brand Name or Names in an event that is part of a series or tour that is sponsored by such Participating Manufacturer or that is part of a series or tour in which any one or more events are sponsored by such Participating Manufacturer does not constitute a separate Brand Name Sponsorship. Sponsorship of an entrant, participant, or team by a Participating Manufacturer using a Brand Name or Names in any event (or series of events) not sponsored by such Participating Manufacturer constitutes a Brand Name Sponsorship. The term "Brand Name Sponsorship" shall not include an event in an Adult-Only Facility.

(k) "Business Day" means a day which is not a Saturday or Sunday or legal holiday on which banks are authorized or required to close in New York, New York.

(l) "Cartoon" means any drawing or other depiction of an object, person, animal, creature or any similar caricature that satisfies any of the following criteria:

- (1) the use of comically exaggerated features;
- (2) the attribution of human characteristics to animals, plants or other objects, or the similar use of anthropomorphic techniques; or
- (3) the attribution of unnatural or extrahuman abilities, such as imperviousness to pain or injury, X-ray vision, tunneling at very high speeds or transdimension.

The term "Cartoon" includes "Joe Camel," but does not include any drawing or other depiction that on July 1, 1998, was in use in any State in any Participating Manufacturer's corporate logo or in any Participating Manufacturer's Tobacco Product packaging.

(m) "Cigarette" means any product that contains nicotine, is intended to be burned or heated under ordinary conditions of use, and consists of (1) any roll of tobacco wrapped in paper or in any substance not containing tobacco; or (2) tobacco, in any form, that is functional in the product, which, because of its appearance, the type of tobacco used in the filler, or its packaging and labeling, is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette; or (3) any roll of tobacco wrapped in any substance containing tobacco which, because of its appearance, the type of tobacco used in the filler, or its packaging and labeling, is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette described in clause (1) of this definition. The term "Cigarette" includes "roll-your-own" (i.e., any tobacco which, because of its appearance, type, packaging, or labeling is suitable for use and likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as tobacco for making cigarettes). Except as provided in subsections IX(z) and IX(mm), 0.0325 ounces of "roll-your-own" tobacco shall constitute one individual "Cigarette."

(n) "Claims" means any and all manner of civil (i.e., non-criminal) claims, demands, actions, suits, causes of action, damages (whenever incurred), liabilities of any nature including civil penalties and punitive damages, as well as costs, expenses and attorneys' fees (except as to the Original Participating Manufacturers' obligations under section XVII), known or unknown, suspected or unsuspected, accrued or unaccrued, whether legal, equitable, or statutory.

(o) "Consent Decree" means a state-specific consent decree as described in subsection XIII(b)(1)(B) of this Agreement.

(p) "Court" means the respective court in each Settling State to which this Agreement and the Consent Decree are presented for approval and/or entry as to that Settling State.

(q) "Esrow" has the meaning given in the Esrow Agreement.

(r) "Esrow Agent" means the esrow agent under the Esrow Agreement.

(s) "Esrow Agreement" means an esrow agreement substantially in the form of Exhibit B.

(t) "Federal Tobacco Legislation Offset" means the offset described in section X.

(u) "Final Approval" means the earlier of:

- (1) the date by which State-Specific Finality in a sufficient number of Settling States has occurred; or
- (2) June 30, 2000.

For the purposes of this subsection (u), "State-Specific Finality in a sufficient number of Settling States" means that State-Specific Finality has occurred in both:

- (A) a number of Settling States equal to at least 80% of the total number of Settling States; and
- (B) Settling States having aggregate Allocable Shares equal to at least 80% of the total aggregate Allocable Shares assigned to all Settling States.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Original Participating Manufacturers may, by unanimous written agreement, waive any requirement for Final Approval set forth in subsections (A) or (B) hereof.

(v) "Foundation" means the foundation described in section VI.

(w) "Independent Auditor" means the firm described in subsection XI(b).

(x) "Inflation Adjustment" means an adjustment in accordance with the formulas for inflation adjustments set forth in Exhibit C.

(y) "Litigating Parties Offset" means the offset described in subsection XII(b).

(z) "Market Share" means a Tobacco Product Manufacturer's respective share (expressed as a percentage) of the total number of individual Cigarettes sold in the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico during the applicable calendar year, as measured by excise taxes collected by the federal government and, in the case of sales in Puerto Rico, arbitros de egarillos collected by the Puerto Rico taxing authority. For purposes of the definition and determination of "Market Share" with respect to calculations under subsection IX(f), 0.09 ounces of "roll your own" tobacco shall constitute one individual Cigarette; for purposes of the definition and determination of "Market Share" with respect to all other calculations, 0.0325 ounces of "roll your own" tobacco shall constitute one individual Cigarette.

(aa) "MSA Execution Date" means November 23, 1998.

(bb) "NAAG" means the National Association of Attorneys General, or its successor organization that is directed by the Attorneys General to perform certain functions under this Agreement.

(cc) "Non-Participating Manufacturer" means any Tobacco Product Manufacturer that is not a Participating Manufacturer.

(dd) "Non-Settling States Reduction" means a reduction determined by multiplying the amount to which such reduction applies by the aggregate Allocable Shares of those States that are not Settling States on the date 15 days before such payment is due.

(ee) "Notice Parties" means each Participating Manufacturer, each Settling State, the Esrow Agent, the Independent Auditor and NAAG.

(ff) "NPM Adjustment" means the adjustment specified in subsection IX(d).

(gg) "NPM Adjustment Percentage" means the percentage determined pursuant to subsection IX(d).

(hh) "Original Participating Manufacturers" means the following: Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation, Lorillard Tobacco Company, Philip Morris Incorporated and R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company, and the respective successors of each of the foregoing. Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, once an entity becomes an Original Participating Manufacturer, such entity shall permanently retain the status of Original Participating Manufacturer.

(ii) "Outdoor Advertising" means (1) billboards, (2) signs and placards in arenas, stadiums, shopping malls and Video Game Arcades (whether any of the foregoing are open air or enclosed) but not including any such sign or placard located in an Adult-Only Facility, and (3) any other advertisements placed (A) outdoors, or (B) on the inside surface of a window facing outward. Provided, however, that the term "Outdoor Advertising" does not mean (1) an advertisement on the outside of a Tobacco Product manufacturing facility; (2) an individual advertisement that does not occupy an area larger than 14 square feet (and that neither is placed in such proximity to any other such advertisement so as to create a single "mosaic" type advertisement larger than 14 square feet, nor functions solely as a segment of a larger advertising unit or series), and that is placed (A) on the outside of any retail establishment that sells Tobacco Products (other than solely through a vending machine), (B) outside (but on the property of) any such establishment, or (C) on the inside surface of a window facing

outward in any such establishment; (3) an advertisement inside a retail establishment that sells Tobacco Products (other than solely through a vending machine) that is not placed on the inside surface of a window facing outward; or (4) an outdoor advertisement at the site of an event to be held at an Adult-Only Facility that is placed at such site during the period the facility or enclosed area constitutes an Adult-Only Facility, but in no event more than 14 days before the event, and that does not advertise any Tobacco Product (other than by using a Brand Name to identify the event).

(jj) "Participating Manufacturer" means a Tobacco Product Manufacturer that is or becomes a signatory to this Agreement, provided that (1) in the case of a Tobacco Product Manufacturer that is not an Original Participating Manufacturer, such Tobacco Product Manufacturer is bound by this Agreement and the Consent Decree (or, in any Settling State that does not permit amendment of the Consent Decree, a consent decree containing terms identical to those set forth in the Consent Decree) in all Settling States in which this Agreement and the Consent Decree binds Original Participating Manufacturers (provided, however, that such Tobacco Product Manufacturer need only become bound by the Consent Decree in those Settling States in which the Settling State has filed a Released Claim against it); and (2) in the case of a Tobacco Product Manufacturer that signs this Agreement after the MSA Execution Date, such Tobacco Product Manufacturer, within a reasonable period of time after signing this Agreement, makes any payments (including interest thereon at the Prime Rate) that it would have been obligated to make in the intervening period had it been a signatory as of the MSA Execution Date. "Participating Manufacturer" shall also include the successor of a Participating Manufacturer. Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, once an entity becomes a Participating Manufacturer such entity shall permanently retain the status of Participating Manufacturer. Each Participating Manufacturer shall regularly report its shipments of Cigarettes in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico to Management Science Associates, Inc. (or a successor entity as set forth in subsection (mm)). Solely for purposes of calculations pursuant to subsection 1X(d), a Tobacco Product Manufacturer that is not a signatory to this Agreement shall be deemed to be a "Participating Manufacturer" if the Original Participating Manufacturers unanimously consent in writing.

(kk) "Previously Settled States Reduction" means a reduction determined by multiplying the amount to which such reduction applies by 12.4300000%, in the case of payments due in or prior to 2007; 12.2373756%, in the case of payments due after 2007 but before 2018; and 11.0666667%, in the case of payments due in or after 2018.

(ll) "Prime Rate" shall mean the prime rate as published from time to time by the Wall Street Journal or, in the event the Wall Street Journal is no longer published or no longer publishes such rate, an equivalent successor reference rate determined by the Independent Auditor.

(mm) "Relative Market Share" means an Original Participating Manufacturer's respective share (expressed as a percentage) of the total number of individual Cigarettes shipped in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico by all the Original Participating Manufacturers during the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment at issue is due (regardless of when such payment is made), as measured by the Original Participating Manufacturers' reports of shipments of Cigarettes to Management Science Associates, Inc. (or a successor entity acceptable in both the Original Participating Manufacturers and a majority of those Attorneys General who are both the Attorney General of a Settling State and a member of the NAAG executive committee at the time in question). A Cigarette shipped by more than one Participating Manufacturer shall be deemed to have been shipped solely by the first Participating Manufacturer to do so. For purposes of the definition and determination of "Relative Market Share," 0.09 ounces of "roll your own" tobacco shall constitute one individual Cigarette.

(nn) "Released Claims" means:

(1) for past conduct, acts or omissions (including any damages incurred in the future arising from such past conduct, acts or omissions), those Claims directly or indirectly based on, arising out of or in any way related, in whole or in part, to (A) the use, sale, distribution, manufacture, development, advertising, marketing or health effects of, (B) the exposure to, or (C) research, statements, or warnings regarding, Tobacco Products (including, but not limited to, the Claims asserted in the actions identified in Exhibit D, or any comparable Claims that were, could be or could have been asserted now or in the future in those actions or in any comparable action in federal, state or local court brought by a Settling State or a Released Party (whether or not such Settling State or Released Party has brought such action)), except for claims not asserted in the actions identified in Exhibit D for outstanding liability under existing licensing (or similar) fee laws or existing tax laws (but not excepting claims for any tax liability of the Tobacco-Related Organizations or of any Released Party with respect to such Tobacco-Related Organizations, which claims are covered by the release and covenants set forth in this Agreement);

(2) for future conduct, acts or omissions, only those monetary Claims directly or indirectly based on, arising out of or in any way related to, in whole or in part, the use of or exposure to Tobacco Products manufactured in the ordinary course of business, including without limitation any future Claims for reimbursement of health care costs allegedly associated with the use of or exposure to Tobacco Products.

(oo) "Released Parties" means all Participating Manufacturers, their past, present and future Affiliates, and the respective divisions, officers, directors, employees, representatives, insurers, lenders, underwriters, Tobacco-Related Organizations, trade associations, suppliers, agents, auditors, advertising agencies, public relations entities, attorneys, retailers and distributors of any Participating Manufacturer or of any such Affiliate (and the predecessors, heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns of each of the foregoing). Provided, however, that "Released Parties" does not include any person or entity (including, but not limited to, an Affiliate) that is itself a Non-Participating Manufacturer at any time after the MSA Execution Date, unless such person or entity becomes a Participating Manufacturer.

(pp) "Released Parties" means each Settling State and any of its past, present and future agents, officials acting in their official capacities, legal representatives, agencies, departments, commissions and divisions; and also means, to the full extent of the power of the signatories hereto to release past, present and future claims, the following: (1) any Settling State's subdivisions (political or otherwise, including, but not limited to, municipalities, counties, parishes, villages, unincorporated districts and hospital districts), public entities, public instrumentalities and public educational institutions; and (2) persons or entities acting in a purely private, sovereign, quasi-sovereign, private attorney general, qui tam, taxpayer, or any other capacity, whether or not any of them participate in this settlement. (A) to the extent that any such person or entity is seeking relief on behalf of or generally applicable to the general public in such Settling State or the people of the State, as opposed solely to private or individual relief for separate and distinct injuries, or (B) to the extent that any such entity (as opposed to an individual) is seeking recovery of health-care expenses (other than premium or capitation payments for the benefit of present or retired state employees) paid or reimbursed, directly or indirectly, by a Settling State.

(qq) "Settling State" means any State that signs this Agreement on or before the MSA Execution Date. Provided, however, that the term "Settling State" shall not include (1) the States of Mississippi, Florida, Texas and Minnesota; and (2) any State as to which this Agreement has been terminated.

(rr) "State" means any state of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, and the Northern Marianas.

(ss) "State-Specific Finality" means, with respect to the Settling State in question:

(1) this Agreement and the Consent Decree have been approved and entered by the Court as to all Original Participating Manufacturers, or, in the event of an appeal from or review of a decision of the Court to withhold its approval and entry of this Agreement and the Consent Decree, by the court hearing such appeal or conducting such review;

(2) entry by the Court has been made of an order dismissing with prejudice all claims against Released Parties in the action as provided herein; and

(3) the time for appeal or to seek review of or permission to appeal ("Appeal") from the approval and entry as described in subsection (1) hereof and entry of such order described in subsection (2) hereof has expired; or, in the event of an Appeal from such approval and entry, the Appeal has been dismissed, or the approval and entry described in (1) hereof and the order described in subsection (2) hereof have been affirmed in all material respects by the court of last resort to which such Appeal has been taken and such dismissal or affirmation has become no longer subject to further Appeal (including, without limitation, review by the United States Supreme Court).

(tt) "Subsequent Participating Manufacturer" means a Tobacco Product Manufacturer (other than an Original Participating Manufacturer) that: (1) is a Participating Manufacturer, and (2) is a signatory to this Agreement, regardless of when such Tobacco Product Manufacturer became a signatory to this Agreement. "Subsequent Participating Manufacturer" shall also include the successors of a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer. Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, once an entity becomes a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer such entity shall permanently retain the status of Subsequent Participating Manufacturer, unless it agrees to assume the obligations of an Original Participating Manufacturer as provided in subsection XVIII(c).

(uu) "Tobacco Product Manufacturer" means an entity that after the MSA Execution Date directly (and not exclusively through any Affiliate):

(1) manufactures Cigarettes anywhere that such manufacturer intends to be sold in the States, including Cigarettes intended to be sold in the States through an importer (except where such importer is an Original Participating Manufacturer that will be responsible for the payments under this Agreement with respect to such Cigarettes as a result of the provisions of subsections 1I(fmm) and that pays the taxes specified in subsection 1I(2) on such Cigarettes, and provided that the manufacturer of such Cigarettes does not market or advertise such Cigarettes in the States);

(2) is the first purchaser anywhere for resale in the States of Cigarettes manufactured anywhere that the manufacturer does not intend to be sold in the States; or

(3) becomes a successor of an entity described in subsection (1) or (2) above.

The term "Tobacco Product Manufacturer" shall not include an Affiliate of a Tobacco Product Manufacturer unless such Affiliate itself falls within any of subsections (1) - (3) above.

(vv) "Tobacco Product" means Cigarettes and smokeless tobacco products.

(ww) "Tobacco-Related Organizations" means the Council for Tobacco Research-U.S.A., Inc., The Tobacco Institute, Inc. ("TI"), and the Center for Indoor Air Research, Inc. ("CIAR") and the successors, if any, of TI or CIAR.

(xx) "Transit Advertisements" means advertising on or within private or public vehicles and all advertisements placed at, on or within any bus stop, taxi stand, transportation waiting area, train station, airport or any similar location. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the term "Transit Advertisements" does not include (1) any advertisement placed in, on or outside the premises of any retail establishment that sells Tobacco Products (other than solely through a vending machine) (except if such individual advertisement (A) occupies an area larger than 14 square feet; (B) is placed in such proximity to any other such advertisement so as to create a single "mosaic"-type advertisement larger than 14 square feet; or (C) functions solely as a segment of a larger advertising unit or series); or (2) advertising at the site of an event to be held at an Adult-Only Facility that is placed at such site during the period the facility or enclosed area constitutes an Adult-Only Facility, but in no

event more than 14 days before the event, and that does not advertise any Tobacco Product (other than by using a Brand Name to identify the event).

(yy) "Underage" means younger than the minimum age at which it is legal to purchase or possess (whichever minimum age is older) Cigarettes in the applicable Settling State.

(zz) "Video Game Arcade" means an entertainment establishment primarily consisting of video games (other than video games intended primarily for use by persons 18 years of age or older) and/or pinball machines.

(aaa) "Volume Adjustment" means an upward or downward adjustment in accordance with the formula for volume adjustments set forth in Exhibit E.

(bbb) "Youth" means any person or persons under 18 years of age.

### III. PERMANENT RELIEF

(a) **Prohibition on Youth Targeting.** No Participating Manufacturer may take any action, directly or indirectly, to target Youth within any Settling State in the advertising, promotion or marketing of Tobacco Products, or take any action the primary purpose of which is to initiate, maintain or increase the incidence of Youth smoking within any Settling State.

(b) **Ban on Use of Cartoons.** Beginning 180 days after the MSA Execution Date, no Participating Manufacturer may use or cause to be used any Cartoon in the advertising, promoting, packaging or labeling of Tobacco Products.

(c) **Limitation of Tobacco Brand Name Sponsorships.**

(1) **Prohibited Sponsorships.** After the MSA Execution Date, no Participating Manufacturer may engage in any Brand Name Sponsorship in any State consisting of:

- (A) concerns, or
- (B) events in which any paid participants or contestants are Youth; or
- (C) events in which the intended audience is comprised of a significant percentage of Youth; or
- (D) any athletic event between opposing teams in any football, basketball, baseball, soccer or hockey league.

### (2) Limited Sponsorships.

(A) No Participating Manufacturer may engage in more than one Brand Name Sponsorship in the States in any twelve-month period (such period measured from the date of the initial sponsored event).

(B) Provided, however, that

(i) nothing contained in subsection 2(A) above shall require a Participating Manufacturer to breach or terminate any sponsorship contract in existence as of August 1, 1998 (until the earlier of (x) the current term of any existing contract, without regard to any renewal or option that may be exercised by such Participating Manufacturer or (y) three years after the MSA Execution Date); and

(ii) notwithstanding subsection 1(A) above, Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation may sponsor either the GFC country music festival or the Kool jazz festival as its one annual Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsection 2(A) as well as one Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsection 2(B)(i).

(3) **Related Sponsorship Restrictions.** With respect to any Brand Name Sponsorship permitted under this subsection (c):

(A) advertising of the Brand Name Sponsorship event shall not advertise any Tobacco Product (other than by using the Brand Name to identify such Brand Name Sponsorship event);

(B) no Participating Manufacturer may refer to a Brand Name Sponsorship event or to a celebrity or other person in such an event in its advertising of a Tobacco Product;

(C) nothing contained in the provisions of subsection III(e) of this Agreement shall apply to actions taken by any Participating Manufacturer in connection with a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to the provisions of subsections 2(A) and 2(B)(i); the Brand Name Sponsorship permitted by subsection 2(B)(ii) shall be subject to the restrictions of subsection III(e) except that such restrictions shall not prohibit use of the Brand Name to identify the Brand Name Sponsorship;

(D) nothing contained in the provisions of subsections III(f) and III(g) shall apply to apparel or other merchandise: (i) marketed, distributed, offered, sold, or licensed at the site of a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsections 2(A) or 2(B)(i) by the person to which the relevant Participating Manufacturer has provided payment in exchange for the use of the relevant Brand Name in the Brand Name Sponsorship or a third-party that does not receive payment from the relevant Participating Manufacturer (or any Affiliate of such Participating Manufacturer) in connection with the marketing, distribution, offer, sale or license of such apparel or other merchandise; or (ii) used at the site of a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsection 2(A) or 2(B)(ii) (during such event) that are not distributed (by sale or otherwise) to any member of the general public; and

(E) nothing contained in the provisions of subsection III(d) shall: (i) apply to the use of a Brand Name on a vehicle used in a Brand Name Sponsorship; or (ii) apply to Outdoor Advertising advertising the Brand Name

Sponsorship, to the extent that such Outdoor Advertising is placed at the site of a Brand Name Sponsorship no more than 90 days before the start of the initial sponsored event, is removed within 10 days after the end of the last sponsored event, and is not prohibited by subsection 3(A) above.

(4) **Corporate Name Sponsorships.** Nothing in this subsection (c) shall prevent a Participating Manufacturer from sponsoring or causing to be sponsored any athletic, musical, artistic, or other social or cultural event, or any entrant, participant or team in such event (or series of events) in the name of the corporation which manufactures Tobacco Products, provided that the corporate name does not include any Brand Name of domestic Tobacco Products.

(5) **Naming Rights Prohibition.** No Participating Manufacturer may enter into any agreement for the naming rights of any stadium or arena located within a Settling State using a Brand Name, and shall not otherwise cause a stadium or arena located within a Settling State to be named with a Brand Name.

(6) **Prohibition on Sponsoring Teams and Leagues.** No Participating Manufacturer may enter into any agreement pursuant to which payment is made (or other consideration is provided) by such Participating Manufacturer to any football, basketball, baseball, soccer or hockey league (or any team involved in any such league) in exchange for use of a Brand Name.

(d) **Elimination of Outdoor Advertising and Transit Advertisements.** Each Participating Manufacturer shall discontinue Outdoor Advertising and Transit Advertisements advertising Tobacco Products within the Settling States as set forth herein.

(1) **Removal.** Except as otherwise provided in this section, each Participating Manufacturer shall remove from within the Settling States within 150 days after the MSA Execution Date all of its (A) billboards (to the extent that such billboards constitute Outdoor Advertising advertising Tobacco Products); (B) signs and placards (to the extent that such signs and placards constitute Outdoor Advertising advertising Tobacco Products in arenas, stadiums, shopping malls and Video Game Arcades; and (C) Transit Advertisements advertising Tobacco Products.

(2) **Prohibition on New Outdoor Advertising and Transit Advertisements.** No Participating Manufacturer may, after the MSA Execution Date, place or cause to be placed any new Outdoor Advertising advertising Tobacco Products or new Transit Advertisements advertising Tobacco Products within any Settling State.

(3) **Alternative Advertising.** With respect to those billboards required to be removed under subsection (1) that are leased (as opposed to owned) by any Participating Manufacturer, the Participating Manufacturer will allow the Agency General of the Settling State within which such billboards are located to substitute, at the Settling State's option, alternative advertising intended to discourage the use of Tobacco Products by Youth and their exposure to second-hand smoke for the remaining term of the applicable contract (without regard to any renewal or option term that may be exercised by such Participating Manufacturer). The Participating Manufacturer will bear the cost of the lease through the end of such remaining term. Any other costs associated with such alternative advertising will be borne by the Settling State.

(4) **Ban on Agreements Inhibiting Anti-Tobacco Advertising.** Each Participating Manufacturer agrees that it will not enter into any agreement that prohibits a third party from selling, purchasing or displaying advertising discouraging the use of Tobacco Products or exposure to second-hand smoke. In the event and to the extent that any Participating Manufacturer has entered into an agreement containing any such prohibition, such Participating Manufacturer agrees to waive such prohibition in such agreement.

(5) **Designation of Contact Person.** Each Participating Manufacturer that has Outdoor Advertising or Transit Advertisements advertising Tobacco Products within a Settling State shall, within 10 days after the MSA Execution Date, provide the Attorney General of such Settling State with the name of a contact person to whom the Settling State may direct inquiries during the time such Outdoor Advertising and Transit Advertisements are being eliminated, and from whom the Settling State may obtain periodic reports as to the progress of their elimination.

(6) **Adult-Only Facilities.** To the extent that any advertisement advertising Tobacco Products located within an Adult-Only Facility constitutes Outdoor Advertising or a Transit Advertisement, this subsection (d) shall not apply to such advertisement, provided such advertisement is not visible to persons outside such Adult-Only Facility.

(e) **Prohibition on Payments Related to Tobacco Products and Media.** No Participating Manufacturer may, beginning 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, make, or cause to be made, any payment or other consideration to any other person or entity to use, display, make reference to or use as a prop any Tobacco Product, Tobacco Product package, advertisement for a Tobacco Product, or any other item bearing a Brand Name in any motion picture, television show, theatrical production or other live performance, live or recorded performance of music, commercial film or video, or video game ("Media"); provided, however, that the foregoing prohibition shall not apply to (1) Media where the audience or viewers are within an Adult-Only Facility (provided such Media are not visible to persons outside such Adult-Only Facility); (2) Media not intended for distribution or display to the public; or (3) instructional Media concerning non-conventional cigarettes viewed only by or provided only to smokers who are Adults.

(f) **Ban on Tobacco Brand Name Merchandise.** Beginning July 1, 1999, no Participating Manufacturer may, within any Settling State, market, distribute, offer, sell, license or cause to be marketed, distributed, offered, sold or licensed (including, without limitation, by catalogue or direct mail), any apparel or other merchandise (other than Tobacco Products, items the sole function of which is to advertise Tobacco Products or written or electronic publications) which bears a Brand Name. Provided, however, that nothing in this subsection shall (1) require any Participating Manufacturer to breach or



terminate any licensing agreement or other contract in existence as of June 20, 1997 (this exception shall not apply beyond the current term of any existing contract, without regard to any renewal or option term that may be exercised by such Participating Manufacturer); (2) prohibit the distribution in any Participating Manufacturer's employee who is not Underage of any item described above that is intended for the personal use of such an employee; (3) require any Participating Manufacturer to retrieve, collect or otherwise recover any item that prior to the MSA Execution Date was marketed, distributed, offered, sold, licensed, or caused to be marketed, distributed, offered, sold or licensed by such Participating Manufacturer; (4) apply to coupons or other items used by Adults solely in connection with the purchase of Tobacco Products; or (5) apply in apparel or other merchandise used within an Adult-Only Facility that is not distributed (by sale or otherwise) to any member of the general public.

(g) Ban on Youth Access to Free Samples. After the MSA Execution Date, no Participating Manufacturer may, within any Settling State, distribute or cause to be distributed any free samples of Tobacco Products except in an Adult-Only Facility. For purposes of this Agreement, a "free sample" does not include a Tobacco Product that is provided to an Adult in connection with (1) the purchase, exchange or redemption for proof of purchase of any Tobacco Products (including, but not limited to, a free offer in connection with the purchase of Tobacco Products, such as a "two-for-one" offer), or (2) the conducting of consumer testing or evaluation of Tobacco Products with persons who certify that they are Adults.

(h) Ban on Gifts to Underage Persons Based on Proofs of Purchase. Beginning one year after the MSA Execution Date, no Participating Manufacturer may provide or cause to be provided to any person without sufficient proof that such person is an Adult any item in exchange for the purchase of Tobacco Products, or the furnishing of credits, proofs-of-purchase, or coupons with respect to such a purchase. For purposes of the preceding sentence only, (1) a driver's license or other government-issued identification (or legible photocopy thereof), the validity of which is certified by the person to whom the item is provided, shall by itself be deemed to be a sufficient form of proof of age; and (2) in the case of items provided (or to be redeemed) at retail establishments, a Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled to rely on verification of proof of age by the retailer, where such retailer is required to obtain verification under applicable federal, state or local law.

(i) Limitation on Third-Party Use of Brand Names. After the MSA Execution Date, no Participating Manufacturer may license or otherwise expressly authorize any third party to use or advertise within any Settling State any Brand Name in a manner prohibited by this Agreement if done by such Participating Manufacturer itself. Each Participating Manufacturer shall, within 10 days after the MSA Execution Date, designate a person (and provide written notice to NAAAG of such designation) to whom the Attorney General of any Settling State may provide written notice of any such third-party activity that would be prohibited by this Agreement if done by such Participating Manufacturer itself. Following such written notice, the Participating Manufacturer will promptly take commercially reasonable steps against any such non-de minimis third-party activity. Provided, however, that nothing in this subsection shall require any Participating Manufacturer to (1) breach or terminate any licensing agreement or other contract in existence as of July 1, 1998 (this exception shall not apply beyond the current term of any existing contract, without regard to any renewal or option term that may be exercised by such Participating Manufacturer); or (2) retrieve, collect or otherwise recover any item that prior to the MSA Execution Date was marketed, distributed, offered, sold, licensed or caused to be marketed, distributed, offered, sold or licensed by such Participating Manufacturer.

(j) Ban on Non-Tobacco Brand Names. No Participating Manufacturer may, pursuant to any agreement requiring the payment of money or other valuable consideration, use or cause to be used as a brand name of any Tobacco Product any nationally recognized or nationally established brand name or trade name of any non-tobacco item or service or any nationally recognized or nationally established sports team, entertainment group or individual celebrity. Provided, however, that the preceding sentence shall not apply to any Tobacco Product brand name in existence as of July 1, 1998. For the purposes of this subsection, the term "other valuable consideration" shall not include an agreement between two entities who enter into such agreement for the sole purpose of avoiding infringement claims.

(k) Minimum Pack Size of Twenty Cigarettes. No Participating Manufacturer may, beginning 60 days after the MSA Execution Date and through and including December 31, 2001, manufacture or cause to be manufactured for sale in any Settling State any pack or other container of Cigarettes containing fewer than 20 Cigarettes (or, in the case of roll-your-own tobacco, any package of roll-your-own tobacco containing less than 0.60 ounces of tobacco). No Participating Manufacturer may, beginning 150 days after the MSA Execution Date and through and including December 31, 2001, sell or distribute in any Settling State any pack or other container of Cigarettes containing fewer than 20 Cigarettes (or, in the case of roll-your-own tobacco, any package of roll-your-own tobacco containing less than 0.60 ounces of tobacco). Each Participating Manufacturer further agrees that following the MSA Execution Date it shall not oppose, or cause to be opposed (including through any third party or Affiliate), the passage by any Settling State of any legislative proposal or administrative rule applicable to all Tobacco Product Manufacturers and all retailers of Tobacco Products prohibiting the manufacture and sale of any pack or other container of Cigarettes containing fewer than 20 Cigarettes (or, in the case of roll-your-own tobacco, any package of roll-your-own tobacco containing less than 0.60 ounces of tobacco).

(l) Corporate Culture Commitments Related to Youth Access and Consumption. Beginning 180 days after the MSA Execution Date each Participating Manufacturer shall:

promulgate or reaffirm corporate principles that express and explain its commitment to comply with the provisions of this Agreement and the reduction of use of Tobacco Products by Youth, and clearly and regularly communicate to its employees and customers its commitment to assist in the reduction of Youth use of Tobacco Products;

designate an executive level manager (and provide written notice to NAAAG of such designation) to identify methods to reduce Youth access to, and the incidence of Youth consumption of, Tobacco Products; and encourage its employees to identify additional methods to reduce Youth access to, and the incidence of Youth consumption of, Tobacco Products.

(m) Limitations on Lobbying. Following State-Specific Finality in a Settling State:

(1) No Participating Manufacturer may oppose, or cause to be opposed (including through any third party or Affiliate), the passage by such Settling State (or any political subdivision thereof) of those state or local legislative proposals or administrative rules described in Exhibit F hereto intended by their terms to reduce Youth access to, and the incidence of Youth consumption of, Tobacco Products. Provided, however, that the foregoing does not prohibit any Participating Manufacturer from (A) challenging enforcement of, or suing for declaratory or injunctive relief with respect to, any such legislation or rule on any grounds; (B) continuing, after State-Specific Finality in such Settling State, to oppose or cause to be opposed, the passage during the legislative session in which State-Specific Finality in such Settling State occurs of any specific state or local legislative proposals or administrative rules introduced prior to the time of State-Specific Finality in such Settling State; (C) opposing, or causing to be opposed, any excise tax or income tax provision or user fee or other payments relating to Tobacco Products or Tobacco Product Manufacturers; or (D) opposing, or causing to be opposed, any state or local legislative proposal or administrative rule that also includes measures other than those described in Exhibit F.

(2) Each Participating Manufacturer shall require all of its officers and employees engaged in lobbying activities in such Settling State after State-Specific Finality, contract lobbyists engaged in lobbying activities in such Settling State after State-Specific Finality on behalf of such Participating Manufacturer ("lobbyist" and "lobbying activities" having the meaning such terms have under the law of the Settling State in question) to certify in writing to the Participating Manufacturer that they:

(A) will not support or oppose any state, local or federal legislation, or seek or oppose any governmental action, on behalf of the Participating Manufacturer without the Participating Manufacturer's express authorization (except where such advance express authorization is not reasonably practicable);

(B) are aware of and will fully comply with this Agreement and all laws and regulations applicable to their lobbying activities, including, without limitation, those related to disclosure of financial contributions. Provided, however, that if the Settling State in question has in existence no laws or regulations relating to disclosure of financial contributions regarding lobbying activities, then each Participating Manufacturer shall, upon request of the Attorney General of such Settling State, disclose to such Attorney General any payment to a lobbyist that the Participating Manufacturer knows or has reason to know will be used to influence legislative or administrative actions of the state or local government relating to Tobacco Products or their use. Disclosures made pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be filed in writing with the Office of the Attorney General on the first day of February and the first day of August of each year for any and all payments made during the six month period ending on the last day of the preceding December and June, respectively, with the following information: (1) the name, address, telephone number and e-mail address (if any) of the recipient; (2) the amount of each payment; and (3) the aggregate amount of all payments described in this subsection (2)(B) to the recipient in the calendar year; and

(C) have reviewed and will fully abide by the Participating Manufacturer's corporate principles promulgated pursuant to this Agreement when acting on behalf of the Participating Manufacturer.

(3) No Participating Manufacturer may support or cause to be supported (including through any third party or Affiliate) in Congress or any other forum legislation or rules that would preempt, override, abrogate or diminish such Settling State's rights or recoveries under this Agreement. Except as specifically provided in this Agreement, nothing herein shall be deemed to restrain any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer from advocating terms of any national settlement or taking any other positions on issues relating to tobacco.

(4) Restriction on Advocacy Concerning Settlement Proceeds. After the MSA Execution Date, no Participating Manufacturer may support or cause to be supported (including through any third party or Affiliate) the diversion of any proceeds of this settlement to any program or use that is neither tobacco-related nor health-related in connection with the approval of this Agreement or in any subsequent legislative appropriation of settlement proceeds.

(5) Dissolution of The Tobacco Institute, Inc., the Council for Tobacco Research, U.S.A., Inc. and the Center for Indoor Air Research, Inc.

(1) The Council for Tobacco Research-U.S.A., Inc. ("CTR") (a not-for-profit corporation formed under the laws of the State of New York) shall, pursuant to the plan of dissolution previously negotiated and agreed to between the Attorney General of the State of New York and CTR, cease all operations and be dissolved in accordance with the laws of the State of New York (and with the preservation of all applicable privileges held by any member company of CTR).

(2) The Tobacco Institute, Inc. ("TI") (a not-for-profit corporation formed under the laws of the State of New York) shall, pursuant to a plan of dissolution to be negotiated by the Attorney General of the State of New York and the Original Participating Manufacturers in accordance with Exhibit G hereto, cease all operations, and be dissolved in

accordance with the laws of the State of New York and under the authority of the Attorney General of the State of New York (and with the preservation of all applicable privileges held by any member company of TI).

(3) Within 45 days after Final Approval, the Center for Indoor Air Research, Inc. ("CIAR") shall cease all operations and be dissolved in a manner consistent with applicable law and with the preservation of all applicable privileges (including, without limitation, privileges held by any member company of CIAR).

(4) The Participating Manufacturers shall direct the Tobacco-Related Organizations to preserve all records that relate in any way to issues raised in smoking-related health litigation.

(5) The Participating Manufacturers may not reconstitute CTR or its function in any form.

(6) The Participating Manufacturers represent that they have the authority to and will effectuate subsections (1) through (5) herein.

**(iv) Regulation and Oversight of New Tobacco-Related Trade Associations.**

(1) A Participating Manufacturer may form or participate in new tobacco-related trade associations (subject to all applicable laws), provided such associations agree in writing not to act in any manner contrary to any provision of this Agreement. Each Participating Manufacturer agrees that if any new tobacco-related trade association fails to so agree, such Participating Manufacturer will not participate in or support such association.

(2) Any tobacco-related trade association that is formed or controlled by one or more of the Participating Manufacturers after the MSA Execution Date shall adopt by-law governing the association's procedures and the activities of its members, board, employees, agents and other representatives with respect to the tobacco-related trade association. Such by-laws shall include, among other things, provisions that:

(A) each officer of the association shall be appointed by the board of the association, shall be an employee of such association, and during such officer's term shall not be a director of or employed by any member of the association or by an Affiliate of any member of the association;

(B) legal counsel for the association shall be independent, and neither counsel nor any member or employee of counsel's law firm shall serve as legal counsel to any member of the association or to a manufacturer of Tobacco Products that is an Affiliate of any member of the association during the time that it is serving as legal counsel to the association; and

(C) minutes describing the substance of the meetings of the board of directors of the association shall be prepared and shall be maintained by the association for a period of at least five years following their preparation.

(3) Without limitation on whatever other rights to access they may be permitted by law, for a period of seven years from the date any new tobacco-related trade association is formed by any of the Participating Manufacturers after the MSA Execution Date, the antitrust authorities of any Settling State may, for the purpose of enforcing this Agreement, upon reasonable cause to believe that a violation of this Agreement has occurred, and upon reasonable prior written notice (but in no event less than 10 Business Days):

(A) have access during regular office hours to inspect and copy all relevant non-privileged, non-work-product books, records, meeting agenda and minutes, and other documents (whether in hard copy form or stored electronically) of such association insofar as they pertain to such believed violation; and

(B) interview the association's directors, officers and employees (who shall be entitled to have counsel present) with respect to relevant, non-privileged, non-work-product matters pertaining to such believed violation.

Documents and information provided to Settling State antitrust authorities shall be kept confidential by and among such authorities, and shall be utilized only by the Settling States and only for the purpose of enforcing this Agreement or the criminal law. The inspection and discovery rights provided in the Settling States pursuant to this subsection shall be confined so as to avoid repetitive and excessive inspection and discovery.

(4) **Prohibition on Arrangements to Suppress Research.** No Participating Manufacturer may enter into any contract, combination or conspiracy with any other Tobacco Product Manufacturer that has the purpose or effect of: (1) limiting competition in the production or distribution of information about health hazards or other consequences of the use of their products; (2) limiting or suppressing research into smoking and health; or (3) limiting or suppressing research into the marketing or development of new products. Provided, however, that nothing in this subsection shall be deemed to (1) require any Participating Manufacturer to produce, distribute or otherwise disclose any information that is subject to (1) a privilege or protection; (2) preclude any Participating Manufacturer from entering into any joint defense or joint legal interest agreement or arrangement (whether or not in writing), or from asserting any privilege pursuant thereto; or (3) impose any affirmative obligation on any Participating Manufacturer to conduct any research.

(5) **Prohibition on Material Misrepresentations.** No Participating Manufacturer may make any material misrepresentation of fact regarding the health consequences of using any Tobacco Product, including any tobacco additives, filters, paper or other ingredients. Nothing in this subsection shall limit the exercise of any First Amendment right or the assertion of any defense or position in any judicial, legislative or regulatory forum.

**IV. PUBLIC ACCESS TO DOCUMENTS**

(a) After the MSA Execution Date, the Original Participating Manufacturers and the Tobacco-Related Organizations will support an application for the dissolution of any protective orders entered in each Settling State's lawsuit identified in Exhibit D with respect only to those documents, indices and privilege logs that have been produced as of the MSA Execution Date to such Settling State and (1) as to which defendants have made no claim, or have withdrawn any claim, of attorney-client privilege, attorney work-product protection, common interest/joint defense privilege (collectively, "privilege"), trade-secret protection, or confidential or proprietary business information; and (2) that are not inappropriate for public disclosure because of personal privacy interests or contractual rights of third parties that may not be abrogated by the Original Participating Manufacturers or the Tobacco-Related Organizations.

(b) Notwithstanding State-Specific Finality, if any order, ruling or recommendation was issued prior to September 17, 1998 rejecting a claim of privilege or trade-secret protection with respect to any document or documents in a lawsuit identified in Exhibit D, the Settling State in which such order, ruling or recommendation was made may, no later than 45 days after the occurrence of the State-Specific Finality in such Settling State, seek public disclosure of such document or documents by application to the court that issued such order, ruling or recommendation and the court shall retain jurisdiction for such purposes. The Original Participating Manufacturers and Tobacco-Related Organizations do not consent to, and may object to, appeal from or otherwise oppose any such application for disclosure. The Original Participating Manufacturers and Tobacco-Related Organizations will not assert that the settlement of such lawsuit has divested the court of jurisdiction or that such Settling State lacks standing to seek public disclosure on any applicable ground.

(c) The Original Participating Manufacturers will maintain at their expense their Internet document websites accessible through "TobaccoResolution.com" or a similar website until June 30, 2010. The Original Participating Manufacturers will maintain the documents that currently appear on their respective websites and will add additional documents to their websites as provided in this section IV.

(d) Within 180 days after the MSA Execution Date, each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will place on its website copies of the following documents, except as provided in subsections IV(e) and IV(f) below:

(1) all documents produced by such Original Participating Manufacturer or Tobacco-Related Organization as of the MSA Execution Date in any action identified in Exhibit D or any action identified in section 2 of Exhibit H that was filed by an Attorney General. Among these documents, each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will give the highest priority to (A) the documents that were filed by the State of Washington as trial exhibits in the *State of Washington v. American Tobacco Co., et al.*, No. 96-2-13036-8 SEA (Wash. Super. Ct., County of King); and (B) the documents as to which such Original Participating Manufacturer or Tobacco-Related Organization withdrew any claim of privilege as a result of the re-examination of privilege claims pursuant to court order in *State of Oklahoma v. E.L. Reynolds Tobacco Company, et al.*, CI-96-2499-L (Dist. Ct., Cleveland County);

(2) all documents that can be identified as having been produced by, and copies of transcripts of depositions given by, such Original Participating Manufacturer or Tobacco-Related Organization as of the MSA Execution Date in the litigation matters specified in section I of Exhibit H; and

(3) all documents produced by such Original Participating Manufacturer or Tobacco-Related Organization as of the MSA Execution Date and listed by the plaintiffs as trial exhibits in the litigation matters specified in section 2 of Exhibit H.

(e) Unless copies of such documents are already on its website, each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will place on its website copies of documents produced in any production of documents that takes place on or after the date 30 days before the MSA Execution Date in any federal or state court civil action concerning smoking and health. Copies of any documents required to be placed on a website pursuant to this subsection will be placed on such website within the later of 45 days after the MSA Execution Date or within 45 days after the production of such documents in any federal or state court action concerning smoking and health. This obligation will continue until June 30, 2010. In placing such newly produced documents on its website, each Original Participating Manufacturer or Tobacco-Related Organization will identify, as part of its index to be created pursuant to subsection IV(b), the action in which it produced such documents and the date on which such documents were added to its website.

(f) Nothing in this section IV shall require any Original Participating Manufacturer or Tobacco-Related Organization to place on its website or otherwise disclose documents that: (1) it continues to claim to be privileged, a trade secret, confidential or proprietary business information, or that contain other information not appropriate for public disclosure because of personal privacy interests or contractual rights of third parties; or (2) continue to be subject to any protective order, sealing order or other order or ruling that prevents or limits a litigant from disclosing such documents.

(g) Oversized or multimedia records will not be required to be placed on the Website, but each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will make any such records available in the public by placing copies of them in the document depository established in *The State of Minnesota, et al. v. Philip Morris Incorporated, et al.*, CI-94-8365 (County of Ramsey, District Court, 2d Judicial Cir.).

(b) Each Original Participating Manufacturer will establish an index and other features to improve searchable access to the document images on its website, as set forth in Exhibit I.

(i) Within 90 days after the MSA Execution Date, the Original Participating Manufacturers will furnish NAAG with a project plan for completing the Original Participating Manufacturers' obligations under subsection IV(b) with respect to documents currently on their websites and documents being placed on their websites pursuant to subsection IV(d). NAAG may engage a computer consultant at the Original Participating Manufacturers' expense for a period not to exceed two years and at a cost not to exceed \$100,000. NAAG's computer consultant may review such plan and make recommendations consistent with this Agreement. In addition, within 120 days after the completion of the Original Participating Manufacturers' obligations under subsection IV(d), NAAG's computer consultant may make final recommendations with respect to the websites consistent with this Agreement. In preparing these recommendations, NAAG's computer consultant may seek input from Settling State officials, public health organizations and other users of the websites.

(j) The expenses incurred pursuant to subsection IV(i), and the expenses related to documents of the Tobacco-Related Organizations, will be severally shared among the Original Participating Manufacturers allocated among them according to their Relative Market Shares. All other expenses incurred under this section will be borne by the Original Participating Manufacturer that incurs such expense.

#### V. TOBACCO CONTROL AND UNDERAGE USE LAWS

Each Participating Manufacturer agrees that following State-Specific Finality in a Settling State it will not initiate, or cause to be initiated, a facial challenge against the enforceability or constitutionality of such Settling State's (or such Settling State's political subdivisions') statutes, ordinances and administrative rules relating to tobacco control enacted prior to June 1, 1998 (other than a statute, ordinance or rule challenged in any lawsuit filed in Exhibit M).

#### VI. ESTABLISHMENT OF A NATIONAL FOUNDATION

(a) **Foundation Purposes.** The Settling States believe that a comprehensive, coordinated program of public education and study is important to further the remedial goals of this Agreement. Accordingly, as part of the settlement of claims described herein, the payments specified in subsections V(f)(b), V(f)(c), and IX(c) shall be made to a charitable foundation, trust or similar organization (the "Foundation") and/or to a program to be operated within the Foundation (the "National Public Education Fund"). The purposes of the Foundation will be to support (1) the study of and programs to reduce Youth Tobacco Product usage and Youth substance abuse in the States, and (2) the study of and educational programs to prevent diseases associated with the use of Tobacco Products in the States.

(b) **Base Foundation Payments.** On March 31, 1999, and on March 31 of each subsequent year for a period of nine years thereafter, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay its Relative Market Share of \$25,000,000 to fund the Foundation. The payments to be made by each of the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (b) shall be subject to no adjustments, reductions or offsets, and shall be paid to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection V(f)(b) Account), who shall disburse such payments to the Foundation only upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in at least one Settling State.

#### (c) National Public Education Fund Payments

(1) Each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay its Relative Market Share of the following base amounts on the following dates to the Escrow Agent for the benefit of the Foundation's National Public Education Fund to be used for the purposes and as described in subsections V(f)(1), V(f)(g) and V(f)(h) below: \$250,000,000 on March 31, 1999; \$300,000,000 on March 31, 2000; \$300,000,000 on March 31, 2001; \$300,000,000 on March 31, 2002; and \$300,000,000 on March 31, 2003, as such amounts are modified in accordance with this subsection (c). The payment due on March 31, 1999 pursuant to this subsection (c)(1) is to be credited to the Subsection V(c) Account (First). The payments due on or after March 31, 2000 pursuant to this subsection V(c)(1) are to be credited to the Subsection V(c) Account (Subsequent).

(2) The payments to be made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (c), other than the payment due on March 31, 1999, shall be subject to the Inflation Adjustment, the Volume Adjustment and the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection X(f).

(3) The payment made pursuant to this subsection (c) on March 31, 1999 shall be disbursed by the Escrow Agent to the Foundation only upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in at least one Settling State. Each remaining payment pursuant to this subsection (c) shall be disbursed by the Escrow Agent to the Foundation only when State-Specific Finality has occurred in Settling States having aggregate Allocable Shares equal to at least 80% of the total aggregate Allocable Shares assigned to all States that were Settling States as of the MSA Execution Date.

(4) In addition to the payments made pursuant to this subsection (c), the National Public Education Fund will be funded (A) in accordance with subsection IX(c), and (B) through monies contributed by other entities directly to the Foundation and designated for the National Public Education Fund ("National Public Education Fund Contributions").

(5) The payments made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (c) and/or subsection IX(c) and monies received from all National Public Education Fund Contributions will be deposited and invested in accordance with the laws of the state of incorporation of the Foundation.

(f) **Creation and Organization of the Foundation.** NAAG, through its executive committee, will provide for the creation of the Foundation. The Foundation shall be organized exclusively for charitable, scientific, and educational purposes within the meaning of Internal Revenue Code section 501(c)(3). The organizational documents of the Foundation shall specifically incorporate the provisions of this Agreement relating to the Foundation, and will provide for payment of the Foundation's administrative expenses from the funds paid pursuant to subsection V(f)(b) or V(f)(c). The Foundation shall be governed by a board of directors. The board of directors shall be comprised of eleven directors. NAAG, the National Governors' Association ("NGA"), and the National Conference of State Legislatures ("NCSL") shall each select from its membership two directors. These six directors shall select the five additional directors. One of these five additional directors shall have expertise in public health issues. Four of these five additional directors shall have expertise in medical, child psychology, or public health disciplines. The board of directors shall be nationally geographically diverse.

(g) **Foundation Affiliation.** The Foundation shall be formally affiliated with an educational or medical institution selected by the board of directors.

(i) **Foundation Engagements.** The functions of the Foundation shall be:

(1) carrying out a nationwide sustained advertising and education program to (A) counter the use by Youth of Tobacco Products, and (B) educate consumers about the cause and prevention of diseases associated with the use of Tobacco Products;

(2) developing and disseminating model advertising and education programs to counter the use by Youth of substances that are unlawful for use or purchase by Youth, with an emphasis on reducing Youth smoking; monitoring and testing the effectiveness of such model programs; and, based on the information received from such monitoring and testing, continuing to develop and disseminate revised versions of such model programs, as appropriate;

(3) developing and disseminating model classroom education programs and curriculum ideas about smoking and substance abuse in the K-12 school system, including specific target programs for special at-risk populations; monitoring and testing the effectiveness of such model programs and ideas; and, based on the information received from such monitoring and testing, continuing to develop and disseminate revised versions of such model programs or ideas, as appropriate;

(4) developing and disseminating criteria for effective cessation programs; monitoring and testing the effectiveness of such criteria; and continuing to develop and disseminate revised versions of such criteria, as appropriate;

(5) commissioning studies, funding research, and publishing reports on factors that influence Youth smoking and substance abuse and developing strategies to address the conclusions of such studies and research;

(6) developing other innovative Youth smoking and substance abuse prevention programs;

(7) providing targeted training and information for parents;

(8) maintaining a library open to the public of Foundation-funded studies, reports and other publications related to the cause and prevention of Youth smoking and substance abuse;

(9) tracking and monitoring Youth smoking and substance abuse, with a focus on the reasons for any increases or failures to decrease Youth smoking and substance abuse and what actions can be taken to reduce Youth smoking and substance abuse;

(10) receiving, controlling, and managing contributions from other entities to further the purposes described in this Agreement; and

(11) receiving, controlling, and managing such funds paid by the Participating Manufacturers pursuant to subsections V(f)(b) and V(f)(c) above.

(g) **Equating Grant-Making.** The Foundation is authorized to make grants from the National Public Education Fund to Settling States and their political subdivisions to carry out sustained advertising and education programs to (1) counter the use by Youth of Tobacco Products, and (2) educate consumers about the cause and prevention of diseases associated with the use of Tobacco Products. In making such grants, the Foundation shall consider whether the Settling State or political subdivision applying for such grant:

(1) demonstrates the extent of the problem regarding Youth smoking in such Settling State or political subdivision;

(2) either seeks the grant to implement a model program developed by the Foundation or provides the Foundation with a specific plan for such applicant's intended use of the grant monies, including demonstrating such applicant's ability to develop an effective advertising/education campaign, and to assess the effectiveness of such advertising/education campaign;

(3) has other funds readily available to carry out a sustained advertising and education program to (A) counter the use by Youth of Tobacco Products, and (B) educate consumers about the cause and prevention of diseases associated with the use of Tobacco Products; and

(4) is a Settling State that has not severed this section VI from its settlement with the Participating Manufacturers pursuant to subsection V(f)(i) below, or is a political subdivision in such a Settling State.

(b) **Examination Activities.** The Foundation shall not engage in, nor shall any of the Foundation's money be used to engage in, any political activities or lobbying, including, but not limited to, support of or opposition to candidates, ballot initiatives, referenda or other similar activities. The National Public Education Fund shall be used only for public education and advertising regarding the addictiveness, health effects, and social costs related to the use of tobacco products and shall not be used for any personal attack on, or vilification of, any person (whether by name or business affiliation), company, or governmental agency, whether individually or collectively. The Foundation shall work to ensure that its activities are carried out in a culturally and linguistically appropriate manner. The Foundation's activities (including the National Public Education Fund) shall be carried out solely within the States. The payments described in subsections VI(b) and VI(c) above are made at the direction and on behalf of Settling States. By making such payments in such manner, the Participating Manufacturers do not undertake, and expressly disclaim any responsibility with respect to the creation, operation, liabilities, or tax status of the Foundation or the National Public Education Fund.

(c) **Severance of this Section.** If the Attorney General of a Settling State determines that such Settling State may not lawfully enter into this section VI as a matter of applicable state law, such Attorney General may sever this section VI from its settlement with the Participating Manufacturers by giving written notice of such severance to each Participating Manufacturer and NAAG pursuant to subsection XVII(k) hereof. If any Settling State exercises its right to sever this section VI, this section VI shall not be considered a part of the specific settlement between such Settling State and the Participating Manufacturers, and this section VI shall not be enforceable by or in such Settling State. The payment obligation of subsections VI(b) and VI(c) hereof shall apply regardless of a determination by one or more Settling States to sever section VI hereof; provided, however, that if all Settling States sever section VI hereof, the payment obligations of subsections (b) and (c) hereof shall be null and void. If the Attorney General of a Settling State that severed this section VI subsequently determines that such Settling State may lawfully enter into this section VI as a matter of applicable state law, such Attorney General may rescind such Settling State's previous severance of this section VI by giving written notice of such rescission to each Participating Manufacturer and NAAG pursuant to subsection XVII(k). If any Settling State rescinds such severance, this section VI shall be considered a part of the specific settlement between such Settling State and the Participating Manufacturers (including for purposes of subsection (g)(4d)), and this section VI shall be enforceable by and in such Settling State.

#### VII. ENFORCEMENT

(a) **Jurisdiction.** Each Participating Manufacturer and each Settling State acknowledges that the Court: (1) has jurisdiction over the subject matter of the action identified in Exhibit D in such Settling State and over each Participating Manufacturer; (2) shall retain exclusive jurisdiction for the purposes of implementing and enforcing this Agreement and the Consent Decree as to such Settling State; and (3) except as provided in subsections IX(d), XI(c) and XVII(d) and Exhibit O, shall be the only court in which disputes under this Agreement or the Consent Decree are presented as to such Settling State. Provided, however, that notwithstanding the foregoing, the Escrow Court (as defined in the Escrow Agreement) shall have exclusive jurisdiction, as provided in section 15 of the Escrow Agreement, over any suit, action or proceeding seeking to interpret or enforce any provision of, or based on any right arising out of, the Escrow Agreement.

(b) **Enforcement of Consent Decree.** Except as expressly provided in the Consent Decree, any Settling State or Released Party may apply to the Court to enforce the terms of the Consent Decree (or for a declaration constraining any such term) with respect to alleged violations within such Settling State. A Settling State may not seek to enforce the Consent Decree of another Settling State; provided, however, that nothing contained herein shall affect the ability of any Settling State to (1) coordinate state enforcement actions or proceedings, or (2) file or join any amicus brief. In the event that the Court determines that any Participating Manufacturer or Settling State has violated the Consent Decree within such Settling State, the party that initiated the proceedings may request any and all relief available within such Settling State pursuant to the Consent Decree.

(c) **Enforcement of this Agreement.**

(1) Except as provided in subsections IX(d), XI(c), XVII(d) and Exhibit O, any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer may bring an action in the Court to enforce the terms of this Agreement (or for a declaration constraining any such term ("Declaratory Order")) with respect to disputes, alleged violations or alleged breaches within such Settling State.

(2) Before initiating such proceedings, a party shall provide 30 days' written notice to the Attorney General of each Settling State, to NAAG, and to each Participating Manufacturer of its intent to initiate proceedings pursuant to this subsection. The 30-day notice period may be shortened in the event that the relevant Attorney General reasonably determines that a compelling time-sensitive public health and safety concern requires more immediate action.

(3) In the event that the Court determines that any Participating Manufacturer or Settling State has violated and/or ordering compliance within such Settling State (an "Enforcement Order").

(4) If an issue arises as to whether a Participating Manufacturer has failed to comply with an Enforcement Order, the Attorney General for the Settling State in question may seek an order for interpretation or for monetary, civil contempt or criminal sanctions to enforce compliance with such Enforcement Order.

(5) If the Court finds that a good-faith dispute exists as to the meaning of the terms of this Agreement or a Declaratory Order, the Court may in its discretion determine to enter a Declaratory Order rather than an Enforcement Order.

(6) Whenever possible, the parties shall seek to resolve an alleged violation of this Agreement by discussion pursuant to subsection XVIII(m) of this Agreement. In addition, in determining whether to seek an Enforcement Order, or in determining whether to seek an order for monetary, civil contempt or criminal sanctions for any claimed violation of an Enforcement Order, the Attorney General shall give good-faith consideration to whether the Participating Manufacturer that is claimed to have violated this Agreement has taken appropriate and reasonable steps to cause the claimed violation to be cured, unless such party has been guilty of a pattern of violations of like nature.

(d) **Right of Review.** All orders and other judicial determinations made by any court in connection with this Agreement or any Consent Decree shall be subject to all available appellate review, and nothing in this Agreement or any Consent Decree shall be deemed to constitute a waiver of any right to any such review.

(e) **Applicability.** This Agreement and the Consent Decree apply only to the Participating Manufacturers in their corporate capacity acting through their respective successors and assigns, directors, officers, employees, agents, subsidiaries, divisions, or other internal organizational units of any kind or any other entities acting in concert or participation with them. The remedies, penalties and sanctions that may be imposed or assessed in connection with a breach or violation of this Agreement or the Consent Decree (or any Declaratory Order or Enforcement Order issued in connection with this Agreement or the Consent Decree) shall apply only to the Participating Manufacturers, and shall not be imposed or assessed against any employee, officer or director of any Participating Manufacturer, or against any other person or entity as a consequence of such breach or violation, and the Court shall have no jurisdiction to do so.

(f) **Coordination of Enforcement.** The Attorneys General of the Settling States (through NAAG) shall monitor potential conflicting interpretations by courts of different States of this Agreement and the Consent Decrees. The Settling States shall use their best efforts, in cooperation with the Participating Manufacturers, to coordinate and resolve the effects of such conflicting interpretations as to matters that are not exclusively local in nature.

(g) **Inspection and Discovery Rights.** Without limitation on whatever other rights to access they may be permitted by law, following State-Specific Finality in a Settling State and for seven years thereafter, representatives of the Attorney General of such Settling State may, for the purpose of enforcing this Agreement and the Consent Decree, upon reasonable cause to believe that a violation of this Agreement or the Consent Decree has occurred, and upon reasonable prior written notice (but in no event less than 10 Business Days): (1) have access during regular office hours to inspect and copy all relevant non-privileged, non-work-product books, records, meeting agenda and minutes, and other documents (whether in hard copy form or stored electronically) of each Participating Manufacturer insofar as they pertain to such believed violation; and (2) interview each Participating Manufacturer's directors, officers and employees (who shall be entitled to have counsel present) with respect to such relevant, non-privileged, non-work-product matters pertaining to such believed violation. Documents and information provided to representatives of the Attorney General of such Settling State pursuant to this section VII shall be kept confidential by the Settling States, and shall be utilized only by the Settling States and only for purposes of enforcing this Agreement, the Consent Decree and the criminal law. The inspection and discovery rights provided to such Settling State pursuant to this subsection shall be coordinated through NAAG so as to avoid repetitive and excessive inspection and discovery.

#### VIII. CERTAIN ONGOING RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE SETTling STATES

(a) Upon approval of the NAAG executive committee, NAAG will provide coordination and facilitation for the implementation and enforcement of this Agreement on behalf of the Attorneys General of the Settling States, including the following:

(1) NAAG will assist in coordinating the inspection and discovery activities referred to in subsections III(f)(3) and VII(g) regarding compliance with this Agreement by the Participating Manufacturers and any new tobacco-related trade associations.

(2) NAAG will convene at least two meetings per year and one major national conference every three years for the Attorneys General of the Settling States, the directors of the Foundation and three persons designated by each Participating Manufacturer. The purpose of the meetings and conference is to evaluate the success of this Agreement and coordinate efforts by the Attorneys General and the Participating Manufacturers to continue to reduce youth smoking.

(3) NAAG will periodically inform NGA, NCSL, the National Association of Counties and the National League of Cities of the results of the meetings and conferences referred to in subsection (a)(2) above.

(4) NAAG will support and coordinate the efforts of the Attorneys General of the Settling States, in carrying out their responsibilities under this Agreement.

(5) NAAG will perform the other functions specified for it in this Agreement, including the functions specified in section IV.

(b) Upon approval by the NAAG executive committee to assume the responsibilities outlined in subsection VIII(a) hereof, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall cause to be paid, beginning on December 31, 1998, and on December 31 of each year thereafter through and including December 31, 2007, its Relative Market Share of \$150,000 per year to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection VIII(f) Account), who shall disburse such monies to NAAG within 10 Business Days, to fund the activities described in subsection VIII(a).

(c) The Attorneys General of the Settling States, acting through NAAG, shall establish a fund ("The States' Antitrust/Consumer Protection Tobacco Enforcement Fund") in the form attached as Exhibit J, which will be maintained by

such Attorneys General to supplement the Settling States' (1) enforcement and implementation of the terms of this Agreement and the Consent Decrees, and (2) investigation and litigation of potential violations of laws with respect to Tobacco Products, as set forth in Exhibit J. Each Original Participating Manufacturer shall on March 31, 1999, severally pay its Relative Market Share of \$50,000,000 to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection VIII(c) Account), who shall disburse such monies to NAAG upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in at least one Settling State. Such funds will be used in accordance with the provisions of Exhibit J.

**IX. PAYMENTS**

(a) **All Payments Into Escrow.** All payments made pursuant to this Agreement (except those payments made pursuant to Section XVII) shall be made into escrow pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, and shall be credited to the appropriate Account established pursuant to the Escrow Agreement. Such payments shall be disbursed to the beneficiaries or returned to the Participating Manufacturers only as provided in section XI and the Escrow Agreement. No payment obligation under this Agreement shall arise (1) unless and until the Escrow Court has approved and retained jurisdiction over the Escrow Agreement or (2) if such approval is reversed (unless and until such reversal is itself reversed). The parties agree to proceed as expeditiously as possible to resolve any issues that prevent approval of the Escrow Agreement. If any payment (other than the first initial payment under subsection IX(b)) is delayed because the Escrow Agreement has not been approved, such payment shall be due and payable (together with interest at the Prime Rate) within 10 Business Days after approval of the Escrow Agreement by the Escrow Court.

(b) **Initial Payments.** On the second Business Day after the Escrow Court approves and retains jurisdiction over the Escrow Agreement, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection IX(b) Account (Firm's) its Market Capitalization Percentage (as set forth in Exhibit K) of the base amount of \$2,400,000,000. On January 10, 2000, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent its Relative Market Share of the base amount of \$2,472,000,000. On January 10, 2001, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent its Relative Market Share of the base amount of \$2,546,160,000. On January 10, 2002, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent its Relative Market Share of the base amount of \$2,622,544,800. On January 10, 2003, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent its Relative Market Share of the base amount of \$2,701,221,144. The payments pursuant to this subsection (b) due on or after January 10, 2000, shall be credited to the Subsection IX(b) Account (Subsequent). The foregoing payments shall be modified in accordance with this subsection (b). The payments made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (b) (other than the first such payment) shall be subject to the Volume Adjustment, the Non-Settling States Reduction and the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection XII(f). The first payment due under this subsection (b) shall be subject to the Non-Settling States Reduction, but such reduction shall be determined as of the date one day before such payment is due (rather than the date 15 days before).

(c) **Annual Payments and Strategic Contribution Payments.**

(1) On April 15, 2000 and on April 15 of each year thereafter in perpetuity, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection IX(c)(1) Account) its Relative Market Share of the base amounts specified below, as such payments are modified in accordance with this subsection (c)(1):

Year	Base Amount
2000	\$4,300,000,000
2001	\$5,000,000,000
2002	\$6,500,000,000
2003	\$6,500,000,000
2004	\$8,000,000,000
2005	\$8,000,000,000
2006	\$8,000,000,000
2007	\$8,000,000,000
2008	\$8,139,000,000
2009	\$8,139,000,000
2010	\$8,139,000,000
2011	\$8,139,000,000
2012	\$8,139,000,000
2013	\$8,139,000,000
2014	\$8,139,000,000
2015	\$8,139,000,000
2016	\$8,139,000,000
2017	\$8,139,000,000
2018 and each year thereafter	\$9,000,000,000

The payments made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (c)(1) shall be subject to the Inflation Adjustment, the Volume Adjustment, the Non-Settling States Reduction, the Non-Settling States Reduction, the NPM Adjustment, the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection X(f), the Federal

Tobacco Legislation Offset, the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset, and the offsets for claims over described in subsections XI(a)(4)(B) and XI(a)(8).

(2) On April 15, 2008 and on April 15 of each year thereafter through 2017, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection IX(c)(2) Account) its Relative Market Share of the base amount of \$861,000,000, as such payments are modified in accordance with this subsection (c)(2). The payments made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (c)(2) shall be subject to the Inflation Adjustment, the Volume Adjustment, the NPM Adjustment, the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection XI(f), the Federal Tobacco Legislation Offset, the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset, and the offsets for claims over described in subsections XI(a)(4)(B) and XI(a)(8). Such payments shall also be subject to the Non-Settling States Reduction, provided, however, that for purposes of payments due pursuant to this subsection (c)(2) (and corresponding payments by Subsequent Participating Manufacturers under subsection IX(f)), the Non-Settling States Reduction shall be derived as follows: (A) the payments made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection (c)(2) shall be allocated among the Settling States on a percentage basis to be determined by the Settling States pursuant to the procedures set forth in Exhibit U, and the resulting allocation percentages disclosed to the Escrow Agent, the Independent Auditor and the Original Participating Manufacturers not later than June 30, 1999; and (B) the Non-Settling States Reduction shall be based on the sum of the Allocable Shares so established pursuant to subsection (c)(2)(A) for those States that were Settling States as of the MSA Execution Date and as to which this Agreement has terminated as of the date 15 days before the payment in question is due.

(d) **Non-Participating Manufacturer Adjustment.**

(1) **Calculation of NPM Adjustment for Original Participating Manufacturers.** To protect the public health gains achieved by this Agreement, certain payments made pursuant to this Agreement shall be subject to an NPM Adjustment. Payments by the Original Participating Manufacturers to which the NPM Adjustment applies shall be adjusted as provided below:

(A) Subject to the provisions of subsections (i)(1)(C), (i)(1)(D) and (i)(2) below, each Allocable Payment shall be adjusted by subtracting from such Allocable Payment the product of such Allocable Payment amount multiplied by the NPM Adjustment Percentage. The "NPM Adjustment Percentage" shall be calculated as follows:

- (i) If the Market Share Loss for the year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due is less than or equal to 0 (zero), then the NPM Adjustment Percentage shall equal zero.
- (ii) If the Market Share Loss for the year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due is greater than 0 (zero) and less than or equal to 16 2/3 percentage points, then the NPM Adjustment Percentage shall be equal to the product of (x) such Market Share Loss and (y) 3 (three).
- (iii) If the Market Share Loss for the year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due is greater than 16 2/3 percentage points, then the NPM Adjustment Percentage shall be equal to the sum of (x) 50 percentage points and (y) the product of (1) the Variable Multiplier and (2) the result of such Market Share Loss minus 16 2/3 percentage points.

(B) Definitions:

(i) "Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share" means the result of (x) the sum of the applicable Market Shares (the applicable Market Share to be that for 1997) of all present and former Tobacco Product Manufacturers that were Participating Manufacturers during the entire calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due minus (y) 2 (two) percentage points.

(ii) "Actual Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share" means the sum of the applicable Market Shares of all present and former Tobacco Product Manufacturers that were Participating Manufacturers during the entire calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due (the applicable Market Share to be that for the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due).

(iii) "Market Share Loss" means the result of (x) the Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share minus (y) the Actual Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share.

(iv) "Variable Multiplier" equals 50 percentage points divided by the result of (x) the Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share minus (y) 16 2/3 percentage points.

(C) On or before February 2 of each year following a year in which there was a Market Share Loss greater than zero, a nationally recognized firm of economic consultants (the "Firm") shall determine whether the disadvantages experienced as a result of the provisions of this Agreement were a significant factor contributing to the Market Share Loss for the year in question. If the Firm determines that the disadvantages experienced as a result of the provisions of this Agreement were a significant factor contributing to the Market Share Loss for the year in question, the NPM Adjustment described in subsection IX(d)(1) shall apply. If the Firm determines that the disadvantages experienced as a result of the provisions of this Agreement were not a significant factor contributing to the Market Share Loss for the year in question, the NPM Adjustment described in subsection IX(d)(1) shall not apply. The Original Participating Manufacturers, the Settling States, and the Attorneys General for the Settling States shall cooperate to ensure that the determination described in this subsection (1)(C) is timely made. The Firm shall be acceptable to (and the principals responsible for this assignment shall be acceptable to) both the Original Participating Manufacturers and a majority of those Attorneys General who are both the

Attorney General of a Settling State and a member of the NAAAG executive committee at the time in question for in the event no such firm or no such principals shall be acceptable to such parties, National Economic Research Associates, Inc., or its successors by merger, acquisition or otherwise ("NERA"), acting through a principal or principals acceptable to such parties, if such a person can be identified and, if not, acting through a principal or principals identified by NERA, or a successor firm selected by the CIPR Institute for Dispute Resolution). As soon as practicable after the MSA Execution Date, the Firm shall be jointly determined by the Settling States and the Original Participating Manufacturers for the purpose of making the foregoing determination, and the Firm shall provide written notice to each Settling State, to NAAAG, to the Independent Auditor and to each Participating Manufacturer of such determination. The determination of the Firm with respect to this issue shall be conclusive and binding upon all parties, and shall be final and non-appealable. The reasonable fees and expenses of the Firm shall be paid by the Original Participating Manufacturers according to their Relative Market Shares. Only the Participating Manufacturers, and the Settling States, and their respective counsel, shall be entitled to communicate with the Firm with respect to the Firm's activities pursuant to this subsection (1)(C).

(D) No NPM Adjustment shall be made with respect to a payment to a payment if the aggregate number of Cigarettes shipped in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico in the year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due by those Participating Manufacturers that had become Participating Manufacturers prior to 14 days after the MSA Execution Date is greater than the aggregate number of Cigarettes shipped in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico in 1997 by such Participating Manufacturers (and any of their Affiliates that made such shipments in 1997, as demonstrated by certified audited statements of such Affiliates' shipments, and that do not continue to make such shipments after the MSA Execution Date because the responsibility for such shipments has been transferred to one of such Participating Manufacturers). Measurements of shipments for purposes of this subsection (D) shall be made in the manner prescribed in subsection (1)(m), in the event that such shipment data is unavailable for any Participating Manufacturer for 1997, such Participating Manufacturer's shipment volume for such year shall be measured in the manner prescribed in subsection (1)(z).

(2) Allocation among Settling States of NPM Adjustment for Original Participating Manufacturers.

(A) The NPM Adjustment set forth in subsection (1)(K) shall apply to the Allocated Payments of all Settling States, except as set forth below.

(B) A Settling State's Allocated Payment shall not be subject to an NPM Adjustment: (i) if such Settling State continuously had a Qualifying State (as defined in subsection (2)(E) below) in full force and effect during the entire calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due, and diligently enforced the provisions of such statute during such entire calendar year; or (ii) if such Settling State enacted the Model Statute (as defined in subsection (2)(E) below) for the first time during the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due, continuously had the Model Statute in full force and effect during the last six months of such calendar year, and diligently enforced the provisions of such statute during the period in which it was in full force and effect.

(C) The aggregate amount of the NPM Adjustments that would have applied to the Allocated Payments of those Settling States that are not subject to an NPM Adjustment pursuant to subsection (2)(B) shall be reallocated among all other Settling States pro rata in proportion to their respective Allocable Shares (the applicable Allocable Shares being those listed in Exhibit A), and such other Settling States' Allocated Payments shall be further reduced accordingly.

(D) This subsection (2)(D) shall apply if the amount of the NPM Adjustment applied pursuant to subsection (2)(A) in any Settling State plus the amount of the NPM Adjustments reallocated to such Settling State pursuant to subsection (2)(C) in any individual year would either (i) exceed such Settling State's Allocated Payment in that year, or (ii) if subsection (2)(F) applies to the Settling State in question, exceed 65% of such Settling State's Allocated Payment in that year. For each Settling State that has an excess as described in the preceding sentence, the excess amount of NPM Adjustment shall be further reallocated among all other Settling States whose Allocated Payments are subject to an NPM Adjustment and that do not have such an excess, pro rata in proportion to their respective Allocable Shares, and such other Settling States' Allocated Payments shall be further reduced accordingly. The provisions of this subsection (2)(D) shall be repeatedly applied in any individual year until either (i) the aggregate amount of NPM Adjustments has been fully reallocated or (ii) the full amount of the NPM Adjustments subject to reallocation under subsection (2)(C) or (2)(D) cannot be fully reallocated in any individual year as described in those subsections because (x) the Allocated Payment in that year of each Settling State that is subject to an NPM Adjustment and to which subsection (2)(F) does not apply has been reduced to zero, and (y) the Allocated Payment in that year of each Settling State to which subsection (2)(F) applies has been reduced to 35% of such Allocated Payment.

(E) A "Qualifying Statute" means a Settling State's statute, regulation, law and/or rule (applicable everywhere the Settling State has authority to legislate) that effectively and fully neutralizes the cost disadvantages that the Participating Manufacturers experience vis-à-vis Non-Participating Manufacturers within such Settling State as a result of the provisions of this Agreement. Each Participating Manufacturer and each Settling State agree that the model statute in the form set forth in Exhibit T (the "Model Statute"), if enacted without modification or addition (except for particularized state procedural or technical requirements) and not in conjunction with any other legislative or regulatory proposal, shall constitute a Qualifying Statute. Each Participating Manufacturer agrees to support the enactment of such Model Statute if such Model

Statute is introduced or proposed (i) without modification or addition (except for particularized procedural or technical requirements), and (ii) not in conjunction with any other legislative proposal.

(F) If a Settling State (i) enacts the Model Statute without any modification or addition (except for particularized state procedural or technical requirements) and not in conjunction with any other legislative or regulatory proposal, (ii) uses its best efforts to keep the Model Statute in full force and effect by, among other things, defending the Model Statute fully in any litigation brought in state or federal court within such Settling State (including litigating all available appeals that may affect the effectiveness of the Model Statute), and (iii) otherwise complies with subsection (2)(B), but a court of competent jurisdiction nevertheless invalidates or renders unenforceable the Model Statute with respect to such Settling State, and that for such ruling the Settling State would have been exempt from an NPM Adjustment under subsection (2)(B), then the NPM Adjustment (including reallocations pursuant to subsections (2)(C) and (2)(D)) shall still apply to such Settling State's Allocated Payments but in any individual year shall not exceed 65% of the amount of such Allocated Payments.

(G) In the event a Settling State proposes and/or enacts a statute, regulation, law and/or rule (applicable everywhere the Settling State has authority to legislate) that is not the Model Statute and asserts that such statute, regulation, law and/or rule is a Qualifying Statute, the Firm shall be jointly retained by the Settling States and the Original Participating Manufacturers for the purpose of determining whether or not such statute, regulation, law and/or rule constitutes a Qualifying Statute. The Firm shall make the foregoing determination within 90 days of a written request to it from the relevant Settling State (copies of which request the Settling State shall also provide to all Participating Manufacturers and the Independent Auditor), and the Firm shall promptly thereafter provide written notice of such determination to the relevant Settling State, NAAAG, all Participating Manufacturers and the Independent Auditor. The determination of the Firm with respect to this issue shall be conclusive and binding upon all parties, and shall be final and non-appealable; provided, however, (i) that such determination shall be of no force and effect with respect to a proposed statute, regulation, law and/or rule that is thereafter enacted with any modification or addition; and (ii) that the Settling State in which the Qualifying Statute was enacted and any Participating Manufacturer may at any time request that the Firm reconsider its determination as to this issue in light of subsequent events (including, without limitation, subsequent judicial review, interpretation, modification and/or disapproval of a Settling State's Qualifying Statute, and the manner and/or the effect of enforcement of such Qualifying Statute). The Original Participating Manufacturers shall severally pay their Relative Market Shares of the reasonable fees and expenses of the Firm. Only the Participating Manufacturers and Settling States, and their respective counsel, shall be entitled to communicate with the Firm with respect to the Firm's activities pursuant to this subsection (2)(G).

(H) Except as provided in subsection (2)(F), in the event a Qualifying Statute is enacted within a Settling State and is thereafter invalidated or declared unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, otherwise rendered not in full force and effect, or, upon reconsideration by the Firm pursuant to subsection (2)(G) determined not to constitute a Qualifying Statute, then such Settling State's Allocated Payments shall be fully subject to an NPM Adjustment unless and until the requirements of subsection (2)(B) have been once again satisfied.

(3) Allocation of NPM Adjustment among Original Participating Manufacturers. The portion of the total amount of the NPM Adjustment to which the Original Participating Manufacturers are entitled in any year that can be applied in such year consistent with subsection (1)(d)(2) (the "Available NPM Adjustment") shall be allocated among them as provided in this subsection (1)(d)(3).

(A) The "Base NPM Adjustment" shall be determined for each Original Participating Manufacturer in such year as follows:

(i) For those Original Participating Manufacturers whose Relative Market Shares in the year immediately preceding the year in which the NPM Adjustment in question is applied exceed or are equal to their respective 1997 Relative Market Shares, the Base NPM Adjustment shall equal 0 (zero).

(ii) For those Original Participating Manufacturers whose Relative Market Shares in the year immediately preceding the year in which the NPM Adjustment in question is applied are less than their respective 1997 Relative Market Shares, the Base NPM Adjustment shall equal the result of (x) the difference between such Original Participating Manufacturer's Relative Market Share in such preceding year and its 1997 Relative Market Share multiplied by both (y) the number of individual Cigarettes (expressed in thousands of units) shipped in or to the United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico by all the Original Participating Manufacturers in such preceding year (determined in accordance with subsection (1)(m)) and (z) \$20 per each thousand units of Cigarettes (as this number is adjusted pursuant to subsection (1)(d)(3)(C) below).

(iii) For those Original Participating Manufacturers whose Base NPM Adjustment, if calculated pursuant to subsection (i) above, would exceed \$300 million (as this number is adjusted pursuant to subsection (1)(d)(3)(C) below), the Base NPM Adjustment shall equal \$300 million (or such adjusted number, as provided in subsection (1)(d)(3)(C) below).

(B) The share of the Available NPM Adjustment each Original Participating Manufacturer is entitled to shall be calculated as follows:

(i) If the Available NPM Adjustment the Original Participating Manufacturers are entitled to in any year is less than or equal to the sum of the Base NPM Adjustments of all Original Participating

Manufacturers in such year, then such Available NPM Adjustment shall be allocated among those Original Participating Manufacturers whose Base NPM Adjustment is not equal to 0 (zero) pro rata in proportion to their respective Base NPM Adjustments.

- (ii) If the Available NPM Adjustment the Original Participating Manufacturers are entitled to in any year exceeds the sum of the Base NPM Adjustments of all Original Participating Manufacturers in such year, then (x) the difference between such Available NPM Adjustment and such sum of the Base NPM Adjustments shall be allocated among the Original Participating Manufacturers pro rata in proportion to their Relative Market Shares (the applicable Relative Market Share to be those in the year immediately preceding such year), and (y) each Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Available NPM Adjustment shall equal the sum of (1) its Base NPM Adjustment for such year, and (2) the amount allocated to such Original Participating Manufacturer pursuant to clause (x).

(iii) If an Original Participating Manufacturer's share of the Available NPM Adjustment calculated pursuant to subsection IX(d)(3)(B)(i) exceeds such Original Participating Manufacturer's payment amount to which such NPM Adjustment applies (as such payment amount has been determined pursuant to step B of clause "Seventh" of subsection IX(G)), then (1) such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of the Available NPM Adjustment shall equal such payment amount, and (2) such excess shall be reallocated among the other Original Participating Manufacturers pro rata in proportion to their Relative Market Shares.

(C) Adjustments:

- (i) For calculations made pursuant to this subsection IX(c)(3) (if any) with respect to payments due in the year 2000, the number used in subsection IX(d)(3)(A)(ii)(2) shall be \$20 and the number used in subsection IX(d)(3)(A)(iii) shall be \$300 million. Each year thereafter, both these numbers shall be adjusted upward or downward by multiplying each of them by the quotient produced by dividing (x) the average revenue per Cigarette of all the Original Participating Manufacturers in the year immediately preceding such year, by (y) the average revenue per Cigarette of all the Original Participating Manufacturers in the year immediately preceding such year.

(ii) For purposes of this subsection, the average revenue per Cigarette of all the Original Participating Manufacturers in any year shall equal (x) the aggregate revenues of all the Original Participating Manufacturers from sales of Cigarettes in the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico after Federal excise taxes and after payments pursuant to this Agreement and the tobacco litigation Settlement Agreements with the States of Florida, Mississippi, Minnesota and Texas (as such revenues are reported to the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") for such year (either independently by the Original Participating Manufacturer or as part of consolidated financial statements reported to the SEC by an Affiliate of the Original Participating Manufacturer) or, in the case of an Original Participating Manufacturer that does not report income to the SEC, as reported in financial statements prepared in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles and audited by a nationally recognized accounting firm), divided by (y) the aggregate number of the individual Cigarettes shipped in or to the United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico by all the Original Participating Manufacturers in such year (determined in accordance with subsection II(mmm)).

(D) In the event that in the year immediately preceding the year in which the NPM Adjustment is applied both (x) the Relative Market Share of Lorillard Tobacco Company (or its successor) ("Lorillard") was less than or equal to 20,000,000,000%, and (y) the number of individual Cigarettes shipped in or to the United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico by Lorillard (determined in accordance with subsection II(mmm)) (for purposes of this subsection (D), "Volume") was less than or equal to 70 billion, Lorillard's and Philip Morris Incorporated's (or its successor's) ("Philip Morris") shares of the Available NPM Adjustment calculated pursuant to subsections (3)(A)-(C) above shall be further reallocated between Lorillard and Philip Morris as follows (this subsection (3)(D) shall not apply in the year in which either of the two conditions specified in this sentence is not satisfied):

(i) Notwithstanding subsections (A)-(C) of this subsection (d)(3), but subject to further adjustment pursuant to subsections (D)(ii) and (D)(iii) below, Lorillard's share of the Available NPM Adjustment shall equal its Relative Market Share of such Available NPM Adjustment (the applicable Relative Market Share to be that in the year immediately preceding the year in which such NPM Adjustment is applied). The dollar amount of the difference between the share of the Available NPM Adjustment Lorillard is entitled to pursuant to the preceding sentence and the share of the Available NPM Adjustment to which Lorillard's share of the Available NPM Adjustment is reduced in accordance with this subsection (D) shall be reallocated to Philip Morris and used to decrease or increase, as the case may be, Philip Morris's share of the Available NPM Adjustment in such year calculated pursuant to subsections (d)(3)(A)-(C).

(ii) In the event that in the year immediately preceding the year in which the NPM Adjustment is applied either (x) Lorillard's Relative Market Share was greater than 15,000,000,000% (but did not exceed 20,000,000,000%), or (y) Lorillard's Volume was greater than 50 billion (but did not exceed 70 billion), or both, Lorillard's share of the Available NPM Adjustment calculated pursuant to subsection (d)(3)(D)(i) shall be reduced by a percentage equal to the greater of (1) 10,000,000,000% for each percentage point (or fraction thereof) of excess of such Relative Market Share over 15,000,000,000% (if any), or (2) 2,500,000,000% for each billion (or fraction thereof) of excess of such Volume over 50 billion (if any). The dollar amount by which Lorillard's share of the Available NPM Adjustment is reduced in any year pursuant to this subsection (D)(ii) shall be reallocated to Philip Morris and used to increase Philip Morris's share of the Available NPM Adjustment in such year.

In the event that in any year a reallocation of the shares of the Available NPM Adjustment between Lorillard and Philip Morris pursuant to this subsection (d)(3)(D) results in Philip Morris's share of the Available NPM Adjustment in such year exceeding the greater of (x) Philip Morris's Relative Market Share of such Available NPM Adjustment (the applicable Relative Market Share to be that in the year immediately preceding such year), or (y) Philip Morris's share of the Available NPM Adjustment in such year calculated pursuant to subsections (d)(3)(A)-(C), Philip Morris's share of the Available NPM Adjustment in such year shall be reduced to equal the greater of (x) or (y) above. In such instance, the dollar amount by which Philip Morris's share of the Available NPM Adjustment is reduced pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be reallocated to Lorillard and used to increase Lorillard's share of the Available NPM Adjustment in such year.

(iv) In the event that either Philip Morris or Lorillard is treated as a Non-Participating Manufacturer for purposes of this subsection IX(d)(3) pursuant to subsection XVIII(w)(2)(A), this subsection (3)(D) shall not be applied, and the Original Participating Manufacturers' shares of the Available NPM Adjustment shall be determined solely as described in subsections (3)(A)-(C).

(4) NPM Adjustment for Subsequent Participating Manufacturers: Subject to the provisions of subsection IX(f)(3), a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled to an NPM Adjustment with respect to payments due from such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer in any year during which an NPM Adjustment is applicable under subsection (d)(1) above to payments due from the Original Participating Manufacturers. The amount of such NPM Adjustment shall equal the product of (A) the NPM Adjustment Percentage for such year multiplied by (B) the sum of the payments due in the year in question from such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer that correspond to payments due from Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to subsection IX(c) (as such payment amounts due from such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer have been adjusted and allocated pursuant to clauses "First" through "Fifth" of subsection IX(G)). The NPM Adjustment to payments by each Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall be allocated and reallocated among the Settling States in a manner consistent with subsection (d)(2) above.

(e) Supplemental Payments: Beginning on April 15, 2004, and on April 15 of each year thereafter in perpetuity, in the event that the sum of the Market Shares of the Participating Manufacturers that were Participating Manufacturers during the entire calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question would be due (the applicable Market Share to be that for the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question would be due) equals or exceeds 99.05000000%, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Escrow Agent (to be credited to the Subsection IX(e) Account) for the benefit of the Foundation its Relative Market Share of the base amount of \$100,000,000, as such payments are modified in accordance with this subsection (e). Such payments shall be utilized by the Foundation to fund the national public education functions of the Foundation described in subsection VI(f)(1), in the manner described in and subject to the provisions of subsections VI(g) and VI(h). The payments made by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this subsection shall be subject to the Inflation Adjustment, the Volume Adjustment, the Non-Settling States Reduction, and the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection XI(f).

(f) Payment Responsibility: The payment obligations of each Participating Manufacturer pursuant to this Agreement shall be the several responsibility only of that Participating Manufacturer. The payment obligations of a Participating Manufacturer shall not be the obligation or responsibility of any Affiliate of such Participating Manufacturer. The payment obligations of a Participating Manufacturer shall not be the obligation or responsibility of any other Participating Manufacturer. Provided, however, that no provision of this Agreement shall waive or excuse liability under any state or federal fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer law. Any Participating Manufacturer whose Market Share (or Relative Market Share) in any given year equals zero shall have no payment obligations under this Agreement in the succeeding year.

(g) Corporate Structures: Due to the particular corporate structures of R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company ("Reynolds") and Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation ("B&W") with respect to their non-domestic tobacco operations, Reynolds and B&W shall be severally liable for their respective shares of each payment due pursuant to this Agreement up to (and their liability hereunder shall not exceed) the full extent of their assets used in and earnings derived from, the manufacture and/or sale in the States of Tobacco Products intended for domestic consumption, and no recourse shall be had against any of their other assets or earnings to satisfy such obligations.

(h) Accrual of Interest: Except as expressly provided otherwise in this Agreement, any payment due hereunder and not paid when due (or payments requiring the accrual of interest under subsection XI(d)) shall accrue interest from and including the date such payment is due until (but not including) the date paid at the Prime Rate plus three percentage points.

(I) Payments by Subsequent Participating Manufacturers:

(1) A Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall have payment obligations under this Agreement only in the event that its Market Share in any calendar year exceeds the greater of (1) its 1998 Market Share or (2) 125 percent of its 1997 Market Share (subject to the provisions of subsection (l)(4)). In the year following any such calendar year, such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall make payments corresponding to those due in that same following year from the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to subsections VI(c) (except for the payment due on March 31, 1999), IX(c)(1), IX(c)(2) and IX(e). The amounts of such corresponding payments by a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer are in addition to the corresponding payments that are due from the Original Participating Manufacturers and shall be determined as described in subsections (2) and (3) below. Such payments by a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall (A) be due on the same dates as the corresponding payments are due from Original Participating Manufacturers; (B) be for the same

purpose as such corresponding payments; and (C) be paid, allocated and distributed in the same manner as such corresponding payments.

(2) The base amount due from a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer on any given date shall be determined by multiplying (A) the corresponding base amount due on the same date from all of the Original Participating Manufacturers (as such base amount is specified in the corresponding subsection of this Agreement and is adjusted by the Volume Adjustment (except for the provisions of subsection (B)(5) of Exhibit E), but before such base amount is modified by any other adjustments, reductions or offsets) by (B) the quotient produced by dividing (i) the result of (3) such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer's applicable Market Share (the applicable Market Share being that for the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due) minus (y) the greater of (1) its 1998 Market Share or (2) 125 percent of its 1997 Market Share, by (ii) the aggregate Market Shares of the Original Participating Manufacturers (the applicable Market Shares being those for the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due).

(3) Any payment due from a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer under subsections (1) and (2) above shall be subject (op to the full amount of such payment) to the Inflation Adjustment, the Non-Settling States Reduction, the NPM Adjustment, the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection X(i), the Federal Tobacco Legislation Offset, the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset and the offsets for claims over described in subsections XII(a)(4)(B) and XII(a)(8), to the extent that such adjustments, reductions or offsets would apply to the corresponding payment due from the Original Participating Manufacturers. Provided, however, that all adjustments and offsets to which a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer is entitled may only be applied against payments by such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer, if any, that are due within 12 months after the date on which the Subsequent Participating Manufacturer becomes entitled to such adjustment or makes the payment that entitles it to such offset, and shall not be carried forward beyond that time even if not fully used.

(4) For purposes of this subsection (3), the 1997 (or 1998, as applicable) Market Share (and 125 percent thereof) of those Subsequent Participating Manufacturers that either (A) became a signatory to this Agreement more than 60 days after the MSA Execution Date or (B) had no Market Share in 1997 (or 1998, as applicable), shall equal zero.

(f) Order of Application of Allocations, Offsets, Reductions and Adjustments. The payments due under this Agreement shall be calculated as set forth below. The "base amount" referred to in clause "First" below shall mean (1) in the case of payments due from Original Participating Manufacturers, the base amount referred to in the subsection establishing the payment obligation in question; and (2) in the case of payments due from a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer, the base amount referred to in subsection (3) for such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer. In the event that a particular adjustment, reduction or offset referred to in a clause below does not apply to the payment being calculated, the result of the clause in question shall be deemed to be equal to the result of the immediately preceding clause. (If clause "First" is inapplicable, the result of clause "First" will be the base amount of the payment in question prior to any offsets, reductions or adjustments.)

**First:** the Inflation Adjustment shall be applied to the base amount of the payment being calculated;

**Second:** the Volume Adjustment (other than the provisions of subsection (B)(iii) of Exhibit E) shall be applied to the result of clause "First";

**Third:** the result of clause "Second" shall be reduced by the Previously Settled States Reduction;

**Fourth:** the result of clause "Third" shall be reduced by the Non-Settling States Reduction;

**Fifth:** in the case of payments due under subsections IX(c)(1) and IX(c)(2), the results of clause "Fourth" for each such payment due in the calendar year in question shall be apportioned among the Settling States pro rata in proportion to their respective Allocable Shares, and the resulting amounts for each particular Settling State shall then be added together to form such Settling State's Allocated Payment. In the case of payments due under subsection IX(c) that correspond to payments due under subsections IX(c)(1) or IX(c)(2), the results of clause "Fourth" for all such payments due from a particular Subsequent Participating Manufacturer in the calendar year in question shall be apportioned among the Settling States pro rata in proportion to their respective Allocable Shares, and the resulting amounts for each particular Settling State shall then be added together. (In the case of all other payments made pursuant to this Agreement, this clause "Fifth" is inapplicable.);

**Sixth:** the NPM Adjustment shall be applied to the results of clause "Fifth" pursuant to subsections IX(d)(1) and (d)(2) (or, in the case of payments due from the Subsequent Participating Manufacturers, pursuant to subsection IX(d)(4));

**Seventh:** in the case of payments due from the Original Participating Manufacturers, pursuant to subsection IX(d)(4), therefore clause "Sixth" does not apply, the result of clause "Fourth" shall be allocated among the Original Participating Manufacturers according to their Relative Market Shares. In the case of payments due from the Original Participating Manufacturers to which clause "Fifth" applies: (A) the Allocated Payments of all Settling States determined pursuant to clause "Fifth" (prior to reduction pursuant to clause "Sixth") shall be added together; (B) the resulting sum shall be allocated among the Original Participating Manufacturers according to their Relative Market Shares and subsection (B)(ii) of Exhibit E; here to (if such subsection is applicable); (C) the Available NPM Adjustment (as determined pursuant to clause "Sixth") shall be allocated among the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to subsection IX(d)(3); (D) the respective result of step (C) above for each Original Participating Manufacturer shall be subtracted from the respective result of step (B) above

for such Original Participating Manufacturer; and (E) the resulting payment amount due from each Original Participating Manufacturer shall then be allocated among the Settling States in proportion to the respective results of clause "Sixth" for each Settling State. The offsets described in clauses "Eighth" through "Twelfth" shall then be applied separately against each Original Participating Manufacturer's resulting payment shares from a Settling State by Settling State basis according to each Original Participating Manufacturer's separate entitlement to such offsets, if any, in the calendar year in question. (In the case of payments due from Subsequent Participating Manufacturers, this clause "Seventh" is inapplicable.)

**Eighth:** the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments described in subsection X(i) (and any carry-forwards arising from such offset) shall be applied to the results of clause "Seventh" (in the case of payments due from the Original Participating Manufacturers) or to the results of clause "Sixth" (in the case of payments due from Subsequent Participating Manufacturers);

**Ninth:** the Federal Tobacco Legislation Offset (including any carry-forwards arising from such offset) shall be applied to the results of clause "Eighth";

**Tenth:** the Litigating Releasing Parties Offset (including any carry-forwards arising from such offset) shall be applied to the results of clause "Ninth";

**Eleventh:** the offset for claims over pursuant to subsection XII(a)(4)(B) (including any carry-forwards arising from such offset) shall be applied to the results of clause "Tenth";

**Twelfth:** the offset for claims over pursuant to subsection XII(a)(8) (including any carry-forwards arising from such offset) shall be applied to the results of clause "Eleventh"; and

**Thirteenth:** in the case of payments to which clause "Fifth" applies, the Settling States' allocated shares of the payments due from each Participating Manufacturer (as such shares have been determined in step (E) of clause "Seventh" in the case of payments from the Original Participating Manufacturers or in clause "Sixth" in the case of payments from the Subsequent Participating Manufacturers, and have been reduced by clauses "Eighth" through "Twelfth") shall be added together to state the aggregate payment obligation of each Participating Manufacturer with respect to the payments in question. (In the case of a payment to which clause "Fifth" does not apply, the aggregate payment obligation of each Participating Manufacturer with respect to the payment in question shall be stated by the results of clause "Eighth.")

#### X. EFFECT OF FEDERAL TOBACCO-RELATED LEGISLATION

(a) If federal tobacco-related legislation is enacted after the MSA Execution Date and on or before November 30, 2002, and if such legislation provides for payment(s) by any Original Participating Manufacturer (whether by settlement payment, tax or any other means), all or part of which are actually made available to a Settling State ("Federal Funds"), such Original Participating Manufacturer shall receive a continuing dollar-for-dollar offset for any and all amounts that are paid by such Original Participating Manufacturer pursuant to such legislation and actually made available to such Settling State (except as described in subsections (b) and (c) below). Such offset shall be applied against the applicable Original Participating Manufacturer's share (determined as described in step E of clause "Seventh" of subsection IX(i)) of such Settling State's Allocated Payment, up to the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment (as such share had been reduced by adjustment, if any, pursuant to the NPM Adjustment and has been reduced by offset, if any, pursuant to the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments). Such offset shall be made against such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of the first Allocated Payment due after such Federal Funds are first available for receipt by such Settling State. In the event that such offset would in any given year exceed such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment: (1) the offset to which such Original Participating Manufacturer is entitled under this section in such year shall be the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment, and (2) all amounts not offset by reason of subsection (1) shall carry forward and be offset in the following year(s) until all such amounts have been offset.

(b) The offset described in subsection (a) shall apply only to that portion of Federal Funds, if any, that are either unrestricted as to their use, or restricted to any form of health care or to any use related to tobacco (including, but not limited to, tobacco education, cessation, control or enforcement) (other than that portion of Federal Funds, if any, that is specifically applicable to tobacco growers or communities dependent on the production of tobacco or Tobacco Products). Provided, however, that the offset described in subsection (a) shall not apply to that portion of Federal Funds, if any, whose receipt by such Settling State is conditioned upon or appropriately allocable to:

- (1) the relinquishment of rights or benefits under this Agreement (including the Consent Decree), or
- (2) actions or expenditures by such Settling State, unless:

(A) such Settling State chooses to undertake such action or expenditure;

(B) such actions or expenditures do not impose significant constraints on public policy choices; or

(C) such actions or expenditures are both: (i) related to health care or tobacco (including, but not limited to, tobacco education, cessation, control or enforcement) and (ii) do not require such Settling State to expend state limited to, tobacco education, cessation, control or enforcement) and (ii) do not require such Settling State to expend state limited funds in an amount that is significant in relation to the amount of the Federal Funds made available to such Settling State.



(c) Subject to the provisions of subsection IX(d)(3), Subsequent Participating Manufacturers shall be entitled to the offset described in this section X to the extent that they are required to pay Federal Funds that would give rise to an offset under subsections (a) and (b) if paid by an Original Participating Manufacturer.

(d) Nothing in this section X shall (1) reduce the payments to be made to the Settling States under this Agreement other than those described in subsection IX(c) (or corresponding payments under subsection IX(d)) of this Agreement; or (2) alter the Allocable Share used to determine each Settling State's share of the payments described in subsection IX(c) (or corresponding payments under subsection IX(d)) of this Agreement. Nothing in this section X is intended to or shall reduce the total amounts payable by the Participating Manufacturers to the Settling States under this Agreement by an amount greater than the amount of Federal Funds that the Settling States could elect to receive.

#### XI. CALCULATION AND DISBURSEMENT OF PAYMENTS

##### (a) Independent Auditor to Make All Calculations.

(1) Beginning with payments due in the year 2000, an Independent Auditor shall calculate and determine the amount of all payments owed pursuant to this Agreement, the adjustments, reductions and offsets thereto (and all resulting carry-forwards, if any), the allocation of such payments, adjustments, reductions, offsets and carry-forwards among the Participating Manufacturers, and among the Settling States, and shall perform all other calculations in connection with the foregoing (including, but not limited to, determining Market Share, Relative Market Share, Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share and Adjusted Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share). The Independent Auditor shall promptly collect all information necessary to make such calculations and determinations. Each Participating Manufacturer and each Settling State shall provide the Independent Auditor, as promptly as practicable, with information in its possession or readily available to it necessary for the Independent Auditor to perform such calculations. The Independent Auditor shall agree to maintain the confidentiality of all such information, except that the Independent Auditor may provide such information to Participating Manufacturers and the Settling States as set forth in this Agreement. The Participating Manufacturers and the Settling States agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

(2) Payments due from the Original Participating Manufacturers prior to January 1, 2000 (other than the first payment due pursuant to subsection IX(b)) shall be based on the 1998 Relative Market Shares of the Original Participating Manufacturers or, if the Original Participating Manufacturers are unable to agree on such Relative Market Shares, on their 1997 Relative Market Shares specified in Exhibit Q.

(b) Identity of Independent Auditor. The Independent Auditor shall be a major, nationally recognized, certified public accounting firm jointly selected by agreement of the Original Participating Manufacturers and those Attorneys General of the Settling States who are members of the NAAG executive committee, who shall jointly retain the power to replace the Independent Auditor and appoint its successor. Fifty percent of the costs and fees of the Independent Auditor (but in no event more than \$500,000 per annum), shall be paid by the Fund described in Exhibit J hereto, and the balance of such costs and fees shall be paid by the Original Participating Manufacturers, allocated among them according to their Relative Market Shares. The agreement retaining the Independent Auditor shall provide that the Independent Auditor shall perform the functions specified for it in this Agreement, and that it shall do so in the manner specified in this Agreement.

(c) Resolution of Disputes. Any dispute, controversy or claim arising out of or relating to calculations performed by, or any determinations made by, the Independent Auditor (including, without limitation, any dispute concerning the operation or application of any of the adjustments, reductions, offsets, carry-forwards and allocations described in subsection IX(f) or subsection XI(f)) shall be submitted to binding arbitration before a panel of three neutral arbitrators, each of whom shall be a former Article III Federal Judge. Each of the two sides to the dispute shall select one arbitrator. The two arbitrators so selected shall select the third arbitrator. The arbitration shall be governed by the United States Federal Arbitration Act.

##### (d) General Provisions as to Calculation of Payments.

(1) Not less than 90 days prior to the scheduled due date of any payment due pursuant to this Agreement ("Payment Due Date"), the Independent Auditor shall deliver to each other Notice Party a detailed itemization of all information required by the Independent Auditor to complete its calculation of (A) the amount due from each Participating Manufacturer with respect to such payment, and (B) the portion of such amount allocable to each entity for whose benefit such payment is to be made. To the extent practicable, the Independent Auditor shall specify in such itemization which Notice Party is requested to produce which information. Each Participating Manufacturer and each Settling State shall use its best efforts to promptly supply all of the required information that is within its possession or is readily available to it to the Independent Auditor, and in any event not less than 50 days prior to such Payment Due Date. Such best efforts obligation shall be continuing in the case of information that comes within the possession of, or becomes readily available to, any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer after the date 50 days prior to such Payment Due Date.

(2) Not less than 40 days prior to the Payment Due Date, the Independent Auditor shall deliver to each other Notice Party (A) detailed preliminary calculations ("Preliminary Calculations") of the amount due from each Participating Manufacturer and of the amount allocable to each entity for whose benefit such payment is to be made, showing all applicable offsets, adjustments, reductions, and carry-forwards and setting forth all the information on which the Independent Auditor relied in preparing such Preliminary Calculations, and (B) a statement of any information still required by the Independent Auditor to complete its calculations.

(3) Not less than 30 days prior to the Payment Due Date, any Participating Manufacturer or any Settling State that disputes any aspect of the Preliminary Calculations (including, but not limited to, disputing the methodology that the Independent Auditor employed, or the information on which the Independent Auditor relied, in preparing such calculations) shall notify each other Notice Party of such dispute, including the reasons and basis therefor.

(4) Not less than 15 days prior to the Payment Due Date, the Independent Auditor shall deliver to each other Notice Party a detailed recalculation (a "Final Calculation") of the amount due from each Participating Manufacturer, the amount allocable to each entity for whose benefit such payment is to be made, and the Account to which such payment is to be credited, explaining any changes from the Preliminary Calculation. The Final Calculation may include estimates of amounts in the circumstances described in subsection (d)(3).

(5) The following provisions shall govern in the event that the information required by the Independent Auditor to complete its calculation is not in its possession by the date as of which the Independent Auditor is required to provide either a Preliminary Calculation or a Final Calculation.

(A) If the information in question is not readily available to any Settling State, any Original Participating Manufacturer or any Subsequent Participating Manufacturer, the Independent Auditor shall employ an assumption as to the missing information producing the minimum amount that is likely to be due with respect to the payment in question, and shall set forth its assumption as to the missing information in its Preliminary Calculation or Final Calculation, whichever is at issue. Any Original Participating Manufacturer, Subsequent Participating Manufacturer or Settling State may dispute any such assumption employed by the Independent Auditor in its Preliminary Calculation in the manner prescribed in subsection (d)(3) or any such assumption employed by the Independent Auditor in its Final Calculation in the manner prescribed in subsection (d)(6). If the missing information becomes available to the Independent Auditor prior to the Payment Due Date, the Independent Auditor shall promptly revise its Preliminary Calculation or Final Calculation (whichever is applicable) and shall promptly provide the revised calculation to each Notice Party, showing the newly available information. If the missing information does not become available to the Independent Auditor prior to the Payment Due Date, the minimum amount calculated by the Independent Auditor pursuant to this subsection (A) shall be paid on the Payment Due Date, subject to disputes pursuant to subsections (d)(6) and (d)(8) and without prejudice to a later final determination of the correct amount. If the missing information becomes available to the Independent Auditor after the Payment Due Date, the Independent Auditor shall calculate the correct amount of the payment in question and shall apply any overpayment or underpayment as an offset or additional payment in the manner described in subsection (f).

(B) If the information in question is readily available to a Settling State, Original Participating Manufacturer or Subsequent Participating Manufacturer, but such Settling State, Original Participating Manufacturer or Subsequent Participating Manufacturer does not supply such information to the Independent Auditor, the Independent Auditor shall base the calculation in question on its best estimate of such information, and shall show such estimate in its Preliminary Calculation or Final Calculation, whichever is applicable. Any Original Participating Manufacturer, Subsequent Participating Manufacturer or Settling State (except the entity that withheld the information) may dispute such estimate employed by the Independent Auditor in its Preliminary Calculation in the manner prescribed in subsection (d)(3) or such estimate employed by the Independent Auditor in its Final Calculation in the manner prescribed in subsection (d)(6). If the withheld information is not made available to the Independent Auditor more than 30 days prior to the Payment Due Date, the estimate employed by the Independent Auditor (as revised by the Independent Auditor in light of any dispute filed pursuant to the preceding sentence) shall govern the amounts to be paid on the Payment Due Date, subject to disputes pursuant to subsection (d)(6) and without prejudice to a later final determination of the correct amount. In the event that the withheld information subsequently becomes available, the Independent Auditor shall calculate the correct amount and shall apply any overpayment or underpayment as an offset or additional payment in the manner described in subsection (f).

(6) Not less than five days prior to the Payment Due Date, each Participating Manufacturer and each Settling State shall deliver to each Notice Party a statement indicating whether it disputes the Independent Auditor's Final Calculation and, if so, the disputed and undisputed amounts and the basis for the dispute. Except to the extent a Participating Manufacturer or a Settling State delivers a statement indicating the existence of a dispute by such date, the amounts set forth in the Independent Auditor's Final Calculation shall be paid on the Payment Due Date. Provided, however, that (A) in the event that the Independent Auditor revises its Final Calculation within five days of the Payment Due Date as provided in subsection (5)(A) due to receipt of previously missing information, a Participating Manufacturer or Settling State may dispute such revision pursuant to the procedure set forth in this subsection (6) at any time prior to the Payment Due Date; and (B) prior to the date four years after the Payment Due Date, neither failure to dispute a calculation made by the Independent Auditor nor actual agreement with any calculation or payment to the Escrow Agent or to another payee shall waive any Participating Manufacturer's or Settling State's rights to dispute any payment (or the Independent Auditor's calculations with respect to any payment) after the Payment Due Date. No Participating Manufacturer and no Settling State shall have a right to raise any dispute with respect to any payment or calculation after the date four years after such payment's Payment Due Date.

(7) Each Participating Manufacturer shall be obligated to pay by the Payment Due Date the undisputed portion of the total amount calculated as due from it by the Independent Auditor's Final Calculation. Failure to pay such portion shall render the Participating Manufacturer liable for interest thereon as provided in subsection IX(b) of this Agreement, in addition to any other remedy available under this Agreement.

(8) As to any disputed portion of the total amount calculated to be due pursuant to the Final Calculation, any Participating Manufacturer that by the Payment Due Date pays such disputed portion into the Disputed Payments Account (as defined in the Escrow Agreement) shall not be liable for interest thereon even if the amount disputed was in fact properly due and owing. Any Participating Manufacturer that by the Payment Due Date does not pay such disputed portion into the Disputed Payments Account shall be liable for interest as provided in subsection IX(b) if the amount disputed was in fact properly due and owing.

(9) On the same date that it makes any payment pursuant to this Agreement, each Participating Manufacturer shall deliver a notice to each other Notice Party showing the amount of such payment and the Account to which such payment is to be credited.

(10) On the first Business Day after the Payment Due Date, the Escrow Agent shall deliver to each other Notice Party a statement showing the amounts received by it from each Participating Manufacturer and the Accounts credited with such amounts.

(c) **General Treatment of Payments.** The Escrow Agent may disburse amounts from an Account only if permitted, and only at such time as permitted, by this Agreement and the Escrow Agreement. No amounts may be disbursed to a Settling State other than funds credited to such Settling State's State-Specific Account (as defined in the Escrow Agreement). The Independent Auditor, in delivering payment instructions to the Escrow Agent, shall specify: the amount to be paid; the Account or Accounts from which such payment is to be disbursed; the payee of such payment (which may be an Account); and the Business Day on which such payment is to be made by the Escrow Agent. Except as expressly provided in subsection (f) below, in no event may any amount be disbursed from any Account prior to Final Approval.

(f) **Disbursements and Charges Not Contingent on Final Approval.** Funds may be disbursed from Accounts without regard to the occurrence of Final Approval in the following circumstances and in the following manner:

(1) **Payments of Federal and State Taxes.** Federal, state, local or other taxes imposed with respect to the amounts credited to the Accounts shall be paid from such amounts. The Independent Auditor shall prepare and file any tax returns required to be filed with respect to the escrow. All taxes required to be paid shall be allocated to and charged against the Accounts on a reasonable basis to be determined by the Independent Auditor. Upon receipt of written instructions from the Independent Auditor, the Escrow Agent shall pay such taxes and charge such payments against the Accounts or Accounts specified in those instructions.

(2) **Payments to and from Disputed Payments Account.** The Independent Auditor shall instruct the Escrow Agent to credit funds from an Account to the Disputed Payments Account when a dispute arises as to such funds, and shall instruct the Escrow Agent to credit funds from the Disputed Payments Account to the appropriate payee when such dispute is resolved with finality. The Independent Auditor shall provide the Notice Parties not less than 10 Business Days prior notice before instructing the Escrow Agent to disburse funds from the Disputed Payments Account.

(3) **Payments to a State-Specific Account.** Promptly following the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in any Settling State, such Settling State and the Original Participating Manufacturers shall notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of such State-Specific Finality and of the portions of the amounts in the Subsection IX(b) Account (First), Subsection IX(b) Account (Subsequent), Subsection IX(c)(1) Account and Subsection IX(c)(2) Account, respectively (as such Accounts are defined in the Escrow Agreement), that are at such time held in such Accounts for the benefit of such Settling State, and which are to be transferred to the appropriate State-Specific Account for such Settling State. If neither the Settling State in question nor any Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such State-Specific Finality by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to make such transfer. If the Settling State in question or any Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such State-Specific Finality by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to credit the amount disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and the undisputed portion to the appropriate State-Specific Account. No amounts may be transferred or credited to a State-Specific Account for the benefit of any State as to which State-Specific Finality has not occurred or to which this Agreement has terminated.

(4) **Payments to Parties other than Particular Settling States.**

(A) Promptly following the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in one Settling State, such Settling State and the Original Participating Manufacturers shall notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in at least one Settling State and of the amounts held in the Subsection IX(b) Account, Subsection IX(c) Account (First), and Subsection IX(c)(2) Account (as such Accounts are defined in the Escrow Agreement), if any. If neither any of the Settling States nor any of the Participating Manufacturers disputes such amounts or the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in one Settling State, by notice delivered to each Notice Party not later than ten Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to disburse the funds held in such Accounts to the Foundation or to the Fund specified in subsection VII(c), as appropriate. If any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such State-Specific Finality by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the

Independent Auditor of the notice described in the second sentence of this subsection (4)(A), the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to credit the amounts disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and to disburse the undisputed portion to the Foundation or to the Fund specified in subsection VII(c), as appropriate.

(B) The Independent Auditor shall instruct the Escrow Agent to disburse funds on deposit in the Subsection VIII(b) Account and Subsection IX(c) Account (as such Accounts are defined in the Escrow Agreement) to NAAG or to the Foundation, as appropriate, within 10 Business Days after the date on which such amounts were credited to such Accounts.

(C) Promptly following the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in Settling States having aggregate Allocable Shares equal to at least 80% of the total aggregate Allocable Shares assigned to all States that were Settling States as of the MSA Execution Date, the Settling States and the Original Participating Manufacturers shall notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of the occurrence of such State-Specific Finality and of the amounts held in the Subsection IX(c) Account (Subsequent) (as such Account is defined in the Escrow Agreement), if any. If neither any of the Settling States nor any of the Participating Manufacturers disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such State-Specific Finality, by notice delivered to each Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer such amounts to the Account to the Foundation. If any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such State-Specific Finality by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to credit the amounts disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and to disburse the undisputed portion to the Foundation.

### (3) Treatment of Payments Following Termination

(A) As to amounts held for Settling States. Promptly upon the termination of this Agreement with respect to any Settling State (whether or not as part of the termination of this Agreement as to all Settling States) such State or any Participating Manufacturer shall notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of such termination and of the amounts held in the Subsection IX(b) Account (First), the Subsection IX(b) Account (Subsequent), the Subsection IX(c)(1) Account, the Subsection IX(c)(2) Account, and the State-Specific Account for the benefit of such Settling State. If neither the State in question nor any Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer such amounts to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contributions of such funds). If the State in question or any Participating Manufacturer disputes the amounts held in the Accounts or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the second sentence of this subsection (5)(A), the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer the amount disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and the undisputed portion to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contributions of such funds).

(B) As to amounts held for others. If this Agreement is terminated with respect to all of the Settling States, the Original Participating Manufacturers shall promptly notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of such termination and of the amounts held in the Subsection IX(b) Account, the Subsection IX(c) Account (First), the Subsection VIII(b) Account, the Subsection VIII(c) Account and the Subsection IX(c) Account. If neither any such State nor any Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer such amounts to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contributions of such funds). If any such State or any Participating Manufacturer disputes the amounts held in the Accounts or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the second sentence of this subsection (5)(B), the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer the amount disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and transfer the undisputed portion to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contributions of such funds).

(C) As to amounts held in the Subsection IX(c) Account (Subsequent). If this Agreement is terminated with respect to Settling States having aggregate Allocable Shares equal to more than 20% of the total aggregate Allocable Shares assigned to those States that were Settling States as of the MSA Execution Date, the Original Participating Manufacturers shall promptly notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of such termination and of the amounts held in the Subsection IX(c) Account (Subsequent) (as defined in the Escrow Agreement), if any. If neither any such State with respect to which this Agreement has terminated nor any Participating Manufacturer disputes such amounts or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the preceding sentence, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer such amounts to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contributions of such funds). If any such State or any Participating Manufacturer disputes the amounts held in the Accounts or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the second sentence of this subsection (5)(C), the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer the amount disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and transfer the undisputed portion to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contributions of such funds).

any Participating Manufacturer disputes the amounts held in the Account or the occurrence of such termination by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of the notice described in the second sentence of this subsection (5)(C); the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to credit the amount disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and transfer the undisputed portion to the Participating Manufacturers (on the basis of their respective contribution of such funds).

(6) **Determination of amounts paid or held for the benefit of each individual Settling State.** For purposes of subsections (D)(3), (D)(5)(A) and (D)(2), the portion of a payment that is made or held for the benefit of each individual Settling State shall be determined: (A) in the case of a payment credited to the Subsection IX(h) Account (First) or the Subsection IX(h) Account (Subsequent), by allocating the results of clause "Eight", of subsection IX(G), among those Settling States who were Settling States at the time that the amount of such payment was calculated, pro rata in proportion to their respective Allocable Shares; and (B) in the case of a payment credited to the Subsection IX(c)(1) Account or the Subsection IX(c)(2) Account, by the results of clause "Twelfth", of subsection IX(G) for each individual Settling State. Provided, however, that, solely for purposes of subsection (D)(3), the Settling States may by unanimous agreement agree on a different method of allocation of amounts held in the Accounts identified in this subsection (D)(6).

(g) **Payments to be Made After Final Approval.** Promptly following the occurrence of Final Approval, the Settling States and the Original Participating Manufacturers shall notify the Independent Auditor of such occurrence. The Independent Auditor shall promptly thereafter notify each Notice Party of the occurrence of Final Approval and of the amounts held in the State-Specific Accounts. If neither any of the Settling States nor any of the Participating Manufacturers disputes such amounts, disputes the occurrence of Final Approval or claims that this Agreement has terminated as to any Settling State for whose benefit the funds are held in a State-Specific Account, by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of such notice of Final Approval, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to credit the amounts disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and to disburse the undisputed portion to (or as directed by) the respective Settling States. If any Notice Party disputes such amounts or the occurrence of Final Approval, or claims that this Agreement has terminated as to any Settling State for whose benefit the funds are held in a State-Specific Account, by notice delivered to each other Notice Party not later than 10 Business Days after delivery by the Independent Auditor of such notice of Final Approval, the Independent Auditor shall promptly instruct the Escrow Agent to credit the amounts disputed to the Disputed Payments Account and to disburse the undisputed portion to (or as directed by) the respective Settling States.

(h) **Applicability to Section XVII Payments.** This section XI shall not be applicable to payments made pursuant to section XVII; provided, however, that the Independent Auditor shall be responsible for calculating Relative Market Shares in connection with such payments, and the Independent Auditor shall promptly provide the results of such calculation to any Original Participating Manufacturer or Settling State that requests it do so.

(i) **Miscellaneous or Disputed Payments:**

(1) **Underpayments:**

(A) If information becomes available to the Independent Auditor not later than four years after a Payment Due Date, and such information shows that any Participating Manufacturer was instructed to make an insufficient payment on such date ("original payment"), the Independent Auditor shall promptly determine the additional payment owed by such Participating Manufacturer and the allocation of such additional payment among the applicable payees. The Independent Auditor shall then reduce such additional payment (up to the full amount of such additional payment) by any adjustments or offsets that were available to the Participating Manufacturer in question against the original payment at the time it was made (and have not since been used) but which such Participating Manufacturer was unable to use against such original payment because such adjustments or offsets were in excess of such original payment (provided that any adjustments or offsets used against such additional payment shall reduce on a dollar-for-dollar basis any remaining carry-forward held by such Participating Manufacturer with respect to such adjustment or offset). The Independent Auditor shall then add interest at the Prime Rate (calculated from the Payment Due Date in question) to the additional payment (as reduced pursuant to the preceding sentence), except that where the additional payment owed by a Participating Manufacturer is the result of an underpayment by such Participating Manufacturer caused by such Participating Manufacturer's withholding of information as described in subsection (D)(5)(B), the applicable interest rate shall be that described in subsection IX(h). The Independent Auditor shall promptly give notice of the additional payment owed by the Participating Manufacturer in question (as reduced and/or increased as described above) to all Notice Parties, showing the new information and all calculations. Upon receipt of such notice, any Participating Manufacturer or Settling State may dispute the Independent Auditor's calculations in the manner described in subsection (D)(3), and the Independent Auditor shall promptly notify each Notice Party of any subsequent revisions to its calculations. Not more than 15 days after receipt of such notice (or, if the Independent Auditor revises its calculations, not more than 15 days after receipt of the revisions), any Participating Manufacturer and any Settling State may dispute the Independent Auditor's calculations in the manner prescribed in subsection (D)(6). Failure to dispute the Independent Auditor's calculations in this manner shall constitute agreement with the Independent Auditor's calculations, subject to the limitations set forth in subsection (D)(6). Payment of the undisputed portion of an additional payment shall be made to the Escrow Agent not more than 20 days after receipt of the notice described in this subsection (A) (or, if the Independent Auditor revises its calculations, not more than 20 days after receipt of the revisions). Failure to pay such portion shall render the Participating Manufacturer liable for interest thereon as provided in subsection IX(h). Payment of the undisputed portion shall be governed by subsection (D)(8).

(B) To the extent a dispute as to a prior payment is resolved with finality against a Participating Manufacturer: (i) in the case where the disputed amount has been paid into the Disputed Payments Account pursuant to subsection (D)(3), the Independent Auditor shall instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer such amount to the applicable payee Account(s); (ii) in the case where the disputed amount has not been paid into the Disputed Payments Account and the dispute was identified prior to the Payment Due Date in question by delivery of a statement pursuant to subsection (D)(6) identifying such dispute, the Independent Auditor shall calculate interest on the disputed amount from the Payment Due Date in question (the applicable interest rate to be that provided in subsection IX(h)) and the allocation of such amount and interest among the applicable payees, and shall provide notice of the amount owed (and the identity of the payor and payees) to all Notice Parties; and (iii) in all other cases, the procedure described in subsection (ii) shall apply, except that the applicable interest rate shall be the Prime Rate.

(2) **Overpayments:**

(A) If a dispute as to a prior payment is resolved with finality in favor of a Participating Manufacturer where the disputed amount has been paid into the Disputed Payments Account pursuant to subsection (D)(3), the Independent Auditor shall instruct the Escrow Agent to transfer such amount to such Participating Manufacturer.

(B) If information becomes available to the Independent Auditor not later than four years after a Payment Due Date showing that a Participating Manufacturer made an overpayment on such date, or if a dispute as to a prior payment is resolved with finality in favor of a Participating Manufacturer where the disputed amount has been paid but not into the Disputed Payments Account, such Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled to a continuing dollar-for-dollar offset as follows:

(i) offsets under this subsection (B) shall be applied only against eligible payments to be made by such Participating Manufacturer after the entitlement to the offset arises. The eligible payments shall be: in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection IX(t) or IX(c)(1), subsequent payments under any of such subsections; in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection IX(c)(2), subsequent payments under such subsection or, if no subsequent payments are to be made under such subsection, subsequent payments under subsection IX(c)(1); in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection IX(e), subsequent payments under such subsection or subsection IX(c); in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection IX(c), subsequent payments under such subsection or, if no subsequent payments are to be made under such subsection, subsequent payments under any of subsection IX(c)(1), IX(c)(2) or IX(e); in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection VII(b), subsequent payments under such subsection or, if no subsequent payments are to be made under such subsection, subsequent payments under either subsection IX(c)(1) or IX(c)(2); and, in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection VIII(c), subsequent payments under either subsection IX(c)(1) or IX(c)(2); and, in the case of offsets arising from payments under subsection IX(i), subsequent payments under such subsection (consistent with the provisions of this subsection (B)(i)).

(ii) in the case of offsets to be applied against payments under subsection IX(c), the offset to be applied shall be apportioned among the Settling States pro rata in proportion to their respective shares of such payments, as such respective shares are determined pursuant to step E of clause "Seventh" (in the case of payments due from the Original Participating Manufacturers) or clause "Sixth" (in the case of payments due from the Subsequent Participating Manufacturers) of subsection IX(f) (except where the offset arises from an overpayment applicable solely to a particular Settling State).

(iii) the total amount of the offset to which a Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled shall be the full amount of the overpayment it made, together with interest calculated from the time of the overpayment to the Payment Due Date of the first eligible payment against which the offset may be applied. The applicable interest rate shall be the Prime Rate (except that, where the overpayment is the result of a Settling State's withholding of information as described in subsection (D)(5)(B), the applicable interest rate shall be that described in subsection IX(h)).

(iv) an offset under this subsection (B) shall be applied up to the full amount of the Participating Manufacturer's share (in the case of payments due from Original Participating Manufacturers, determined as described in the first sentence of clause "Seventh" of subsection IX(f) (or, in the case of payments pursuant to subsection IX(c), step D of such clause)) of the eligible payment in question, as such payment has been adjusted and reduced pursuant to clauses "First" through "Sixth" of subsection IX(G), to the extent each such clause is applicable to the payment in question. In the event that the offset to which a Participating Manufacturer is entitled under this subsection (B) would exceed such Participating Manufacturer's share of the eligible payment against which it is being applied (or, in the case where such offset arises from an overpayment applicable solely to a particular Settling State, the portion of such payment that is made for the benefit of such Settling State), the offset shall be the full amount of such Participating Manufacturer's share of such payment and all amounts not offset shall carry forward and be offset against subsequent eligible payments until all such amounts have been offset.

(f) **Payments After Adjudicable Condition.** To the extent that a payment is made after the occurrence of all applicable conditions for the disbursement of such payment to the payee(s) in question, the Independent Auditor shall instruct the Escrow Agent to disburse such payment promptly following its deposit.

## XII. SETTLING STATES' RELEASE, DISCHARGE AND COVENANT

### (a) Release:

(1) Upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in a Settling State, such Settling State shall absolutely and unconditionally release and forever discharge all Released Parties from all Released Claims that the Releasing Parties directly, indirectly, derivatively or in any other capacity ever had, now have, or hereafter can, shall or may have.

(2) Notwithstanding the foregoing, this release and discharge shall not apply to any defendant in a lawsuit settled pursuant to this Agreement (other than a Participating Manufacturer) unless and until such defendant releases the Releasing Parties (and delivers to the Attorney General of the applicable Settling State a copy of such release) from any and all Claims of such defendant relating to the prosecution of such lawsuit.

(3) Each Settling State (for itself and for the Releasing Parties) further covenants and agrees that it (and the Releasing Parties) shall not after the occurrence of State-Specific Finality sue or seek to establish civil liability against any Released Party based, in whole or in part, upon any of the Released Claims, and further agrees that such covenant and agreement shall be a complete defense to any such civil action or proceeding.

(4) (A) Each Settling State (for itself and for the Releasing Parties) further agrees that, if a Released Claim by a Releasing Party against any person or entity that is not a Released Party (a "non-Released Party") results in or in any way gives rise to a claim-over (on any theory whatever other than a claim based on an express written indemnity agreement) by such non-Released Party against any Released Party (and such Released Party gives notice to the applicable Settling State within 30 days of the service of such claim-over (or within 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, whichever is later) and prior to entry into any settlement of such claim-over), the Releasing Party: (i) shall reduce or credit against any judgment or settlement such non-Released Party may obtain against such non-Released Party the full amount of any judgment or settlement with such non-Released Party, obtain from such non-Released Party for the benefit of such Released Party a satisfaction in full of such non-Released Party's judgment or settlement against the Released Party.

(B) Each Settling State further agrees that in the event that the provisions of subsection (4)(A) do not fully eliminate any and all liability of any Original Participating Manufacturer (or of any person or entity that is a Released Party) by virtue of its relation to any Original Participating Manufacturer with respect to claims-over (on any theory whatever other than a claim based on an express written indemnity agreement) by any non-Released Party to recover in whole or in part any liability (whether direct or indirect, or whether by way of settlement (to the extent that such Released Party has given notice to the applicable Settling State within 30 days of the service of such claim-over (or within 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, whichever is later) and prior to entry into any settlement of such claim-over) or otherwise) of such non-Released Party to any Releasing Party arising out of any Released Claim, such Original Participating Manufacturer (or by any person or entity that is a Released Party) by virtue of its relation to such Original Participating Manufacturer on any such liability against such Original Participating Manufacturer's share (determined as described in step E of clause "Seventh" of subsection IX(G)) of the applicable Settling State's Allocated Payment, up to the full amount of such liability have been offset. In the event that the offset under this subsection (4) with respect to a particular Settling State (as such share had been reduced by adjustment, if any, pursuant to the NPM Adjustment, and has been reduced by offsets, if any, pursuant to the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments, the Federal Tobacco Releasing Parties Offset); (i) the offset to which such Original Participating Manufacturer is entitled under this subsection in such year shall be the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment; and (ii) all amounts not offset by reason of subsection (i) shall carry forward and be offset in the following year(s) until all such amounts have been offset.

(C) Each Settling State further agrees that, subject to the provisions of section IX(D)(3), each Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled to the offset described in subsection (B) above to the extent that it (or any person or entity that is a Released Party) by virtue of its relationship with such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer has paid on liability that would give rise to an offset under such subsection if paid by an Original Participating Manufacturer.

(5) This release and covenant shall not operate to interfere with a Settling State's ability to enforce as against any Participating Manufacturer the provisions of this Agreement, or with the Court's ability to enter the Consent Decree or to maintain continuing jurisdiction to enforce such Consent Decree pursuant to the terms thereof. Provided, however, that neither subsection III(e) or III(f) of this Agreement nor subsection V(A) or V(B) of the Consent Decree shall create a right to challenge the continuation, after the MSA Execution Date, of any advertising content, claim or slogan (other than use of a Cartoon) that was not unlawful prior to the MSA Execution Date.

(6) The Settling States do not purport to waive or release any claims on behalf of Indian tribes.

(7) The Settling States do not waive or release any criminal liability based on federal, state or local law.

(8) Notwithstanding the foregoing (and the definition of Released Parties), this release and covenant shall not apply to retailers, suppliers or distributors to the extent of any liability arising from the sale or distribution of Tobacco Products of, or the supply of component parts of Tobacco Products to, any non-Released Party.

(A) Each Settling State (for itself and for the Releasing Parties) agrees that, if a claim by a Releasing Party against a retailer, supplier or distributor that would be a Released Claim but for the operation of the preceding sentence results in or in any way gives rise to a claim-over (on any theory whatever) by such retailer, supplier or distributor against any Released Party (and such Released Party gives notice to the applicable Settling State within 30 days of the service of such claim-over (or within 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, whichever is later) and prior to entry into any settlement of such claim-over), the Releasing Party: (i) shall reduce or credit against any judgment or settlement such Releasing Party may obtain against such retailer, supplier or distributor the full amount of any judgment or settlement with such retailer, supplier or distributor, obtain from such retailer, supplier or distributor for the benefit of such Released Party a satisfaction in full of such retailer's, supplier's or distributor's judgment or settlement against the Released Party.

(B) Each Settling State further agrees that in the event that the provisions of subsection (8)(A) above do not fully eliminate any and all liability of any Original Participating Manufacturer (or any person or entity that is a Released Party) by virtue of its relationship to an Original Participating Manufacturer with respect to claims-over (on any theory whatever) by any such retailer, supplier or distributor to recover in whole or in part any liability (whether direct or indirect, or whether by way of settlement (to the extent that such Released Party has given notice to the applicable Settling State within 30 days of the service of such claim-over) or otherwise) of such retailer, supplier or distributor to any Releasing Party arising out of any claim that would be a Released Claim but for the operation of the first sentence of this subsection (8), such Original Participating Manufacturer shall receive a continuing dollar-for-dollar offset for any amounts paid by such Original Participating Manufacturer (or by any person or entity that is a Released Party) by virtue of its relation to such Original Participating Manufacturer on any such liability against such Original Participating Manufacturer's share (determined as described in step E of clause "Seventh" of subsection IX(G)) of the applicable Settling State's Allocated Payment, up to the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment each year, until all such amounts paid on such liability have been offset. In the event that the offset under this subsection (8) with respect to a particular Settling State (as such share had been reduced by adjustment, if any, pursuant to the NPM Adjustment, and has been reduced by offsets, if any, pursuant to the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments, the Federal Tobacco Releasing Parties Offset); (i) the offset to which such Original Participating Manufacturer is entitled under this subsection in such year shall be the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment; and (ii) all amounts not offset by reason of clause (i) shall carry forward and be offset in the following year(s) until all such amounts have been offset.

(C) Each Settling State further agrees that, subject to the provisions of subsection IX(D)(3), each Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled to the offset described in subsection (B) above to the extent that it (or any person or entity that is a Released Party) by virtue of its relationship with such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer has paid on liability that would give rise to an offset under such subsection if paid by an Original Participating Manufacturer.

(9) Notwithstanding any provision of law, statutory or otherwise, which provides that a general release does not extend to claims which the creditor does not know or suspect to exist in its favor at the time of executing the release, which if known by it must have materially affected its settlement with the debtor, the releases set forth in this section XII release all Released Claims against the Released Parties, whether known or unknown, foreseen or unforeseen, suspected or unsuspected, that the Releasing Parties may have against the Released Parties, and the Releasing Parties understand and acknowledge the significance and consequences of waiver of any such provision and hereby assume full responsibility for any injuries, damages or losses that the Releasing Parties may incur.

(6) Released Claims Against Released Parties. If a Releasing Party (or any person or entity enumerated in subsection II(pp)) without regard to the power of the Attorney General to release claims of such person or entity nonetheless attempts to maintain a Released Claim against a Released Party, such Released Party shall give written notice of such potential claim to the Attorney General of the applicable Settling State within 30 days of receiving notice of such potential claim (or within 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, whichever is later) (unless such potential claim is being maintained by such Settling State). The Released Party may offer the release and covenant as a complete defense. If it is determined at any point in such action that the release of such claim is unenforceable or invalid for any reason (including, but not limited to, lack of authority to release such claim), the following provisions shall apply:

(1) The Released Party shall take all ordinary and reasonable measures to defend the action fully. The Released Party may settle or enter into a stipulated judgment with respect to the action at any time in its sole discretion, but in such event the offset described in subsection (b)(2) or (b)(3) below shall apply only if the Released Party obtains the Released Attorney General's consent to such settlement or stipulated judgment, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Released Party shall not be entitled to the offset described in subsection (b)(2) or (b)(3) below if such Released Party failed to take ordinary and reasonable measures to defend the action fully.

(2) The following provisions shall apply where the Released Party is an Original Participating Manufacturer (or any person or entity that is a Released Party by virtue of its relationship with an Original Participating Manufacturer):

(A) In the event of a settlement or stipulated judgment, the settlement or stipulated amount shall give rise to a continuing offset as such amount is actually paid against the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share (determined as described in step E of clause "Seventh" of subsection IX(G)) of the applicable Settling State's Allocated Payment until such time as the settlement or stipulated amount is fully credited on a dollar-for-dollar basis.

(B) Judgments (other than a default judgment) against a Released Party in such an action shall, upon payment of such judgment, give rise to an immediate and continuing offset against the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share (determined as described in subsection (A)) of the applicable Settling State's Allocated Payment, until such time as the judgment is fully credited on a dollar-for-dollar basis.

(C) Each Settling State reserves the right to intervene in such an action (unless such action was brought by the Settling State) to the extent authorized by applicable law in order to protect the Settling State's interest under this Agreement. Each Participating Manufacturer agrees not to oppose any such intervention.

(D) In the event that the offset under this subsection (B)(2) with respect to a particular Settling State would in any given year exceed such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Settling State's Allocated Payment (as such share had been reduced by adjustment, if any, pursuant to the NPM Adjustment, and has been reduced by offsets, if any, pursuant to the Federal Tobacco Legislation Offset and the offset for miscalculated or disputed payments); (E) the offset to which such Original Participating Manufacturer is entitled under this subsection (2) in such year shall be the full amount of such Original Participating Manufacturer's share of such Allocated Payment; and (F) all amounts not offset by reason of clause (E) shall carry forward and be offset in the following year(s) until all such amounts have been offset.

(3) The following provisions shall apply where the Released Party is a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer (or any person or entity that is a Released Party by virtue of its relationship with a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer): Subject to the provisions of subsection IX(F)(3), each Subsequent Participating Manufacturer shall be entitled to the offset as described in subsections (2)(A)-(C) above, against payments it otherwise would owe under section IX(I) to the extent that if (or any person or entity that is a Released Party by virtue of its relationship with such Subsequent Participating Manufacturer) has paid on a settlement, stipulated judgment or judgment that would give rise to an offset under such subsections if paid by an Original Participating Manufacturer.

#### XIII. CONSENT DECREES AND DISMISSAL OF CLAIMS

(a) Within 10 days after the MSA Execution Date (or, as to any Settling State identified in the Additional States provision of Exhibit D, concurrently with the filing of its lawsuit), each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer that is a party in any of the lawsuits identified in Exhibit D shall jointly move for a stay of all proceedings in such Settling State's lawsuit with respect to the Participating Manufacturers and all other Released Parties (except any proceeding seeking public disclosure of documents pursuant to subsection IV(b)). Such stay of a Settling State's lawsuit shall be dissolved upon the earlier of the occurrence of State-Specific Finality or termination of this Agreement with respect to such Settling State pursuant to subsection XVIII(u)(1).

(b) Not later than December 11, 1998 (or, as to any Settling State identified in the Additional States provision of Exhibit D, concurrently with the filing of its lawsuit):

(1) each Settling State that is a party to a lawsuit identified in Exhibit D and each Participating Manufacturer will:

(A) tender this Agreement to the Court in such Settling State for its approval; and

(B) tender to the Court in such Settling State for entry a consent decree conforming to the model consent decree attached herein as Exhibit L (revisions or changes to such model consent decree shall be limited to the extent required by state procedural requirements to reflect accurately the factual setting of the case in question, but shall not include any substantive revision to the duties or obligations of any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer, except by agreement of all Original Participating Manufacturers); and

(2) each Settling State shall seek entry of an order of dismissal of claims dismissing with prejudice all claims against the Participating Manufacturers, and any other Released Party in such Settling State's action identified in Exhibit D. Provided, however, that the Settling State is not required to seek entry of such an order in such Settling State's action against such a Released Party (other than a Participating Manufacturer) unless and until such Released Party has released the Released Parties (and delivered to the Attorney General of such Settling State a copy of such release) (which release shall be effective upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in such Settling State, and shall recite that in the event this Agreement is terminated with respect to such Settling State pursuant to subsection XVIII(u)(1) the Released Party agrees that the order of dismissal shall be null and void and of no effect) from any and all Claims of such Released Party relating to the prosecution of such action as provided in subsection XII(a)(2).

#### XIV. PARTICIPATING MANUFACTURERS' DISMISSAL OF RELATED LAWSUITS

(a) Upon State-Specific Finality in a Settling State, each Participating Manufacturer will dismiss without prejudice (and without costs and fees) the lawsuit(s) listed in Exhibit M pending in such Settling State in which the Participating Manufacturer is a plaintiff. Within 10 days after the MSA Execution Date, each Participating Manufacturer and such Settling State that is a party in any of the lawsuits listed in Exhibit M shall jointly move for a stay of all proceedings in such lawsuit. Such stay of a lawsuit against a Settling State shall be dissolved upon the earlier of the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in such Settling State or termination of this Agreement with respect to such Settling State pursuant to subsection XVIII(u)(1).

(b) Upon State-Specific Finality in a Settling State, each Participating Manufacturer will release and discharge any and all monetary Claims against such Settling State and any of such Settling State's officers, employees, agents, administrators, representatives, officials acting in their official capacity, agencies, departments, commissions, divisions and counsel relating to or in connection with the lawsuit(s) commenced by the Attorney General of such Settling State identified in Exhibit D.

(c) Upon State-Specific Finality in a Settling State, each Participating Manufacturer will release and discharge any and all monetary Claims against all subdivisions (political or otherwise, including, but not limited to, municipalities, counties, parishes, villages, unincorporated districts and hospital districts) of such Settling State, and any of their officers, employees, agents, administrators, representatives, officials acting in their official capacity, agencies, departments, commissions, divisions and counsel arising out of Claims that have been waived and released with continuing full force and effect pursuant to section XII of this Agreement.

#### XV. VOLUNTARY ACT OF THE PARTIES

The Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers acknowledge and agree that this Agreement is voluntarily entered into by each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer as the result of arm's-length negotiations, and each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer was represented by counsel in deciding to enter into this Agreement. Each Participating Manufacturer further acknowledges that it understands that certain provisions of this Agreement may require it to act or refrain from acting in a manner that could otherwise give rise to state or federal constitutional challenges and that, by voluntarily consenting to this Agreement, it (and the Tobacco-Related Organizations (or any trade associations formed or controlled by any Participating Manufacturer) waives for purposes of performance of this Agreement any and all claims that the provisions of this Agreement violate the state or federal constitutions. Provided, however, that nothing in the foregoing shall constitute a waiver as to the entry of any court order (or any interpretation thereof) that would operate to limit the exercise of any constitutional right except to the extent of the restrictions, limitations or obligations expressly agreed to in this Agreement or the Consent Decree.

#### XVI. CONSTRUCTION

(a) No Settling State or Participating Manufacturer shall be considered the drafter of this Agreement or any Consent Decree, or any provision of either, for the purpose of any statute, case law or rule of interpretation or construction that would or might cause any provision to be construed against the drafter.

(b) Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed as approval by the Settling States of any Participating Manufacturer's business organizations, operations, acts or practices, and no Participating Manufacturer may make any representation to the contrary.

#### XVII. RECOVERY OF COSTS AND ATTORNEYS' FEES

(a) The Original Participating Manufacturers agree that, with respect to any Settling State in which the Court has approved this Agreement and the Consent Decree, they shall severally reimburse the following "Governmental Entities": (1) the office of the Attorney General of such Settling State; (2) the office of the governmental prosecuting authority for any political subdivision of such Settling State with a lawsuit pending against any Participating Manufacturer as of July 1, 1998 (as identified in Exhibit N) that has released such Settling State and such Participating Manufacturer(s) from any and all Released Claims (a "Litigating Political Subdivision"); and (3) other appropriate agencies of such Settling State and such Litigating Political Subdivision, for reasonable costs and expenses incurred in connection with the litigation or resolution of claims asserted by or against the Participating Manufacturers in the actions set forth in Exhibits D, M and N; provided that such costs and expenses are of the same nature as costs and expenses for which the Original Participating Manufacturers would reimburse their own counsel or agents (but not including costs and expenses relating to lobbying activities).

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers further agree severally to pay the Governmental Entities in any Settling State in which State-Specific Finality has occurred an amount sufficient to compensate such Governmental Entities for time reasonably expended by attorneys and paralegals employed in such offices in connection with the litigation or resolution of claims asserted against or by the Participating Manufacturers in the actions identified in Exhibits D, M and N (but not including time relating to lobbying activities), such amount to be calculated based upon hourly rates equal to the market rate in such Settling State for private attorneys and paralegals of equivalent experience and seniority.

(c) Such Governmental Entities seeking payment pursuant to subsection (a) and/or (b) shall provide the Original Participating Manufacturers with an appropriately documented statement of all costs, expenses and attorney and paralegal time for which payment is sought, and, solely with respect to payments sought pursuant to subsection (b), shall do so no earlier than the date on which State-Specific Finality occurs in such Settling State. All amounts to be paid pursuant to

subsections (a) and (b) shall be subject to reasonable verification if requested by any Original Participating Manufacturer; provided, however, that nothing contained in this subsection (c) shall constitute, cause, or require the performance of any act that would constitute any waiver (in whole or in part) of any attorney-client privilege, work product protection or common interest/joint prosecution privilege. All such amounts to be paid pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) shall be subject to an aggregate cap of \$150 million for all Settling States, shall be paid promptly following submission of the appropriate documentation (and the completion of any verification process), shall be paid separately and apart from any other amounts due pursuant to this Agreement, and shall be paid severally by each Original Participating Manufacturer according to its Relative Market Share. All amounts to be paid pursuant to subsection (b) shall be paid to such Governmental Entities in the order in which State-Specific Finality has occurred in such Settling States (subject to the \$150 million aggregate cap).

(d) The Original Participating Manufacturers agree that, upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in a Settling State, they will severally pay reasonable attorneys' fees to the private outside counsel, if any, retained by such Settling State (and each Litigating Political Subdivision, if any, within such Settling State) in connection with the respective actions identified in Exhibits D, M and N and who are designated in Exhibit S for each Settling State by the relevant Attorney General (and for each Litigating Political Subdivision, as later certified in writing to the Original Participating Manufacturers by the relevant governmental prosecuting authority of each Litigating Political Subdivision) as having been retained by and having represented such Settling State (or such Litigating Political Subdivision), in accordance with the terms described in the Model Fee Payment Agreement attached as Exhibit O.

#### XVIII. MISCELLANEOUS

(a) **Effect of Current or Future Law.** If any current or future law includes obligations or prohibitions applying to Tobacco Product Manufacturers related to any of the provisions of this Agreement, each Participating Manufacturer shall comply with this Agreement unless compliance with this Agreement would violate such law.

(b) **Limited Most-Favored Nation Provision.**

(1) If any Participating Manufacturer enters into any future settlement agreement of other litigation comparable to any of the actions identified in Exhibit D brought by a non-foreign governmental plaintiff other than the federal government ("Future Settlement Agreement"):

(A) before October 1, 2000, on overall terms more favorable to such governmental plaintiff than the overall terms of this Agreement (after due consideration of relevant differences in jurisdiction, population, or other appropriate factors), then, unless a majority of the Settling States determines that the overall terms of the Future Settlement Agreement are not more favorable than the overall terms of this Agreement, the overall terms of this Agreement will be revised so that the Settling States will obtain treatment with respect to such Participating Manufacturer at least as relatively favorable as the overall terms provided to any such governmental plaintiff; provided, however, that as to economic terms this Agreement shall not be revised based on any such Future Settlement Agreement if such Future Settlement Agreement is entered into after: (i) the impeachment of the jury (or, in the event of a non-jury trial, the commencement of trial) in such litigation or any severed or bifurcated portion thereof; or (ii) any court order or judicial determination relating to such litigation that (x) grants judgment (in whole or in part) against such Participating Manufacturer; or (y) grants injunctive or other relief that affects the assets or on-going business activities of such Participating Manufacturer; or (z) grants injunctive or other relief that affects the assets or on-going business activities of such Participating Manufacturer; in a manner other than as expressly provided for in this Agreement; or

(B) on or after October 1, 2000, on non-economic terms more favorable to such governmental plaintiff than the non-economic terms of this Agreement, and such Future Settlement Agreement includes terms that provide for the implementation of non-economic tobacco-related public health measures different from those contained in this Agreement, then this Agreement shall be revised with respect to such Participating Manufacturer to include terms comparable to such non-economic terms, unless a majority of the Settling States elects against such revision.

(2) If any Settling State resolves by settlement Claims against any Non-Participating Manufacturer after the MSA Execution Date comparable to any Released Claim, and such resolution includes overall terms that are more favorable to such Non-Participating Manufacturer than the terms of this Agreement (including, without limitation, any terms that relate to the marketing or distribution of Tobacco Products and any term that provides for a lower settlement cost on a per pack sold basis), then the overall terms of this Agreement will be revised so that the Original Participating Manufacturers will obtain, with respect to that Settling State, overall terms at least as relatively favorable (taking into account, among other things, all payments previously made by the Original Participating Manufacturers and the timing of any payments) as those obtained by such Non-Participating Manufacturer pursuant to such resolution of Claims. The foregoing shall include but not be limited to: (a) the treatment by any Settling State of a Future Affiliate, as that term is defined in agreements between any of the Settling States and Brooke Group Ltd., Liggett & Myers Inc. and/or Liggett Group, Inc. ("Liggett"), whether or not such Future Affiliate is merged with, or its operations combined with, Liggett or any Affiliate thereof; and (b) to any application of the terms of any such agreement (including any terms subsequently negotiated pursuant to any such agreement) to a brand of Cigarettes (or tobacco-related assets) as a result of the purchase by or sale to Liggett of such brand or assets or as a result of any combination of ownership among Liggett and any entity that manufactures Tobacco Products. Provided, however, that revision of this Agreement pursuant to this subsection (2) shall not be required by virtue of the subsequent entry into this Agreement by a Tobacco Product Manufacturer that has not become a Participating Manufacturer, as of the MSA Execution Date. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection XVIII(j), the provisions of this subsection XVIII(b)(2) may be waived by (and only by) unanimous agreement of the Original Participating Manufacturers.

(3) The parties agree that if any term of this Agreement is revised pursuant to subsection (b)(1) or (b)(2) above and the substance of such term before it was revised was also a term of the Consent Decree, each affected Settling State and each affected Participating Manufacturer shall jointly move the Court to amend the Consent Decree to conform the terms of the Consent Decree to the revised terms of the Agreement.

(4) If at any time any Settling State agrees to relieve, in any respect, any Participating Manufacturer's obligation to make the payments as provided in this Agreement, then, with respect to that Settling State, the terms of this Agreement shall be revised so that the other Participating Manufacturers receive terms as relatively favorable.

(c) **Transfer of Tobacco Brands.** No Original Participating Manufacturer may sell or otherwise transfer or permit the sale or transfer of any of its Cigarette brands, Brand Names, Cigarette product formulas or Cigarette businesses (other than a sale or transfer of Cigarette brands or Brand Names to be sold, product formulas to be used, or Cigarette businesses to be conducted, by the acquirer or transferee exclusively outside of the States) to any person or entity unless such person or entity is an Original Participating Manufacturer or prior to the sale or acquisition agrees to assume the obligations of an Original Participating Manufacturer with respect to such Cigarette brands, Brand Names, Cigarette product formulas or businesses. No Participating Manufacturer may sell or otherwise transfer any of its Cigarette brands, Brand Names, Cigarette product formulas or Cigarette businesses (other than a sale or transfer of Cigarette brands or Brand Names to be sold, Cigarette product formulas to be used, or businesses to be conducted, by the acquirer or transferee exclusively outside of the States) to any person or entity unless such person or entity is or becomes prior to the sale or acquisition a Participating Manufacturer. In the event of any such sale or transfer of a Cigarette brand, Brand Name, Cigarette product formula or Cigarette business by a Participating Manufacturer to a person or entity that within 180 days prior to such sale or transfer was a Non-Participating Manufacturer, the Participating Manufacturer shall certify to the Settling States that it has determined that such person or entity has the capability to perform the obligations under this Agreement. Such certification shall not survive beyond one year following the date of any such transfer. Each Original Participating Manufacturer certifies and represents that, except as provided in Exhibit R, it (or a wholly owned Affiliate) exclusively owns and controls in the States the Brand Names of those Cigarettes that it currently manufactures for sale (or sells) in the States and that it has the capacity to enter into an effective agreement concerning the sale or transfer of such Brand Names pursuant to this subsection XVIII(c). Nothing in this Agreement is intended to create any right for a State to obtain any Cigarette product formula that it would not otherwise have under applicable law.

(d) **Payments in Settlement.** All payments to be made by the Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this Agreement are in settlement of all of the Settling States' antitrust, consumer protection, common law negligence, statutory, common law and equitable claims for monetary, restitutionary, equitable, and injunctive relief alleged by the Settling States with respect to the year of payment or earlier years, except that no part of any payment under this Agreement is made in settlement of an actual or potential liability for a fine, penalty (civil or criminal) or enhanced damages or is the cost of a tangible or intangible asset or other future benefit.

(e) **No Determination or Admission.** This Agreement is not intended to be and shall not in any event be construed or deemed to be, or represented or caused to be, represented as, an admission or concession or evidence of (1) any liability or any wrongdoing whatsoever on the part of any Released Party or that any Released Party has engaged in any of the activities barred by this Agreement; or (2) personal jurisdiction over any person or entity other than the Participating Manufacturers. Each Participating Manufacturer specifically disclaims and denies any liability or wrongdoing whatsoever with respect to the claims and allegations asserted against it by the Attorneys General of the Settling States and the Litigating Political Subdivisions. Each Participating Manufacturer has entered into this Agreement solely to avoid the further expense, inconvenience, burden and risk of litigation.

(f) **Non-Admissibility.** The settlement negotiations resulting in this Agreement have been undertaken by the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers in good faith and for settlement purposes only, and no evidence of negotiations or discussions underlying this Agreement shall be offered or received in evidence in any action or proceeding for any purpose. Neither this Agreement nor any public discussions, public statements or public comments with respect to this Agreement by any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer or its agents shall be offered or received in evidence in any action or proceeding for any purpose other than in an action or proceeding arising under or relating to this Agreement.

(g) **Representations of Parties.** Each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer hereby represents that this Agreement has been duly authorized and, upon execution, will constitute a valid and binding contractual obligation enforceable in accordance with its terms, of each of them. The signatories hereto on behalf of their respective Settling States expressly represent and warrant that they have the authority to settle and release all Released Claims of their respective Settling States and any of their respective Settling States' past, present and future agents, officials acting in their official capacities, legal representatives, agencies, departments, commissions and divisions, and that such signatories are aware of no authority to the contrary. It is recognized that the Original Participating Manufacturers are relying on the foregoing representation and warranty in making the payments required by and in otherwise performing under this Agreement. The Original Participating Manufacturers shall have the right to terminate this Agreement pursuant to subsection XVIII(n) as to any Settling State as to which the foregoing representation and warranty is breached or not effectively given.

(h) **Obligations Several, Not Joint.** All obligations of the Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this Agreement (including, but not limited to, all payment obligations) are intended to be, and shall remain, several and not joint.

(l) Headings. The headings of the sections and subsections of this Agreement are not binding and are for reference only and do not limit, expand or otherwise affect the contents or meaning of this Agreement.

(m) Amendment and Waiver. This Agreement may be amended by a written instrument executed by all Participating Manufacturers affected by the amendment and by all Settling States affected by the amendment. The terms of any such amendment shall not be enforceable in any Settling State that is not a signatory to such amendment. The waiver of any rights conferred hereunder shall be effective only if made by written instrument executed by the waiving party or parties. The waiver by any party of any breach of this Agreement shall not be deemed to be or construed as a waiver of any other breach, whether prior, subsequent or contemporaneous, nor shall such waiver be deemed to be or construed as a waiver by any other party.

(n) Notices. All notices or other communications to any party to this Agreement shall be in writing (including, but not limited to, facsimile, telex, teletype or similar writing) and shall be given at the addresses specified in Exhibit P (as it may be amended to reflect any additional Participating Manufacturer that becomes a party to this Agreement after the MSA Execution Date). Any Settling State or Participating Manufacturer may change or add the name and address of the persons designated to receive notice on its behalf by notice given (effective upon the giving of such notice) as provided in this subsection.

(o) Cooperation. Each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer agrees to use its best efforts and to cooperate with each other to cause this Agreement and the Consent Decrees to become effective, to obtain all necessary approvals, consents and authorizations, if any, and to execute all documents and to take such other action as may be appropriate in connection herewith. Consistent with the foregoing, each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer agrees that it will not directly or indirectly assist or encourage any challenge to this Agreement or any Consent Decree by any other person, and will support the integrity and enforcement of the terms of this Agreement and the Consent Decrees. Each Settling State shall use its best efforts to cause State-Specific Finality to occur as to such Settling State.

(p) Disputes to Discuss Disputes. Within 14 days after the MSA Execution Date, each Settling State's Attorney General and each Participating Manufacturer shall provide written notice of its designation of a senior representative to discuss with the other signatories to this Agreement any disputes and/or other issues that may arise with respect to this Agreement. Each Settling State's Attorney General shall provide such notice of the name, address and telephone number of the person it has so designated to each Participating Manufacturer and to NAAG. Each Participating Manufacturer shall provide such notice of the name, address and telephone number of the person it has so designated to each Settling State's Attorney General, to NAAG and to each other Participating Manufacturer.

(q) Governing Law. This Agreement (other than the Escrow Agreement) shall be governed by the laws of the relevant Settling State, without regard to the conflict of law rules of such Settling State. The Escrow Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State in which the Escrow Court is located, without regard to the conflict of law rules of such Settling State.

(r) Severability.

(1) Sections VI, VII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XVI, XVII(b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (j), (k), (l), (m), (n), (o), (p), (q), (r), (s), (t), (u), (v), (w), (x), (y), and Exhibits A, B, and E herof ("Nonseverable Provisions") are not severable, except to the extent that severance of section VI is permitted by Settling States pursuant to subsection VI(f) herof. The remaining terms of this Agreement are severable, as set forth herein.

(2) If a court materially modifies, renders unenforceable, or finds to be unlawful any of the Nonseverable Provisions, the NAAG executive committee shall select a team of Attorneys General (the "Negotiating Team") to attempt to negotiate an equivalent or comparable substitute term or other appropriate credit or adjustment (a "Substitute Term") with the Original Participating Manufacturers. In the event that the court referred to in the preceding sentence is located in a Settling State, the Negotiating Team shall include the Attorney General of such Settling State. The Original Participating Manufacturers shall have no obligation to agree to any Substitute Term. If any Original Participating Manufacturer does not agree to a Substitute Term, this Agreement shall be terminated in all Settling States affected by the court's ruling. The Negotiating Team shall submit any proposed Substitute Term negotiated by the Negotiating Team and agreed to by all of the Original Participating Manufacturers to the Attorney General of all of the affected Settling States for their approval. If any affected Settling State does not approve the proposed Substitute Term, this Agreement in such Settling State shall be terminated.

(3) If a court materially modifies, renders unenforceable, or finds to be unlawful any term of this Agreement other than a Nonseverable Provision:

(A) The remaining terms of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect.

(B) Each Settling State whose rights or obligations under this Agreement are affected by the court's decision in question (the "Affected Settling State") and the Participating Manufacturers agree to negotiate in good faith a Substitute Term. Any agreement on a Substitute Term reached between the Participating Manufacturers and the Affected Settling State shall not modify or amend the terms of this Agreement with regard to any other Settling State.

(C) If the Affected Settling State and the Participating Manufacturers are unable to agree on a Substitute Term, then they will submit the issue to non-binding mediation. If mediation fails to produce agreement on a Substitute Term, then that term shall be severed and the remainder of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect.

(4) If a court materially modifies, renders unenforceable, or finds to be unlawful any portion of any provision of this Agreement, the remaining portions of such provision shall be unenforceable with respect to the affected Settling State unless a Substitute Term is arrived at pursuant to subsection (a)(2) or (a)(3) hereof, whichever is applicable.

(p) Intended Beneficiaries. No portion of this Agreement shall provide any rights to, or be enforceable by, any person or entity that is not a Settling State or a Released Party. No Settling State may assign or otherwise convey any right to enforce any provision of this Agreement.

(q) Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in counterparts. Facsimile or photocopied signatures shall be considered as valid signatures as of the date affixed, although the original signature pages shall thereafter be appended.

(r) Applicability. The obligations and duties of each Participating Manufacturer set forth herein are applicable only to actions taken (or omitted to be taken) within the States. This subsection (r) shall not be construed as extending the territorial scope of any obligation or duty set forth herein whose scope is otherwise limited by the terms hereof.

(s) Preservation of Privileges. Nothing contained in this Agreement or any Consent Decree, and no act required to be performed pursuant to this Agreement or any Consent Decree, is intended to constitute, cause or effect any waiver (in whole or in part) of any attorney-client privilege, work product protection or common interest/defense privilege, and each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer agrees that it shall not make or cause to be made in any forum any assertion to the contrary.

(t) Non-Release. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this Agreement, nothing in this Agreement shall limit, prejudice or otherwise interfere with the rights of any Settling State or any Participating Manufacturer to pursue any and all rights and remedies it may have against any Non-Participating Manufacturer or other non-Released Party.

(u) Termination.

(1) Unless otherwise agreed to by each of the Original Participating Manufacturers and the Settling State in question, in the event that (A) State-Specific Finality in a Settling State does not occur in such Settling State on or before December 31, 2001; or (B) this Agreement or the Consent Decree has been disapproved by the Court (or, in the event of an appeal from or review of a decision of the Court to approve this Agreement and the Consent Decree, by the court hearing such appeal or conducting such review), and the time to Appeal from such disapproval has expired, or, in the event of an Appeal from such disapproval, the Appeal has been dismissed or the disapproval has been affirmed by the court of last resort in which such Appeal has been taken and such dismissal or disapproval has become no longer subject to further Appeal (including, without limitation, review by the United States Supreme Court) or (C) this Agreement is terminated in a Settling State for whatever reason (including, but not limited to, pursuant to subsection XVIII(o) of this Agreement), then this Agreement and all of its terms (except for the non-admissibility provisions hereof, which shall continue in full force and effect) shall be canceled and terminated with respect to such Settling State, and it and all orders issued by the courts in such Settling State pursuant hereto shall become null and void and of no effect.

(2) If this Agreement is terminated with respect to a Settling State for whatever reason, then (A) the applicable statute of limitation or any similar time requirement shall be tolled from the date such Settling State signed this Agreement until the later of the time permitted by applicable law or for one year from the date of such termination, with the effect that the parties shall be in the same position with respect to the statute of limitation as they were at the time such Settling State filed its action, and (B) the parties shall jointly move the Court for an order reinstating the actions and claims dismissed pursuant to sections XIII and XIV hereof, with the effect that the parties shall be in the same position with respect to those actions and claims as they were at the time the action or claim was stayed or dismissed.

(v) Exclusion of Information Requests. Upon the occurrence of State-Specific Finality in a Settling State, each Participating Manufacturer will withdraw in writing any and all requests for information, administrative applications, and proceedings brought or caused to be brought by such Participating Manufacturer pursuant to such Settling State's freedom of information law relating to the subject matter of the lawsuits identified in Exhibit D.

(w) Bankruptcy. The following provisions shall apply if a Participating Manufacturer both enters bankruptcy and at any time thereafter is not timely performing its financial obligations as required under this Agreement:

(1) In the event that both a number of Settling States equal to at least 75% of the total number of Settling States and Settling States having aggregate Allocable Shares equal to at least 75% of the total aggregate Allocable Shares assigned to all Settling States deem (by written notice to the Participating Manufacturers other than the bankrupt Participating Manufacturer) that the financial obligations of this Agreement have been terminated and renounced and void as to such bankrupt Participating Manufacturer (except as provided in subsection (A) below) due to a material breach by such Participating Manufacturer, whereupon, with respect to all Settling States:

(A) all agreements, all concessions, all reductions of Releasing Parties' Claims, and all releases and covenants not to sue, contained in this Agreement shall be null and void as to such Participating Manufacturer. Provided, however, that (i) all reductions of Releasing Parties' Claims, and all releases and covenants not to sue, contained in this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect as to all persons or entities (other than the bankrupt Participating Manufacturer) insofar as any person or entity that, as a result of the bankruptcy, obtains domestic tobacco assets of such

Participating Manufacturer (unless such person or entity is itself a Participating Manufacturer) who (that for the first sentence of this subsection (A)) would otherwise be Released Parties by virtue of their relationship with the bankrupt Participating Manufacturer; and (ii) in the event a Settling State asserts any Released Claim against a bankrupt Participating Manufacturer after the termination of this Agreement with respect to such Participating Manufacturer as described in this subsection (1) and receives a judgment, settlement or distribution arising from such Released Claim, then the amount of any payments such Settling State has previously received from such Participating Manufacturer under this Agreement shall be applied against the amount of any such judgment, settlement or distribution (provided that in no event shall such Settling State be required to refund any payments previously received from such Participating Manufacturer pursuant to this Agreement);

(B) the Settling States shall have the right to assert any and all claims against such Participating Manufacturer in the Bankruptcy or otherwise without regard to any limits otherwise provided in this Agreement (subject to any and all defenses against such claims);

(C) the Settling States may exercise all rights provided under the federal Bankruptcy Code (or other applicable bankruptcy law) with respect to their Claims against such Participating Manufacturer, including the right to initiate and complete police and regulatory actions against such Participating Manufacturer pursuant to the exceptions to the automatic stay set forth in section 362(b) of the Bankruptcy Code (provided, however, that such Participating Manufacturer may contest whether the Settling State's action constitutes a police and regulatory action); and

(D) to the extent that any Settling State is pursuing a police and regulatory action against such Participating Manufacturer as described in subsection (1)(C), such Participating Manufacturer shall not request or support a request that the Bankruptcy court utilize the authority provided under section 105 of the Bankruptcy Code to impose a discretionary stay on the Settling State's action. The Participating Manufacturers further agree that they will not request, seek or support relief from the terms of this Agreement in any proceeding before any court of law (including the federal bankruptcy courts) or an administrative agency or through legislative action, including (without limitation) by way of joinder in or consent to or acquiescence in any such pleading or instrument filed by another.

(2) Whether or not the Settling States exercise the option set forth in subsection (1) (and whether or not such option, if exercised, is valid and enforceable):

(A) In the event that the bankrupt Participating Manufacturer is an Original Participating Manufacturer, such Participating Manufacturer shall continue to be treated as an Original Participating Manufacturer for all purposes under this Agreement except (i) such Participating Manufacturer shall be treated as a Non-Participating Manufacturer (and not as an Original Participating Manufacturer or Participating Manufacturer) for all purposes with respect to subsections IX(d)(1), IX(d)(2) and IX(d)(3) (including, but not limited to, that the Market Share of such Participating Manufacturer shall not be included in Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share or Actual Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share, and that such Participating Manufacturer's volume shall not be included for any purpose under subsection IX(d)(1)(DD)); (ii) such Participating Manufacturer's Market Share shall not be included as that of a Participating Manufacturer for the purpose of determining whether the trigger percentage specified in subsection IX(c) has been achieved (provided that such Participating Manufacturer shall be treated as an Original Participating Manufacturer for all other purposes with respect to such subsection); (iii) for purposes of subsection (B)(iii) of Exhibit E, such Participating Manufacturer shall continue to be treated as an Original Participating Manufacturer, but its operating income shall be recalcu- lated by the Independent Auditor to reflect what such income would have been had such Participating Manufacturer made the payments that would have been due under this Agreement but for the Bankruptcy; (iv) for purposes of subsection XVIII(c), such Participating Manufacturer shall not be treated as an Original Participating Manufacturer or as a Participating Manufacturer to the extent that after entry into Bankruptcy it becomes the acquirer or transferee of Cigarette brands, Brand Names, Cigarette product formulas or Cigarette businesses of any Participating Manufacturer (provided that such Participating Manufacturer shall continue to be treated as an Original Participating Manufacturer (provided that such Participating Manufacturer for all other purposes under such subsection); and (v) as to any action that by the express terms of this Agreement requires the unanimous agreement of all Original Participating Manufacturers.

(B) In the event that the bankrupt Participating Manufacturer is a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer, such Participating Manufacturer shall continue to be treated as a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer for all purposes under this Agreement except (i) such Participating Manufacturer shall be treated as a Non-Participating Manufacturer (and not as a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer or Participating Manufacturer) for all purposes with respect to subsections IX(d)(1), (d)(2) and (d)(4) (including, but not limited to, that the Market Share of such Participating Manufacturer shall not be included in Base Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share or Actual Aggregate Participating Manufacturer Market Share, and that such Participating Manufacturer's volume shall not be included for any purpose under subsection IX(d)(1)(DD)); (ii) such Participating Manufacturer's Market Share shall not be included as that of a Participating Manufacturer for the purpose of determining whether the trigger percentage specified in subsection IX(c) has been achieved (provided that such Participating Manufacturer shall be treated as a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer for all other purposes with respect to such subsection); and (iii) for purposes of subsection XVIII(c), such Participating Manufacturer shall not be treated as a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer or as a Participating Manufacturer to the extent that after entry into Bankruptcy it becomes the acquirer or transferee of Cigarette brands, Brand Names, Cigarette product formulas or Cigarette businesses of any Participating Manufacturer (provided that such Participating Manufacturer for all other purposes under such subsection); and (v) as to any action that by the express terms of this Agreement requires the unanimous agreement of all Original Participating Manufacturers.

continue to be treated as a Subsequent Participating Manufacturer and Participating Manufacturer for all other purposes under such subsection).

(C) Revision of this Agreement pursuant to subsection XVIII(b)(2) shall not be required by virtue of any resolution on an involuntary basis in the Bankruptcy of Claims against the bankrupt Participating Manufacturer.

(8) Notice of Material Transfers. Each Participating Manufacturer shall provide notice in each Settling State at least 20 days before consummating a sale, transfer of title or other disposition, in one transaction or series of related transactions, of assets having a fair market value equal to five percent or more (determined in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles) of the consolidated assets of such Participating Manufacturer.

(9) Entire Agreement. This Agreement (together with any agreements expressly contemplated hereby and any other contemporaneous written agreements) embodies the entire agreement and understanding between and among the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers relating to the subject matter hereof and supersedes (1) all prior agreements and understandings relating to such subject matter, whether written or oral, and (2) all purportedly contemporaneous oral agreements and understandings relating to such subject matter.

(z) Business Days. Any obligation hereunder that, under the terms of this Agreement, is to be performed on a day that is not a Business Day shall be performed on the first Business Day thereafter.

(aa) Subsequent Signatories. With respect to a Tobacco Product Manufacturer that signs this Agreement after the MSA Execution Date, the timing of obligations under this Agreement (other than payment obligations, which shall be governed by subsection 1(iii)) shall be negotiated to provide for the institution of such obligations on a schedule not more favorable to such subsequent signatory than that applicable to the Original Participating Manufacturers.

(bb) Decimal Places. Any figure or percentage referred to in this Agreement shall be carried to seven decimal places.

(cc) Regulatory Authority. Nothing in section III of this Agreement is intended to affect the legislative or regulatory authority of any local or State government.

(dd) Successors. In the event that a Participating Manufacturer ceases selling a brand of Tobacco Products in the States that such Participating Manufacturer owned in the States prior to July 1, 1998, and an Affiliate of such Participating Manufacturer thereafter and after the MSA Execution Date intentionally sells such brand in the States, such Affiliate shall be considered to be the successor of such Participating Manufacturer with respect to such brand. Performance by any such successor of the obligations under this Agreement with respect to the sales of such brand shall be subject to court-ordered specific performance.

(ee) Export Packaging. Each Participating Manufacturer shall place a visible indication on each pack of Cigarettes it manufactures for sale outside of the fifty United States and the District of Columbia that distinguishes such pack from packs of Cigarettes it manufactures for sale in the fifty United States and the District of Columbia.

(ff) Actions Within Geographic Boundaries of Settling States. To the extent that any provision of this Agreement expressly prohibits, restricts, or requires any action to be taken "within" any Settling State or the Settling States, the relevant prohibition, restriction, or requirement applies within the geographic boundaries of the applicable Settling State or Settling States, including, but not limited to, Indian country or Indian trust land within such geographic boundaries.

(gg) Notice to Affiliates. Each Participating Manufacturer shall give notice of this Agreement to each of its Affiliates.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, each Settling State and each Participating Manufacturer, through their fully authorized representatives, have agreed to this Agreement.

(Signatures Intentionally Omitted)



EXHIBIT A

STATE ALLOCATION PERCENTAGES

State	Percentage
Alabama	1.6161108%
Alaska	0.3414187%
Arizona	1.4738845%
Arkansas	0.8282661%
California	12.7639534%
Colorado	1.3708614%
Connecticut	1.8563224%
Delaware	0.3954654%
D.C.	0.6071194%
Florida	0.6000000%
Georgia	2.4344575%
Hawaii	0.6018640%
Idaho	0.1632632%
Illinois	4.654312%
Indiana	2.0380334%
Iowa	0.8696670%
Kansas	0.8336712%
Kentucky	1.7611586%
Louisiana	2.2353314%
Maine	0.7693504%
Maryland	2.868370%
Massachusetts	4.0387980%
Michigan	4.3519476%
Minnesota	0.000000%
Mississippi	0.000000%
Missouri	2.2746014%
Montana	0.4243501%
Nebraska	0.5949833%
Nevada	0.6899374%
New Hampshire	0.6659369%
New Jersey	3.8669863%
New Mexico	0.5963897%
New York	12.7630310%
North Carolina	3.3323850%
North Dakota	0.3660138%
Ohio	5.0375094%
Oklahoma	1.0361370%
Oregon	1.1476582%
Pennsylvania	5.7468588%
Rhode Island	0.7189044%
South Carolina	1.1763192%
South Dakota	0.3480488%
Tennessee	2.4608945%
Texas	0.000000%
Utah	0.4448669%
Vermont	0.4111831%
Virginia	1.0493451%
Washington	2.0524824%
West Virginia	0.8864604%
Wisconsin	2.0720390%
Wyoming	0.2483449%
American Samoa	0.0152110%
R. Mariana Isl.	0.0084370%
Guam	0.0371937%
U.S. Virgin Isl.	0.0173593%
Puerto Rico	1.1212744%
Total	100.0000000%

EXHIBIT B  
FORM OF ESCROW AGREEMENT

This Escrow Agreement is entered into as of \_\_\_\_\_, 1998 by the undersigned State officials (on behalf of their respective Settling States), the undersigned Participating Manufacturers and \_\_\_\_\_ as escrow agent (the "Escrow Agent").

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers have entered into a settlement agreement entitled the "Master Settlement Agreement" (the "Agreement"); and  
WHEREAS, the Agreement requires the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers to enter into this Escrow Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, the parties hereto agree as follows:

SECTION 1. Appointment of Escrow Agent.

The Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers hereby appoint \_\_\_\_\_ to serve as Escrow Agent under this Agreement on the terms and conditions set forth herein, and the Escrow Agent, by its execution hereof, hereby accepts such appointment and agrees to perform the duties and obligations of the Escrow Agent set forth herein. The Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers agree that the Escrow Agent appointed under the terms of this Escrow Agreement shall be the Escrow Agent as defined in, and for all purposes of, the Agreement.

SECTION 2. Definitions.

- (a) Capitalized terms used in this Escrow Agreement and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meaning given to such terms in the Agreement.
- (b) "Escrow Court" means the court of the State of New York to which the Agreement is presented for approval, or such other court as agreed to by the Original Participating Manufacturers and a majority of those Attorneys General who are both the Attorney General of a Settling State and a member of the NAAG executive committee at the time in question.

SECTION 3. Escrow and Accounts.

(a) All funds received by the Escrow Agent pursuant to the terms of the Agreement shall be held and disbursed in accordance with the terms of this Escrow Agreement. Such funds and any earnings thereon shall constitute the "Escrow" and shall be held by the Escrow Agent separate and apart from all other funds and accounts of the Escrow Agent, the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers.

(b) The Escrow Agent shall allocate the Escrow among the following separate accounts (each an "Account" and collectively the "Accounts"):

- SUBSECTION VII(b) ACCOUNT
- SUBSECTION VII(c) ACCOUNT (FIRST)
- SUBSECTION VII(c) ACCOUNT (SUBSEQUENT)
- SUBSECTION VIII(b) ACCOUNT
- SUBSECTION VIII(c) ACCOUNT
- SUBSECTION IX(b) ACCOUNT (FIRST)
- SUBSECTION IX(c)(1) ACCOUNT
- SUBSECTION IX(c)(2) ACCOUNT
- SUBSECTION IX(e) ACCOUNT
- DISPUTED PAYMENTS ACCOUNT
- STATE-SPECIFIC ACCOUNTS WITH RESPECT TO EACH SETTLING STATE IN WHICH STATE-SPECIFIC FINALITY OCCURS.

(c) All amounts credited to an Account shall be retained in such Account until disbursed therefrom in accordance with the provisions of this Escrow Agreement pursuant to (i) written instructions from the Independent Auditor, or (ii) written instructions from all of the following: all of the Original Participating Manufacturers; all of the Subsequent Participating Manufacturers that contributed to such amounts in such Account; and all of the Settling States (collectively, the "Escrow Parties"). In the event of a conflict, instructions pursuant to clause (i) shall govern over instructions pursuant to clause (ii).

(d) On the first Business Day after the date any payment is due under the Agreement, the Escrow Agent shall deliver to each other Notice Party a written statement showing the amount of such payment (or indicating that no payment was made, if such is the case), the source of such payment, the Account or Accounts to which such payment has been

credited, and the payment instructions received by the Escrow Agent from the Independent Auditor with respect to such payment.

(e) The Escrow Agent shall comply with all payment instructions received from the Independent Auditor unless before 11:00 a.m. (New York City time) on the scheduled date of payment it receives written instructions to the contrary from all of the Escrow Parties, in which event it shall comply with such instructions.

(f) On the first Business Day after disbursing any funds from an Account, the Escrow Agent shall deliver to each other Notice Party a written statement showing the amount disbursed, the date of such disbursement and the payee of the disbursed funds.

**SECTION 4. Failure of Escrow Agent to Receive Instructions.**

In the event that the Escrow Agent fails to receive any written instructions contemplated by this Escrow Agreement, the Escrow Agent shall be fully protected in refraining from taking any action required under any section of this Escrow Agreement other than Section 5 until such written instructions are received by the Escrow Agent.

**SECTION 5. Investment of Funds by Escrow Agent.**

The Escrow Agent shall invest and reinvest all amounts from time to time credited to the Accounts in either (i) direct obligations of, or obligations the principal and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed by, the United States of America; (ii) repurchase agreements fully collateralized by securities described in clause (i) above; (iii) money market accounts maturing within 70 days of the acquisition thereof and issued by a bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States of America or of any of the 50 States thereof (a "United States Bank") and having combined capital, surplus and undistributed profits in excess of \$500,000,000; or (iv) demand deposits with any United States Bank having combined capital, surplus and undistributed profits in excess of \$500,000,000. To the extent practicable, monies credited to any Account shall be invested in such a manner so as to be available for use at the times when monies are expected to be disbursed by the Escrow Agent and charged to such Account. Obligations purchased as an investment of monies credited to any Account shall be deemed at all times to be a part of such Account and the income or interest earned, profits realized or losses suffered with respect to such investments (including, without limitation, any penalty for any liquidation of an investment required to fund a disbursement to be charged to such Account), shall be credited or charged, as the case may be, to such Account and shall be for the benefit of, or be borne by, the person or entity entitled to payment from such Account. In choosing among the investment options described in clauses (i) through (iv) above, the Escrow Agent shall comply with any instructions received from time to time from all of the Escrow Parties. In the absence of such instructions, the Escrow Agent shall invest such sums in accordance with clause (i) above. With respect to any amounts credited to a State-Specific Account, the Escrow Agent shall invest and reinvest all amounts credited to such Account in accordance with the law of the applicable Selling State to the extent such law is inconsistent with this Section 5.

**SECTION 6. Substitution Form W-9; Qualified Settlement Fund.**

Each signatory to this Escrow Agreement shall provide the Escrow Agent with a correct taxpayer identification number on a substitute Form W-9 or if it does not have such a number, a statement evidencing its status as an entity exempt from back-up withholding, within 30 days of the date hereof (and, if it supplies a Form W-9, indicate thereon that it is not subject to backup withholding). The escrow established pursuant to this Escrow Agreement is intended to be treated as a Qualified Settlement Fund for federal tax purposes pursuant to Treas. Reg. § 1.468B-1. The Escrow Agent shall comply with all applicable tax filing, payment and reporting requirements, including, without limitation, those imposed under Treas. Reg. § 1.468B, and if requested to do so shall join in the making of the relation-back election under such regulation.

**SECTION 7. Duties and Liabilities of Escrow Agent.**

The Escrow Agent shall have no duty or obligation hereunder other than to take such specific actions as are required of it from time to time under the provisions of this Escrow Agreement, and it shall incur no liability hereunder or in connection herewith for anything whatsoever other than any liability resulting from its own gross negligence or willful misconduct. The Escrow Agent shall not be bound in any way by any agreement or contract between the Participating Manufacturers and the Settling States (whether or not the Escrow Agent has knowledge thereof) other than this Escrow Agreement, and the only duties and responsibilities of the Escrow Agent shall be the duties and obligations specifically set forth in this Escrow Agreement.

**SECTION 8. Indemnification of Escrow Agent.**

The Participating Manufacturers shall indemnify, hold harmless and defend the Escrow Agent from and against any and all losses, claims, liabilities and reasonable expenses, including the reasonable fees of its counsel, which it may suffer or incur in connection with the performance of its duties and obligations under this Escrow Agreement, except for those losses, claims, liabilities and expenses resulting solely and directly from its own gross negligence or willful misconduct.

**SECTION 9. Resignation of Escrow Agent.**

The Escrow Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice (herein to the other parties hereto, but such resignation shall not become effective until a successor Escrow Agent, selected by the Original Participating Manufacturers and the Settling States, shall have been appointed and shall have accepted such appointment in writing. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Escrow Agent shall not have been delivered to the resigning Escrow Agent within 90 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Escrow Agent may, at the expense of the Participating Manufacturers (to

be shared according to their pro rata Market Shares), petition the Escrow Court for the appointment of a successor Escrow Agent.

**SECTION 10. Escrow Agent Fees and Expenses.**

The Participating Manufacturers shall pay to the Escrow Agent its fees as set forth in Appendix A hereto as amended from time to time by agreement of the Original Participating Manufacturers and the Escrow Agent. The Participating Manufacturers shall pay to the Escrow Agent its reasonable fees and expenses, including all reasonable expenses, charges, counsel fees, and other disbursements incurred by it or by its attorneys, agents and employees in the performance of its duties and obligations under this Escrow Agreement. Such fees and expenses shall be shared by the Participating Manufacturers according to their pro rata Market Shares.

**SECTION 11. Notices.**

All notices, written instructions or other communications to any party or other person hereunder shall be given in the same manner as, shall be given to the same person as, and shall be effective at the same time as provided in subsection XVIII(R) of the Agreement.

**SECTION 12. Setoff; Reimbursement.**

The Escrow Agent acknowledges that it shall not be entitled to set off against any funds in, or payable from, any Account to satisfy any liability of any Participating Manufacturer. Each Participating Manufacturer that pays more than its pro rata Market Share of any payment that is made by the Participating Manufacturers to the Escrow Agent pursuant to Section 8, 9 or 10 hereof shall be entitled to reimbursement of such excess from the other Participating Manufacturers according to their pro rata Market Shares of such excess.

**SECTION 13. Intended Beneficiaries; Successors.**

No persons or entities other than the Settling States, the Participating Manufacturers and the Escrow Agent are intended beneficiaries of this Escrow Agreement, and only the Settling States, the Participating Manufacturers and the Escrow Agent shall be entitled to the terms of this Escrow Agreement. Pursuant to the Agreement, the Settling States have designated NAAG and the Foundation as recipients of certain payments; for all purposes of this Escrow Agreement, the Settling States shall be the beneficiaries of such payments entitled to enforce payment hereof. The provisions of this Escrow Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and, in the case of the Escrow Agent and Participating Manufacturers, their respective successors. Each reference herein to the Escrow Agent or to a Participating Manufacturer shall be construed as a reference to its successor, where applicable.

**SECTION 14. Governing Law.**

This Escrow Agreement shall be construed in accordance with and governed by the laws of the State in which the Escrow Court is located, without regard to the conflicts of law rules of such state.

**SECTION 15. Jurisdiction and Venue.**

The parties hereto irrevocably and unconditionally submit to the continuing exclusive jurisdiction of the Escrow Court for purposes of any suit, action or proceeding seeking to interpret or enforce any provision of, or based on any right arising out of, this Escrow Agreement, and the parties hereto agree not to commence any such suit, action or proceeding except in the Escrow Court. The parties hereto irrevocably and unconditionally waive any objection to the laying of venue of any such suit, action or proceeding in the Escrow Court and hereby further irrevocably waive and agree not to plead or claim in the Escrow Court that any such suit, action or proceeding has been brought in an inconvenient forum.

**SECTION 16. Amendments.**

This Escrow Agreement may be amended only by written instrument executed by all of the parties hereto that would be affected by the amendment. The waiver of any rights conferred hereunder shall be effective only if made in a written instrument executed by the waiving party. The waiver by any party of any breach of this Agreement shall not be deemed to be or construed as a waiver of any other breach, whether prior, subsequent or contemporaneous, of this Escrow Agreement, nor shall such waiver be deemed to be or construed as a waiver by any other party.

**SECTION 17. Counterparts.**

This Agreement may be signed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, with the same effect as if the signatures therein and hereto were upon the same instrument. Delivery by facsimile of a signed counterpart shall be deemed delivery for purposes of acknowledging acceptance hereof; however, an original executed Escrow Agreement must promptly thereafter be delivered to each party.

**SECTION 18. Captions.**

The captions herein are included for convenience of reference only and shall be ignored in the construction and interpretation hereof.

**SECTION 19. Conditions to Effectiveness.**

This Escrow Agreement shall become effective when each party hereto shall have signed a counterpart hereof. The parties hereto agree to use their best efforts to seek an order of the Escrow Court approving, and retaining continuing jurisdiction over, the Escrow Agreement as soon as possible, and agree that such order shall relate back to, and be deemed effective as of, the date this Escrow Agreement became effective.

**Appendix A**  
**Schedule Of Fees And Expenses**

**SECTION 20. Address for Payments.**

Whenever funds are under the terms of this Escrow Agreement required to be disbursed to a Settling State, a Participating Manufacturer, NAAG or the Foundation, the Escrow Agent shall disburse such funds by wire transfer to the account specified by such payee by written notice delivered to all Notice Parties in accordance with Section 11 hereof at least five Business Days prior to the date of payment. Whenever funds are under the terms of this Escrow Agreement required to be disbursed to any other person or entity, the Escrow Agent shall disburse such funds to such account as shall have been specified in writing by the Independent Auditor for such payment at least five Business Days prior to the date of payment.

**SECTION 21. Reporting.**

The Escrow Agent shall provide such information and reporting with respect to the escrow as the Independent Auditor may from time to time request.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed this Escrow Agreement as of the day and year first hereinabove written.

[Signature Blocks]

**EXHIBIT C  
FORMULA FOR CALCULATING  
INFLATION ADJUSTMENTS**

- (1) Any amount that, in any given year, is to be adjusted for inflation pursuant to this Exhibit (the "Base Amount") shall be adjusted upward by adding to such Base Amount the Inflation Adjustment.
- (2) The Inflation Adjustment shall be calculated by multiplying the Base Amount by the Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable in that year.
- (3) The Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable to payments due in the year 2000 shall be equal to the greater of 3% or the CPI%. For example, if the Consumer Price Index for December 1999 (as released in January 2000) is 2% higher than the Consumer Price Index for December 1998 (as released in January 1999), then the CPI% with respect to a payment due in 2000 would be 2%. The Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable in the year 2000 would thus be 3%.
- (4) The Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable to payments due in any year after 2000 shall be calculated by applying each year the greater of 3% or the CPI% on the Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable to payments due in the prior year. Continuing the example in subsection (3) above, if the CPI% with respect to a payment due in 2001 is 6%, then the Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable in 2001 would be 9.1800000% (an additional 6% applied on the 3% Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable in 2000), and if the CPI% with respect to a payment due in 2002 is 4%, then the Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable in 2002 would be 13.5472000% (an additional 4% applied on the 9.1800000% Inflation Adjustment Percentage applicable in 2001).
- (5) "Consumer Price Index" means the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the U.S. Department of Labor (or other similar measures agreed to by the Settling States and the Participating Manufacturers).
- (6) The "CPI%" means the actual total percent change in the Consumer Price Index during the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment in question is due.

(7) Additional Examples:

(A)	Calculating the Inflation Adjustment Percentages:		
	Percentage to be applied on the Inflation Adjustment		
	Percentage for the prior year (i.e., the greater of 3% or the CPI%)		Inflation Adjustment Percentage
Payment Year	Hypothetical CPI%		
2000	2.4%	3.0%	3.0000000%
2001	2.1%	3.0%	6.0900000%
2002	3.5%	3.5%	9.8031500%
2003	3.5%	3.5%	13.6462603%
2004	4.0%	4.0%	18.1921107%
2005	2.2%	3.0%	21.7378740%
2006	1.6%	3.0%	25.390102%
(B)	Applying the Inflation Adjustment:		
	Using the hypothetical Inflation Adjustment Percentages set forth in section (7)(A):		
..	the subsection 1X(c)(1) base payment amount for 2002 of \$6,500,000,000 as adjusted for inflation would equal \$7,137,204,750;		
..	the subsection 1X(c)(1) base payment amount for 2004 of \$8,000,000,000 as adjusted for inflation would equal \$9,455,368,856;		
..	the subsection 1X(c)(1) base payment amount for 2006 of \$8,000,000,000 as adjusted for inflation would equal \$10,031,200,816.		

**EXHIBIT D  
LIST OF LAWSUITS**

1. *Alabama*  
*Haylock et al. v. American Tobacco Co. et al.*, Circuit Court, Montgomery County, No. CV-96-1508-PR
2. *Alaska*  
*State of Alaska v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Superior Court, First Judicial District of Juneau, No. 11U-97915 CI (Atkaska)
3. *Arizona*  
*State of Arizona v. American Tobacco Co., Inc., et al.*, Superior Court, Maricopa County, No. CV-96-14769 (Aviz.)
4. *Arkansas*  
*State of Arkansas v. The American Tobacco Co., Inc., et al.*, Chancery Court, 6<sup>th</sup> Division, Pulaski County, No. 11-97-2982 (Ark.)
5. *California*  
*People of the State of California et al. v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Superior Court, Sacramento County, No. 97-AS-30301
6. *Colorado*  
*State of Colorado et al. v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co., et al.*, District Court, City and County of Denver, No. 97CV3432 (Colo.)
7. *Connecticut*  
*State of Connecticut v. Philip Morris, et al.*, Superior Court, Judicial District of Waterbury No. X02 CV96-014841AS (Conn.)
8. *Georgia*  
*State of Georgia et al. v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Superior Court, Fulton County, No. CA E-61692 (Ga.)
9. *Hawaii*  
*State of Hawaii v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp., et al.*, Circuit Court, First Circuit, No. 97-0441-01 (Haw.)
10. *Idaho*  
*State of Idaho v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Fourth Judicial District, Ada County, No. CVOC 9703239D (Idaho)
11. *Illinois*  
*People of the State of Illinois v. Philip Morris et al.*, Circuit Court of Cook County, No. 96-LJ13146 (Ill.)
12. *Indiana*  
*State of Indiana v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Marion County Superior Court, No. 49D 07-9702-CT-080226 (Ind.)
13. *Iowa*  
*State of Iowa v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company et al.*, Iowa District Court, Fifth Judicial District, Polk County, No. CL71048 (Iowa)
14. *Kansas*  
*State of Kansas v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company, et al.*, District Court of Shawnee County, Division 2, No. 96-CV-919 (Kan.)
15. *Louisiana*  
*Leysob v. The American Tobacco Company, et al.*, 14th Judicial District Court, Calcasieu Parish, No. 96-1209 (La.)
16. *Maine*  
*State of Maine v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Superior Court, Kennebec County, No. CV 97-134 (Me.)
17. *Maryland*  
*Maryland v. Philip Morris Incorporated, et al.*, Baltimore City Circuit Court, No. 96-122017-CL211487 (Md.)
18. *Massachusetts*  
*Commonwealth of Massachusetts v. Philip Morris Inc., et al.*, Middlesex Superior Court, No. 95-7378 (Mass.)
19. *Michigan*  
*Kelley v. Philip Morris Incorporated, et al.*, Ingham County Circuit Court, 30<sup>th</sup> Judicial Circuit, No. 96-84281-CZ (Mich.)
20. *Missouri*  
*State of Missouri v. American Tobacco Co., Inc., et al.*, Circuit Court, City of St. Louis, No. 972-1465 (Mo.)
21. *Montana*  
*State of Montana v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, First Judicial Court, Lewis and Clark County, No. CDV 9700306-14 (Mont.)
22. *Nebraska*  
*State of Nebraska v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co., et al.*, District Court, Lancaster County, No. 573277 (Neb.)

**EXHIBIT E**  
**FORMULA FOR CALCULATING**  
**VOLUME ADJUSTMENTS**

23. Nevada  
*Nevada v. Philip Morris, Incorporated, et al.*, Second Judicial Court, Washoe County, No. CV97-03279 (Nev.)
24. New Hampshire  
*New Hampshire v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co., et al.*, New Hampshire Superior Court, Merrimack County, No. 97-E-165 (N.H.)
25. New Jersey  
*State of New Jersey v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company, et al.*, Superior Court, Chancery Division, Middlesex County, No. C-254-96 (N.J.)
26. New Mexico  
*State of New Mexico v. The American Tobacco Co., et al.*, First Judicial District Court, County of Santa Fe, No. SF-1235 c (N.M.)
27. New York State  
*State of New York et al. v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Supreme Court of the State of New York, County of New York, No. 400361/97 (N.Y.)
28. Ohio  
*State of Ohio v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Court of Common Pleas, Franklin County, No. 97CV1H055114 (Ohio)
29. Oklahoma  
*State of Oklahoma, et al. v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company, et al.*, District Court, Cleveland County, No. CJ-96-1499-L (Okla.)
30. Oregon  
*State of Oregon v. The American Tobacco Co., et al.*, Circuit Court, Multnomah County, No. 9706-04457 (Or.)
31. Pennsylvania  
*Commonwealth of Pennsylvania v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Court of Common Pleas, Philadelphia County, April Term 1997, No. 2443
32. Puerto Rico  
*Rossello, et al. v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation, et al.*, U.S. District Court, Puerto Rico, No. 97-1910JAF
33. Rhode Island  
*State of Rhode Island v. American Tobacco Co., et al.*, Rhode Island Superior Court, Providence, No. 97-3058 (R.I.)
34. South Carolina  
*State of South Carolina v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation, et al.*, Court of Common Pleas, Fifth Judicial Circuit, Richland County, No. 97-CJ-40-1686 (S.C.)
35. South Dakota  
*State of South Dakota, et al. v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Circuit Court, Hughes County, Sixth Judicial Circuit, No. 98-65 (S.D.)
36. Utah  
*State of Utah v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company, et al.*, U.S. District Court, Central Division, No. 96 CV 0829W (Utah)
37. Vermont  
*State of Vermont v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al.*, Chittenden Superior Court, Chittenden County, No. 744-97 (Vt.) and 5816-98 (Vt.)
38. Washington  
*State of Washington v. American Tobacco Co. Inc., et al.*, Superior Court of Washington, King County, No. 96-2-15056083EA (Wash.)
39. West Virginia  
*McGrow, et al. v. The American Tobacco Company, et al.*, Kanawha County Circuit Court, No. 94-1707 (W. Va.)
40. Wisconsin  
*State of Wisconsin v. Philip Morris Inc., et al.*, Circuit Court, Branch 11, Dane County, No. 97-CV-328 (Wis.)

Additional States  
For each Settling State not listed above, the lawsuit or other legal action filed by the Attorney General or Governor of such Settling State against Participating Manufacturers in the Court in such Settling State prior to 30 days after the MSA Execution Date asserting Released Claims.

Any amount that by the terms of the Master Settlement Agreement is to be adjusted pursuant to this Exhibit E (the "Applicable Base Payment") shall be adjusted in the following manner:

(A) In the event the aggregate number of Cigarettes shipped in or to the fifty United States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico by the Original Participating Manufacturers in the Applicable Year (as defined hereinbelow) (the "Actual Volume") is greater than 475,656,000,000 Cigarettes (the "Base Volume"), the Applicable Base Payment shall be multiplied by the ratio of the Actual Volume to the Base Volume.

(B) In the event the Actual Volume is less than the Base Volume,  
i. The Applicable Base Payment shall be reduced by subtracting from it the amount equal to such Applicable Base Payment multiplied both by 0.98 and by the result of (i) (one) minus (ii) the ratio of the Actual Volume to the Base Volume.

ii. Soidly for purposes of calculating volume adjustments to the payments required under subsection IX(c)(1), if a reduction of the Base Payment due under such subsection results from the application of subparagraph (B)(i) of this Exhibit E, but the Original Participating Manufacturers' aggregate operating income from sales of Cigarettes for the Applicable Year in the fifty United States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico (the "Actual Operating Income") is greater than \$7,195,340,000 (the "Base Operating Income") (such Base Operating Income being adjusted upward in accordance with the formula for inflation adjustments set forth in Exhibit C herein beginning December 31, 1996 to be applied for each year after 1996) then the amount by which such Base Payment is reduced by the application of subsection (B)(i) shall be reduced (but not below zero) by the amount calculated by multiplying (i) a percentage equal to the aggregate Allocable Shares of the Settling States in which State-Specific Finality has occurred by (ii) 25% of such increase in such operating income. For purposes of this Exhibit E, "operating income from sales of Cigarettes" shall mean operating income from sales of Cigarettes in the fifty United States, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico: (a) before goodwill amortization, trademark amortization, restructuring charges and restructuring related charges, minority interest, net interest expense, non-operating income and expense, general corporate expenses and income taxes; and (b) excluding extraordinary items, cumulative effect of changes in method of accounting and discontinued operations -- all as such income is reported to the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") for the Applicable Year (either independently by the Participating Manufacturer or as part of consolidated financial statements reported in the SEC by an Affiliate of such Participating Manufacturer) or, in the case of an Original Participating Manufacturer that does not report income to the SEC, as reported in financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and audited by a nationally recognized accounting firm. For years subsequent to 1998, the determination of the Original Participating Manufacturers' aggregate operating income from sales of Cigarettes shall not exclude any charges or expenses incurred or accrued in connection with this Agreement or any prior settlement of a tobacco and health case and shall otherwise be derived using the same principles as were employed in deriving such Original Participating Manufacturers' aggregate operating income from sales of Cigarettes in 1996.

iii. Any increase in a Base Payment pursuant to subsection (B)(ii) above shall be allocated among the Original Participating Manufacturers in the following manner:

(1) only to those Original Participating Manufacturers whose operating income from sales of Cigarettes in the fifty United States, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico for the year for which the Base Payment is being adjusted is greater than their respective operating income from such sales of Cigarettes (including operating income from such sales of any of their Affiliates that do not continue to have such sales after the MSA Execution Date) in 1996 (as increased for inflation as provided in Exhibit C herein beginning December 31, 1996 to be applied for each year after 1996); and

(2) among the Original Participating Manufacturers described in paragraph (1) above in proportion to the ratio of (x) the increase in the operating income from sales of Cigarettes (as described in paragraph (1)) of the Original Participating Manufacturer in question, to (y) the aggregate increase in the operating income from sales of Cigarettes (as described in paragraph (1)) of those Original Participating Manufacturers described in paragraph (1) above.

(C) "Applicable Year" means the calendar year immediately preceding the year in which the payment at issue is due, regardless of when such payment is made.

(D) For purposes of this Exhibit, shipments shall be measured as provided in subsection I(fmm).

**EXHIBIT F**  
**POTENTIAL LEGISLATION NOT TO BE OPPOSED**

1. Limitations on Youth access to vending machines.
2. Inclusion of cigars within the definition of tobacco products.
3. Enhancement of enforcement efforts to identify and prosecute violations of laws prohibiting retail sales to Youth.
4. Encouraging or supporting use of technology to increase effectiveness of age-of-purchase laws, such as, without limitation, the use of programmable scanners, scanners to read drivers' licenses, or use of other age/ID data banks.
5. Limitations on promotional programs for non-tobacco goods using tobacco products as prizes or give-aways.
6. Enforcement of access restrictions through penalties on Youth for possession or use.
7. Limitations on tobacco product advertising in or on school facilities, or wearing of tobacco logo merchandise in or on school property.
8. Limitations on non-tobacco products which are designed to look like tobacco products, such as bubble gum cigars, candy cigarettes, etc.

F-1

**EXHIBIT G**  
**OBLIGATIONS OF THE TOBACCO INSTITUTE**  
**UNDER THE MASTER SETTLEMENT AGREEMENT**

- (a) Upon court approval of a plan of dissolution The Tobacco Institute ("TI") will:
  - (1) **Employees.** Promptly notify and arrange for the termination of the employment of all employees; provided, however, that TI may continue to engage any employee who is (A) essential to the wind-down function as set forth in section (b) herein, (B) reasonably needed for the sole purpose of directing and supporting TI's defense of ongoing litigation, or (C) reasonably needed for the sole purpose of performing the Tobacco Institute Testing Laboratory's (the "TITL") industry-wide cigarette testing pursuant to the Federal Trade Commission (the "FTC") method or any other testing prescribed by state or Federal law as set forth in section (h) herein.
  - (2) **Employee Benefits.** Fund all employee benefit and pension programs; provided, however, that unless ERISA or other federal or state law prohibits it, such funding will be accomplished through periodic contributions by the Original Participating Manufacturers, according to their Relative Market Shares, into a trust or a like mechanism, which trust or like mechanism will be established within 90 days of court approval of the plan of dissolution. An opinion letter will be appended to the dissolution plan to certify that the trust plan is not inconsistent with ERISA or employee benefit pension contracts.
  - (3) **Leases.** Terminate all leaseholds at the earliest possible date pursuant to the leases; provided, however, that TI may retain or lease anew such space (or lease other space) as needed for its wind-down activities, for TITL testing as described herein, and for subsequent litigation defense activities. Immediately upon execution of this Agreement, TI will provide notice to each of its landlords of its desire to terminate its lease with such landlord, and will request that the landlord take all steps to re-lease the premises at the earliest possible date consistent with TI's performance of its obligations hereunder. TI will vacate such leasehold premises as soon as they are re-leased or on the last day of wind-down, whichever occurs first.
  - (b) **Assets/Debts.** Within 60 days after court approval of a plan of dissolution, TI will provide to the Attorney General of New York and append to the dissolution plan a description of all of its assets, its debts, tax claims against it, claims of state and federal governments against it, creditor claims against it, pending litigation in which it is a party and notices of claims against it.
  - (c) **Documents.** Subject to the privacy protections provided by New York Public Officers Law §§ 91-99, TI will provide a copy of or otherwise make available to the State of New York all documents in its possession, excluding those that TI continues to claim to be subject to any attorney-client privilege, attorney work product protection, common interest/joint defense privilege or any other applicable privilege (collectively, "privilege") after the re-examination of privilege claims pursuant to court order in *State of Oklahoma v. RJR-Reynolds Tobacco Company et al.*, CI-96-2499-L (Dist. Ct., Cleveland County) (the "Oklahoma action");
    - (1) TI will deliver to the Attorney General of the State of New York a copy of the privilege log served by it in the Oklahoma action. Upon a written request by the Attorney General, TI will deliver an updated version of its privilege log, if any such updated version exists.
    - (2) The disclosure of any document or documents claimed to be privileged will be governed by section IV of this Agreement.
    - (3) At the conclusion of the document production and privilege logging process, TI will provide a sworn affidavit that all documents in its possession have been made available to the Attorney General of New York except for documents claimed to be privileged, and that any privilege logs that already exist have been made available to the Attorney General.
    - (d) **Remaining Assets.** On mutual agreement between TI and the Attorney General of New York, a not-for-profit health or child welfare organization will be named as the beneficiary of any TI assets that remain after lawful transfers of assets and satisfaction of TI's employee benefit obligations and any other debts, liabilities or claims.
    - (e) **Defense of Litigation.** Pursuant to Section 1006 of the New York Not-for-Profit Corporations Law, TI will have the right to continue to defend its litigation interests with respect to any claims against it that are pending or threatened now or that are brought or threatened in the future. TI will retain sole discretion over all litigation decisions, including, without limitation, decisions with respect to asserting any privileges or defenses, having privileged communications and creating privileged documents, filing pleadings, responding to discovery requests, making motions, filing affidavits and briefs, conducting party and non-party discovery, retaining expert witnesses and consultants, preparing for and defending itself at trial, settling any claims asserted against it, intervening or otherwise participating in litigation to protect interests that it deems significant to its defense, and otherwise directing or conducting its defense. Pursuant to existing joint defense agreements, TI may continue to assist its current or former members in defense of any litigation brought or threatened against them. TI also may enter into any new joint defense agreement or agreements that it deems significant to its defense of pending or threatened claims. TI may continue to engage such employees as reasonably needed for the sole purpose of directing and supporting its defense of ongoing litigation. As soon as TI has no litigation pending against it, it will dissolve completely and will cease all functions consistent with the requirements of law.

G-1

**EXHIBIT L**  
**DOCUMENT PRODUCTION**

Section 1.

- (a) Philip Morris Communities, Inc., et al., v. American Broadcasting Companies, Inc., et al., At Law No. 760CL94X00816-00 (Cir. Ct., City of Richmond)
- (b) Harley-Davidson v. Lorillard Tobacco Co., No. 93-947 (S.D.N.Y.)
- (c) Lorillard Tobacco Co. v. Harley-Davidson, No. 93-6098 (E.D. Wis.)
- (d) Brown & Williamson v. Lorillard and CBS, Inc., No. 82-648 (N.D. Ill.)
- (e) The FTC investigations of tobacco industry advertising and promotion as embodied in the following cites:

- 46 FTC 706
- 48 FTC 82
- 46 FTC 735
- 47 FTC 1393
- 108 F. Supp. 573
- 55 FTC 354
- 56 FTC 96
- 79 FTC 255
- 80 FTC 455
- Investigation #8023069
- Investigation #8323222

Each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will conduct its own reasonable inquiry to determine what documents or deposition testimony, if any, it produced or provided in the above-listed matters.

Section 2.

- (a) State of Washington v. American Tobacco Co., et al., No. 96-2-15056-8 SEA (Wash. Super. Ct., County of King)
- (b) In re Mike Moore, Attorney General, et al. State of Mississippi Tobacco Litigation, No. 94-1429 (Chancery Ct., Jackson, Miss.)
- (c) State of Florida v. American Tobacco Co., et al., No. CL 95-1466 AH (Fla. Cir. Ct., 15<sup>th</sup> Judicial Cir., Palm Beach Co.)
- (d) State of Texas v. American Tobacco Co., et al., No. 5-96CV-91 (E.D. Tex.)
- (e) Minnesota v. Philip Morris et al., No. C-94-8565 (Minn. Dist. Ct., County of Ramsey)
- (f) Brown v. R.J. Reynolds, No. 91-49738 CA (22) (11th Judicial Ct., Dade County, Florida)

(f) No public statement. Except as necessary in the course of litigation defense as set forth in section (e) above, upon court approval of a plan of dissolution, neither TI nor any of its employees or agents acting in their official capacity on behalf of TI will issue any statements, press releases, or other public statement concerning tobacco.

(g) Wind-down. After court approval of a plan of dissolution, TI will effectuate wind-down of all activities (other than its defense of litigation as described in section (e) above) expeditiously, and in no event later than 180 days after the date of court approval of the plan of dissolution. TI will provide monthly status reports to the Attorney General of New York regarding the progress of wind-down efforts and work remaining to be done with respect to such efforts.

(h) III. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Exhibit G or the dissolution plan, TI may perform TITL industry-wide cigarette testing pursuant to the FTC method or any other testing prescribed by state or federal law until such function is transferred to another entity, which transfer will be accomplished as soon as practicable but in no event more than 180 days after court approval of the dissolution plan.

(i) Jurisdiction. After the filing of a Certificate of Dissolution, pursuant to Section 1604 of the New York Not-for-Profit Corporation Law, the Supreme Court for the State of New York will have continuing jurisdiction over the dissolution of TI and the winding-down of TI's activities, including any litigation-related activities described in subsection (e) herein.

(j) No Determination or Admission. The dissolution of TI and any proceedings taken hereunder are not intended to be, or shall not in any event be construed as, deemed to be, or represented or caused to be represented by any Settling State as, an admission or concession of any liability or any wrongdoing whatsoever on the part of TI, any of its current or former members or anyone acting on their behalf. TI specifically disclaims and denies any liability or wrongdoing whatsoever with respect to the claims and allegations asserted against it by the Attorneys General of the Settling States.

(k) Court Approval. The Attorney General of the State of New York and the Original Participating Manufacturers will prepare a joint plan of dissolution for submission to the Supreme Court of the State of New York, all of the terms of which will be agreed on and consented to by the Attorney General and the Original Participating Manufacturers, consistent with this schedule. The Original Participating Manufacturers and their employees, as officers and directors of TI, will take whatever steps are necessary to execute all documents needed to develop such a plan of dissolution and to submit it to the court for approval. If any court makes any material change to any term or provision of the plan of dissolution agreed upon and consented to by the Attorney General and the Original Participating Manufacturers, then:

- (1) the Original Participating Manufacturers may, at their election, nevertheless proceed with the dissolution plan as modified by the court; or
- (2) if the Original Participating Manufacturers elect not to proceed with the court-modified dissolution plan, the Original Participating Manufacturers will be released from any obligations or undertakings under this Agreement or this schedule with respect to TI; provided, however, that the Original Participating Manufacturers will engage in good faith negotiations with the New York Attorney General to agree upon the term or terms of the dissolution plan that the court may have modified in an effort to agree upon a dissolution plan that may be resubmitted for the court's consideration.

**EXHIBIT I**

**INDEX AND SEARCH FEATURES FOR DOCUMENT WEBSITE**

(a) Each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will create and maintain on its website, at its expense, an enhanced, searchable index, as described below, using Alta-Vista or functionally comparable software, for all of the documents currently on its website and all documents being placed on its website pursuant to section IV of this Agreement.

(b) The searchable indices of documents on these websites will include:

- (1) all of the information contained in the 4(b) indices produced to the State Attorneys General (excluding fields specific only to the Minnesota action other than "request number");
- (2) the following additional fields of information (or their substantial equivalent) to the extent such information already exists in an electronic format that can be incorporated into such an index:

Document ID	Master ID
Other Number	Document Date
Primary Type	Other Type
Person Attending	Person Noted
Person Author	Person Recipient
Person Copied	Person Mentioned
Organization Author	Organization Recipient
Organization Copied	Organization Mentioned
Organization Attending	Organization Noted
Physical Attachment 1	Physical Attachment 2
Characteristics	File Name
Site	Area
Verbatim Title	Old Brand
Primary Brand	Mentioned Brand
Page Count	

(c) Each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organization will add, if not already available, a user-friendly document retrieval feature on the Website consisting of a "view all pages" function with enhanced image viewer capability that will enable users to choose to view and/or print either "all pages;" for a specific document or "page-by-page".

(d) Each Original Participating Manufacturer and Tobacco-Related Organizations will provide at its own expense to NAAAG a copy set in electronic form of its website document images and its accompanying subsection IV(b) index in ASCII-delimited form for all of the documents currently on its website and all of the documents described in subsection IV(d) of this Agreement. The Original Participating Manufacturers and Tobacco-Related Organizations will not object to any subsequent distribution and/or reproduction of these copy sets.

**EXHIBIT I**  
**TOBACCO ENFORCEMENT FUND PROTOCOL**

The States' Antitrust/Consumer Protection Tobacco Enforcement Fund ("Fund") is established by the Attorneys General of the Settling States, acting through NAAAG, pursuant to section VIII(c) of the Agreement. The following shall be the primary and mandatory protocol for the administration of the Fund.

**Section A**  
**Fund Purpose**

**Section 1**

The monies to be paid pursuant to section VIII(c) of the Agreement shall be placed by NAAAG in a new and separate interest bearing account, denominated the States' Antitrust/Consumer Protection Tobacco Enforcement Fund, which shall not then or thereafter be commingled with any other funds or accounts. However, nothing herein shall prevent deposits into the account so long as monies so deposited are then lawfully committed for the purpose of the Fund as set forth herein.

**Section 2**

A committee of three Attorneys General ("Special Committee") shall be established to determine disbursements from the account, using the process described herein. The three shall be the Attorney General of the State of Washington, the Chair of NAAAG's antitrust committee, and the Chair of NAAAG's consumer protection committee. In the event that an Attorney General shall hold either two or three of the above stated positions, that Attorney General may serve only in a single capacity, and shall be replaced in the remaining positions by first, the President of NAAAG, next by the President-Elect of NAAAG and if necessary the Vice-President of NAAAG.

**Section 3**

The purpose of the Fund is: (1) to enforce and implement the terms of the Agreement, in particular, by partial payment of the monetary costs of the Independent Auditor as contemplated by the Agreement; and (2) to provide monetary assistance to the various states' attorneys general: (A) to investigate and/or litigate suspected violations of the Agreement and/or Consent Decree; (B) to investigate and/or litigate suspected violations of state and/or federal antitrust or consumer protection laws with respect to the manufacture, use, marketing and sales of tobacco products; and (C) to enforce the Qualifying Statute ("Qualifying Actions"). The Special Committee shall entertain requests only from Settling States for disbursement from the fund associated with a Qualifying Action ("Grant Application").

**Section B**

**Administration Standards Relative to Grant Applications**

**Section 1**

The Special Committee shall not entertain any Grant Application to pay salaries or ordinary expenses of regular employees of any Attorney General's office.

**Section 2**

The affirmative vote of two or more of the members of the Special Committee shall be required to approve any Grant Application.

**Section 3**

The decision of the Special Committee shall be final and non-appealable.

**Section 4**

The Attorney General of the State of Washington shall be chair of the Special Committee and shall annually report to the Attorneys General on the requests for funds from the Fund and the actions of the Special Committee upon the requests.

**Section 5**

When a Grant Application to the Fund is made by an Attorney General who is then a member of the Special Committee, such member will be temporarily replaced on the Committee, but only for the determination of such Grant Application. The remaining members of the Special Committee shall designate an Attorney General to replace the Attorney General so disqualified, in order to consider the application.

**Section 6**

The Fund shall be maintained in a federally insured depository institution located in Washington, D.C. Funds may be invested in federal government-backed vehicles. The Fund shall be regularly reported on NAAAG financial statements and subject to annual audit.

**Section 7**

Withdrawals from and checks drawn on the Fund will require at least two of three authorized signatures. The three persons so authorized shall be the executive director, the deputy director, and controller of NAAAG.

**Section 8**

The Special Committee shall meet in person or telephonically as necessary to determine whether a grant is sought for assistance with a Qualifying Action and whether and to what extent the Grant Application is accepted. The chair of the



Special Committee shall designate the times for such meetings, so that a response is made to the Grant Application as expeditiously as practicable.

Section 2

The Special Committee may issue a grant from the Fund only when an Attorney General certifies that the monies will be used in connection with a Qualifying Action, to wit: (A) to investigate and/or litigate suspected violations of the Agreement and/or Consent Decree; (B) to investigate and/or litigate suspected violations of state and/or federal antitrust or consumer protection laws with respect to the manufacture, use, marketing and sales of tobacco products; and (C) to enforce the Qualifying Statute. The Attorney General submitting such application shall further certify that the entire grant of monies from the Fund will be used to pay for such investigation and/or litigation. The Grant Application shall describe the nature and scope of the intended action and use of the funds which may be granted.

Section 3

To the extent permitted by law, each Attorney General whose Grant Application is favorably acted upon shall promise to pay back to the Fund all of the amounts received from the Fund in the event the state is successful in litigation or settlement of a Qualifying Action. In the event that the monetary recovery, if any, obtained is not sufficient to pay back the entire amount of the grant, the Attorney General shall pay back as much as is permitted by the recovery. In all instances where monies are granted, the Attorney General(s) receiving monies shall provide an accounting to NAAAG of all disbursements received from the Fund no later than the 30th of June next following such disbursement.

Section 4

In addition to the repayments to the Fund contemplated in the preceding section, the Special Committee may deposit in the Fund any other monies lawfully committed for the precise purpose of the Fund as set forth in section A(3) above. For example, the Special Committee may at its discretion accept for deposit in the Fund a foundation grant or court-ordered award for state antitrust and/or consumer protection enforcement as long as the monies so deposited become part of and subject to the same rules, purposes and limitations of the Fund.

Section 5

The Special Committee shall be the sole and final arbiter of all Grant Applications and of the amount awarded for each such application, if any.

Section 6

The Special Committee shall endeavor to maintain the Fund for as long a term as is consistent with the purpose of the Fund. The Special Committee will limit the total amount of grants made to a single state to no more than \$500,000.00. The Special Committee will not award a single grant in excess of \$200,000.00, unless the grant involves more than one state, in which case, a single grant so made may not exceed \$100,000.00. The Special Committee may, in its discretion and by unanimous vote, decide to waive these limitations if it determines that special circumstances exist. Such decision, however, shall not be effective unless ratified by a two-thirds majority vote of the NAAAG executive committee.

**Section C**

**Grant Application Procedures**

Section 1

This Protocol shall be transmitted to the Attorneys General within 90 days after the MSA Execution Date. It may not be amended unless by recommendation of the NAAAG executive committee and majority vote of the Settling States. NAAAG will notify the Settling States of any amendments promptly and will transmit yearly to the attorneys general a statement of the Fund balance and a summary of deposits to and withdrawals from the Fund in the previous calendar or fiscal year.

Section 2

Grant Applications must be in writing and must be signed by the Attorney General submitting the application.

Section 3

Grant Applications must include the following:

- (A) A description of the contemplated/pending action, including the scope of the alleged violation and the area (state/regional/multi-state) likely to be affected by the suspected offending conduct.
- (B) A statement whether the action is actively and currently pursued by any other Attorney General or other prosecuting authority.
- (C) A description of the purposes for which the monies sought will be used.
- (D) The amount requested.
- (E) A directive as to how disbursements from the Fund should be made, e.g., either directly to a supplier of services (consultants, experts, witnesses, and the like), to the Attorney General's office directly, or in the case of multi-state action, to one or more Attorneys General's offices designated as a recipient of the monies.

(F) A statement that the applicant Attorney(s) General will, to the extent permitted by law, pay back to the Fund all, or as much as is possible, of the monies received, upon receipt of any monetary recovery obtained in the contemplated/pending litigation or settlement of the action.

(G) A certification that no part of the grant monies will be used to pay the salaries or ordinary expenses of any regular employee of the office of the applicant(s) and that the grant will be used solely to pay for the stated purpose.

(H) A certification that an accounting will be provided to NAAAG of all monies received by the applicant(s) by no later than the 30th of June next following any receipt of such monies.

Section 4

All Grant Applications shall be submitted to the NAAAG office at the following address: National Association of Attorneys General, 750 1st Street, NE, Suite 1100, Washington D.C. 20002.

Section 5

The Special Committee will endeavor to act upon all complete and properly submitted Grant Applications within 30 days of receipt of said applications.

**Section D**

**Other Disbursements from the Fund**

Section 1

To enforce and implement the terms of the Agreement, the Special Committee shall direct disbursements from the Fund to comply with the partial payment obligations set forth in section XI of the Agreement relative to costs of the Independent Auditor. A report of such disbursements shall be included in the accounting given pursuant to section C(1) above.

**Section E**

**Administrative Costs**

Section 1

NAAAG shall receive from the Fund on July 1, 1999 and on July 1 of each year thereafter an administrative fee of \$100,000 for its administrative costs in performing its duties under the Protocol and this Agreement. The NAAAG executive committee may adjust the amount of the administrative fee in extraordinary circumstances.

**EXHIBIT K  
MARKET CAPITALIZATION PERCENTAGES**

Philip Morris Incorporated	68.00000000%
Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation	17.90000000%
Loftland Tobacco Company	7.30000000%
R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company	<del>6.80000000%</del>
Total	<del>100.00000000%</del>

**EXHIBIT L  
MODEL CONSENT DECREE**

IN THE [XXXXXX] COURT OF THE STATE OF [XXXXXX]  
IN AND FOR THE COUNTY OF [XXXXX]  
..... x CAUSE NO. XXXXXX  
STATE OF [XXXXXXXXXXXXXX],  
Plaintiff,  
v.  
[XXXXXX XXXXX XXXX], et al.,  
Defendants.  
..... x  
CONSENT DECREE AND FINAL JUDGMENT

WHEREAS, Plaintiff, the State of [name of Settling State], commenced this action on [date], [by and through its Attorney General [name]], pursuant to [her/his/its] common law powers and the provisions of [state and/or federal law];  
WHEREAS, the State of [name of Settling State] asserted various claims for monetary, equitable and injunctive relief on behalf of the State of [name of Settling State] against certain tobacco product manufacturers and other defendants;  
WHEREAS, Defendants have contested the claims in the State's complaint [and amended complaints, if any] and denied the State's allegations [and asserted affirmative defenses];  
WHEREAS, the parties desire to resolve this action in a manner which appropriately addresses the State's public health concerns, while conserving the parties' resources, as well as those of the Court, which would otherwise be expended in litigating a matter of this magnitude; and  
WHEREAS, the Court has made no determination of any violation of law, this Consent Decree and Final Judgment being entered prior to the taking of any testimony and without trial or final adjudication of any issue of fact or law;

**NOW, THEREFORE, IT IS HEREBY ORDERED, ADJUDGED AND DECREED, AS FOLLOWS:**

**I. JURISDICTION AND VENUE**  
This Court has jurisdiction over the subject matter of this action and over each of the Participating Manufacturers. Venue is proper in this [county/district].

**II. DEFINITIONS**  
The definitions set forth in the Agreement (a copy of which is attached herein) are incorporated herein by reference.

**III. APPLICABILITY**

A. This Consent Decree and Final Judgment applies only to the Participating Manufacturers in their corporate capacity acting through their respective successors and assigns, directors, officers, employees, agents, subsidiaries, divisions, or other internal organizational units of any kind or any other entities acting in concert or participation with them. The remedies, penalties and sanctions that may be imposed or assessed in connection with a violation of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment (or any order issued in connection herewith) shall only apply to the Participating Manufacturers, and shall not be imposed or assessed against any employee, officer or director of any Participating Manufacturer, or against any other person or entity as a consequence of such violation, and there shall be no jurisdiction under this Consent Decree and Final Judgment to do so.  
B. This Consent Decree and Final Judgment is not intended to and does not vest standing in any third party with respect to the terms hereof. No portion of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall provide any rights to, or be enforceable by, any person or entity other than the State of [name of Settling State] or a Released Party. The State of [name of Settling State] may not assign or otherwise convey any right to enforce any provision of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment.

**IV. VOLUNTARY ACT OF THE PARTIES**

The parties hereto expressly acknowledge and agree that this Consent Decree and Final Judgment is voluntarily entered into as the result of arm's-length negotiation, and all parties hereto were represented by counsel in deciding to enter into this Consent Decree and Final Judgment.

**V. INJUNCTIVE AND OTHER EQUITABLE RELIEF**

Each Participating Manufacturer is permanently enjoined from:

sentence shall be deemed to (1) require any Participating Manufacturer to produce, distribute or otherwise disclose any information that is subject to any privilege or protection; (2) preclude any Participating Manufacturer from entering into any joint defense or joint legal interest agreement or arrangement (whether or not in writing), or from asserting any privilege pursuant thereto; or (3) impose any affirmative obligation on any Participating Manufacturer to conduct any research.

I. Making any material misrepresentation of fact regarding the health consequences of using any Tobacco Product, including any tobacco additives, filters, paper or other ingredients. Provided, however, that nothing in the preceding sentence shall limit the exercise of any First Amendment right or the assertion of any defense or position in any judicial, legislative or regulatory forum.

#### VI. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

A. Jurisdiction of this case is retained by the Court for the purposes of implementing and enforcing the Agreement and this Consent Decree and Final Judgment and enabling the continuing proceedings contemplated herein. Whenever possible, the State of [name of Settling State] and the Participating Manufacturers shall seek to resolve any issue that may exist as to compliance with this Consent Decree and Final Judgment by discussion among the appropriate designees named pursuant to subsection XVII(m) of the Agreement. The State of [name of Settling State] and/or any Participating Manufacturer may apply to the Court at any time for further orders and directions as may be necessary or appropriate for the implementation and enforcement of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment. Provided, however, that with regard to subsections V(A) and V(F) of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment, the Attorney General shall issue a cease and desist demand to the Participating Manufacturer that the Attorney General believes is in violation of either of such sections at least ten Business Days before the Attorney General applies to the Court for an order to enforce such subsections, unless the Attorney General reasonably determines that either a compelling time-sensitive public health and safety concern requires some immediate action or the Court has previously issued an Enforcement Order in the Participating Manufacturer in question for the same or a substantially similar action or activity. For any claimed violation of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment, in determining whether to seek an order for monetary, civil contempt or criminal sanctions for any claimed violation, the Attorney General shall give good-faith consideration to whether: (1) the Participating Manufacturer that is claimed to have committed the violation has taken appropriate and reasonable steps to cause the claimed violation to be cured, unless that party has been guilty of a pattern of violations of like nature; and (2) a legitimate, good-faith dispute exists as to the meaning of the terms in question of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment. The Court in any case in its discretion may determine not to enter an order for monetary, civil contempt or criminal sanctions.

B. This Consent Decree and Final Judgment is not intended to be, and shall not in any event be construed as, or deemed to be, an admission or concession or evidence of (1) any liability or any wrongdoing whatsoever on the part of any Released Party or that any Released Party has engaged in any of the activities barred by this Consent Decree and Final Judgment; or (2) personal jurisdiction over any person or entity other than the Participating Manufacturers. Each Participating Manufacturer specifically disclaims and denies any liability or wrongdoing whatsoever with respect to the claims and allegations asserted against it in this action, and has stipulated to the entry of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment solely to avoid the further expense, inconvenience, burden and risk of litigation.

C. Except as expressly provided otherwise in the Agreement, this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall not be modified (by this Court, by any other court or by any other means) unless the party seeking modification demonstrates, by clear and convincing evidence, that it will suffer irreparable harm from new and unforeseen conditions. Provided, however, that the provisions of sections III, V, VI and VII of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall in no event be subject to modification without the consent of the State of [name of Settling State] and all affected Participating Manufacturers. In the event that any of the sections of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment enumerated in the preceding sentence are modified by this Court, by any other court or by any other means without the consent of the State of [name of Settling State] and all affected Participating Manufacturers, then this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall be void and of no further effect. Changes in the economic conditions of the parties shall not be grounds for modification. It is intended that the Participating Manufacturers will comply with this Consent Decree and Final Judgment as originally entered, even if the Participating Manufacturers' obligations hereunder are greater than those imposed under current or future law (unless compliance with this Consent Decree and Final Judgment would violate such law). A change in law that results, directly or indirectly, in more favorable or beneficial treatment of any one or more of the Participating Manufacturers shall not support modification of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment.

D. In any proceeding which results in a finding that a Participating Manufacturer violated this Consent Decree and Final Judgment, the Participating Manufacturer or Participating Manufacturers found to be in violation shall pay the State's costs and attorney's fees incurred by the State of [name of Settling State] in such proceeding.

E. The remedies in this Consent Decree and Final Judgment are cumulative and in addition to any other remedies the State of [name of Settling State] may have at law or equity, including but not limited to its rights under the Agreement. Nothing herein shall be construed to prevent the State from bringing an action with respect to conduct not released pursuant to the Agreement, even though that conduct may also violate this Consent Decree and Final Judgment. Nothing in this Consent Decree and Final Judgment is intended to create any right for [name of Settling State] to obtain any Cigarette product formula that it would not otherwise have under applicable law.

A. Taking any action, directly or indirectly, to target Youth within the State of [name of Settling State] in advertising, promotion or marketing of Tobacco Products, or taking any action the primary purpose of which is to initiate, maintain or increase the incidence of Youth smoking within the State of [name of Settling State].

B. After 180 days after the MSA Execution Date, using or causing to be used within the State of [name of Settling State] any Caricoin in the advertising, promoting, packaging or labeling of Tobacco Products.

C. After 30 days after the MSA Execution Date, making or causing to be made any payment or other consideration to any other person or entity to use, display, make reference to or use as a group within the State of [name of Settling State] any Tobacco Product, Tobacco Product package, advertisement for a Tobacco Product, or any other item bearing a Brand Name in any Media; provided, however, that the foregoing prohibition shall not apply to (1) Media where the audience or viewers are within an Adult-Only Facility (provided such Media are not visible to persons outside such Adult-Only Facility); (2) Media not intended for distribution or display to the public; (3) instructional Media concerning non-conventional cigarettes viewed only by or provided only to smokers who are Adults; and (4) actions taken by any Participating Manufacturer in connection with a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsections III(c)(2)(A) and III(c)(2)(B)(i) of the Agreement, and use of a Brand Name to identify a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted by subsection III(c)(2)(B)(ii).

D. Beginning July 1, 1999, marketing, distributing, offering, selling, licensing or causing to be marketed, distributed, offered, sold, or licensed (including, without limitation, by catalogue or direct mail), within the State of [name of Settling State], any apparel or other merchandise (other than Tobacco Products, items the sole function of which is to advertise Tobacco Products, or written or electronic publications) which bear a Brand Name. Provided, however, that nothing in this section shall (1) require any Participating Manufacturer to breach or terminate any licensing agreement or other contract in existence as of June 20, 1997 (this exception shall not apply beyond the current term of any existing contract, without regard to any renewal or option term that may be exercised by such Participating Manufacturer); (2) prohibit the distribution to any Participating Manufacturer's employee who is not Underage of any item described above that is intended for the personal use of such an employee; (3) require any Participating Manufacturer to retrieve, collect or otherwise recover any item that prior to the MSA Execution Date was marketed, distributed, offered, sold, licensed or caused to be marketed, distributed, offered, sold or licensed by such Participating Manufacturer; (4) apply to coupons or other items used by Adults solely in connection with the purchase of Tobacco Products; (5) apply to apparel or other merchandise used within an Adult-Only Facility that is not distributed (by sale or otherwise) to any member of the general public; or (6) apply to apparel or other merchandise (a) marketed, distributed, offered, sold, or licensed at the site of a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsection III(c)(2)(A) or III(c)(2)(B)(i) of the Agreement by the person to which the relevant Participating Manufacturer has provided payment in exchange for the use of the relevant Brand Name in the Brand Name Sponsorship or a third-party that does not receive payment from the relevant Participating Manufacturer (or any Affiliate of such Participating Manufacturer) in connection with the marketing, distribution, offer, sale or license of such apparel or other merchandise, or (b) used at the site of a Brand Name Sponsorship permitted pursuant to subsections III(c)(2)(A) or III(c)(2)(B)(i) of the Agreement (during such event) that are not distributed (by sale or otherwise) to any member of the general public.

E. After the MSA Execution Date, distributing or causing to be distributed within the State of [name of Settling State] any free samples of Tobacco Products except in an Adult-Only Facility. For purposes of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment, a "free sample" does not include a Tobacco Product that is provided to an Adult in connection with (1) the purchase, exchange or redemption for proof of purchase of any Tobacco Products (including, but not limited to, a free offer in connection with the purchase of Tobacco Products, such as a "two-for-one" offer), or (2) the conducting of consumer testing or evaluation of Tobacco Products with persons who certify that they are Adults.

F. Using or causing to be used as a brand name of any Tobacco Product pursuant to any agreement requiring the payment of money or other valuable consideration, any nationally recognized or nationally established brand name or trade name of any non-tobacco item or service or any nationally recognized or nationally established sports team, entertainment group or individual celebrity. Provided, however, that the preceding sentence shall not apply to any Tobacco Product brand name in existence as of July 1, 1998. For the purposes of this provision, the term "other valuable consideration" shall not include an agreement between two entities, who enter into such agreement for the sole purpose of avoiding infringement claims.

G. After 60 days after the MSA Execution Date and through and including December 31, 2001, manufacturing or causing to be manufactured for sale within the State of [name of Settling State] any pack or other container of Cigarettes containing fewer than 20 Cigarettes (or, in the case of roll-your-own tobacco, any package of roll-your-own tobacco containing less than 0.60 ounces of tobacco); and, after 150 days after the MSA Execution Date and through and including December 31, 2001, selling or distributing within the State of [name of Settling State] any pack or other container of Cigarettes containing fewer than 20 Cigarettes (or, in the case of roll-your-own tobacco, any package of roll-your-own tobacco containing less than 0.60 ounces of tobacco).

H. Entering into any contract, combination or conspiracy with any other Tobacco Product Manufacturer that has the purpose or effect of: (1) limiting competition in the production or distribution of information about health hazards or other consequences of the use of their products; (2) limiting or suppressing research into smoking and health; or (3) limiting or suppressing research into the marketing or development of new products. Provided, however, that nothing in the preceding

**EXHIBIT M**  
**LIST OF PARTICIPATING MANUFACTURERS' LAWSUITS**  
**AGAINST THE SETTLING STATES**

1. Philip Morris, Inc., et al. v. Margery V. Bronsler, Attorney General of the State of Hawaii, In Her Official Capacity, Civ. No. 96-00722HG, United States District Court for the District of Hawaii
2. Philip Morris, Inc., et al. v. Bruce Bogelbo, Attorney General of the State of Alaska, In His Official Capacity, Civ. No. A97-0003CV, United States District Court for the District of Alaska
3. Philip Morris, Inc., et al. v. Scott Harshbarger, Attorney General of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, In His Official Capacity, Civ. No. 95-12574-GAO, United States District Court for the District of Massachusetts
4. Philip Morris, Inc., et al. v. Richard Blumenthal, Attorney General of the State of Connecticut, In His Official Capacity, Civ. No. 396CV01221 (PCD), United States District Court for the District of Connecticut
5. Philip Morris, et al. v. William H. Surrell, et al., No. 1:98-ev-132, United States District Court for the District of Vermont

F. No party shall be considered the drafter of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment for the purpose of any statute, case law or rule of interpretation or construction that would or might cause any provision to be construed against the drafter. Nothing in this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall be construed as approval by the State of [name of Settling State] of the Participating Manufacturers' business organizations, operations, acts or practices, and the Participating Manufacturers shall make no representation to the contrary.

G. The settlement negotiations resulting in this Consent Decree and Final Judgment have been undertaken in good faith and for settlement purposes only, and no evidence of negotiations or discussions underlying this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall be offered or received in evidence in any action or proceeding for any purpose. Neither this Consent Decree and Final Judgment nor any public discussions, public statements or public comments with respect to this Consent Decree and Final Judgment by the State of [name of Settling State] or any Participating Manufacturer or its agents shall be offered or received in evidence in any action or proceeding for any purpose other than in an action or proceeding arising under or relating to this Consent Decree and Final Judgment.

H. All obligations of the Participating Manufacturers pursuant to this Consent Decree and Final Judgment (including, but not limited to, all payment obligations) are, and shall remain, several and not joint.

I. The provisions of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment are applicable only to actions taken (or omitted to be taken) within the States. Provided, however, that the preceding sentence shall not be construed as extending the territorial scope of any provision of this Consent Decree and Final Judgment whose scope is otherwise limited by the terms thereof.

J. Nothing in subsection V(A) or VI(D) of this Consent Decree shall create a right to challenge the continuation, after the MSA Execution Date, of any advertising content, claims or slogan (other than use of a Cartoon) that was not unlawful prior to the MSA Execution Date.

K. If the Agreement terminates in this State for any reason, then this Consent Decree and Final Judgment shall be void and of no further effect.

**VII. FINAL DISPOSITION**

A. The Agreement, the settlement set forth therein, and the establishment of the escrow provided for therein are hereby approved in all respects, and all claims are hereby dismissed with prejudice as provided herein.

B. The Court finds that the person(s) signing the Agreement have full and complete authority to enter into the binding and fully effective settlement of this action as set forth in the Agreement. The Court further finds that entering into this settlement is in the best interests of the State of [name of Settling State].

**LET JUDGMENT BE ENTERED ACCORDINGLY**

**DATED** this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 1998.

**EXHIBIT N**  
**LITIGATING POLITICAL SUBDIVISIONS**

1. City of New York, et al. v. The Tobacco Institute, Inc., et al., Supreme Court of the State of New York, County of New York, Index No. 406225/96
2. County of Erie v. The Tobacco Institute, Inc., et al., Supreme Court of the State of New York, County of Erie, Index No. 11997359
3. County of Los Angeles v. R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co., et al., San Diego Superior Court, No. 707651
4. The People v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al., San Francisco Superior Court, No. 980864
5. County of Cook v. Philip Morris, Inc., et al., Circuit Court of Cook County, Ill., No. 97-L-4530

N-1

**EXHIBIT O**  
**MODEL STATE FEE PAYMENT AGREEMENT**

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement (the "STATE Fee Payment Agreement") is entered into as of \_\_\_\_\_ between and among the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel (as defined herein), to provide for payment of attorneys' fees pursuant to Section XVII of the Master Settlement Agreement (the "Agreement").

**WITNESSETH:**

WHEREAS, the State of STATE and the Original Participating Manufacturers have entered into the Agreement to settle and resolve with finality all Released Claims against the Released Parties, including the Original Participating Manufacturers, as set forth in the Agreement; and

WHEREAS, Section XVII of the Agreement provides that the Original Participating Manufacturers shall pay reasonable attorneys' fees to those private outside counsel identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement, pursuant to the terms hereof;

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT KNOWN THAT, in consideration of the mutual agreement of the State of STATE and the Original Participating Manufacturers to the terms of the Agreement and of the mutual agreement of STATE Outside Counsel and the Original Participating Manufacturers to the terms of this STATE Fee Payment Agreement, and such other consideration described herein, the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel agree as follows:

**SECTION 1. Definitions.**

All definitions contained in the Agreement are incorporated by reference herein, except as to terms specifically defined herein.

(a) "Action" means the lawsuit identified in Exhibit D, M or N to the Agreement that has been brought by or against the State of STATE [or Litigating Political Subdivision].

(b) "Allocated Amount" means the amount of any Applicable Quarterly Payment allocated to any Private Counsel (including STATE Outside Counsel) pursuant to section 17 hereof.

(c) "Allowable Liquidated Share" means, in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of Private Counsel as of any date specified in section 8 hereof exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount for any payment described herein, a percentage share of the Applicable Liquidation Amount equal to the proportion of (i) the amount of the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel to (ii) the sum of Payable Liquidated Fees of all Private Counsel.

(d) "Applicable Liquidation Amount" means, for purposes of the payments described in section 8 hereof: —

(i) for the payment described in subsection (a) hereof, \$125 million;

(ii) for the payment described in subsection (b) hereof, the difference between (A) \$250 million and (B) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Payable Liquidated Fees of Outside Counsel pursuant to subsection (a) hereof;

(iii) for the payment described in subsection (c) hereof, the difference between (A) \$250 million and (B) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Payable Liquidated Fees of Outside Counsel pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) hereof;

(iv) for the payment described in subsection (d) hereof, the difference between (A) \$250 million and (B) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Payable Liquidated Fees of Outside Counsel pursuant to subsections (a), (b) and (c) hereof;

(v) for the payment described in subsection (e) hereof, the difference between (A) \$250 million and (B) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Payable Liquidated Fees of Outside Counsel pursuant to subsections (a), (b), (c) and (d) hereof;

(vi) for each of the first, second and third quarterly payments for any calendar year described in subsection (f) hereof, \$62.5 million; and

(vii) for each of the fourth calendar quarterly payments for any calendar year described in subsection (f) hereof, the difference between (A) \$250 million and (B) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Payable Liquidated Fees of Outside Counsel with respect to the preceding calendar quarters of the calendar year.

(e) "Application" means a written application for a Fee Award submitted to the Panel, as well as all supporting materials (which may include video recordings of interviews).

(f) "Approved Cost Statement" means both (i) a Cost Statement that has been accepted by the Original Participating Manufacturers; and (ii) in the event that a Cost Statement submitted by STATE Outside Counsel is disputed, the determination by arbitration pursuant to subsection (h) of section 19 hereof as to the amount of the reasonable costs and expenses of STATE Outside Counsel.

(g) "Cost Statement" means a signed and attested statement of reasonable costs and expenses of Outside Counsel for any action identified on Exhibit D, M or N to the Agreement that has been brought by or against a Settling State or Litigating Political Subdivision.

(b) "Designated Representative" means the person designated in writing, by each person or entity identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE or as later certified in writing by the governmental prosecuting authority of the Litigating Political Subdivision, to act as their agent in receiving payments from the Original Participating Manufacturers for the benefit of STATE Outside Counsel pursuant to sections 8, 16 and 19 hereof, as applicable.

(c) "Director" means the Director of the Private Adjudication Center of the Duke University School of Law or such other person or entity as may be chosen by agreement of the Original Participating Manufacturers and the Committee described in the second sentence of paragraph (b)(ii) of section 11 hereof.

(d) "Eligible Counsel" means Private Counsel eligible to be allocated a part of a Quarterly Fee Amount pursuant to section 17 hereof.

(e) "Federal Legislation" means federal legislation that imposes an enforceable obligation on Participating Defendants to pay attorneys' fees with respect to Private Counsel.

(f) "Fee Award" means any award of attorneys' fees by the Panel in connection with a Tobacco Case.

(g) "Liquidated Fee" means an attorneys' fee for Outside Counsel for any action identified on Exhibit D, M or N to the Agreement that has been brought by or against a Settling State or Litigating Political Subdivision, in an amount agreed upon by the Original Participating Manufacturers and such Outside Counsel.

(h) "Outside Counsel" means all those Private Counsel identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement.

(i) "Panel" means the three-member arbitration panel described in section 11 hereof.

(j) "Party" means (i) STATE Outside Counsel and (ii) an Original Participating Manufacturer.

(k) "Payable Cost Statement" means the unpaid amount of a Cost Statement as to which all conditions precedent to payment have been satisfied.

(l) "Payable Liquidated Fee" means the unpaid amount of a Liquidated Fee as to which all conditions precedent to payment have been satisfied.

(m) "Previously Settled States" means the States of Mississippi, Florida and Texas.

(n) "Private Counsel" means all private counsel for all plaintiffs in a Tobacco Case (including STATE Outside Counsel).

(o) "Quarterly Fee Amount" means, for purposes of the quarterly payments described in sections 16, 17 and 18 hereof --

(i) for each of the first, second and third calendar quarters of any calendar year beginning with the first calendar quarter of 1999 and ending with the third calendar quarter of 2008, \$125 million;

(ii) for each fourth calendar quarter of any calendar year beginning with the fourth calendar quarter of 1999 and ending with the fourth calendar quarter of 2003, the sum of (A) \$125 million and (B) the difference, if any, between (1) \$375 million and (2) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Fee Awards of Private Counsel during such calendar year, if any;

(iii) for each fourth calendar quarter of any calendar year beginning with the fourth calendar quarter of 2004 and ending with the fourth calendar quarter of 2008, the sum of (A) \$125 million; (B) the difference between (1) \$375 million; and (2) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Fee Awards of Private Counsel during such calendar year, if any; and (C) the difference, if any, between (1) \$250 million and (2) the product of (a) 2 (two tenths) and (b) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Liquidated Fees of Outside Counsel pursuant to section 8 hereof, if any;

(iv) for each of the first, second and third calendar quarters of any calendar year beginning with the first calendar quarter of 2009, \$125 million; and

(v) for each fourth calendar quarter of any calendar year beginning with the fourth calendar quarter of 2009, the sum of (A) \$125 million and (B) the difference, if any, between (1) \$375 million and (2) the sum of all amounts paid in satisfaction of all Fee Awards of Private Counsel during such calendar year, if any.

(w) "Related Persons" means each Original Participating Manufacturer's past, present and future Affiliates, divisions, officers, directors, employees, representatives, insurers, lenders, underwriters, Tobacco-Related Organizations, trade associations, suppliers, agents, auditors, advertising agencies, public relations entities, attorneys, retailers and distributors (and the predecessors, heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns of each of the foregoing).

(x) "State of STATE" means the applicable Settling State or the Litigating Political Subdivision, any of its past, present and future agents, officials acting in their official capacities, legal representatives, agencies, departments, commissions and subdivisions.

(y) "STATE Outside Counsel" means all persons or entities identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of State of STATE (or as later certified by the office of the governmental prosecuting authority for the Litigating Political Subdivision) as having been retained by and having represented the STATE in connection with the Action, acting collectively by unanimous decision of all such persons or entities.

(y) "Tobacco Case" means any tobacco and health case (other than a non-class action personal injury case brought directly by or on behalf of a single natural person or the survivor of such person or for wrongful death, or any non-class action consolidation of two or more such cases).

(z) "Unpaid Fee" means the unpaid portion of a Fee Award.

#### SECTION 2. Agreement to Pay Fees.

The Original Participating Manufacturers will pay reasonable attorneys' fees to STATE Outside Counsel for their representation of the State of STATE in connection with the Action, as provided herein and subject to the *Code of Professional Responsibility* of the American Bar Association. Nothing herein shall be construed to require the Original Participating Manufacturers to pay any attorneys' fees other than (i) a Liquidated Fee or a Fee Award and (ii) a Cost Statement, as provided herein, nor shall anything herein require the Original Participating Manufacturers to pay any Liquidated Fee, Fee Award or Cost Statement in connection with any litigation other than the Action.

#### SECTION 3. Exclusive Obligation of the Original Participating Manufacturers.

The provisions set forth herein constitute the entire obligation of the Original Participating Manufacturers with respect to payment of attorneys' fees of STATE Outside Counsel (including costs and expenses) in connection with the Action and the exclusive means by which STATE Outside Counsel or any other person or entity may seek payment of fees by the Original Participating Manufacturers or Related Persons in connection with the Action. The Original Participating Manufacturers shall have no obligations pursuant to Section XVII of the Agreement to pay attorneys' fees in connection with the Action to any counsel other than STATE Outside Counsel, and they shall have no other obligation to pay attorneys' fees to or otherwise to compensate STATE Outside Counsel, any other counsel or representative of the State of STATE or the State of STATE itself with respect to attorneys' fees in connection with the Action.

#### SECTION 4. Release.

(a) Each person or entity identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE or as certified by the office of the governmental prosecuting authority for the Litigating Political Subdivision hereby irrevocably releases the Original Participating Manufacturers and all Related Persons from any and all claims that such person or entity ever had, now has or hereafter can, shall or may have in any way related to the Action (including but not limited to any negotiations related to the settlement of the Action). Such release shall not be construed as a release of any person or entity as to any of the obligations undertaken herein in connection with a breach thereof.

(b) In the event that STATE Outside Counsel and the Original Participating Manufacturers agree upon a Liquidated Fee pursuant to section 7 hereof, it shall be a precondition to any payment by the Original Participating Manufacturers to the Designated Representative pursuant to section 8 hereof that each person or entity identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE (or as certified by the office of the governmental prosecuting authority for the Litigating Political Subdivision) shall have irrevocably released all entities represented by STATE Outside Counsel in the Action, as well as all persons acting by or on behalf of such entities (including the Attorney General for the office of the governmental prosecuting authority) and each other person or entity identified on Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General (or the office of the governmental prosecuting authority) from any and all claims that such person or entity ever had, now has or hereafter can, shall or may have in any way related to the Action (including but not limited to any negotiations related to the settlement of the Action). Such release shall not be construed as a release of any person or entity as to any of the obligations undertaken herein in connection with a breach thereof.

#### SECTION 5. No Effect on STATE Outside Counsel's Fee Contract.

The rights and obligations, if any, of the respective parties to any contract between the State of STATE and STATE Outside Counsel shall be unaffected by this STATE Fee Payment Agreement except (a) insofar as STATE Outside Counsel grant the release described in subsection (b) of section 4 hereof; and (b) to the extent that STATE Outside Counsel receive any payments in satisfaction of a Fee Award pursuant to section 16 hereof, any amounts so received shall be credited, on a dollar-for-dollar basis, against any amount payable to STATE Outside Counsel by the State of STATE (or the Litigating Political Subdivision) under any such contract.

#### SECTION 6. Liquidated Fees.

(a) In the event that the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel agree upon the amount of a Liquidated Fee, the Original Participating Manufacturers shall pay such Liquidated Fee, pursuant to the terms hereof.

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers' payment of any Liquidated Fee pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall be subject to (i) satisfaction of the conditions precedent stated in section 4 and paragraph (c)(ii) of section 7 hereof; and (ii) the payment schedule and the annual and quarterly aggregate national caps specified in sections 8 and 9 hereof, which shall apply to all payments made with respect to Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel.

#### SECTION 7. Negotiation of Liquidated Fees.

(a) If STATE Outside Counsel seek to be paid a Liquidated Fee, the Designated Representative shall so notify the Original Participating Manufacturers. The Original Participating Manufacturers may at any time make an offer of a Liquidated Fee to the Designated Representative in an amount set by the unanimous agreement, and at the sole discretion, of the Original Participating Manufacturers and, in any event, shall collectively make such an offer to the Designated Representative no more than 60 Business Days after receipt of notice by the Designated Representative that STATE Outside

Counsel seek to be paid a Liquidated Fee. The Original Participating Manufacturers shall not be obligated to make an offer of a Liquidated Fee in any particular amount. Within ten Business Days after receiving such an offer, STATE Outside Counsel shall either accept the offer, reject the offer or make a counteroffer.

(b) The national aggregate of all Liquidated Fees to be agreed to by the Original Participating Manufacturers in connection with the settlement of those actions indicated on Exhibits D, M and N to the Agreement shall not exceed one billion two hundred fifty million dollars (\$1,250,000,000).

(c) If the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel agree in writing upon a Liquidated Fee:

(i) STATE Outside Counsel shall not be eligible for a Fee Award;

(ii) such Liquidated Fee shall not become a Payable Liquidated Fee until such time as (A) State-Specific Finality has occurred in the State of STATE; (B) each person or entity identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE (or as certified by the office of the governmental prosecuting authority of the Litigating Political Subdivision) has granted the release described in subsection (b) of section 4 hereof; and (C) notice of the events described in subparagraphs (A) and (B) of this paragraph has been provided to the Original Participating Manufacturers.

(iii) payment of such Liquidated Fee pursuant to sections 8 and 9 hereof (together with payment of costs and expenses pursuant to section 19 hereof), shall be STATE Outside Counsel's total and sole compensation by the Original Participating Manufacturers in connection with the Action.

(d) If the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel do not agree in writing upon a Liquidated Fee, STATE Outside Counsel may submit an Application to the Panel for a Fee Award to be paid as provided in sections 16, 17 and 18 hereof.

#### SECTION 8. *Payment of Liquidated Fee.*

In the event that the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel agree in writing upon a Liquidated Fee, and until such time as the Designated Representative has received payments in full satisfaction of such Liquidated Fee —

(a) On February 1, 1999, if the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel became a Payable Liquidated Fee before January 15, 1999, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the lesser of (i) the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel, (ii) \$5 million or (iii) in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel as of January 15, 1999 exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount, the Allocable Liquidated Share of STATE Outside Counsel.

(b) On August 1, 1999, if the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel became a Payable Liquidated Fee on or after January 15, 1999 and before July 15, 1999, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the lesser of (i) the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel, (ii) \$5 million or (iii) in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel that became Payable Liquidated Fees on or after January 15, 1999 and before July 15, 1999 exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount, the Allocable Liquidated Share of STATE Outside Counsel.

(c) On December 15, 1999, if the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel became a Payable Liquidated Fee on or after July 15, 1999 and before December 1, 1999, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the lesser of (i) the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel, (ii) \$5 million or (iii) in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel that became Payable Liquidated Fees on or after July 15, 1999 and before December 1, 1999 exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount, the Allocable Liquidated Share of STATE Outside Counsel.

(d) On December 15, 1999, if the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel became a Payable Liquidated Fee before December 1, 1999, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the lesser of (i) the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel, or (ii) \$5 million or (iii) in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel that became Payable Liquidated Fees before December 1, 1999 exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount, the Allocable Liquidated Share of STATE Outside Counsel.

(e) On December 15, 1999, if the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel became a Payable Liquidated Fee before December 1, 1999, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the lesser of (i) the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel or (ii) in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel that became Payable Liquidated Fees before December 1, 1999 exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount, the Allocable Liquidated Share of STATE Outside Counsel.

(f) On the last day of each calendar quarter, beginning with the first calendar quarter of 2000 and ending with the fourth calendar quarter of 2003, if the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel became a Payable Liquidated Fee at least 15 Business Days prior to the last day of such calendar quarter, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the lesser of (i) the Payable Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel or (ii) in the event that the sum of all Payable Liquidated Fees of all Outside Counsel as of the date 15 Business Days prior to the date of the payment in question exceeds the Applicable Liquidation Amount, the Allocable Liquidated Share of STATE Outside Counsel.

#### SECTION 9. *Limitations on Payments of Liquidated Fees.*

Notwithstanding any other provision hereof, all payments by the Original Participating Manufacturers with respect to Liquidated Fees shall be subject to the following:

(a) Under no circumstances shall the Original Participating Manufacturers be required to make any payment that would result in aggregate national payments of Liquidated Fees:

(i) during 1999, totaling more than \$250 million;

(ii) with respect to any calendar quarter beginning with the first calendar quarter of 2000 and ending with the fourth calendar quarter of 2003, totaling more than \$62.5 million, except to the extent that a payment with respect to any prior calendar quarter of any calendar year did not total \$62.5 million; or

(iii) with respect to any calendar quarter after the fourth calendar quarter of 2003, totaling more than zero.

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers' obligations with respect to the Liquidated Fee of STATE Outside Counsel, if any, shall be exclusively as provided in this STATE Fee Payment Agreement, and notwithstanding any other provision of law, such Liquidated Fee shall not be entered as or reduced to a judgment against the Original Participating Manufacturers or considered as a basis for requiring a bond or imposing a lien or any other encumbrance.

#### SECTION 10. *Fee Awards.*

(a) In the event that the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel do not agree in writing upon a Liquidated Fee as described in section 7 hereof, the Original Participating Manufacturers shall pay, pursuant to the terms hereof, the Fee Award awarded by the Panel to STATE Outside Counsel.

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers' payment of any Fee Award pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall be subject to the payment schedule and the annual and quarterly aggregate national caps specified in sections 17 and 18 hereof, which shall apply to:

(i) all payments of Fee Awards in connection with an agreement to pay fees as part of the settlement of any Tobacco Case on terms that provide for payment by the Original Participating Manufacturers or other defendants acting in agreement with the Original Participating Manufacturers (collectively, "Participating Defendants") of fees with respect to any Private Counsel, subject to an annual cap on payment of all such fees; and

(ii) all payments of attorneys' fees (other than fees for attorneys of Participating Defendants) pursuant to Fee Awards for activities in connection with any Tobacco Case resolved by operation of Federal Legislation.

#### SECTION 11. *Composition of the Panel.*

(a) The first and the second members of the Panel shall both be permanent members of the Panel and, as such, will participate in the determination of all Fee Awards. The third Panel member shall not be a permanent Panel member, but instead shall be a state-specific member selected to determine Fee Awards on behalf of Private Counsel retained in connection with litigation within a single state. Accordingly, the third, state-specific member of the Panel for purposes of determining Fee Awards with respect to litigation in the State of STATE shall not participate in any determination as to any Fee Award with respect to litigation in any other state (unless selected to participate in such determinations by such persons as may be authorized to make such selections under other agreements).

(b) The members of the Panel shall be selected as follows:

(i) The first member shall be the natural person selected by Participating Defendants.

(ii) The second member shall be the person jointly selected by the agreement of Participating Defendants and a majority of the committee described in the fee payment agreements entered in connection with the settlements of the Tobacco Cases brought by the Previously Settled States. In the event that the person so selected is unable or unwilling to continue to serve, a replacement for such member shall be selected by agreement of the Original Participating Manufacturers and a majority of the members of a committee composed of the following members: Joseph F. Rice, Richard F. Scruggs, Steven W. Bertram, Walter Humphrey, one additional representative, to be selected in the sole discretion of NAAG, and two representatives of Private Counsel in Tobacco Cases, to be selected at the sole discretion of the Original Participating Manufacturers.

(iii) The third, state-specific member for purposes of determining Fee Awards with respect to litigation in the State of STATE shall be a natural person selected by STATE Outside Counsel, who shall notify the Director and the Original Participating Manufacturers of the name of the person selected.

#### SECTION 12. *Application of STATE Outside Counsel.*

(a) STATE Outside Counsel shall make a collective Application for a single Fee Award, which shall be submitted to the Director. Within five Business Days after receipt of the Application by STATE Outside Counsel, the Director shall serve the Application upon the Original Participating Manufacturers and the STATE. The Original Participating Manufacturers shall submit all materials in response to the Application to the Director by the later of (i) 60 Business Days after service of the Application upon the Original Participating Manufacturers by the Director, (ii) five Business Days after the date of State-Specific Finality in the State of STATE or (iii) five Business Days after the date on which notice of the name of the third, state-specific panel member described in paragraph (b)(iii) of section 11 hereof has been provided to the Director and the Original Participating Manufacturers.

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers may submit to the Director any materials that they wish and, notwithstanding any restrictions or representations made in any other agreements, the Original Participating Manufacturers shall be in no way constrained from contesting the amount of the Fee Award requested by STATE Outside Counsel. The Director, the Panel, the State of STATE, the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel shall preserve the confidentiality of any attorney work-product materials or other similar confidential information that may be submitted.

(c) The Director shall forward the Application of STATE Outside Counsel, as well as all written materials relating to such Application that have been submitted by the Original Participating Manufacturers pursuant to subsection (b) of this section to the Panel within five Business Days after the later of (i) the expiration of the period for the Original Participating Manufacturers to submit such materials or (ii) the earlier of (A) the date on which the Panel issues a Fee Award with respect to any Application of other Private Counsel previously forwarded to the Panel by the Director or (B) 30 Business Days after the forwarding to the Panel of the Application of other Private Counsel most recently forwarded to the Panel by the Director. The Director shall notify the Parties upon forwarding the Application (and all written materials relating thereto) to the Panel.

(d) In the event that either Party seeks a hearing before the Panel, such Party may submit a request to the Director in writing within five Business Days after the forwarding of the Application of STATE Outside Counsel to the Panel by the Director, and the Director shall promptly forward the request to the Panel. If the Panel grants the request, it shall promptly set a date for hearing, such date to fall within 30 Business Days after the date of the Panel's receipt of the Application.

#### SECTION 13. *Panel Proceedings.*

The proceedings of the Panel shall be conducted subject to the terms of this Agreement and of the Protocol of Panel Proceedings attached as an Appendix hereto.

#### SECTION 14. *Award of Fees to STATE Outside Counsel.*

The members of the Panel will consider all relevant information submitted to them in reaching a decision as to a Fee Award that fairly provides for full reasonable compensation of STATE Outside Counsel. In considering the amount of the Fee Award, the Panel shall not consider any Liquidated Fee agreed to by any other Outside Counsel, any offer of or negotiations relating to any proposed liquidated fee for STATE Outside Counsel or any Fee Award that already has been or yet may be awarded in connection with any other Tobacco Case. The Panel shall not be limited to an hourly-rate or lodestar analysis in determining the amount of the Fee Award of STATE Outside Counsel, but shall take into account the totality of the circumstances. The Panel's decisions as to the Fee Award of STATE Outside Counsel shall be in writing and shall report the amount of the fee awarded (with or without explanation or opinion, at the Panel's discretion). The Panel shall determine the amount of the Fee Award to be paid to STATE Outside Counsel within the later of 30 calendar days after receiving the Application (and all related materials) from the Director or 15 Business Days after the last date of any hearing held pursuant to subsection (d) of section 12 hereof. The Panel's decision as to the Fee Award of STATE Outside Counsel shall be final, binding and non-appealable.

#### SECTION 15. *Costs of Arbitration.*

All costs and expenses of the arbitration proceedings held by the Panel, including costs, expenses and compensation of the Director and of the Panel members (but not including any costs, expenses or compensation of counsel making applications to the Panel), shall be borne by the Original Participating Manufacturers in proportion to their Relative Market Shares.

#### SECTION 16. *Payment of Fee Award of STATE Outside Counsel.*

On or before the tenth Business Day after the last day of each calendar quarter beginning with the first calendar quarter of 1999, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the Allocated Amount for STATE Outside Counsel for the calendar quarter with respect to which such quarterly payment is being made (the "Applicable Quarter").

#### SECTION 17. *Allocated Amounts of Fee Awards.*

The Allocated Amount for each Private Counsel with respect to any payment to be made for any particular Applicable Quarter shall be determined as follows:

(a) The Quarterly Fee Amount shall be allocated equally among each of the three months of the Applicable Quarter. The amount for each such month shall be allocated among those Private Counsel retained in connection with Tobacco Cases settled before or during such month (each such Private Counsel being an "Eligible Counsel" with respect to such monthly amount), each of which shall be allocated a portion of each such monthly amount up to (or, in the event that the sum of all Eligible Counsel's respective Unpaid Fees exceeds such monthly amount, in proportion to) the amount of such Eligible Counsel's Unpaid Fees. The monthly amount for each month of the calendar quarter shall be allocated among those Eligible Counsel having Unpaid Fees, without regard to whether there may be Eligible Counsel that have not yet been granted or denied a Fee Award as of the last day of the Applicable Quarter. The allocation of subsequent Quarterly Fee Amounts for the calendar year, if any, shall be adjusted, as necessary, to account for any Eligible Counsel that are granted Fee Awards in a subsequent quarter of such calendar year, as provided in paragraph (b)(ii) of this section.

(b) In the event that the amount for a given month is less than the sum of the Unpaid Fees of all Eligible Counsel;

(i) in the case of the first quarterly allocation for any calendar year, such monthly amount shall be allocated among all Eligible Counsel for such month in proportion to the amounts of their respective Unpaid Fees;

(ii) in the case of a quarterly allocation after the first quarterly allocation, the Quarterly Fee Amount shall be allocated among only those Private Counsel, if any, that were Eligible Counsel with respect to any monthly amount for any prior quarter of the calendar year but were not allocated a proportionate share of such monthly amount (either because such Private Counsel's applications for Fee Awards were still under consideration as of the last day of the calendar quarter containing the month in question or for any other reason), until each such Eligible Counsel has been allocated a proportionate share of all such prior monthly payments for the calendar year (each such share of each such Eligible Counsel being a "Payable Proportionate Share"). In the event that the sum of all Payable Proportionate Shares exceeds the Quarterly Fee Amount, the Quarterly Fee Amount shall be allocated among such Eligible Counsel on a monthly basis in proportion to the amounts of their respective Unpaid Fees (without regard to whether there may be other Eligible Counsel with respect to such prior monthly amounts that have not yet been granted or denied a Fee Award as of the last day of the Applicable Quarter). In the event that the sum of all Payable Proportionate Shares is less than the Quarterly Fee Amount, the amount by which the Quarterly Fee Amount exceeds the sum of all such Payable Proportionate Shares shall be allocated among each month of the calendar quarter, each such monthly amount to be allocated among those Eligible Counsel having Unpaid Fees in proportion to the amounts of their respective Unpaid Fees (without regard to whether there may be Eligible Counsel that have not yet been granted or denied a Fee Award as of the last day of the Applicable Quarter).

(c) Adjustments pursuant to subsection (b)(ii) of this section 17 shall be made separately for each calendar year. No amounts paid in any calendar year shall be subject to refund, nor shall any payment in any given calendar year affect the allocation of payments to be made in any subsequent calendar year.

#### SECTION 18. *Credits to and Limitations on Payment of Fee Awards.*

Notwithstanding any other provision hereof, all payments by the Original Participating Manufacturers with respect to Fee Awards shall be subject to the following:

(a) Under no circumstances shall the Original Participating Manufacturers be required to make payments that would result in aggregate national payments and credits by Participating Defendants with respect to all Fee Awards of Private Counsel;

(i) during any year beginning with 1999, totaling more than the sum of the Quarterly Fee Amounts for each calendar quarter of the calendar year, excluding certain payments with respect to any Private Counsel for 1998 that are paid in 1999; and

(ii) during any calendar quarter beginning with the first calendar quarter of 1999, totaling more than the Quarterly Fee Amount for such quarter, excluding certain payments with respect to any Private Counsel for 1998 that are paid in 1999.

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers' obligations with respect to the Fee Award of STATE Outside Counsel, if any, shall be exclusively as provided in this STATE Fee Payment Agreement, and notwithstanding any other provision of law, such Fee Award shall not be entered as or reduced to a judgment against the Original Participating Manufacturers or considered as a basis for requiring a bond or imposing a lien or any other encumbrance.

#### SECTION 19. *Reimbursement of Outside Counsel's Costs.*

(a) The Original Participating Manufacturers shall reimburse STATE Outside Counsel for reasonable costs and expenses incurred in connection with the Action, provided that such costs and expenses are of the same nature as costs and expenses for which the Original Participating Manufacturers ordinarily reimburse their own counsel or agents. Payment of any Approved Cost Statement pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall be subject to (i) the condition precedent of approval of the Agreement by the Court for the State of STATE and (ii) the payment schedule and the aggregate national caps specified in subsection (c) of this section, which shall apply to all payments made with respect to Cost Statements of all Outside Counsel.

(b) In the event that STATE Outside Counsel seek to be reimbursed for reasonable costs and expenses incurred in connection with the Action, the Designated Representative shall submit a Cost Statement to the Original Participating Manufacturers. Within 30 Business Days after receipt of any such Cost Statement, the Original Participating Manufacturers shall either accept the Cost Statement or dispute the Cost Statement, in which event the Cost Statement shall be subject to a full audit by examiners to be appointed by the Original Participating Manufacturers (in their sole discretion). Any such audit will be completed within 120 Business Days after the date the Cost Statement is received by the Original Participating Manufacturers. Upon completion of such audit, if the Original Participating Manufacturers and STATE Outside Counsel cannot agree as to the appropriate amount of STATE Outside Counsel's reasonable costs and expenses, the Cost Statement and the examiner's audit report shall be submitted to the Director for arbitration before the Panel or, in the event that STATE Outside Counsel and the Original Participating Manufacturers have agreed upon a Liquidated Fee pursuant to section 7 hereof, before a separate three-member panel of independent arbitrators, to be selected in a manner to be agreed to by STATE Outside Counsel and the Original Participating Manufacturers, which shall determine the amount of STATE Outside Counsel's reasonable costs and expenses for the Action. In determining such reasonable costs and expenses, the members of the arbitration panel shall be governed by the Protocol of Panel Proceedings attached as an Appendix hereto. The amount of



STATE Outside Counsel's reasonable costs and expenses, determined pursuant to arbitration as provided in the preceding sentence shall be final, binding and non-appealable.

(c) Any Approved Cost Statement of STATE Outside Counsel shall not become a Payable Cost Statement until approval of the Agreement by the Court for the State of STATE. Within five Business Days after receipt of notification hereof by the Designated Representative, each Original Participating Manufacturer shall severally pay to the Designated Representative its Relative Market Share of the Payable Cost Statement of STATE Outside Counsel, subject to the following:

(i) All Payable Cost Statements of Outside Counsel shall be paid in the order in which such Payable Cost Statements became Payable Cost Statements.

(ii) Under no circumstances shall the Original Participating Manufacturers be required to make payments that would result in aggregate national payments by Participating Defendants of all Payable Cost Statements of Private Counsel in connection with all of the actions identified in Exhibits D, M and N to the Agreement, totaling more than \$75 million for any given year.

(iii) Any Payable Cost Statement of Outside Counsel not paid during the year in which it became a Payable Cost Statement as a result of paragraph (ii) of this subsection shall become payable in subsequent years, subject to paragraphs (i) and (ii), until paid in full.

(d) The Original Participating Manufacturers' obligations with respect to reasonable costs and expenses, incurred by STATE Outside Counsel in connection with the Action shall be exclusively as provided in this STATE Fee Payment Agreement, and notwithstanding any other provision of law, any Approved Cost Statement determined pursuant to subsection (b) of this section (including any Approved Cost Statement determined pursuant to arbitration before the Panel) or the separate three-member panel of independent arbitrators described therein) shall not be entered as or reduced to a judgment against the Original Participating Manufacturers or considered as a basis for requiring a bond or imposing a lien or any other incompensable.

#### SECTION 20. Distribution of Payments among STATE Outside Counsel.

(a) All payments made to the Designated Representative pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall be for the benefit of each person or entity identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE (or as certified by the governmental prosecuting authority of the Litigating Political Subdivision), each of which shall receive from the Designated Representative a percentage of each such payment in accordance with the fee sharing agreement, if any, among STATE Outside Counsel (or any written amendment thereto).

(b) The Original Participating Manufacturers shall have no obligation, responsibility or liability with respect to the allocation among those persons or entities identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE (or as certified by the governmental prosecuting authority of the Litigating Political Subdivision), or with respect to any claim of misallocation, of any amounts paid to the Designated Representative pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

#### SECTION 21. Calculations of Amounts.

All calculations that may be required hereunder shall be performed by the Original Participating Manufacturers, with notice of the results thereof to be given promptly to the Designated Representative. Any disputes as to the correctness of calculations made by the Original Participating Manufacturers shall be resolved pursuant to the procedures described in Section XI(c) of the Agreement for resolving disputes as to calculations by the Independent Auditor.

#### SECTION 22. Payment Responsibility.

(a) Each Original Participating Manufacturer shall be severally liable for its share of all payments pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement. Under no circumstances shall any payment due hereunder or any portion thereof become the joint obligation of the Original Participating Manufacturers or the obligation of any person other than the Original Participating Manufacturer from which such payment is originally due, nor shall any Original Participating Manufacturer be required to pay a portion of any such payment greater than its Relative Market Share.

(b) Due to the particular corporate structures of R. J. Reynolds Tobacco Company ("Reynolds") and Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation ("Brown & Williamson") with respect to their non-domestic tobacco operations, Reynolds and Brown & Williamson shall each be severally liable for its respective share of each payment due pursuant to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement up to (and its liability hereunder shall not exceed) the full extent of its assets, used in, and earnings and revenues derived from, its manufacture and sale in the United States of Tobacco Products intended for domestic consumption, and no recourse shall be had against any of its other assets or earnings to satisfy such obligations.

#### SECTION 23. Termination.

In the event that the Agreement is terminated with respect to the State of STATE pursuant to Section XVIII(d) of the Agreement (or for any other reason) the Designated Representative and each person or entity identified in Exhibit S to the Agreement by the Attorney General of the State of STATE (or as certified by the governmental prosecuting authority of the Litigating Political Subdivision) shall immediately refund to the Original Participating Manufacturers all amounts received under this STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

#### SECTION 24. Intended Beneficiaries.

No provision hereof creates any rights on the part of, or is enforceable by, any person or entity that is not a Party or a person covered by either of the releases described in section 4 hereof, except that sections 5 and 70 hereof create rights on the part of, and shall be enforceable by, the State of STATE. Nor shall any provision hereof bind any non-signatory or determine, limit or prejudice the rights of any such person or entity.

#### SECTION 25. Representations of Parties.

The Parties hereto hereby represent that this STATE Fee Payment Agreement has been duly authorized and, upon execution, will constitute a valid and binding contractual obligation, enforceable in accordance with its terms, of each of the Parties hereto.

#### SECTION 26. No Admission.

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement is not intended to be and shall not in any event be construed as, or deemed to be, an admission or concession or evidence of any liability or wrongdoing whatsoever on the part of any signatory hereto or any person covered by either of the releases provided under section 4 hereof. The Original Participating Manufacturers specifically disclaim and deny any liability or wrongdoing whatsoever with respect to the claims released under section 4 hereof and enter into this STATE Fee Payment Agreement for the sole purposes of memorializing the Original Participating Manufacturers' rights and obligations with respect to payment of attorneys' fees pursuant to the Agreement and avoiding the further expense, inconvenience, burden and uncertainty of potential litigation.

#### SECTION 27. Non-admissibility.

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement having been undertaken by the Parties hereto in good faith and for settlement purposes only, neither this STATE Fee Payment Agreement nor any evidence of negotiations relating hereto shall be offered or received in evidence in any action or proceeding other than an action or proceeding arising under this STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

#### SECTION 28. Amendment and Waiver.

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement may be amended only by a written instrument executed by the Parties. The waiver of any rights conferred hereunder shall be effective only if made by written instrument executed by the waiving Party. The waiver by any Party of any breach hereof shall not be deemed to be or construed as a waiver of any other breach, whether prior, subsequent or contemporaneous, of this STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

#### SECTION 29. Notices.

All notices or other communications to any party hereto shall be in writing (including but not limited to telex, facsimile or similar writing) and shall be given to the notice parties listed on Schedule A hereto at the addresses therein indicated. Any Party hereto may change the name and address of the person designated to receive notices on behalf of such Party by notice given as provided in this section including an updated list conformed to Schedule A hereto.

#### SECTION 30. Governing Law.

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of STATE without regard to the conflict of law rules of such State.

#### SECTION 31. Construction.

None of the Parties hereto shall be considered to be the drafter hereof or of any provision hereof for the purpose of any statute, case law or rule of interpretation or construction that would or might cause any provision to be construed against the drafter hereof.

#### SECTION 32. Captions.

The captions of the sections hereof are included for convenience of reference only and shall be ignored in the construction and interpretation hereof.

#### SECTION 33. Execution of STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement may be executed in counterparts. Facsimile or photocopied signatures shall be considered valid signatures as of the date hereof, although the original signature pages shall thereafter be appended to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

#### SECTION 34. Entire Agreement of Parties.

This STATE Fee Payment Agreement contains an entire, complete and integrated statement of each and every term and provision agreed to by and among the Parties with respect to payment of attorneys' fees by the Original Participating Manufacturers in connection with the Action and is not subject to any condition or covenant, express or implied, not provided for herein.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties hereto, through their fully authorized representatives, have agreed to this STATE Fee Payment Agreement as of this \_\_\_th day of \_\_\_\_\_, 1998.

(SIGNATURE BLOCK)

[Intentionally Omitted]

**APPENDIX  
to MODEL FEE PAYMENT AGREEMENT  
PROTOCOL OF PANEL PROCEEDINGS**

This Protocol of proceedings has been agreed to between the respective parties to the STATE Fee Payment Agreement, and shall govern the arbitration proceedings provided for therein.

**SECTION 1. Definitions.**

All definitions contained in the STATE Fee Payment Agreement are incorporated by reference herein.

**SECTION 2. Chairman.**

The person selected to serve as the permanent, neutral member of the Panel as described in paragraph (b)(ii) of section 11 of the STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall serve as the Chairman of the Panel.

**SECTION 3. Arbitration Pursuant to Agreement.**

The members of the Panel shall determine those matters committed to the decision of the Panel under the STATE Fee Payment Agreement, which shall govern as to all matters discussed therein.

**SECTION 4. ABA Code of Ethics.**

Each of the members of the Panel shall be governed by the *Code of Ethics for Arbitrators in Commercial Disputes* prepared by the American Arbitration Association and the American Bar Association (the "Code of Ethics") in conducting the arbitration proceedings pursuant to the STATE Fee Payment Agreement, subject to the terms of the STATE Fee Payment Agreement and this Protocol. Each of the party-appointed members of the Panel shall be governed by Canon VII of the *Code of Ethics*. No person may engage in any *ex parte* communications with the permanent, neutral member of the Panel selected pursuant to paragraph (b)(ii) of section 11, in keeping with Canons I, II and III of the *Code of Ethics*.

**SECTION 5. Additional Rules and Procedures.**

The Panel may adopt such rules and procedures as it deems necessary and appropriate for the discharge of its duties under the STATE Fee Payment Agreement and this Protocol, subject to the terms of the STATE Fee Payment Agreement and this Protocol.

**SECTION 6. Majority Rule.**

In the event that the members of the Panel are not unanimous in their views as to any matter to be determined by them pursuant to the STATE Fee Payment Agreement or this Protocol, the determination shall be decided by a vote of a majority of the three members of the Panel.

**SECTION 7. Application for Fee Award and Other Materials.**

(a) The Application of STATE Outside Counsel and any materials submitted to the Director relating thereto (collectively, "submissions") shall be forwarded by the Director to each of the members of the Panel in the manner and on the dates specified in the STATE Fee Payment Agreement.

(b) All materials submitted to the Director by either Party (or any other person) shall be served upon all Parties.

All submissions required to be served on any Party shall be deemed to have been served as of the date on which such materials have been sent by either (i) hand delivery or (ii) facsimile and overnight courier for priority next-day delivery.

(c) To the extent that the Panel believes that information not submitted to the Panel may be relevant for purposes of determining those matters committed to the decision of the Panel under the terms of the STATE Fee Payment Agreement, the Panel shall request such information from the Parties.

**SECTION 8. Hearing.**

Any hearing held pursuant to section 12 of the STATE Fee Payment Agreement shall not take place other than in the presence of all three members of the Panel upon notice and an opportunity for the respective representatives of the Parties to attend.

**SECTION 9. Miscellaneous.**

(a) Each member of the Panel shall be compensated for his services by the Original Participating Manufacturers on a basis to be agreed to between such member and the Original Participating Manufacturers.

(b) The members of the Panel shall refer all media inquiries regarding the arbitration proceeding to the respective Parties to the STATE Fee Payment Agreement and shall refrain from any comment as to the arbitration proceedings to be conducted pursuant to the STATE Fee Payment Agreement during the pendency of such arbitration proceedings, in keeping with Canon IV(B) of the *Code of Ethics*.

**EXHIBIT Q**  
**1996 AND 1997 DATA**

(1) 1996 Operating Income	Operating Income
Original Participating Manufacturer	\$801,640,000
Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp.	\$719,100,000
Lorillard Tobacco Co.	\$4,246,600,000
Philip Morris Inc.	\$1,468,000,000
R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.	\$7,195,340,000
Total (Base Operating Income)	

(2) 1997 volume (as measured by shipments of Cigarettes)	Number of Cigarettes
Original Participating Manufacturer	78,911,000,000
Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp.*	42,288,000,000
Lorillard Tobacco Co.	236,203,000,000
Philip Morris Inc.	118,254,000,000
R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.	475,656,000,000
Total (Base Volume)	

(3) 1997 volume (as measured by excise taxes)	Number of Cigarettes
Original Participating Manufacturer	78,758,000,000
Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp.*	42,315,000,000
Lorillard Tobacco Co.	236,326,000,000
Philip Morris Inc.	119,099,000,000
R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co.	

\* The volume includes 2,847,595 pounds of "not your own" tobacco converted into the number of Cigarettes using 0.0325 ounces per Cigarette conversion factor.

**EXHIBIT R**  
**EXCLUSION OF CERTAIN BRAND NAMES**

Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corporation	
GPC	
State Express 555	
Riviera	
Philip Morris Incorporated	
Players	
B&H	
Belmont	
Mark Ten	
Viceroy	
Accord	
L&M	
Lark	
Rothman's	
Best Buy	
Bronson	
F&L	
Genco	
GPA	
Gridlock	
Money	
No Frills	
Generals	
Premium Buy	
Shenandoah	
Top Choice	
Lorillard Tobacco Company	
None	
R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Company	
Best Choice	
Cardinal	
Director's Choice	
Jacks	
Rainbow	
Scotch Bay	
Slim Price	
Smoker Friendly	
Val's Time	
Worth	

[Intentionally Omitted]

EXHIBIT L  
MODEL STATUTE

Section \_\_. Findings and Purpose.<sup>1</sup>

(a) Cigarette smoking presents serious public health concerns to the State and to the citizens of the State. The Surgeon General has determined that smoking causes lung cancer, heart disease and other serious diseases, and that there are hundreds of thousands of tobacco-related deaths in the United States each year. These diseases most often do not appear until many years after the person in question begins smoking.

(b) Cigarette smoking also presents serious financial concerns for the State. Under certain health-care programs, the State may have a legal obligation to provide medical assistance to eligible persons for health conditions associated with cigarette smoking, and those persons may have a legal entitlement to receive such medical assistance.

(c) Under these programs, the State pays millions of dollars each year to provide medical assistance for these persons for health conditions associated with cigarette smoking.

(d) It is the policy of the State that financial burdens imposed on the State by cigarette smoking be borne by tobacco product manufacturers rather than by the State to the extent that such manufacturers either determine to enter into a settlement with the State or are found culpable by the courts.

(e) On \_\_\_\_\_, 1998, leading United States tobacco product manufacturers entered into a settlement agreement, entitled the "Master Settlement Agreement," with the State. The Master Settlement Agreement obligates these manufacturers, in return for a release of past, present and certain future claims against them as described therein, to pay substantial sums to the State (in part to their volume of sales); to fund a national foundation devoted to the interests of public health; and to make substantial changes in their advertising and marketing practices and corporate culture, with the intention of reducing underage smoking.

(f) It would be contrary to the policy of the State if tobacco product manufacturers who determine not to enter into such a settlement could use a resulting cost advantage to derive large, short-term profits in the years before liability may arise without ensuring that the State will have an eventual source of recovery from them if they are proven to have acted culpably. It is thus in the interest of the State to require that such manufacturers establish a reserve fund to guarantee a source of compensation and to prevent such manufacturers from deriving large, short-term profits and then becoming judgment-proof before liability may arise.

Section \_\_. Definitions.

(a) "Adjusted for inflation" means increased in accordance with the formula for inflation adjustment set forth in Exhibit C to the Master Settlement Agreement.

(b) "Affiliate" means a person who directly or indirectly owns or controls, is owned or controlled by, or is under common ownership or control with, another person. Solely for purposes of this definition, the terms "owns," "is owned," and "ownership" mean ownership of an equity interest, or the equivalent thereof, of ten percent or more, and the term "person" means an individual, partnership, committee, association, corporation or any other organization or group of persons.

(c) "Allocable share" means Allocable Share as that term is defined in the Master Settlement Agreement.

(d) "Cigarette" means any product that contains nicotine, is intended to be burned or heated under ordinary conditions of use, and consists of or contains (1) any roll of tobacco wrapped in paper or in any substance not containing tobacco; or (2) tobacco, in any form, that is functional in the product, which, because of its appearance, the type of tobacco used in the filler, or its packaging and labeling, is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette; or (3) any roll of tobacco wrapped in any substance containing tobacco which, because of its appearance, the type of tobacco used in the filler, or its packaging and labeling, is likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as a cigarette described in clause (1) of this definition. The term "cigarette" includes "roll-your-own" (i.e., any tobacco which, because of its appearance, type, packaging, or labeling is suitable for use and likely to be offered to, or purchased by, consumers as tobacco for making cigarettes). For purposes of this definition of "cigarette," 0.09 ounces of "roll-your-own" tobacco shall constitute one individual "cigarette."

(e) "Master Settlement Agreement" means the settlement agreement (and related documents) entered into on \_\_\_\_\_, 1998 by the State and leading United States tobacco product manufacturers.

(f) "Qualified escrow fund" means an escrow arrangement with a federally or State chartered financial institution having an affiliation with any tobacco product manufacturer and having assets of at least \$1,000,000,000 where such arrangement requires that such financial institution hold the escrowed funds' principal for the benefit of releasing parties and prohibits the tobacco product manufacturer placing the funds into escrow from using, accessing or directing the use of the funds' principal except as consistent with section \_\_\_\_ (b)-(c) of this Act.

(g) "Released claims" means Released Claims as that term is defined in the Master Settlement Agreement.

(h) "Releasing parties" means Releasing Parties as that term is defined in the Master Settlement Agreement.

<sup>1</sup> IA State may elect to delete the "findings and purposes" section in its entirety. Other changes or substitutions with respect to the "findings and purposes" section (except for particularized state procedural or technical requirements) will mean that the statute will no longer conform to this model.

(i) "Tobacco Product Manufacturer" means an entity that after the date of enactment of this Act directly (and not exclusively through any affiliate):

(1) manufactures cigarettes anywhere that such manufacturer intends to be sold in the United States, including cigarettes intended to be sold in the United States through an importer (except where such importer is an original participating manufacturer (as that term is defined in the Master Settlement Agreement) that will be responsible for the payments under the Master Settlement Agreement with respect to such cigarettes as a result of the provisions of subsections I(f)(m) of the Master Settlement Agreement and that pays the taxes specified in subsection I(f) of the Master Settlement Agreement, and provided that the manufacturer of such cigarettes does not market or advertise such cigarettes in the United States);

(2) is the first purchaser anywhere for resale in the United States of cigarettes manufactured anywhere that the manufacturer does not intend to be sold in the United States; or

(3) becomes a successor of an entity described in paragraph (1) or (2).

The term "Tobacco Product Manufacturer" shall not include an affiliate of a tobacco product manufacturer unless such affiliate itself falls within any of (1) - (3) above.

(j) "Units sold" means the number of individual cigarettes sold in the State by the applicable tobacco product manufacturer (whether directly or through a distributor, retailer or similar intermediary or intermediaries) during the year in question, as measured by excise taxes collected by the State on packs (or "retail-your-own" tobacco containers) bearing the excise tax stamp of the State. The [fill in name of responsible state agency] shall promulgate such regulations as are necessary to ascertain the amount of State excise tax paid on the cigarettes of such tobacco product manufacturer for each year.

#### Section ---- Requirements.

Any tobacco product manufacturer selling cigarettes to consumers within the State (whether directly or through a distributor, retailer or similar intermediary or intermediaries) after the date of enactment of this Act shall do one of the following:

(a) become a participating manufacturer (as that term is defined in section I(j)(j) of the Master Settlement Agreement) and generally perform its financial obligations under the Master Settlement Agreement; or

(b) (1) place into a qualified escrow fund by April 15 of the year following the year in question the following amounts (as such amounts are adjusted for inflation) ..

1999: \$,009,424.1 per unit sold after the date of enactment of this Act;<sup>2</sup>

2000: \$,010,471.2 per unit sold after the date of enactment of this Act;

for each of 2001 and 2002: \$,013,617.25 per unit sold after the date of enactment of this Act;

for each of 2003 through 2006: \$,016,753.9 per unit sold after the date of enactment of this Act;

for each of 2007 and each year thereafter: \$,018,842 per unit sold after the date of enactment of this Act.

(2) A tobacco product manufacturer that places funds into escrow pursuant to paragraph (1) shall receive the interest or other appreciation on such funds as earned. Such funds themselves shall be released from escrow only under the following circumstances ..

(A) to pay a judgment or settlement on any released claim brought against such tobacco product manufacturer by the State or any releasing party located or residing in the State. Funds shall be released from escrow under this subparagraph (i) in the order in which they were placed into escrow and (ii) only to the extent and at the time necessary to make payments required under such judgment or settlement;

(B) to the extent that a tobacco product manufacturer establishes that the amount it was required to place into escrow in a particular year was greater than the State's allocable share of the total payments that such manufacturer would have been required to make in that year under the Master Settlement Agreement (as determined pursuant to section IX(0)(2) of the Master Settlement Agreement, and before any of the adjustments or offsets described in section IX(0)(3) of that Agreement other than the Inflation Adjustment) had it been a participating manufacturer, the excess shall be released from escrow and revert back to such tobacco product manufacturer; or

(C) to the extent not released from escrow under subparagraphs (A) or (B), funds shall be released from escrow and revert back to such tobacco product manufacturer twenty-five years after the date on which they were placed into escrow.

(3) Each tobacco product manufacturer that elects to place funds into escrow pursuant to this subsection shall annually certify to the Attorney General (or other State official) that it is in compliance with this subsection. The Attorney General (or other State official) may bring a civil action on behalf of the State against any tobacco product

manufacturer that fails to place into escrow the funds required under this section. Any tobacco product manufacturer that fails in any year to place into escrow the funds required under this section shall ..

(A) be required within 15 days to place such funds into escrow as shall bring it into compliance with this section. The court, upon a finding of a violation of this subsection, may impose a civil penalty (to be paid to the general fund of the state) in an amount not to exceed 5 percent of the amount improperly withheld from escrow per day of the violation and in a total amount not to exceed 100 percent of the original amount improperly withheld from escrow;

(B) in the case of a knowing violation, be required within 15 days to place such funds into escrow as shall bring it into compliance with this section. The court, upon a finding of a knowing violation of this subsection, may impose a civil penalty (to be paid to the general fund of the state) in an amount not to exceed 15 percent of the amount improperly withheld from escrow per day of the violation and in a total amount not to exceed 300 percent of the original amount improperly withheld from escrow; and

(C) in the case of a second knowing violation, be prohibited from selling cigarettes to consumers within the State (whether directly or through a distributor, retailer or similar intermediary) for a period not to exceed 2 years. Each failure to make an annual deposit required under this section shall constitute a separate violation.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>4</sup> [A State may elect to include a requirement that the violator also pay the State's costs and attorney's fees incurred during a successful prosecution under this paragraph (3).]

<sup>2</sup> [All per unit numbers subject to verification.]

<sup>3</sup> [The phrase "after the date of enactment of this Act" would need to be included only in the calendar year in which the Act is enacted.]

**EXHIBIT U**  
**STRATEGIC CONTRIBUTION FUND PROTOCOL**

The payments made by the Participating Manufacturers pursuant to section IX(e)(2) of the Agreement ("Strategic Contribution Fund") shall be allocated among the Settling States pursuant to the process set forth in this Exhibit U.

Section 1

A panel committee of three former Attorneys General or former Article III judges ("Allocation Committee") shall be established to determine allocations of the Strategic Contribution Fund, using the process described herein. Two of the three members of the Allocation Committee shall be selected by the NAAG executive committee. Those two members shall choose the third Allocation Committee member. The Allocation Committee shall be geographically and politically diverse.

Section 2

Within 60 days after the MSA Execution Date, each Settling State will submit an itemized request for funds from the Strategic Contribution Fund, based on the criteria set forth in Section 4 of this Exhibit U.

Section 3

The Allocation Committee will determine the appropriate allocation for each Settling State based on the criteria set forth in Section 4 below. The Allocation Committee shall make its determination based upon written documentation.

Section 4

The criteria to be considered by the Allocation Committee in its allocation decision include each Settling State's contribution to the litigation or resolution of state tobacco litigation, including, but not limited to, litigation and/or settlement with tobacco product manufacturers, including Liggett and Myers and its affiliated entities.

Section 5

Within 45 days after receiving the itemized requests for funds from the Settling States, the Allocation Committee will prepare a preliminary decision allocating the Strategic Contribution Fund payments among the Settling States, who submitted itemized requests for funds. All Allocation Committee decisions must be by majority vote. Each Settling State will have 30 days to submit comments on or objections to the draft decision. The Allocation Committee will issue a final decision allocating the Strategic Contribution Fund payments within 45 days.

Section 6

The decision of the Allocation Committee shall be final and non-appealable.

Section 7

The expenses of the Allocation Committee, in an amount not to exceed \$100,000, will be paid from disbursements from the Subsection VIII(c) Account.

## APPENDIX C

### Proposed Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel

To:

We have examined the transcript of proceedings (the “Transcript”) relating to the issuance by the Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority (the “Authority”) of its \$5,531,594,541 Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007 (the “Series 2007 Bonds”) dated as of October 29, 2007. The documents in the Transcript examined include executed counterparts of the Trust Indenture as supplemented by the Series 2007 Supplement (collectively, the “Trust Indenture”), both by and between the Authority and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “Trustee”) and dated as of October 1, 2007, and the Purchase and Sale Agreement dated as of October 1, 2007 (the “2007 Sale Agreement”) between the State of Ohio (the “State”) and the Authority. We have also examined an executed Series 2007 Bond.

The Series 2007 Bonds are issued under and pursuant to Section 2i of Article VIII of the Ohio Constitution, Sections 183.51 and 183.52 of the Ohio Revised Code (the “Act”), a resolution of the Authority (the “Bond Resolution”) and the Trust Indenture. Capitalized words and terms used and not defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in that Trust Indenture.

Based on such examination, we are of the opinion that under existing law:

1. The Series 2007 Bonds have been duly and validly authorized and issued by the Authority in accordance with the provisions of the Trust Indenture, and the Series 2007 Bonds, the Trust Indenture and the 2007 Sale Agreement are each legal, valid and binding obligations, enforceable in accordance with their respective terms.

2. The Series 2007 Bonds constitute special obligations of the Authority, and the principal of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds (collectively, “debt service”) are payable solely from the Collateral, including the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, pledged under the Trust Indenture to secure that payment. The Series 2007 Bonds are not general obligations of the State and the full faith and credit, revenue, and taxing power of the State are not pledged to the payment of debt service on the Series 2007 Bonds or to any guarantee of the payment of that debt service.

3. The Trust Indenture creates the valid pledge of, and first-priority security interest in, the Collateral (including, without limitation, the Pledged Tobacco Receipts) that it purports to create. Pursuant to the Act, the lien of such pledge and security interest is valid and binding against all parties having claims of any kind against the Authority, irrespective of whether such parties have notice thereof.

4. Interest on the Series 2007 Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), and is not an item of tax preference under Section 57 of the Code for purposes of the alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations. Interest on the Series 2007 Bonds, and any profit made on their sale, exchange or other disposition, are exempt from the Ohio personal income tax, the Ohio commercial activity tax, the net income base of the Ohio corporate franchise tax and municipal and school district income taxes in Ohio. We express no opinion as to any other tax consequences regarding the Series 2007 Bonds.

In giving the foregoing opinions with respect to the treatment of interest on the Series 2007 Bonds and the status of the Series 2007 Bonds under the federal tax laws, we have assumed and relied upon compliance by the Authority and the State with their covenants, and the accuracy, which we have not independently verified, of their representations and certifications, all as contained in the Transcript. The accuracy of those representations and certifications, and compliance with those covenants, may be necessary for the interest on the Series 2007 Bonds to be and to remain excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes and for certain other tax effects stated above. Failure to comply with certain of those covenants subsequent to issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds could cause interest on the Series 2007 Bonds to be included in gross income for federal income tax purposes retroactively to their date of issuance.

Under the Code, portions of the interest on the Series 2007 Bonds earned by certain corporations may be subject to a corporate alternative minimum tax, and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds may be subject to a branch profits tax imposed on certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States and to a tax imposed on excess net passive income of certain S corporations.

We have also assumed for purposes of this opinion the enforceability of the 2007 Sale Agreement against the State and the enforceability of the Trust Indenture against the Trustee, each in accordance with its respective terms.

We undertake no responsibility for the accuracy, completeness or fairness of any Offering Circular or other offering material relating to the Series 2007 Bonds and we express no opinion with respect thereto.

Respectfully submitted,



**APPENDIX D**

**DEFINITIONS AND SUMMARY**  
**OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE TRUST INDENTURE**

**Certain Definitions**

In addition to the other terms defined in this Offering Circular, when used in the summaries of certain provisions of the Trust Indenture, the following terms have the meanings ascribed to them below:

**“Accounts”** means the accounts established under the provisions of the Trust Indenture, including any subaccounts therein.

**“Accreted Value”** when used in reference to the Trust Indenture, means, with respect to any Capital Appreciation Bond, an amount equal to the initial principal amount of such Bond, plus interest thereon from its date, compounded on each Distribution Date, commencing on the first Distribution Date after its issuance (through and including the Maturity Date or earlier redemption date of such Bond, or in the case of a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond, through and excluding the applicable Conversion Date or earlier redemption date of such Bond) at the "original issue yield" for such Bond, as set forth in the related Series Supplement or in an exhibit thereto; provided, however, that the Authority shall calculate or cause to be calculated the Accreted Value on any date other than a Distribution Date by straight line interpolation of the Accreted Values as of the immediately preceding and succeeding Distribution Dates. In performing such calculation, the Authority shall be entitled to engage and rely upon a firm of accountants, consultants or financial advisors with appropriate knowledge and experience. The Trustee may conclusively rely upon such calculations. The term "original issue yield" means, with respect to any particular Bond, the yield to the applicable Maturity Date of such Bond from the initial date of delivery thereof calculated on the basis of semiannual compounding on each Distribution Date.

**“Act”** means Sections 183.51 and 183.52 of the Ohio Revised Code.

**“Additional Bonds”** means any Bond issued pursuant to the Trust Indenture that is not a Fully Subordinate Bond or a Refunding Bond.

**“Aggregate Bond Obligation”** means, as of any given date, the sum of (i) the principal amount of Current Interest Bonds Outstanding on such date, plus (ii) the Accreted Value of Capital Appreciation Bonds and Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds Outstanding on such date.

**“Ancillary Facility”** means (i) any of the “credit enhancement facilities” as defined in Section 133.01(H) of the Ohio Revised Code, consisting of “letters of credit, lines of credit, stand-by, contingent, or firm securities purchase agreements, insurance, or surety arrangements, guarantees, and other arrangements that provide for direct or contingent payment of debt charges, for security or additional security in the event of nonpayment or default in respect of securities, or for making payment of debt charges to and at the option and on demand of

securities holders or at the option of the issuer or upon certain conditions occurring under put or similar arrangements, or for otherwise supporting the credit or liquidity of the securities, and includes credit, reimbursement, marketing, remarketing, indexing, carrying, interest rate hedge, and subrogation agreements, and other agreements and arrangements for payment and reimbursement of the person providing the credit enhancement facility and the security for that payment and reimbursement,” which includes any Interest Rate Exchange or Similar Agreement, and (ii) any investment agreement or repurchase agreement that is entered into in connection with the Bonds and is consistent with the ratings on the Bonds, which includes any float agreement or forward agreement.

**“Applicable Margin”** when used in reference to the Trust Indenture, means on any Series of Indexed Floating Rate Bonds, the margin over the Benchmark Rate established for such Series in the applicable Series Supplement.

**“Applicable Periodic Rate”** when used in reference to the Trust Indenture, means with respect to any Series of Indexed Floating Rate Bonds and for each Periodic Interest Accrual Period, a per annum rate equal to the sum of the Benchmark Rate plus the Applicable Margin established for such Series in the applicable Series Supplement; provided, however, the “Applicable Periodic Rate” may also include an initial rate per annum for a period of time established for such Series in the applicable Series Supplement.

**“Assumed Rate”** means on any Deposit Date, and for any future period and any Series of Indexed Floating Rate Bonds, the rate established for such Series in the applicable Series Supplement as the Assumed Rate.

**“Authority”** means the Buckeye Tobacco Settlement Financing Authority created under the Act as a body, both corporate and politic, constituting a public body, agency, and instrumentality of the State and performing essential functions of the State.

**“Authorized Denominations,”** except as may otherwise be provided in a Supplemental Indenture, means (a) with respect to a Current Interest Bond (including with respect to a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond that has become a Current Interest Bond on and after the Conversion Date therefor), \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof; (b) with respect to a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond prior to the Conversion Date therefor, the amount which will accrete to \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof at the Conversion Date; and (c) with respect to any other Capital Appreciation Bond, the amount which will accrete to \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof at the Maturity Date thereof (such accretion being calculated in the manner described in the definition of Accreted Value).

**“Authorized Officer”** means: (i) in the case of the Authority, the Chair, the Secretary or the Treasurer or their lawful designees, and any other person authorized to act in such capacity by a resolution adopted by the Authority with appropriate Written Notice to the Trustee, and (ii) in the case of the Trustee, any officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Office, including any managing director, director, vice president, assistant vice president, associate, assistant secretary or any other officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and having direct responsibility for the administration of the Trust Indenture, and also, with respect to a particular matter, any other officer, to whom such

matter is referred because of such officer's knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

**"Benchmark Rate"** means any percentage of a regularly established benchmark for interest rates widely accepted in the debt capital markets and published or disseminated through a means widely available to financial institutions active in such markets, as set forth for a Series of Indexed Floating Rate Bonds in the related Series Supplement.

**"Beneficiaries"** means Bondholders and, to the extent specified in the Trust Indenture, the Benefited Parties to Ancillary Facilities.

**"Benefited Parties"** means persons, firms, or corporations that enter into Ancillary Facilities with the Authority (or the Trustee at the direction of the Authority).

**"Bond Obligation"** means, as of any given date, (i) with respect to any Outstanding Current Interest Bond, the principal amount of such Current Interest Bond as of such date, and (ii) with respect to any Outstanding Capital Appreciation Bond or Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond prior to the Conversion Date, the Accreted Value thereof as of such date.

**"Bond Service Fund"** means the Fund so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture, which includes the Senior Debt Service Account, Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, Senior Turbo Redemption Account, First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, and Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, and shall include all subaccounts contained therein.

**"Bond Year"** means for so long as Bonds are Outstanding, the twelve-month period ending each May 31.

**"Bondholders," "Holders"** and similar terms mean the registered owners of the Bonds, including the Series 2007 Bonds, as shown on the books of the Authority, and the owners of Coupon Bonds. Unless and until the Bonds have been issued to Bondholders other than DTC, all references to "Bondholders" or "Holders" of the Bonds are qualified by reference to the Trust Indenture.

**"Bonds"** means all bonds (or notes), including the Series 2007 Bonds, issued pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**"Business Day"** means any day other than (i) a Saturday or a Sunday or (ii) a day on which banking institutions in Columbus, Ohio or New York, New York, are required or authorized by law to be closed.

**"Calculation Agent"** means the calculation agent designated by the Authority to perform the duties set forth in the Trust Indenture.

**"Capital Appreciation Bond"** means a Bond the interest on which shall be compounded periodically, shall be payable only at maturity or redemption or prepayment prior to maturity, and shall be determined by subtracting from the Accreted Value thereof the original principal

amount thereof. Capital Appreciation Bonds do not include Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds on or after the applicable Conversion Date, but do include Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds prior to the applicable Conversion Date.

**“Capitalized Interest Subaccount”** means the subaccount of the Senior Debt Service Account held by the Trustee pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Cash Equivalent”** means a letter of credit, insurance policy, surety, guarantee or other security arrangement that is an Eligible Investment under paragraph (i) (as provided in a Supplemental Indenture) provided by an institution to represent the deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account of all or a portion of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement.

**“Code”** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

**“Collateral”** shall have the meaning ascribed thereto under the caption “Security and Pledge” below.

**“Collection Account”** means the account so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Collections”** means the Pledged Tobacco Receipts and investment earnings on amounts on deposit in or credited to the Pledged Accounts.

**“Consent Decree”** means the Consent Decree and Final Judgment entered November 25, 1998, in the Court of Common Pleas of Franklin County, Ohio, as the same may be corrected, amended or modified.

**“Conversion Date”** means the date set forth in the applicable Series Supplement on and after which a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond is deemed a Current Interest Bond and after which the Holders shall be entitled to receive current payments of interest on each Distribution Date.

**“Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond”** means a Bond the interest on which (x) prior to the Conversion Date, shall be (i) compounded periodically, (ii) payable only upon redemption or prepayment, and (iii) determined by subtracting from the Accreted Value thereof the original principal amount thereof and (y) on and after the Conversion Date, shall accrue and be payable periodically commencing on the next succeeding Distribution Date following the Conversion Date. On and after the Conversion Date, Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds shall be Current Interest Bonds.

**“Corporate Trust Office”** means the office of the Trustee at which the corporate trust business of the Trustee related hereto shall, at any particular time, be principally administered, which office is, at the date of the Trust Indenture, located at 175 South Third Street, 4<sup>th</sup> floor, Columbus, Ohio 43215, Attention: Corporate Trust Services.

**“Costs of Issuance”** means the costs, expenses and fees directly related to the authorization and issuance of Bonds and entering into of Ancillary Facilities as follows: all costs, fees and expenses of procuring insurance, other credit enhancements, and other financing

arrangements to fulfill the purposes of the Authority under the Act, including such arrangements, instruments, contracts and agreements as municipal bond insurance, liquidity facilities, interest rate agreements and letters of credit, financial advisory services, Bond underwriting services, auditors' or accountants' services, printing costs, costs of reproducing documents, filing and recording fees, escrow fees, initial fees and expenses of the Trustee, legal fees and charges, professional consultants' fees, costs of credit ratings, fees and charges for execution, transportation and safekeeping of Bonds, governmental charges, and other costs or expenses and fees of issuance of any kind directly related to the authorization and the issuance of the Bonds by the Authority or, in accordance with the 2007 Sale Agreement, by the State. Costs of Issuance shall include any financing cost referred to in the Act, except for capitalized interest.

**“Costs of Issuance Account”** means the account so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Counsel”** means Hawkins Delafield & Wood LLP and Squire, Sanders, & Dempsey L.L.P., or another nationally recognized bond counsel or such other counsel as may be selected by the Authority for a specific purpose under the Trust Indenture.

**“Coupon Bonds”** means Bonds registered to bearer, with interest coupons.

**“Current Interest Bond”** means a Bond the interest on which is payable currently on each Distribution Date (including an Indexed Floating Rate Bond, and as the context requires, a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond on and after the applicable Conversion Date).

**“Default”** means an Event of Default without regard to any declaration, notice or lapse of time.

**“Default Rate”** means that rate of interest that will be used in determining Accreted Value for a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond or other Capital Appreciation Bond during the occurrence of a Payment Default as set forth in the Series Supplement authorizing the issuance of such Bonds.

**“Defeasance Collateral”** means money and any of the following, provided such investments are legal under the laws of the State:

(a) direct obligations of the United States government, which are not redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof;

(b) (i) obligations, the timely payment of the principal and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States government; (ii) certificates of deposit of banks or trust companies secured by obligations of the United States of America of a market value equal at all times to the amount of the deposit; (iii) notes, bonds, debentures, mortgages and other evidences of indebtednesses, issued or guaranteed at the time of the investment by the United States Postal Service, Fannie Mae, FHLMC, FHLB, the Student Loan Marketing Association, the Federal Farm Credit System, Tennessee Valley Authority, or any other United States government sponsored agency; (iv) notes, bonds, debentures, mortgages and other evidences of indebtedness, issued or guaranteed at the time of investment by the Asian Development Bank, Bank Nederlandse Gemeenten, European Bank for Reconstruction and

Development, European Investment Bank, Inter-American Development Bank and International Bank for Reconstruction and Development; or (v) bonds or other obligations of any state of the United States of America or of any agency instrumentality or local governmental unit of any such state (x) which are not callable at the option of the obligor or otherwise prior to maturity or as to which irrevocable notice has been given by the obligor to call such bonds or obligations on the date specified in the notice, and (y) timely payment of which is fully secured by a fund consisting only of cash or obligations of the character described in clause (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) which fund may be applied only to the payment when due of such bonds or other obligations; provided that the above-listed investments are not redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof and which shall be rated at the time of the investment in the highest long term category by each Rating Agency;

(c) any depository receipt issued by an Eligible Bank as custodian with respect to any Defeasance Collateral which is specified in clause (a) above and held by such Eligible Bank for the account of the holder of such depository receipt, or with respect to any specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Defeasance Collateral which is so specified and held, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Defeasance Collateral or the specific payment of principal or interest evidenced by such depository receipt;

(d) any certificate of deposit specified in the definition of “Eligible Investments” below, including certificates of deposit issued by the Trustee or by the Paying Agent or by an affiliate of the Trustee or a Paying Agent, secured by obligations specified in clause (a) above at a market value at least equal at all times to the amount of the deposit, which shall be rated at the time of the investment in the highest long-term rating category by each Rating Agency; or

(e) investment arrangements from providers whose rating, or whose parent or guarantor’s rating, is not less than Aa or equivalent by each of Moody’s, S&P and Fitch. Further, should the provider’s rating, or parent or guarantor’s rating, be downgraded below the Aa or equivalent level by any of Moody’s, S&P or Fitch, the provider must be required, within ten (10) days of such downgrade, to provide notice to the Authority and the Trustee and remedy the downgrade by a pledge of collateral as described in subsection (a) or (b) of the definition of Eligible Investments to a third party, acceptable to the Authority, at margin levels equivalent to those needed to attain a AAA rating from S&P using a market value approach.

**“Defeasance Redemption Schedule”** has the meaning set forth under the caption “Defeasance” below.

**“Defeased Turbo Term Bonds”** means Turbo Term Bonds for which a defeasance escrow has been established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Delivery Date”** means the date on which a Series of Bonds is delivered to the original purchasers thereof.

**“Deposit Date”** means the date of actual receipt by the Trustee of any Collections.

**“Disputed Payments Account”** means any account into which the disputed portion of payments required to be made by PMs under the MSA are withheld or deposited pending resolution of the dispute.

**“Distribution Date”** means, except to the extent otherwise set forth in a Series Supplement, each June 1 and December 1, or if such date is not a Business Day, the following Business Day, each additional Distribution Date selected by the Authority or the Trustee following a Payment Default, and each Distribution Date, to the extent so characterized in a Supplemental Indenture.

**“DTC”** means The Depository Trust Company, a limited-purpose trust company organized under the laws of the State of New York, and includes any nominee of DTC in whose name any Bonds are then registered.

**“Eligible Bank”** means any (i) bank or trust company organized under the laws of any state of the United States of America (including the Trustee and any of its affiliates), (ii) national banking association, (iii) savings bank or savings and loan association chartered or organized under the laws of any state of the United States of America, or (iv) federal branch or agency established pursuant to the International Banking Act of 1978 or any successor provisions of law, or domestic branch or agency of a foreign bank which branch or agency is duly licensed or authorized to do business under the laws of any state or territory of the United States of America.

**“Eligible Investments”** means, with respect to the Pledged Accounts:

- (a) Defeasance Collateral;
- (b) demand, trust and time deposits, money market deposit accounts or certificates of deposit of, or bankers’ acceptances issued by, any bank (including the Trustee and any of its affiliates) or trust company, savings and loan association, or savings bank, payable on demand or on a specified date no more than three months after the date of issuance thereof, if such deposits or instruments are rated “A-1” by S&P, “P-1” by Moody’s and “F1” by Fitch;
- (c) certificates, notes, warrants, bonds, obligations, or other evidences of indebtedness of a state or a political subdivision thereof rated by each Rating Agency maintaining a rating thereon in one of its three highest rating categories;
- (d) commercial or finance company paper (including both noninterest-bearing discount obligations and interest bearing obligations payable on demand or on a specific date not more than 270 days after the date of issuance thereof) that is rated at least “A-1” by S&P, “P-1” by Moody’s and “F1” by Fitch, if rated by Fitch;
- (e) repurchase obligations with respect to any security described in paragraphs (a) or (b)(i), (ii) or (iii) of the definition of Defeasance Collateral above entered into with a financial institution, corporation, registered broker/dealer, domestic commercial bank, primary dealer, depository institution, or trust company (acting as principal) rated “A-1” by S&P, “P-1” by Moody’s and “F1” by Fitch (if payable on demand or on a specified date no more than three months after the date of issuance thereof), or rated by each Rating Agency maintaining a rating thereon in one of its three highest long term rating categories, provided that (1) a specific written

agreement governs the transaction, (2) the securities are held, free and clear of any lien, by the Trustee or an independent third party acting solely as agent for the Trustee, and such third party is (a) a Federal Reserve Bank, or (b) a member of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation that has combined surplus and undivided profits of not less than \$25 million, and the Trustee will have received written confirmation from such third party that it holds such securities, free and clear of any lien, as agent for the Trustee, (3) the agreement has a term of 30 days or less, or the Trustee or its agent will value the collateral securities no less frequently than monthly and will liquidate the collateral securities if any deficiency in the required collateral percentage is not restored within five Business Days of such valuation, and (4) the fair market value of the collateral securities in relation to the amount of the obligation, including principal and interest, is at least 102%;

(f) securities bearing interest or sold at a discount (payable on demand or on a specified date no more than three months after the date of issuance thereof) that are issued by any corporation incorporated under the laws of the United States of America or any state thereof and rated "A-1" by S&P, "P-1" by Moody's and "F1" by Fitch at the time such investment or contractual commitment providing for such investment; provided that securities issued by any such corporation will not be Eligible Investments to the extent that investment therein would cause the then-outstanding principal amount of securities issued by such corporation that are then held under the Trust Indenture to exceed 20% of the aggregate principal amount of all Eligible Investments then held;

(g) units of taxable or tax-exempt money market funds which funds are regulated investment companies and seek to maintain a constant net asset value per share and have been rated by each Rating Agency in one of its three highest rating categories, including if so rated any such fund which the Trustee or an affiliate of the Trustee serves as an investment advisor, administrator, shareholder, servicing agent and/or custodian or sub-custodian, notwithstanding that (x) the Trustee or an affiliate of the Trustee charges and collects fees and expenses (not exceeding current income) from such funds for services rendered, (y) the Trustee charges and collects fees and expenses for services rendered pursuant to the Trust Indenture, and (z) services performed for such funds and pursuant to the Trust Indenture may converge at any time (the Authority specifically authorizes the Trustee or an affiliate of the Trustee to charge and collect all fees and expenses from such funds for services rendered to such funds, in addition to any fees and expenses the Trustee may charge and collect for services rendered pursuant to the Trust Indenture);

(h) investment agreements, forward purchase agreements or guaranteed investment contracts rated, or with any financial institution or corporation whose senior long-term debt obligations are rated, or guaranteed by a financial institution whose senior long-term debt obligations are rated, at the time such agreement or contract is entered into, by each Rating Agency maintaining a rating thereon in one of its three highest rating categories, if the Authority has an option to terminate such agreement in the event that such rating is downgraded below the rating on the Bonds, or if not so rated, then collateralized by securities described in paragraphs (a) or (b)(i), (ii) or (iii) of the definition of Defeasance Collateral above with any registered broker/dealer or with any domestic commercial bank whose long-term debt obligations are rated in one of the three highest rating categories by each Rating Agency; provided that (1) a specific written agreement governs the transaction, (2) the securities are held,



free and clear of any lien, by the Trustee or an independent third party acting solely as agent for the Trustee, and such third party is (a) a Federal Reserve Bank, or (b) a member of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation that has combined surplus and undivided profits of not less than \$25 million, and the Trustee will have received written confirmation from such third party that it holds such securities, free and clear of any lien, as agent for the Trustee, (3) the agreement has a term of 30 days or less, or the Trustee or third party custodian will value the collateral securities no less frequently than monthly and will liquidate the collateral securities if any deficiency in the required collateral percentage is not restored within five Business Days of such valuation, and (4) the fair market value of the collateral securities in relation to the amount of the obligation, including principal and interest, is at least 102%;

(i) a surety, guaranty, letter of credit, liquidity agreement, agreement to purchase securities of the Authority or other similar agreement provided in lieu of or in substitution for amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account by an entity with a rating in the three highest rating categories by each Rating Agency; provided that any cost related to such an investment shall be paid either from funds released from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account or other available funds and 15 days prior notice is given to S&P;

(j) the State Treasurer's pooled investment program under Section 135.45 of the Ohio Revised Code; and

(k) other obligations or securities that are non-callable and that are acceptable to each Rating Agency;

provided, that no Eligible Investments may (i) evidence the right to receive only interest with respect to prepayable obligations underlying such instrument, or (ii), except with as collateral for repurchase agreements described in clause (e) of this definition, be purchased at a price greater than par if such instrument may be prepaid or called at a price less than its purchase price prior to its stated maturity.

Any investment in Eligible Investments described above may be made in the form of an entry made on the records of the issuer of such Eligible Investments.

**"Enforcement Expenses"** means, as certified to the Trustee by an Officer's Certificate, any amount designated in such Officer's Certificate as being requisitioned for payment or reimbursement to the Enforcement Expense Reserve Account in connection with the costs incurred or to be incurred (including reserves for the same) by the office of the Attorney General of the State with respect to enforcement of the Master Settlement Agreement, the Qualifying Statute, the Consent Decree and related legislation.

**"Enforcement Expense Reserve Account"** means the Account so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**"Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap"** means the aggregate limitation, applicable to each Fiscal Year, on the transfer of amounts from the Collection Account pursuant to the Trust Indenture for payment or reimbursement of Enforcement Expenses, equal to (i) \$2,500,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2008 through (and including June 30, 2013), without inflation, (ii) \$2,000,000 for the Fiscal Years ending June 30, 2014 and thereafter, such \$2,000,000 amount

to be inflated in each Fiscal Year beginning with the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2015 by the greater of 3% or the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics for December of the prior year, less (iii) with respect to both clauses (i) and (ii), the amount disbursed in such Fiscal Year for such purpose from the Operating Account pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Event of Default”** means an event specified under the caption “Events of Default” below.

**“Fannie Mae”** means the Federal National Mortgage Association.

**“FHLB”** means any Federal Home Loan Bank.

**“FHLMC”** means the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation.

**“Fiduciary”** means the Trustee, any representative of the Holders of Bonds appointed by Series Supplement, the Calculation Agent and each Paying Agent, if any.

**“First Subordinate Bonds”** means any Series 2007 Bonds and any other Bonds, in each case identified as such in the applicable Series Supplement.

**“First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account”** means the Account established, held and maintained by the Trustee pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Fiscal Year”** means the twelve (12) month period commencing July 1 of each year and ending on June 30 of the succeeding year, or such other twelve (12) month period as the Authority or the State may determine from time to time to be the Authority’s Fiscal Year. In the event of a change in the Authority’s Fiscal Year, the Authority shall deliver an Officer’s Certificate to the Trustee stating such change.

**“Fitch”** means Fitch Inc.; references to Fitch are effective so long as Fitch is a Rating Agency.

**“Fixed Rate Bonds”** means the Current Interest Bonds which are not Indexed Floating Rate Bonds.

**“Fully Paid”** has the meaning given to such term in the Trust Indenture.

**“Fully Subordinate Bonds”** has the meaning set forth under the caption “Additional Bonds of the Authority” below.

**“Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account”** means the Account established, held and maintained by the Trustee pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Funds”** means the funds established under the provisions of the Trust Indenture, including any Accounts therein.

**“Indexed Floating Rate Bonds”** means a Bond, the interest on which accrues at the Applicable Periodic Rate.

**“Interest Rate Exchange Agreement”** or **“Interest Rate Exchange or Similar Agreement”** means a written contract with a counterparty to provide for an exchange of payments based upon fixed or variable interest rates, or both fixed and variable interest rates. Any such agreement may include the option to enter into or cancel the agreement or to reverse or extend the agreement.

**“Junior Payments”** means (i) principal payable under term-out provisions of Ancillary Facilities, (ii) other amounts due under Ancillary Facilities and not payable as Priority Payments or debt service or related payments with respect to Senior Bonds, First Subordinate, or Second Subordinate Bonds, and (iii) Junior Payments so identified in or by reference to the Trust Indenture or any Supplemental Indenture.

**“Lump Sum Payment”** means a final payment from a PM that results in, or is due to, a release of that PM from all of its future payment obligations under the MSA. Any Lump Sum Payment shall be applied as Collections as provided in the Trust Indenture (see “Application of Collections” below). The term “Lump Sum Payment” does not include any payments that are Partial Lump Sum Payments, Total Lump Sum Payments or any non-scheduled prepayments other than a Lump Sum Payment.

**“Majority in Interest”** means, as of any particular date of calculation, the Holders of a majority of the Aggregate Bond Obligation eligible to act on a matter.

**“Master Settlement Agreement”** or **“MSA”** means the master settlement agreement and related documents (including the Escrow Agreement) entered into on November 23, 1998, by the State and leading United States tobacco product manufacturers, and incorporated with the Consent Decree.

**“Maturity Date”** means, with respect to any Bond, the final date on which all remaining Principal is due and payable.

**“Maximum Rate”** when used in reference to the Trust Indenture, means, as applicable, (i) the highest rate payable on a Bond to Holders other than parties to Ancillary Facilities, as specified by Series Supplement or (ii) the rate specified by Series Supplement as the Maximum Rate on an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement.

**“Moody’s”** means Moody’s Investors Service; references to Moody’s are effective so long as Moody’s is a Rating Agency.

**“Net Proceeds”** means the amount of proceeds remaining following the sale of Bonds which are not required by the Authority to pay Costs of Issuance or amounts required to fund reserve funds or capitalized interest, if any, Operating Expenses, if any, amounts deposited to an escrow fund and used to defease or refund Bonds, or debt service on Bonds and other reserve funds.

**“Officer’s Certificate”** means a certificate signed by an Authorized Officer of the Authority or, if so specified, of the Trustee.

**“Operating Account”** means the account held by the Authority pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Operating Cap”** means (i) \$250,000 in the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2008, inflated in each following Fiscal Year by the greater of 3% or the percentage increase in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics for December of the prior year, plus (ii) in each Fiscal Year, Tax Obligations and Priority Payments, if any, specified in an Officer’s Certificate.

**“Operating Expenses”** means the reasonable operating expenses of the Authority, including without limitation, the cost of preparation of accounting and other reports, costs of maintenance of the ratings on the Bonds, insurance premiums, and costs of Authority meetings or other required activity of the Authority, counsel fees, including the fees of the Attorney General, and fees and expenses incurred for consultants and fiduciaries, all costs and expenses incurred by the State and other amounts, if any, which are required to be reimbursed or borne by the Authority pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement, Enforcement Expenses, and all other costs authorized by the Act or all other Operating Expenses so identified in the Trust Indenture.

**"OPM"** means an Original Participating Manufacturer, as defined in the MSA.

**“Outstanding Bonds”** means Bonds issued under the Trust Indenture, excluding: (i) Bonds that have been exchanged or replaced, or delivered to the Trustee for credit against the Principal; (ii) Bonds that have been paid or Fully Paid; (iii) Bonds that have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided; (iv) Bonds for which (A) there has been irrevocably set aside sufficient Defeasance Collateral timely maturing and bearing interest, to pay or redeem them and (B) any required notice of redemption shall have been duly given in accordance with the Trust Indenture or irrevocable instructions to give notice shall have been given to the Trustee; (v) Bonds the payment of which shall have been provided for pursuant to certain provisions of the Trust Indenture; and (vi) for purposes of any consent or other action to be taken by the Holders of a Majority in Interest or specified percentage of Bonds under the Trust Indenture, Bonds held by or for the account of the Authority, the State or any person controlling, controlled by or under common control with either of them. For the purposes of this definition, “control,” when used with respect to any specified person, means the power to direct the management and policies of such person, directly or indirectly, whether by contract, statute, governmental order or otherwise, and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

**“Parity Swap Payments”** means scheduled payments under an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement executed in connection with a Series of Senior Bonds, not to exceed the applicable Maximum Rate, but does not include any payments under any other Ancillary Facility.

**“Partial Lump Sum Payment”** means a payment from a PM that results in, or is due to, a release of that PM from a portion, but not all, of its future payment obligations under the MSA.

**“Partial Lump Sum Payment Account”** means that Account within the Bond Service Fund so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Paying Agent”** means the Trustee and any other Paying Agent designated from time to time pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Payment Default”** means an Event of Default described in paragraphs (a) or (b) under the caption “Events of Default” below.

**“Payment Priorities”** means payment of Bonds in the following order of priority:

- (a) first, the Senior Bonds are Fully Paid in chronological order of Serial Maturities, Sinking Fund Installments and Maturity Dates therefor;
- (b) second, the First Subordinate Bonds are Fully Paid;
- (c) third, the Second Subordinate Bonds are Fully Paid;
- (d) fourth, any Fully Subordinate Bonds are Fully Paid in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement.

Each clause above is referred to in the Trust Indenture as a “Payment Priority.”

**“Periodic Interest Accrual Period”** means with respect to any Indexed Floating Rate Bonds, the period commencing on the prior Periodic Interest Reset Date (or the Delivery Date thereof, if prior to the first Periodic Interest Reset Date for such Bonds) and ending on the day preceding the next succeeding Periodic Interest Reset Date.

**“Periodic Interest Amount”** means with respect to Indexed Floating Rate Bonds and any Distribution Date, the aggregate amount of interest accrued at the Applicable Periodic Rate during the related Periodic Interest Accrual Period on the Bond Obligation of such Indexed Floating Rate Bonds.

**“Periodic Interest Reset Date”** means, with respect to any Indexed Floating Rate Bonds, the date set forth in the related Series Supplement on which the Applicable Periodic Rate is recalculated and made effective for the next ensuing Periodic Interest Accrual Period.

**“Pledged Accounts”** means the Collection Account and all accounts and subaccounts, if any, of the Bond Service Fund.

**“Pledged Tobacco Receipts”** means the right, title and interest to 100% of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts, which are payable to the Authority or the Trustee pursuant to the 2007 Agreement and are subject to the lien of the Trust Indenture.

**“PM”** means a Participating Manufacturer, as defined in the MSA.

**“Principal”** means the amount of the principal due on the Maturity Date for any Bonds.

**“Priority Payments”** means fees payable pursuant to Ancillary Facilities that are identified by the Trust Indenture or by a Series Supplement as Priority Payments, which shall not include payments of or in lieu of interest, Principal, redemption price or purchase price of Bonds.

**“Pro Rata”** means, for an allocation of available amounts to any payment of interest, Accreted Value, principal or payments under an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement to be made pursuant to the Trust Indenture, the application of a fraction of such available amounts (a) the numerator of which is equal to the amount due to the respective Holders or any party who has entered into an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement with the Authority, as applicable, to whom such payment is owing, and (b) the denominator of which is equal to the total amount due to all Holders or counterparties to whom such payment is owing, as applicable.

**“Projected Turbo Redemption”** means, for a Series of Bonds, each respective Turbo Redemption projected to be made pursuant to the Trust Indenture, as such projections are set forth on the Projected Turbo Schedule.

**“Projected Turbo Schedule”** means, for a Series of Bonds that includes Turbo Term Bonds, the schedule of projected redemptions of such Turbo Term Bonds set forth in the related Series Supplement or in an exhibit thereto.

**“Qualifying Statute”** means Chapter 1346, Ohio Revised Code, as amended from time to time.

**“Rating Agency”** means, initially, S&P, Moody’s and Fitch with respect to Series 2007 A Bonds and Fitch with respect to Series 2007 B Bonds and Series 2007 C Bonds, and each nationally recognized securities rating organization that has issued, at the request of the Authority with notice to the Trustee, a rating in effect for a Series of Bonds, as set forth in the related Series Supplement.

**“Rating Confirmation”** means written evidence that no rating assigned to the Bonds by any Rating Agency, without regard to credit enhancement, if any, will be withdrawn, qualified or reduced solely as a result of an action to be taken under the Trust Indenture.

**“Rebate Account”** means the Account, if any, established and maintained by the Trustee pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Record Date”** means the last Business Day of the calendar month preceding a Distribution Date, or such other date as may be specified by the Trust Indenture or an Officer's Certificate; and the Authority or the Trustee may in its discretion establish special record dates for the determination of the Holders of Bonds for various purposes under the Trust Indenture, including giving consent or direction to the Trustee.

**“Refunding Bonds”** means any Bond issued pursuant to the Trust Indenture to pay or provide for the payment of all or a portion of any Outstanding Bond.

**“Residual Certificate”** means that certificate evidencing residual interests, substantially in the form of Appendix A to the 2007 Sale Agreement.

**“S&P”** means Standard & Poor’s Ratings Services; references to S&P are effective so long as S&P is a Rating Agency.

**“Second Subordinate Bonds”** means any Series 2007 Bonds and any other Bonds, in each case identified as such in an applicable Series Supplement.

**“Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account”** means the Account established, held and maintained by the Trustee pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Securities Depository”** means DTC or another securities depository specified by Series Supplement, or if the incumbent Securities Depository resigns from its functions as depository of the Bonds or the Authority discontinues use of the incumbent Securities Depository, then any other securities depository selected by Officer’s Certificate of the Authority.

**“Senior Bonds”** means the Series 2007A Bonds designated as Senior Bonds in the Series Supplement related thereto and any other Bonds designated as Senior Bonds in a Series Supplement.

**“Senior Debt Service”** means (i) interest, redemption premium and Bond Obligation due on Outstanding Senior Bonds and (ii) Parity Swap Payments.

**“Senior Debt Service Account”** means the Account within the Bond Service Fund so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Senior Liquidity Reserve Account”** means the Account within the Bond Service Fund so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement”** means (x) \$389,231,603.13 and (y) from and after the date on which there are no Outstanding Senior Bonds which are Current Interest Bonds or Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds, zero, which amount may be amended upon the issuance of Additional Bonds or Refunding Bonds.

**“Senior Turbo Redemption Account”** means the Account in the Bond Service Fund so designated and established pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

**“Serial Bonds”** means the Bonds so specified in a Series Supplement.

**“Series”** means all Bonds so identified in a Series Supplement, regardless of variations in class, maturity, interest rate or other provisions, and any Bonds thereafter delivered in exchange or replacement therefor.

**“Series 2007 Bonds”** means the Authority’s \$5,531,594,541 Tobacco Settlement Asset-Backed Bonds, Series 2007, initially dated October 29, 2007, including any Bonds issued in exchange or replacement therefor.

**“Series Supplement”** means a Supplemental Indenture described in the Trust Indenture, or a supplement thereto.

**“Sinking Fund Installment”** means each respective principal payment to be made on Turbo Term Bonds scheduled to be made from Collections to the extent available pursuant to certain provisions of the Trust Indenture, as such schedule may be set forth in a Series Supplement.

**“Special Funds”** shall have the meaning set forth therefor in the Act and shall include the Collection Account and Bond Service Fund established pursuant to the Trust Indenture and any additional Fund or Account so designated in a Series Indenture or Supplemental Indenture.

**“State”** means the State of Ohio.

**“State Treasurer”** means the State Treasurer of the State.

**“Subordinate Payment Default”** means that Principal of, premium or interest on any First Subordinate Bond or Second Subordinate Bond has not been paid when due.

**“Supplemental Indenture”** means a Series Supplement or supplement hereto adopted and becoming effective in accordance with the terms of the Trust Indenture. Any provision that may be included in a Series Supplement or Supplemental Indenture is also eligible for inclusion in the other subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture.

**“Surplus Collections”** means all Collections that are in excess of the requirements of the Trust Indenture for the funding of Operating Expenses (including Enforcement Expenses), interest, Principal, Parity Swap Payments, Priority Payments, Tax Obligations, payments due on Ancillary Facilities, Junior Payments and maintenance of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account.

**“Taxable Bonds”** means all Bonds so identified in the Series Supplement relating to such Bonds.

**“Tax Certificate”** means, collectively, the Authority Tax Certificate and the Tax Certificate of the State of Ohio executed and delivered by the Authority and the State with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds and each subsequent Series of Bonds consisting in whole or in part of Tax-Exempt Bonds, as originally executed and as it may be amended or supplemented from time to time in accordance with the terms thereof.

**“Tax-Exempt Bonds”** means all Bonds so identified in the Series Supplement relating to such Bonds.

**“Tax Obligations”** means, with respect to the issuance of Tax-Exempt Bonds, if any, the rebate requirement and any penalties, fines or other payments required to be made to the United States of America under the arbitrage or rebate provisions of the Code.

**“Term Bonds”** means the Bonds, including Turbo Term Bonds, so specified in a Series Supplement.

**“Termination Payment”** means any payment made by the Authority with respect to a loss under or the termination of an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement, investment agreement or forward purchase agreement relating to a Pledged Account.



**“Termination Payment Cap”** means, with respect to Termination Payments due under any Ancillary Facility, the related limitation, if any, on payment thereof from amounts held in Pledged Accounts, as set forth in the related Supplemental Indenture.

**“Total Lump Sum Payment”** means a final payment under the MSA from all of the PMs that results in, or is due to, a release of all PMs from all of their future payment obligations under the MSA.

**“Trustee”** means U.S. Bank National Association, its successors in interest and any successor trustee under the Trust Indenture.

**“Trust Indenture”** means the Trust Indenture dated as of October 1, 2007 by and between the Authority and the Trustee, as amended, supplemented and in effect from time to time.

**“Turbo Redemptions”** means (i) with respect to Turbo Term Bonds that are Senior Bonds, the redemption of such Turbo Term Bonds from amounts on deposit in the Senior Turbo Redemption Account as described under captions “Application of Collections” and “Redemption of the Bonds” below, (ii) with respect to Turbo Term Bonds that are First Subordinate Bonds, the redemption of such Turbo Term Bonds from amounts on deposit in the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account as described under captions “Application of Collections” and “Redemption of the Bonds” below, and (iii) with respect to Turbo Term Bonds that are Second Subordinate Bonds, the redemption of such Turbo Term Bonds from amounts on deposit in the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account as described under captions “Application of Collections” and “Redemption of the Bonds” below, and (iv) with respect to Turbo Term Bonds that are Fully Subordinate Bonds, the redemption of such Turbo Term Bonds from amounts on deposit in the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account as provided in the applicable Series Supplement.

**“Turbo Term Bonds”** means such maturities of Bonds as are designated as Turbo Term Bonds in the applicable Series Supplement.

**“Turbo Term Bond Maturity”** means the payment of principal or Accreted Value required to be made upon the final maturity of any Turbo Term Bond.

**“2007 Sale Agreement”** means the Purchase and Sale Agreement, dated as of October 1, 2007, by and between the Authority and the State, as further amended, supplemented and in effect from time to time.

**“2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts”** means 100% of the following:

(i) Except as excluded pursuant to the last paragraph of this definition, all tobacco settlement payments that are required to be made by the tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State under the terms of the Master Settlement Agreement on and after the Delivery Date for the Series 2007 Bonds;

(ii) All lump sum or partial lump sum payments received on and after the Delivery Date for the Series 2007 Bonds, that are allocable to, or in substitution for, payments required

under the terms of the Master Settlement Agreement by tobacco manufacturers to or for the account of the State; and

(iii) The State's right under the Master Settlement Agreement to receive the tobacco settlement payments referred to in (i) and (ii) of this definition.

2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts (x) specifically include 100% of any amounts due to the State and withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account on or after the Delivery Date for the Series 2007 Bonds by the tobacco manufacturers as a result of a dispute as to the amount of a payment required to be made by them under the MSA and that are subsequently paid by the tobacco manufacturers or released from the Disputed Payments Account, including all earnings thereon, but (y) specifically exclude any right to or interest in amounts withheld or deposited in the Disputed Payments Account before the Delivery Date for the Series 2007 Bonds, including all earnings thereon.

**“Written Notice,”** “written notice” or “notice in writing” means notice in writing which may be delivered by hand or first class mail and also means facsimile transmission.

### **The Trust Indenture**

The following summary describes certain terms of the Trust Indenture pursuant to which the Series 2007 Bonds will be issued. This summary does not purport to be complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to, the provisions of the Trust Indenture and the Bonds. Copies of the Trust Indenture may be obtained upon written request to the Trustee. See “SECURITY FOR THE BONDS” and “THE SERIES 2007 BONDS” for further descriptions of certain terms and provisions of the Bonds.

*Members of the Authority and State Officials Not Liable on Bonds.* As provided in the Act, the individuals who are from time to time members of the Authority, or their designees acting pursuant to Section 183.52 of the Ohio Revised Code, or the Authority’s officers, staff, agents, or employees, when acting within the scope of their employment or agency, shall not be liable in their personal capacities on any Bonds or Ancillary Facilities or otherwise under the Trust Indenture, or for otherwise exercising or carrying out any purposes or powers of the Authority.

Pursuant to the Act, (i) the Bonds and any Ancillary Facility are not general obligations of the State and the full faith and credit, revenue, and taxing power of the State are not pledged to the payment of debt service on them or to any guarantee of the payment of that debt service, (ii) the Holders of Bonds and other Beneficiaries shall have no right to have any moneys obligated or pledged for the payment of debt service except as provided in the Trust Indenture in accordance with the Act, and (iii) the rights of the Holders of Bonds and Benefited Parties to payment of debt service are limited to all or that portion of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, and the Special Funds, pledged to the payment of debt service pursuant to the Trust Indenture in accordance with the Act, and each Bond shall bear on its face a statement to that effect.

Any liability of the Authority, including liability for damages, awards, settlement amounts, legal fees, costs, expenses, interest or any other form of monetary recovery, arising out of any actions or proceedings brought by the Trustee or any Beneficiary pursuant to the

provisions of the Trust Indenture or the 2007 Sale Agreement or otherwise against the Authority with respect to any covenants, indemnities, obligations, representations, responsibilities, warranties, or events of default under the Trust Indenture or the 2007 Sale Agreement or otherwise shall be limited and payable solely and only from the Collections. Under no circumstances shall any person or entity have recourse to or against, or any right to receive payment (including for the purpose of paying or satisfying any judgment, debt, liability or other obligation of the Authority) from any moneys or assets of the State, including funds in the State's general fund or any special fund or other account of the State.

*Security and Pledge.* Pursuant to the Trust Indenture, in order to secure the payment of Bonds, and, to the extent permitted by applicable State law, payments in respect of Ancillary Facilities, including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements, all with the respective priorities specified in the Trust Indenture, the Authority, in accordance with the Act, pledges and assigns, as security, to the Trustee in trust upon the terms of the Trust Indenture (i) the Collections, (ii) all rights to receive the Collections and the proceeds of such rights, (iii) the Pledged Accounts and money and investments on deposit in or credited to the Pledged Accounts, (iv) subject to the terms and provisions of the Trust Indenture and the 2007 Sale Agreement, all rights and remedies with respect to any breach by the State of any of its covenants, obligations, representations, and warranties under the 2007 Sale Agreement or under the Act, (v) all interests in the Pledged Tobacco Receipts of the Authority under the 2007 Sale Agreement, to which the State has consented to an assignment, subject to the terms and limitations of the 2007 Sale Agreement, and (vi) any and all other property of every kind and nature from time to time, by delivery or by writing of any kind, conveyed, pledged, assigned or transferred as and for additional security. The property described in the preceding sentence is referred to as the "Collateral."

The pledge of Collateral made by the Authority as described above shall, in accordance with the Act, be immediately subject to the lien of such pledge without any physical delivery thereof or further act, and shall not be subject to other court judgments. Pursuant to the Act, the lien of any such pledge shall be valid and binding as against all parties having claims of any kind against the Authority, irrespective of whether such parties have notice thereof, and shall constitute a perfected security interest for all purposes of Chapter 1309 of the Ohio Revised Code and a perfected lien for purposes of any other interest, all without the necessity for separation or delivery of funds or for the filing or recording of the Trust Indenture, or proceedings relating thereto, or any certificate, statement, or other document with respect thereto.

Except as specifically provided in the Trust Indenture, this assignment and pledge of Collateral does not include: (i) the rights of the Authority pursuant to provisions for consent or other action by the Authority, notice to the Authority, indemnity or the filing of documents with the Authority, or otherwise for its benefit and not for that of the Bondholders or Benefited Parties, (ii) any other right or power reserved to the Authority pursuant to the Act or other law; nor does the assignment and pledged Collateral preclude the Authority's enforcement of its rights under and pursuant to the 2007 Sale Agreement for the benefit of the Bondholders or, to the extent permitted by applicable State law, other Beneficiaries as provided in the Trust Indenture. Unless otherwise specified in the Series Supplement applicable thereto, the proceeds of any Bonds, other than those deposited in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account or in the Capitalized Interest Subaccount, do not constitute Collections, are not pledged to the holders of such Bonds and are not subject to the lien of the Trust Indenture.

The Authority will implement, protect and defend the pledge and assignment of the Collateral by all appropriate legal action, the cost thereof to be an Operating Expense. The pledge and assignment made by the Trust Indenture and the covenants and agreements to be performed by or on behalf of the Authority shall be for the equal and ratable benefit, protection and security of the Holders to secure payment of any and all of the Outstanding Bonds, all of which, regardless of the time or times of their issue or maturity, shall be of equal rank without preference, priority or distinction of such Bonds over any other Bonds except as expressly provided in or permitted by the Trust Indenture.

*Defeasance.* When (i) there is held by or for the account of the Trustee Defeasance Collateral in such principal amounts, bearing interest at such fixed rates and with such maturities, including any applicable redemption premiums, as will provide sufficient funds to pay, or to redeem in accordance with the Trust Indenture, all obligations to Holders in whole (to be verified by a nationally recognized firm of independent verification agents), (ii) any required notice of the deposit of Defeasance Collateral and any required notice of redemption shall have been duly given in accordance with the Trust Indenture or irrevocable instructions to give notice shall have been given to the Trustee, (iii) all the rights of Beneficiaries (including parties to Ancillary Facilities) have been provided for and all incurred Operating Expenses have been satisfied in accordance with the Trust Indenture, and (iv) the Trustee shall have received an opinion of Counsel to the effect that such defeasance will not, in and of itself, cause interest on any Tax-Exempt Bond to be included in gross income for federal income tax purposes, then upon Written Notice from the Authority to the Trustee, such Beneficiaries under the Trust Indenture shall cease to be entitled to any benefit or security under the Trust Indenture, except the right to receive payment of the funds held in such defeasance escrow and other rights which by their nature cannot be satisfied prior to or simultaneously with termination of the lien thereof, the Trust Indenture, and the lien and rights created by the Trust Indenture (except in such funds and investments) shall terminate and become null and void, and the Authority and the Trustee shall execute and deliver such instruments as may be necessary to discharge the Trustee's lien and rights (except in such funds and investments) created under the Trust Indenture. Upon such defeasance, the funds and investments required to pay or redeem the Bonds shall be irrevocably set aside for that purpose, subject, however, to provisions of the Trust Indenture, and money held for defeasance shall be invested only as provided above and applied by the Trustee or other Paying Agents, if any, to the retirement of the Bonds. Any funds or other property held by the Trustee and not required for payment or redemption of the Bonds shall be distributed in accordance with the order of the Authority. Upon defeasance of all Outstanding Bonds and Beneficiaries, any funds or property held by the Trustee and not required for payment or redemption of such Bonds and such other obligations to Defeased Beneficiaries in full shall be distributed by the Trustee in accordance with the Trust Indenture. With respect to Indexed Floating Rate Bonds, for purposes of this paragraph, any such Bond will be assumed to bear interest from the end of the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period at its Maximum Rate to the date set for redemption.

*Partial Defeasance.* The Authority may create a defeasance escrow for the retirement and defeasance of any Bonds (or portions of Bonds) (the "Bonds to be Defeased") by so directing the Trustee in an Officer's Certificate. When (i) there is held by or for the account of the Trustee Defeasance Collateral in such principal amounts, bearing interest at such fixed rates and with such maturities, including any applicable redemption premiums, as will provide

sufficient funds to pay, or to redeem in accordance with the Trust Indenture, the Bonds to be Defeased (to be verified by a nationally recognized firm of independent verification agents), (ii) any required notice of redemption shall have been duly given in accordance with the Trust Indenture or irrevocable instructions to give notice shall have been given to the Trustee, along with the list identifying such Bonds to be Defeased, (iii) all the rights under the Trust Indenture of the Fiduciaries and the Beneficiaries (including parties to Ancillary Facilities) applicable to the Bonds to be Defeased have been provided for and (iv) the Trustee shall have received an opinion of Counsel to the effect that such defeasance will not, in and of itself, cause interest on any Tax-Exempt Bond to be included in gross income for federal income tax purposes, then upon Written Notice from the Authority to the Trustee, the Beneficiaries under the Trust Indenture, shall cease to be entitled to any benefit or security under the Trust Indenture to the extent of such defeasance except the right to receive payment of the funds held in such defeasance escrow and other rights which by their nature cannot be satisfied prior to or simultaneously with the below-described termination of the lien and rights created by the Trust Indenture (except in such funds and investments) shall terminate with respect to such Bonds to be Defeased. Upon such defeasance, the funds and investments required to pay or redeem the Bonds to be Defeased shall be irrevocably set aside for that purpose, subject, however, to the Trust Indenture, and money held for defeasance shall be invested only as provided above, and applied by the Trustee and other Paying Agents, if any, to the retirement of such Bonds, and such Bonds or portions of Bonds shall no longer be Outstanding under the Trust Indenture. For purposes of clause (i) of the second sentence above, any Indexed Floating Rate Bond, if it is included as a Bond to be Defeased, will be assumed to bear interest from the end of the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period at its Maximum Rate to the date set for redemption. Upon full payment of any Indexed Floating Rate Bonds that are Defeased under the Trust Indenture, the Trustee shall transfer excess amounts, if any, held in the defeasance escrow and attributable to such Indexed Floating Rate Bonds to the Collection Account to be treated as if they were Collections.

*Defeasance of Turbo Term Bonds.* For each Defeased Turbo Term Bond of the same Maturity Date and Series, the Authority must determine a “Defeasance Redemption Schedule” as described in paragraphs (i) and (ii) below. In establishing the defeasance escrow, the Defeased Turbo Term Bonds may not be redeemed more slowly than the Defeasance Redemption Schedule.

(i) For a given Turbo Term Bond Maturity of a given Series, the Trustee shall determine the pro rata portion of each Projected Turbo Redemption (shown, with respect to each Series of the Series 2007 Bonds, in an exhibit to the 2007 Series Supplement) that is allocable to the Defeased Turbo Term Bonds and notify the Authority of such determination. The pro rata portion of each Projected Turbo Redemption shall be calculated as of the date of the defeasance by: (a) deducting the Turbo Redemptions which have already occurred from the earliest Projected Turbo Redemptions to arrive at a schedule of “Projected Turbo Redemptions Adjusted for Prior Payments”; (b) calculating a ratio of the Bond Obligation to be defeased of each Turbo Term Bond Maturity divided by the then Outstanding Bond Obligation of the Turbo Term Bond Maturity; and (c) applying that ratio to the Projected Turbo Redemptions Adjusted for Prior Payments, resulting in a schedule for each Turbo Term Bond Maturity defined as the “Defeasance Redemption Schedule” and each such payment is referred to here as a “Defeasance Redemption.”

(ii) For each Defeased Turbo Term Bond of the same Maturity Date and Series upon Written Notice from the Authority, and written direction to invest in Defeasance Collateral, the Trustee shall establish a defeasance escrow which: (a) redeems on the earliest possible date the Defeasance Redemptions which were originally projected to occur prior to the date of the defeasance, if any; and (b) thereafter, redeems the Defeasance Redemptions according to their Defeasance Redemption Schedule.

(iii) In order to establish the Projected Turbo Redemption Schedule in effect for each Turbo Term Bond Maturity of a given Series after each partial defeasance, the Trustee shall determine the schedule of Projected Turbo Redemptions Adjusted for Prior Payments then applicable, notify the Authority of such determination and permanently subtract the Defeasance Redemption Schedule from such schedule of Projected Turbo Redemptions Adjusted for Prior Payments.

(iv) The provisions described under this caption “Defeasance of Turbo Term Bonds” shall not be construed to limit the optional redemption of Bonds of a Series by the Authority pursuant to the applicable Series Supplement.

*Additional Bonds of the Authority.* By Series Supplements complying with the Trust Indenture, the Authority may authorize, issue, sell and deliver the Series 2007 Bonds and one or more Series of Refunding Bonds, Additional Bonds or Fully Subordinate Bonds from time to time in such principal amounts as the Authority shall determine. The Bonds of each Series shall bear such dates, mature at such times, be subject to such terms of payment, bear interest at such rates, be in such form and denomination, carry such registration privileges, be executed in such manner, and be payable in such medium of payment, at such place and subject to such terms of redemption, as the Authority may provide in the Trust Indenture and in the related Series Supplement. The proceeds of each Series of Bonds shall be applied as provided in the related Series Supplement.

Refunding Bonds may be issued to refund Bonds in part (including the funding of defeasance escrows and deposits to Accounts in connection with such issuance) and Additional Bonds may be issued at the discretion of the Authority, but only if upon the issuance of such Refunding Bonds and/or Additional Bonds: (A) the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account immediately following the issuance of such Refunding Bonds and/or Additional Bonds will be at least equal to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement; (B) no Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing after the date of issuance of such Bonds; (C) the expected weighted average life of each Turbo Term Bond that will remain Outstanding after the date of issuance of the Refunding Bonds and/or Additional Bonds as computed on the basis of new projections on the date of sale of the Refunding Bonds and/or Additional Bonds will not exceed (x) the remaining expected weighted average life of each such Turbo Term Bond as computed by the Authority on the basis of new projections assuming that no such Refunding Bonds and/or Additional Bonds are issued, plus (y) one year; and (D) a Rating Confirmation is received for any Bonds that will remain Outstanding after the date of issuance of the Refunding Bonds and/or Additional Bonds which are then rated by a Rating Agency.

One or more Series of Fully Subordinate Bonds may be issued for any lawful purpose if there is no payment permitted for such bonds until all previously issued Bonds are Fully Paid.

Fully Subordinate Bonds may be issued without satisfying the requirements for issuing Additional Bonds or Refunding Bonds (in part), set forth above.

*Application of Collections.*

(a) All Pledged Tobacco Receipts received by the Trustee shall be promptly deposited by the Trustee into the Collection Account. All Collections that have been identified by an Officer's Certificate as consisting of Partial Lump Sum Payments received by the Trustee shall be promptly (and in any event, no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Distribution Date) transferred to the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, in accordance with the instructions received by the Trustee pursuant to an Officer's Certificate. All Collections that have been identified by an Officer's Certificate as consisting of Total Lump Sum Payments received by the Trustee shall be promptly (and in any event, no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Distribution Date) applied as described in paragraph (e) below in accordance with the instructions received by the Trustee pursuant to an Officer's Certificate. Not later than on each Distribution Date, the Trustee shall deposit in the Collection Account and apply as described in the following paragraph, all Collections consisting of investment earnings on amounts on deposit with the Trustee in the Pledged Accounts (excluding amounts in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account), except that unless otherwise specified in a Series Supplement relating to a Series of Bonds, all amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in excess of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement determined to exist pursuant to the valuation procedure described under the caption "Investments" below shall be transferred to the Debt Service Account (except as otherwise provided in the Trust Indenture).

(b) As soon as is practicable, but in any event no later than the earlier of (x) the fifth Business Day following each Deposit Date, or (y) the Distribution Date following each Deposit Date, the Trustee shall withdraw the funds on deposit in the Collection Account and transfer such amounts as follows in the following order of priority:

(i) to the Operating Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein to equal the amount specified by the Officer's Certificate most recently delivered or deemed delivered pursuant to the Trust Indenture in order to pay, for the twelve-month period applicable to such Officer's Certificate, (x) the Operating Expenses to the extent that the amount thereof does not exceed the Operating Cap (provided, that any such Operating Expenses consisting of Enforcement Expenses must be identified in such Officer's Certificate as to be paid in accordance with this paragraph (b)(i)), (y) the Tax Obligations, and (z) Priority Payments;

(ii) to the Senior Debt Service Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein (taking into account any amounts already on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Subaccount or the Senior Debt Service Account) to equal the sum of (x) interest at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, plus (y) interest at the Applicable Periodic Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds through the next Distribution Date (after the current Periodic Interest Accrual Period, at the Assumed Rate to the next succeeding Distribution Date), and all Parity Swap Payments that will come due (i) in the next succeeding Bond Year, if the Deposit Date is on or after December 1 and on or before May 31 of any Bond Year, or (ii) in the then-current Bond Year, if the Deposit Date is on or after June 1 and on or before November 30 of any Bond Year, plus (z) any such unpaid interest on the

Outstanding Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds and all Parity Swap Payments from prior Distribution Dates (including interest at the stated rate or Applicable Periodic Rate on such unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible); and the amounts to be deposited pursuant to the Trust Indenture shall be calculated assuming that Bond Obligation on the Outstanding Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds will have been paid as described in paragraphs (c)(ii), (c)(iii), (c)(iv) and (c)(v) below;

(iii) to the Senior Debt Service Account, an amount sufficient to cause the amount therein to equal the amount specified in paragraph (ii) above plus the sum of (a) if the Deposit Date is on or after December 1 and on or before May 31 of any Bond Year, the Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installment or Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond maturities) due for Senior Bonds in or scheduled for the next succeeding Bond Year, plus (b) any such Serial Bond maturities, Sinking Fund Installment or Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) unpaid from prior Distribution Dates, but the amount of each Sinking Fund Installment shall first be adjusted as described in the Trust Indenture;

(iv) unless a Payment Default has occurred, to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account an amount sufficient to cause the amount on deposit therein to equal the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement; provided that on any Distribution Date on which the amount in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amount necessary to be paid in connection with the liquidation of the investment of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, including a Termination Payment) equals or exceeds the Bond Obligation and interest on all Outstanding Senior Bonds, the amount on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account (less any amounts necessary to be paid in connection with liquidating investments in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account including a Termination Payment) shall first be transferred to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of all Outstanding Senior Bonds, and if all Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, second, will be transferred to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding First Subordinate Bonds, and if all Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, and third, will be transferred to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account and applied to the Turbo Redemption of Outstanding Second Subordinate Bonds, and if all Senior Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds and Second Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding;

(v) to the Operating Account, the amount, if any, necessary to make the amount therein equal to the amount specified by the Officer's Certificate most recently delivered or deemed delivered pursuant to the Trust Indenture in order to pay, for the twelve-month period applicable to such Officer's Certificate, the Operating Expenses (other than Enforcement Expenses), if any, in excess of the Operating Cap;

(vi) to the Authority for payment or reimbursement of Enforcement Expenses, the amount as specified in an Officer's Certificate (provided, that any such Enforcement Expenses must be identified in such Officer's Certificate as to be paid in accordance with this paragraph(b)(vi), provided that such amount and all prior such transfers for Enforcement Expenses for the current Fiscal Year shall not exceed the Enforcement Expense Transfer Cap;



(vii) in the amounts and to the Funds and Accounts established by the Series Supplement for Junior Payments;

(viii) to or at the direction of the Authority, to pay any Termination Amount due under an Ancillary Facility executed in connection with Senior Bonds, not to exceed the related Termination Payment Cap (if any);

(ix) to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until the Senior Bonds are Outstanding;

(x) to the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no First Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding;

(xi) to the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account, until no Second Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding; and

(xii) to the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, all amounts remaining in the Collection Account until no Fully Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding.

(c) Unless a Payment Default has occurred and continues, on each Distribution Date the Trustee shall apply amounts in the various Accounts in the following order of priority:

(i) from the Capitalized Interest Subaccount, the Senior Debt Service Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, and the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, in that order, to pay interest at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds which are Senior Bonds, interest at the Applicable Periodic Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds and all Parity Swap Payments due on such Distribution Date;

(ii) from the Senior Debt Service Account and the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, in that order, to pay, in the following order, the Serial Bond maturities, if any, Sinking Fund Installments and Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond maturities) (subject to the Trust Indenture) for Senior Bonds first, for such Senior Bonds unpaid from prior Distribution Dates and second, for such Senior Bonds due on or scheduled for such Distribution Date, provided (A) that the amount of such Sinking Fund Installment shall first have been adjusted as described in the Trust Indenture, (B) the Trustee shall not pay a Sinking Fund Installment or a Term Bond maturity (including Turbo Term Bond maturities) pursuant to the Trust Indenture unless the Senior Debt Service Account will contain, after giving effect to such payment, sufficient funds to pay interest due on the next succeeding Distribution Date, such interest to be calculated at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds and at the Periodic Interest Amount for the current Period Interest Accrual Period and then at the Assumed Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Bonds through the next succeeding Distribution Date, and (C) all Senior Bonds shall be paid in accordance with clause (a) of the Payment Priorities;

(iii) from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account to pay in the following order, the Serial Bond maturities, if any, and Term Bond maturities (including Turbo Term Bond Maturities) for Senior Bonds due on or scheduled for such Distribution Date or unpaid from prior Distribution Dates (subject to the Trust Indenture), and then to reimburse the provider of any Eligible Investment referred to in (i) of the definition of "Eligible Investment" for any payment

under or draw on such investment for a purpose for which the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account is otherwise available, provided (A) that the amount of such Turbo Term Bond Maturities shall first have been adjusted as described in the Trust Indenture and (B) the Trustee shall not pay a Serial Bond maturity or Term Bond maturity (including a Turbo Term Bond Maturity) pursuant to the Trust Indenture unless the Senior Debt Service Account and the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in the aggregate will, after giving effect to such payment, contain sufficient funds to pay interest due on the next succeeding Distribution Date, such interest to be calculated at the stated rate on Outstanding Fixed Rate Bonds and at the Periodic Interest Amount for the current Period Interest Accrual Period and then at the Assumed Rate on Outstanding Indexed Floating Rate Senior Bonds through the next succeeding Distribution Date, and (C) all Senior Bonds shall be paid in accordance with clause (a) of the Payment Priorities;

(iv) from the Senior Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Senior Bonds which are Turbo Term Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to and in accordance with the Trust Indenture (see “Redemption of the Bonds” below); provided that all Senior Bonds shall be redeemed in accordance with clause (a) of the Payment Priorities;

(v) from the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, but only as directed in an Officer’s Certificate delivered by the Authority and accompanied by Rating Confirmation, to redeem Turbo Term Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to and in accordance with the Trust Indenture (see “Redemption of the Bonds” below), provided that any redemptions shall redeem Bonds in accordance with the Payment Priorities;

(vi) from the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem First Subordinate Bonds on such Distribution Date or a special redemption date established pursuant to and in accordance with the Trust Indenture (see “Redemption of the Bonds” below);

(vii) from the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Second Subordinate Bonds on such Distribution Date (or a special redemption date established pursuant to the Trust Indenture) in accordance with the Trust Indenture (see “Redemption of the Bonds” below); and

(viii) from the Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, to redeem Fully Subordinate Bonds as provided in the applicable Series Supplement.

(d) Upon the occurrence of any Payment Default and continuing on each succeeding Distribution Date commencing with the Distribution Date following a Payment Default:

(i) until the Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, the Trustee shall apply all funds in the Senior Debt Service Account, the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the Senior Turbo Redemption Account to pay Pro Rata, first, the accrued interest on the Current Interest Bonds which are Senior Bonds (including Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds on and after the Conversion Date) and all Parity Swap Payments (including, in each case, interest at the stated rate or the Applicable Periodic Rate, as the case may be, on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible) and, second, to pay and prepay the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding;

(ii) until the First Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, the Trustee shall apply all funds in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account (but only if no Senior Bonds are Outstanding) to pay and prepay, Pro Rata, the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all First Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;

(iii) until the Second Subordinate Bonds are no longer Outstanding, the Trustee shall apply all funds in the Partial Lump Sum Payment Account and the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account (but only if no Senior Bonds or First Subordinate Bonds are Outstanding) to pay and prepay, Pro Rata, the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all Second Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;

(iv) the application of funds with respect to Fully Subordinate Bonds shall be in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement; and

(v) notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Trust Indenture, the value of any Capital Appreciation Bonds shall continue to accrete at the Default Rate (including accretion on any unpaid Accreted Value), to the extent legally permissible, after the Maturity Date for such Bonds if not Fully Paid on the Maturity Date.

(e) Upon the receipt of a sum that has been identified by an Officer's Certificate as a Total Lump Sum Payment, the Trustee shall, after making provision for the amounts required to be deposited pursuant to the Trust Indenture (see "Application of Collections" above) and giving the notices required by the Trust Indenture, use all remaining proceeds of such Total Lump Sum Payments to make the following payments and prepayments, each Pro Rata, in the following order of priority:

(i) pay the accrued interest on the Current Interest Senior Bonds (including Convertible Capital Appreciation Senior Bonds on and after the Conversion Date) which are Senior Bonds (including interest at the stated rate or the Applicable Periodic Rate, as the case may be, on any unpaid interest, to the extent legally permissible);

(ii) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation on all Senior Bonds then Outstanding;

(iii) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all First Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding;

(iv) pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest, if any, on all Second Subordinate Bonds then Outstanding; and

(v) pay and prepay Fully Subordinate Bonds in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Series Supplement.

(vi) After making all deposits and payments set forth above, and provided that there are no Outstanding Bonds and no obligations to make payments under any Ancillary Facility, the Trustee shall deliver any amounts remaining from such Total Lump Sum Payment to the holder of the Residual Certificate.

(f) Funds in the Operating Account shall be applied by the Authority or by the Trustee at the request of the Authority at any time, in accordance with directions in an Officer's Certificate pursuant to the Trust Indenture, to pay Operating Expenses, Tax Obligations and Priority Payments.

(g) On or prior to any Deposit Date, the Authority may by an Officer's Certificate treat anticipated receipts on an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement as offsets to interest or Bond Obligation if the counterparty is limited to entities (i) the debt securities of which are rated at least "A1" by Moody's and in one of the three highest long-term debt rating categories by S&P and Fitch (if rated by Fitch) or (ii) the obligations of which under the Interest Rate Exchange Agreement are either so rated or guaranteed or insured by an entity the debt securities or insurance policies of which are so rated or (iii) the debt securities of which are rated in the three highest long-term debt rating category by Moody's, S&P and Fitch (if rated by Fitch) or whose obligations are guaranteed or insured by an entity so rated, in either case the obligations of which under the contract are continuously and fully secured by Eligible Investments meeting criteria provided by the Rating Agencies to the Authority and then in effect.

(h) The Authority may determine at any time to (i) deposit Cash Equivalents in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account upon issuance of a Series of Bonds, or (ii) substitute Cash Equivalents for amounts on deposit in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, any such substitution to be made with a Rating Confirmation and, if there are Tax-Exempt Bonds Outstanding, an opinion of Counsel to the effect that such action shall not impair the exemption from federal income tax of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds, if any, in which event the Trustee shall release to the Authority, free and clear of the lien of the Trust Indenture, the cash amounts and investments replaced by the Cash Equivalents.

(i) The transfer and payments to be made shall be appropriately adjusted by Series Supplement or Officer's Certificate of the Authority delivered to the Trustee to reflect the date of issue of Bonds, any accrued or capitalized interest deposited in the Bond Service Fund, actual rates of interest, any amount needed or held in the Accounts for Senior Debt Service, and any purchase or redemption of Bonds, so that there will be available on each Distribution Date the amount necessary to pay Senior Debt Service and so that accrued or capitalized interest will be applied to the installments of interest to which it is applicable.

(j) Notwithstanding anything in the Trust Indenture to the contrary, moneys in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account shall (i) prior to a Payment Default, be available at the times, in the amounts, and in the manner as described under this caption "Application of Collections", to pay principal of and interest on Senior Bonds which are Current Interest Bonds and (ii) after a Payment Default, be available at the times, in the amounts and in the manner described under this caption "Application of Collections", to pay and prepay the Bond Obligation and interest on all Senior Bonds, including Capital Appreciation Bonds and Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds.

(k) After making all deposits and payments set forth under this caption "Application of Collections," and provided that there are no Outstanding Bonds and no obligations to make payments under any Ancillary Facility or incurred but unpaid Operating Expenses, the Trustee

shall deliver any amounts remaining in any Pledged Account to the registered owner of the Residual Certificate upon presentation of the Residual Certificate to the Trustee.

*Bond Service Fund.* Money shall be deposited in the Bond Service Fund from the Collection Account as provided in the Trust Indenture. The money in the Bond Service Fund shall be held in trust and, except as otherwise provided in the Trust Indenture, shall be applied solely to the payment of Senior Debt Service on Senior Bonds and Turbo Redemptions on Bonds at the times and in the priority specified in the Trust Indenture. The Bond Service Fund includes the Capitalized Interest Subaccount, Senior Debt Service Account, Partial Lump Sum Payment Account, Senior Liquidity Reserve Account, Senior Turbo Redemption Account, First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, and Fully Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account, and such other Accounts as may be established in the Bond Service Fund by Series Supplement or Supplemental Indenture.

*Ancillary Facilities, Including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements.* The Authority may enter into, amend or terminate, as it determines to be necessary or appropriate, Ancillary Facilities, including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements, and may by Series Supplement provide for the payment of amounts due thereunder as Junior Payments or, to the extent permitted under the Trust Indenture, as Parity Swap Payments or Priority Payments.

*Redemption of the Bonds.* When Bonds are called for redemption, the accrued interest thereon shall be due on the date fixed for redemption. With respect to any optional redemptions pursuant to the Trust Indenture, the Authority shall deposit with the Trustee on or prior to the date fixed for redemption a sufficient sum to pay the Bond Obligation, redemption premium, if any, and accrued interest on, the Bonds to be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption. If notice of redemption has been duly given as provided in the Trust Indenture and money for the payment of the redemption price of the Bonds called for redemption is held by the Trustee, then on the redemption date designated in such notice, Bonds so called for redemption shall become due and payable, and from and after the date so designated, interest on such Bonds shall cease to accrue or such Bond shall cease to accrete in value, as applicable, and the Holder of such Bonds shall have no rights in respect thereof except to receive payment of the redemption price thereof.

Except as otherwise provided in a Series Supplement, when a Bond is to be redeemed prior to its stated maturity date, the Trustee shall give notice to the Holder thereof and each Rating Agency, including information required by the Trust Indenture. Failure by a particular Holder to receive notice, or any defect in the notice to such Holder, shall not affect the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond. Any notice of redemption given pursuant to the Trust Indenture may be rescinded by Written Notice to the Trustee by the Authority no later than 5 days prior to the date specified for redemption if any conditions to redemption stated in the redemption notice shall not have been satisfied.

The Turbo Term Bonds shall be redeemed in whole or in part prior to their stated maturity, to the extent funds are available, on any Distribution Date, following notice of such redemption in accordance with the Trust Indenture, in accordance with the schedule of Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities set forth in the applicable Series Supplement. If less than all of the Turbo Term Bonds of a particular Series, interest rate (or “original issue yield” for Capital Appreciation Bonds) and Maturity Date are to be redeemed, the

Holders shall be paid as described in the penultimate two paragraphs under this caption “Redemption of the Bonds”. The Trustee may specify a special redemption date for the purposes of redeeming Turbo Term Bonds if certain amounts are available therefor as specified under the caption “Application of Collections” above and if the Trustee is instructed to do so by the Authority in an Officer’s Certificate.

The Turbo Term Bonds which are Senior Bonds shall be redeemed, selected in the manner described in the Trust Indenture, in whole or in part prior to their Maturity Dates from amounts on deposit in the Senior Turbo Redemption Account on any Distribution Date (or on a special redemption date described above), following notice of such redemption, at the principal amount or Accreted Value thereof, together with accrued interest, without premium. The Turbo Term Bonds which are First Subordinate Bonds shall be redeemed, selected in the manner described in the Trust Indenture, in whole or in part prior to their Maturity Date from amounts on deposit in the First Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account on any Distribution Date (or on a special redemption date described above), following notice of such redemption at the principal amount or Accreted Value thereof, together with accrued interest, without premium. The Turbo Term Bonds which are Second Subordinate Bonds shall be redeemed, selected in the manner described in the Trust Indenture, in whole or in part prior to their Maturity Date from amounts on deposit in the Second Subordinate Turbo Redemption Account on any Distribution Date (or on a special redemption date described above), following notice of such redemption at the principal amount or Accreted Value thereof, together with accrued interest, without premium. If less than all of the Turbo Term Bonds of a particular Series, interest rate (or “original issue yield” for Capital Appreciation Bonds) and Maturity Date are to be redeemed, the Holders of such Turbo Term Bonds shall be paid in accordance with provisions of the Trust Indenture.

For all purposes of the Trust Indenture, including without limitation calculating the deposits described under the caption “Application of Collections” above, and determining whether an Event of Default has occurred as described under the caption “Events of Default” below, all redemptions made from Collections shall be paid and credited as follows:

(i) the amount of any Turbo Redemption shall be paid, and credited against both Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities, in accordance with the Payment Priorities, within a priority in direct chronological order, and as described in clause (iii) below, unless otherwise set forth in the applicable Series Supplement;

(ii) the amount of any Sinking Fund Installments shall be paid, and credited against Turbo Term Bond Maturities, in accordance with the Payment Priorities, within a priority in direct chronological order, and as described in clause (iii) below, unless otherwise set forth in the applicable Series Supplement; and

(iii) with respect to Bonds within the same Payment Priority for which Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities are scheduled to be paid on the same date, the amount of any Turbo Redemption shall be paid, and credited against such Sinking Fund Installments and/or Turbo Term Bond Maturities, and the amount of any Sinking Fund Installments shall be paid, and credited against such Turbo Term Bond Maturities, on a Pro Rata basis from among all such Sinking Fund Installments and Turbo Term Bond Maturities scheduled to be paid on such date, regardless of Maturity Date.

If less than all of the Taxable Bonds of any specific maturity are to be redeemed, the Holders of the Bonds of that maturity shall be paid on a Pro Rata basis.

If less than all of the Tax-Exempt Bonds of a specific Series, interest (“original issue yield” for Capital Appreciation Bonds) and Maturity Date are to be redeemed, the Holders of the Tax-Exempt Bonds of such Maturity Date to be redeemed shall be selected in accordance with DTC’s standard procedures, or if such Bonds are not then held by DTC or another Securities Depository, on such basis as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate, including by lot, and the Trustee may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to any Authorized Denominations) of the principal of Bonds of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination.

*Mandatory Clean-Up Calls.* The Outstanding Senior Bonds are subject to mandatory redemption in whole at redemption price equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Bond Obligation being redeemed plus interest accrued, if any, to the redemption date, at any time, to the extent of the transfer to the Senior Turbo Redemption Account of amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account as described under the caption “Application of Collections” above. The Bonds are subject to mandatory redemption in whole at a redemption price equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Bond Obligation being redeemed plus interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption at any time that the available amounts on deposit in the Pledged Accounts equal or exceed the Bond Obligation, and accrued interest on all Outstanding Bonds and Parity Swap Payments.

*Investments.* Pending its use under the Trust Indenture, money in the Pledged Accounts held by the Trustee shall be invested by the Trustee in Eligible Investments pursuant to written direction of the Authority if there is not then an Event of Default actually known to an Authorized Officer of the Trustee. The Trustee may, if no such written direction is provided, invest money in the Pledged Accounts in investments identified in paragraph (h) of the definition of “Eligible Investments.” Specifically, Eligible Investments shall mature or be redeemable at the option of the Trustee on or before the Business Day preceding each next succeeding Distribution Date, except to the extent that other Eligible Investments timely mature or are so redeemable in an amount sufficient to make payments under paragraphs (b)(i) through (b)(ix) under the caption “Application of Collections” on the next succeeding Distribution Date. Investments shall be held by the Trustee in the respective Pledged Accounts and shall be sold or redeemed to the extent necessary to make payments or transfers from each Pledged Account. The Trustee shall not be liable for any losses on investments made in accordance with the provisions summarized in this paragraph unless such losses were caused by the Trustee's negligence, willful misconduct, bad faith or failure to follow instructions of the Authority properly given.

In computing the amount in a Pledged Account, the value of Eligible Investments shall be determined by the Trustee at each Distribution Date or as otherwise requested by the Authority and shall be calculated as follows:

- (i) As to investments the bid and asked prices of which are published on a regular basis in The Wall Street Journal (or, if not there, then in The New York Times):

the average of the bid and asked prices for such investments so published on or most recently prior to such time of determination;

(ii) As to investments the bid and asked prices of which are not published on a regular basis in The Wall Street Journal or The New York Times: the average bid price at such time of determination for such investments by any two nationally recognized government securities dealers (selected by the Trustee in its absolute discretion) at the time making a market in such investments or the bid price published by a nationally recognized pricing as to investments the bid and asked prices of which are not published on a service;

(iii) As to investments described in paragraphs (b), (d), (e), or (g) of the definition of “Eligible Investments”: the face amount thereof, plus accrued interest; and

(iv) As to any investment not specified above: the value thereof established by prior agreement between the Authority and the Trustee (with written notice to each Rating Agency of such agreement).

No later than May 15 of each year commencing May 15, 2008, the Trustee shall value the money and investments in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account according to the methods set forth in the Trust Indenture and shall promptly notify the Authority of such valuation. Any amounts in the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account in excess of the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement shall be applied as described under the caption “Application of Collections” above. If, after receipt of any Pledged Tobacco Receipts, the Trustee determines that a withdrawal from the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account will be required on a Distribution Date in any year, the Trustee shall as soon as practicable notify the provider under any Ancillary Facility or Eligible Investment relating to the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account of the estimated amount of the withdrawal and the projected date of the withdrawal. In no event shall such notice be given later than ten (10) Business Days prior to the applicable Distribution Date. In the event no Event of Default has occurred and an investment meeting the requirements of (i) of the definition of Eligible Investments is deposited into the Senior Liquidity Reserve Account such that the cash and the value of such Eligible Investment exceed the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement, such excess cash shall be applied as described under the caption “Application of Collections” above.

The Trustee may hold undivided interests in Eligible Investments for more than one Fund or Account (for which they are eligible) and may make interfund transfers in kind.

In respect of Defeasance Collateral held for Defeased Bonds, provisions of the Trust Indenture summarized under the caption “Investments” shall be effective only to the extent they are consistent with other applicable provisions of the Trust Indenture or any separate escrow agreement.

*Contract; Obligations to Bondholders or other Beneficiaries.* In consideration of the purchase of any or all of the Bonds and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, execution of Ancillary Facilities, including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements, by those who shall hold the same from time to time, the provisions of the Trust Indenture shall be a part of the contract of the



Authority with Bondholders and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, other Beneficiaries. The pledge of the Collateral made in the Trust Indenture and the covenant therein set forth to be performed by the Authority shall be for the equal benefit, protection and security of the Bondholders as such rights are described in the Trust Indenture or, to the extent permitted by applicable law, other Beneficiaries, if any, of the same priority. All of the Bonds or payments on Ancillary Facilities, including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements, of the same priority, regardless of the time or times of their issuance or maturity, shall be of equal rank without preference, priority or distinction of any thereof over any other except as expressly provided pursuant to the Trust Indenture.

The Authority covenants to pay when due all sums payable on the Bonds, but only from the Collections and other moneys constituting Collateral designated in the Trust Indenture, subject only to (i) the Trust Indenture, and (ii) to the extent permitted by the Trust Indenture, (x) agreements with Holders of Bonds pledging particular collateral for the payment thereof and (y) the rights of Beneficiaries under Ancillary Facilities, including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements. The obligation of the Authority to pay the Bond Obligation, interest and redemption premium, if any, to the Holders of Bonds from the Collections and other moneys constituting Collateral, shall be absolute and unconditional, shall be binding and enforceable in all circumstances whatsoever, and shall not be subject to setoff, recoupment or counterclaim.

The Authority represents that it is duly authorized pursuant to the Act to create and issue the Bonds, to enter into the Trust Indenture and to pledge the Collateral as security in accordance with the Act. The Collateral so pledged is and will be free and clear of any pledge, lien, security interest, charge or encumbrance thereon or with respect thereto prior to, or of equal rank with, the pledge created by the Trust Indenture, and all action legally required on the part of the Authority to that end has been duly and validly taken. The Bonds and the provisions of the Trust Indenture are and will be the valid and binding obligations of the Authority in accordance with their terms.

*Tax Covenants.* The Authority shall, at or prior to the issuance thereof, execute the Tax Certificate, and at all times do and perform all acts and things permitted by law and necessary or desirable to assure that interest paid by the Authority on Tax-Exempt Bonds shall be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes pursuant to § 103(a) of the Code; and no funds of the Authority shall at any time be used directly or indirectly to acquire securities, obligations or other investment property the acquisition or holding of which would cause any Tax-Exempt Bond to be an arbitrage bond as defined in the Code, including but not limited to actions relating to the rebate of arbitrage earnings and the expenditure and investment of proceeds and moneys deemed to be proceeds of Tax-Exempt Bonds, as more fully set forth in the Tax Certificate. If and to the extent required by the Code, the Authority shall periodically, at such times as may be required to comply with the Code, pay as an Operating Expense the amount, if any, required by the Code to be rebated or paid as a related penalty. Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Trust Indenture, the tax covenant requirements shall survive the defeasance or other payment of the Tax-Exempt Bonds.

*Accounts and Reports.* Pursuant to the Trust Indenture the Authority has covenanted to:

(a) cause to be kept books of account in which complete and accurate entries shall be made of its transactions relating to all Funds and Accounts under the Trust Indenture, which books shall, at all reasonable times and at the expense of the Authority, be subject to the inspection of the Trustee and the Holders of an aggregate of not less than 25% in Aggregate Bond Obligation then Outstanding or their representatives duly authorized in writing;

(b) annually, within 180 days after the close of the Fiscal Year ending June 30, 2008 and of each Fiscal Year thereafter, deliver to the Trustee and each Rating Agency, a copy of its financial statements for such Fiscal Year, as audited by State auditors, if so provided by law, or otherwise, by an independent certified public accountant or accountants;

(c) keep in effect at all times by Officer's Certificate an accurate and current schedule of all debt service to be payable during the life of then Outstanding Bonds, Ancillary Facilities, including Interest Rate Exchange Agreements; certifying for the purpose such estimates as may be necessary; and

(d) for each Distribution Date, direct the Trustee to provide to each Rating Agency a written statement indicating:

(i) the Outstanding Bonds of each Series;

(ii) the amount of Bond Obligation to be paid to the Holders of the Bonds of each Series on such Distribution Date;

(iii) the amount of interest to be paid to the Holders of the Bonds of each Series on such Distribution Date;

(iv) the Turbo Redemptions to be made for each Series as of that Distribution Date;

(v) the amount on deposit in each Fund and Account as of that Distribution Date;

(vi) the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement as of that Distribution Date;

(vii) whether or not a Lump Sum Payment, Partial Lump Sum Payment or Total Lump Sum Payment has been received; and

(viii) the amount of Priority Payments, Parity Swap Payments and Junior Payments paid or to be paid to Beneficiaries under each Ancillary Facility, including an Interest Rate Exchange Agreement, on such Distribution Date.

(ix) The Authority is responsible for providing to the Trustee the information set forth above in paragraph (d)(vii) under this caption “Accounts and Reports”. The Trustee's responsibility for delivering the information described in (d)(vii) is limited to the extent such information is provided by the Authority.

*Ratings.* Unless otherwise specified by Series Supplement, the Authority shall pay such reasonable fees and provide such available information as may be necessary to obtain and keep in effect on each Series of Bonds the number of ratings from nationally recognized rating organizations, if any, originally assigned to each such Series.

*Affirmative Covenants.* The Authority will make the following affirmative covenants under the Trust Indenture:

Protection of Collateral. The Authority shall from time to time execute and deliver all documents and instruments, and will take such other action, as is necessary or advisable to: (i) maintain or preserve the lien and pledge and assignment (and the priority thereof) of the Trust Indenture; (ii) perfect, publish notice of or protect the validity of any pledge and assignment made or to be made by the Trust Indenture; (iii) preserve and defend title to the Collateral pledged under the Trust Indenture and the rights of the Trustee and the Bondholders in such Collateral against the claims of all persons and parties, including the challenge by any party to the validity or enforceability of the Trust Indenture or the Act; (iv) enforce the 2007 Sale Agreement; (v) pay any and all taxes lawfully levied or assessed upon all or any part of the Collateral pledged under the Trust Indenture; or (vi) carry out more effectively the purposes of the Trust Indenture.

Performance of Obligations. The Authority (i) shall diligently pursue any and all actions to enforce its rights under each instrument or agreement included in the Collateral pledged under the Trust Indenture and (ii) shall not take any action and will use its best efforts not to permit any action to be taken by others that would release the State from any of its covenants or obligations under the 2007 Sale Agreement, or the Authority from any of its obligations under the Trust Indenture or the 2007 Sale Agreement, or that would result in the amendment, hypothecation, subordination, termination or discharge of, or impair the validity or effectiveness of, the Trust Indenture or the 2007 Sale Agreement, except, in each case, as expressly provided in the Act, the Trust Indenture or the 2007 Sale Agreement.

Notice of Events of Default. The Authority will give the Trustee and the Rating Agencies prompt written notice of each Default or Event of Default under the Trust Indenture.

*Negative Covenants.* The Authority will make the following negative covenants under the Trust Indenture:

Maintenance of Existence. The Authority shall not take any action that shall impair its existence and rights as a body, both corporate and politic, constituting a public body, agency, and instrumentality of the State and performing essential functions of the State.

Sale of Assets. Except as expressly permitted by the Trust Indenture, the Authority shall not sell, transfer, exchange or otherwise dispose of any of its Collateral.

No Setoff. The Authority shall not claim any credit on, or make any deduction from the Principal or premium, if any, or interest due in respect of, the Bonds or assert any claim against any present or former Bondholder by reason of the payment of taxes levied or assessed upon any part of the Collateral.

Liquidation. The Authority shall not take any action with the intention of terminating its existence or dissolving or liquidating in whole or in part.

Limitation of Liens. The Authority shall not (i) permit the validity or effectiveness of the Trust Indenture or the 2007 Sale Agreement to be impaired, or permit the lien of the Trust Indenture to be amended, hypothecated, subordinated, terminated or discharged, or permit the Authority to be released from any covenants or obligations with respect to the Bonds under the Trust Indenture except as may be expressly permitted thereby, (ii) except as otherwise permitted under the Trust Indenture, permit, on a parity basis, any lien, charge, excise, claim, security interest, mortgage or other encumbrance (other than the lien of the Trust Indenture) to be created on or extend to or otherwise arise upon or burden the Collateral or any part thereof or any interest therein or the proceeds thereof or (iii) permit the lien of the Trust Indenture not to constitute a valid pledge in the Collateral.

Limitations on Consolidation, Merger, Sale of Assets, Etc. Except as otherwise provided in the Trust Indenture, the Authority shall not affirmatively take action to consolidate or merge with or into any other person, or be succeeded by another entity, unless:

(i) the person surviving such consolidation or merger or succession (if other than the Authority) is organized or established and existing under the laws of the United States, the State or any state and expressly assumes the due and punctual payment of the Bond Obligation of and premium, if any, and interest on all Bonds and the performance or observance of every agreement and covenant of the Authority in the Trust Indenture;

(ii) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default has occurred and is continuing under the Trust Indenture;

(iii) the Authority has received a Rating Confirmation;

(iv) the Authority has received and delivered to the Trustee an opinion of Counsel to the effect that such transaction will not have material adverse tax consequence to the Authority and will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on any Tax Exempt Bond from gross income for federal income tax purposes;

(v) any action as is necessary to maintain the lien and pledge and assignment by the Trust Indenture has been taken; and

(vi) the Authority has delivered to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate and an opinion of Counsel to the effect that such transaction complies with the Trust Indenture and that all conditions precedent to such transaction have been complied with.

Restricted Payments. The Authority shall not direct the Trustee to make payments to or distributions from the Collection Account except in accordance with the Trust Indenture.

*Amendment of Agreement.* In the Trust Indenture, the Authority covenants and agrees that it will not amend the 2007 Sale Agreement except as described in this paragraph. The Authority may amend the 2007 Sale Agreement without prior notice to or the consent of the Trustee or any of the Bondholders: (a) to amend Section 6.02 of the 2007 Sale Agreement; (b) to cure any ambiguity; (c) to correct or supplement any provisions in the 2007 Sale Agreement; (d) to correct or amplify the description of the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts; (e) to add additional covenants for the benefit of the Authority, the Trustee, the State or the Bondholders; or (f) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions in the 2007 Sale Agreement that shall not, as evidenced by a Rating Confirmation delivered to the Trustee, adversely affect in any material respect the Bondholders. The Authority shall provide a copy of any such amendment to the Trustee.

Except as otherwise provided in the preceding paragraph, the 2007 Sale Agreement may also be amended from time to time by the Authority with the written consent of a Majority in Interest of the Holders of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of Senior Bonds, or of First Subordinate Bonds when there are no Senior Bonds Outstanding, or of Second Subordinate Bonds when there are no Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds Outstanding.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of Holders to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment or consent, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

Without the prior written consent of the Trustee, no amendment, supplement or other modification of the 2007 Sale Agreement shall be entered into or be effective if such amendment, supplement or modification affects the Trustee's, as applicable, own rights, duties or immunities under the 2007 Sale Agreement or otherwise.

*Limitation of Rights and Remedies.* All of the provisions and sections of Article VII of the Trust Indenture are subject in all respects to the provisions of Section 1.03 of the Trust Indenture and Sections 3.02, 6.04, 6.08 and 6.10 of the 2007 Sale Agreement. Article VII recites certain representations, acknowledgments, consents, warranties, covenants and other obligations made by the State in the 2007 Sale Agreement with the Authority. Nothing in Article VII of the Trust Indenture is intended or shall be construed to make the State a party to the Trust Indenture or to otherwise create any contractual promise, liability or obligation of the State under the Trust Indenture; provided, however, that this shall not preclude the Trustee from pursuing certain rights and remedies of the Authority arising under the 2007 Sale Agreement against the State that have been assigned by the Authority to the Trustee under the Trust Indenture, subject to the limitations and provisions of the 2007 Sale Agreement and the Trust Indenture.

*Acknowledgment by the State in the 2007 Sale Agreement.* The 2007 Sale Agreement provides that the State acknowledges and consents to any assignment and pledge by the Authority to the Trustee pursuant to the Trust Indenture for the benefit of the Bondholders and Benefited Parties of any or all right, title and interest of the Authority in, to and under the Pledged Tobacco Receipts or the assignment of any or all of the Authority's rights and obligations under the 2007 Sale Agreement to the Trustee.

*Pledges; Non-Impairment Covenants.* (a) Under the 2007 Sale Agreement, the State has covenanted and agreed with the Authority that the Authority can include in the Trust Indenture the pledges made by the State that the State will: (i) maintain statutory authority for, and cause to be collected and paid directly to the Authority or its assignee, the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, (ii) enforce the rights of the Authority to receive the 2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts, (iii) not materially impair the rights of the Authority to fulfill the terms of its agreements with the Holders of Outstanding Bonds and Benefited Parties under the Trust Indenture, (iv) not materially impair the rights and remedies of the Holders of Outstanding Bonds and Benefited Parties or materially impair the security for those Outstanding Bonds and Benefited Parties, and (v) enforce the MSA and the Consent Decree and diligently enforce the Qualifying Statute to effectuate the collection of the Pledged Tobacco Receipts, (vi) cause the Attorney General of the State to irrevocably instruct the escrow agent under the MSA to transfer all Pledged Tobacco Receipts directly to the Trustee as assignee of the Authority, and (vii) not amend the MSA, or amend or repeal the Qualifying Statute, in any manner that would materially impair the rights of the Beneficiaries, until the Bonds, together with the interest thereon, all Ancillary Facilities, and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of Bondholders, are fully paid and discharged pursuant to the terms of the Trust Indenture. As stated in Section 183.51 of the Ohio Revised Code, (a) nothing in said subsection or the bond proceedings shall preclude or limit, or be construed to preclude or limit, the State from regulating the sale of cigarettes or other tobacco products, or from defending or prosecuting cases or other actions relating to the sale or use of cigarettes or other tobacco products, and (b) except as otherwise may be agreed in writing by the State Attorney General, nothing in said subsection or the bond proceedings shall modify or limit, or be construed to modify or limit, the responsibility, power, judgment, and discretion of the State Attorney General to protect and discharge the duties, rights and obligations of the State under the MSA, the Consent Decree, or the Qualifying Statute.

Pursuant to the Act, the Authority hereby covenants that it shall not be authorized to and shall not file a voluntary petition under the Federal Bankruptcy Code or voluntarily commence any similar bankruptcy proceeding under State law including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors, and neither any public officer or any organization, entity, or other person shall authorize the Authority to be or become a debtor under the Federal Bankruptcy Code or take any of those actions under the Federal Bankruptcy Code. Pursuant to the Act, the State covenants, and pursuant to the Act authorizes the Authority to include such covenant in the Trust Indenture, not to permit the Authority, or permit any public officer or organization, entity, or other person to authorize the Authority, prior to the date which is one year and one day after which the Authority no longer has any Bonds Outstanding, (1) to file a voluntary petition under the Federal Bankruptcy Code, or (2) to voluntarily commence any similar bankruptcy proceeding under state law including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors.

*Resignation or Removal of the Trustee.* The Trustee may resign at any time on not less than 30 days' written notice to the Authority, the Holders and each of the Rating Agencies then rating the Bonds. The Trustee will promptly certify to the Authority that it has sent written notice to all Holders and such certificate will be conclusive evidence that such notice was mailed as required by the Trust Indenture. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Authority shall

take action to appoint a successor and, upon the acceptance by the successor of such appointment, release the resigning Trustee from its obligations under the Trust Indenture by written instrument, a copy of which instrument shall be delivered to each of the Holders, the resigning Trustee and the successor Trustee. The Trustee may be removed by the Authority or by a Majority in Interest of Outstanding Senior Bonds, upon written notice to the Trustee, if rated below investment grade by Moody's and each successor Trustee will have an investment grade rating from Moody's. The Trustee may also be removed by written notice from the Authority if no Default is then continuing or from a Majority in Interest of the Outstanding Senior Bonds to the Trustee and the Authority. No such resignation or removal shall take effect until a successor has been appointed and has accepted the duties of Trustee.

*Successor Fiduciaries.* Any corporation or association which succeeds to the municipal corporate trust business of a Fiduciary as a whole or substantially as a whole, whether by sale, merger, consolidation or otherwise, shall thereby become vested with all the property, rights, powers and duties thereof under the Trust Indenture, without any further act or conveyance and without the execution or filing of any paper with any party thereto except where an instrument of transfer or assignment is required by law to effect such succession, anything in the Trust Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding.

In case a Fiduciary resigns or is removed or becomes incapable of acting, or becomes bankrupt or insolvent, or if a receiver, liquidator or conservator of a Fiduciary or of its property is appointed, or if a public officer takes charge or control of a Fiduciary, or of its property or affairs, then such Fiduciary shall with due care terminate its activities under the Trust Indenture and a successor may, or in the case of the Trustee shall, be appointed by the Authority. The Authority shall notify the Holders and the Rating Agencies of the appointment of a successor Trustee in writing within 20 days from the appointment. The Authority will promptly certify to the successor Trustee that it has given such notice to all Holders and such certificate will be conclusive evidence that such notice was given as required by the Trust Indenture. If no appointment of a successor Trustee is made within 45 days after the giving of written notice in accordance with the provisions of the Trust Indenture summarized under the caption "Resignation or Removal of the Trustee" or after the occurrence of any other event requiring or authorizing such appointment, the outgoing Trustee or any Holder may apply to any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of such a successor, and such court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as such court may deem proper, appoint such successor. Any successor Trustee appointed under the Trust Indenture shall be a trust company or a bank having the powers of a trust company, located in the State, having a capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000. Any such successor Trustee shall notify the Authority of its acceptance of the appointment and, upon giving such notice, shall become Trustee, vested with all the property, rights, powers and duties of the Trustee under the Trust Indenture, without any further act or conveyance. Such successor Trustee shall execute, deliver, record and file such instruments as are required to confirm or perfect its succession under the Trust Indenture and any predecessor Trustee shall from time to time execute, deliver, record and file such instruments as the incumbent Trustee may reasonably require to confirm or perfect any succession under the Trust Indenture.

*Fiduciaries for Bonds Other Than Senior Bonds.* The Authority may by Series Supplement provide for the appointment of a Fiduciary (which may be the Trustee) to represent

the Holders of Bonds other than Senior Bonds, having powers and duties not inconsistent with the Trust Indenture.

*Reports by Trustee to Holders.* The Trustee, on or prior to each Distribution Date for a Series of Bonds, shall deliver to the Holders of such Bonds and to each Rating Agency a statement prepared by the Trustee setting forth as of such Distribution Date or for the period since the preceding Distribution Date, as applicable, the following information and such other information as maybe specified in the Series Supplement relating to such Bonds:

- (1) the Bond Obligation paid to Holders expressed in dollars per thousand;
- (2) the interest paid to Holders expressed in dollars per thousand;
- (3) the actual Turbo Redemptions paid on and prior to such Distribution Date versus the projected Turbo Redemptions;
- (4) the amount on deposit in each Fund and Account, including the face value of investments described in paragraphs (c), (e), (f) and (h) of the definition of “Eligible Investments”;
- (5) the Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement; and
- (6) whether or not a Lump Sum Payment, Partial Lump Sum Payment or Total Lump Sum Payment has been received.

*Action by Holders.* Any request, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by the Trust Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of Bonds may be contained in and evidenced by one or more writings of substantially the same tenor signed by the requisite number of Holders or their attorneys duly appointed in writing. Proof of the execution of any such instrument, or of an instrument appointing any such attorney, shall be sufficient for any purpose of the Trust Indenture (except as otherwise expressly provided in the Trust Indenture) if made in the following manner, but the Authority or the Trustee may nevertheless in its discretion require further or other proof in cases where it deems the same desirable. The fact and date of the execution by any Bondholder or his attorney of such instrument may be proved by the certificate or signature guarantee, which need not be acknowledged or verified, of an officer of a bank, trust company or securities dealer satisfactory to the Authority or to the Trustee; or of any notary public or other officer authorized to take acknowledgments of deeds to be recorded in the state in which he purports to act, that the person signing such request or other instrument acknowledged to him the execution thereof, or by an affidavit of a witness of such execution, duly sworn to before such notary public or other officer. The authority of the person or persons executing any such instrument on behalf of a corporate Holder may be established without further proof if such instrument is signed by a person purporting to be the president or a vice president of such corporation with a corporate seal affixed and attested by a person purporting to be its clerk or secretary or an assistant clerk or secretary. Any action of the owner of any Bond shall be irrevocable and bind all future record and beneficial owners thereof.



*Events of Default.*

“Event of Default” in the Trust Indenture means any one of the following:

(a) Principal of, premium or interest on any Senior Bond has not been paid, when due;

(b) failure to pay when due payments (other than Termination Payments) constituting Parity Swap Payments;

(c) failure to pay Sinking Fund Installments or Turbo Redemptions with respect to Senior Bonds when due in accordance with the Trust Indenture, but only if, and to the extent moneys are available therefor;

(d) the Authority fails to observe or perform any other provision of the Trust Indenture related to the Senior Bonds, which failure is not remedied within 60 days after written notice thereof is given to the Authority by the Trustee or to the Authority, the State and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of the Senior Bonds Outstanding, except as specified in paragraph (a) under this caption “Events of Default,” failure to make any Turbo Redemption because of insufficiency of Surplus Collections pursuant to Article V of the Trust Indenture shall not constitute a Default or an Event of Default. In the case of a default specified in this paragraph, if the default cannot be corrected within the said 60-day period, it shall not constitute an Event of Default if corrective action is instituted by the Authority within said 60-day period and diligently pursued until the default is corrected;

(e) bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement or insolvency proceedings, or other proceedings for relief under any bankruptcy or similar law or laws for the relief of debtors (including without limitation the appointment of a receiver or trustee or the making of a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors) are instituted by or against the Authority and, if instituted against the Authority, are not dismissed within 60 days after such institution;

(f) a material breach by the Authority of its covenant (i) not to file a voluntary petition under the Federal Bankruptcy Code, or (ii) to voluntarily commence any similar bankruptcy proceeding under state law including, without limitation, consenting to the appointment of a receiver or trustee or making a general or specific assignment for the benefit of creditors under the Trust Indenture, which breach is not remedied within 60 days after written notice thereof is given to the Authority and the State by the Trustee or to the Authority and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of the Senior Bonds Outstanding. In the case of a default specified in this paragraph, if the default cannot be corrected within the said 60-day period, it shall not constitute an Event of Default if corrective action is instituted by the State or the Authority within said 60-day period and diligently pursued until the default is corrected;

(g) the State fails to pay to the Authority or the Trustee any Pledged Tobacco Receipts received by it promptly in accordance with the 2007 Sale Agreement; or

(h) (i) the State fails to comply with its covenants contained in the Trust Indenture, if, in any and each such case, the effect thereof would be materially adverse to

the Authority's ability to receive the Pledged Tobacco Receipts (any such action by the State shall be conclusively deemed not material or adverse upon delivery to the Trustee of a Rating Confirmation); or

(ii) except as may be authorized and provided for as described under captions "Amendment of Agreement" above and "Supplements and Amendments to the 2007 Sale Agreement" below, the 2007 Sale Agreement is amended, superceded, suspended, revoked or otherwise altered by the Authority in a manner that would materially impair the rights of the Beneficiaries; and

(iii) the action constituting an "event of default" under paragraphs (i) or (ii) of paragraph(h) is not remedied within 60 days after Written Notice, specifying such default and requiring the same to be remedied, shall have been given to the Authority and the State by the Trustee or by the Holders of at least 25% of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of the Senior Bonds Outstanding. In the case of a default specified in paragraph(h), if the default cannot be corrected within the said 60-day period, it shall not constitute an Event of Default if corrective action is instituted by the State or the Authority within said 60-day period and diligently pursued until the default is corrected.

Notwithstanding anything in the Trust Indenture to the contrary, a Subordinate Payment Default is not an Event of Default, provided that in the event of a Subordinate Payment Default, Holders of First Subordinate Bonds, Second Subordinate Bonds, and Fully Subordinate Bonds shall have the remedies described under the caption "Extraordinary Payment" below.

Notwithstanding anything in the Trust Indenture to the contrary, the failure to pay a Sinking Fund Installment or Turbo Redemption on Series 2007 Bonds shall not constitute an Event of Default under the Trust Indenture, if such failure is due to the insufficiency of funds available therefor.

*Registered Holders.* Certain provisions applicable to DTC as Holder of immobilized Bonds shall not be construed in limitation of the rights of the Authority and each Fiduciary to rely upon the registration books in all circumstances and to treat the registered owners of Bonds as the owners thereof for all purposes not otherwise specifically provided for by law or in the Trust Indenture. Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Trust Indenture, any payment to the registered owner of a Bond shall satisfy the Authority's obligations thereon to the extent of such payment.

*Remedies.* Pursuant to the Trust Indenture, if an Event of Default occurs and is continuing the Trustee may, and upon written request of the Holders of at least 25% of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of Senior Bonds Outstanding shall, in its own name by action or proceeding in accordance with law:

(A) enforce all rights of the Holders and require the Authority to carry out its agreements with Holders or, to the extent permitted by law and subject to the terms, provisions and limitations in the 2007 Sale Agreement, require the State to perform its duties under the 2007 Sale Agreement;

- (B) sue upon such Bonds;
- (C) require the Authority to account as if it were the trustee on an express trust of such Holders;
- (D) enjoin any acts or things which may be unlawful or in violation of the rights of such Holders.

The Trustee shall, in addition to the other provisions of the Trust Indenture, have and possess all the powers necessary or appropriate for the exercise of any functions incident to the general representation of Holders in the enforcement and protection of their rights under the Trust Indenture.

*Extraordinary Payment.* Upon certain Events of Default, the Trustee shall give Written Notice thereof to the Authority. The Trustee shall give notice under the Trust Indenture when instructed to do so by the written direction of the Holders of at least 25% of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of Senior Bonds Outstanding. Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default, the Trustee shall proceed under the Trust Indenture for the benefit of the Holders in accordance with the written direction of a Majority in Interest of the Outstanding Senior Bonds. The Trustee shall not be required to take any remedial action (other than the giving of notice) unless reasonable indemnity is furnished for any expense or liability to be incurred therein. Upon receipt of Written Notice, direction, and indemnity, and after making such investigation, if any, as it deems appropriate to verify the occurrence of any Event of Default of which it is notified as aforesaid, the Trustee shall promptly pursue the remedies provided by the Trust Indenture or any such remedies (not contrary to any such direction) as it deems appropriate for the protection of the Holders of the Senior Bonds, and shall act for the protection of the Holders with the same promptness and prudence as would be expected of a prudent person in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

Upon the occurrence of a Payment Default, the Bonds and payments under Interest Rate Exchange Agreements shall be paid and prepaid on a Pro Rata basis as described under the caption "Application of Proceeds" above.

Only if the Senior Bonds are no longer Outstanding, in the event of a Subordinate Payment Default the Holders of First Subordinate Bonds, Second Subordinate Bonds, and Fully Subordinate Bonds may enforce the provisions of the Trust Indenture for their benefit by appropriate legal proceedings in accordance with clauses (b), (c) and (d) of the definition of the Payment Priorities and shall be paid and prepaid on a Pro Rata basis as described in the Trust Indenture.

*Subordinate Bond Remedies.*

(i) *First Subordinate Bonds.* The Principal, premium, if any, and interest on First Subordinate Bonds will be subordinated in right of payment to Accreted Value, Principal, premium, if any, and interest payments on the Senior Bonds. If any Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing, Holders of Senior Bonds will be entitled to receive payment thereof in full before the Holders of the First Subordinate Bonds are entitled to receive payment thereof; and any payment or distribution of assets otherwise

payable to Holders of the First Subordinate Bonds will be paid to Holders of Senior Bonds until all Senior Bonds have been Fully Paid, and the Holders of the First Subordinate Bonds will be subrogated to the rights of such Holders of Senior Bonds to receive payments or distributions of assets with respect thereto.

(ii) *Second Subordinate Bonds.* The Principal, premium, if any, and interest on Second Subordinate Bonds will be subordinated in right of payment to Accreted Value, Principal, premium, if any, and interest payments on the Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds. If any Subordinate Payment Default shall have occurred and be continuing, Holders of Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds will be entitled to receive payment thereof in full before the Holders of the Second Subordinate Bonds are entitled to receive payment thereof; and any payment or distribution of assets otherwise payable to Holders of the Second Subordinate Bonds will be paid to Holders of Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds until all Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds have been Fully Paid, and the Holders of the Second Subordinate Bonds will be subrogated to the rights of such Holders of Senior Bonds and First Subordinate Bonds to receive payments or distributions of assets with respect thereto.

(iii) *Fully Subordinate Bonds.* The Principal, premium, if any, and interest on Fully Subordinate Bonds will be subordinated in right of payment to Accreted Value, Principal, premium, if any, and interest payments on the Senior Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds, and Second Subordinate Bonds. If any Subordinate Payment Default shall have occurred and be continuing, Holders of Senior Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds, and Second Subordinate Bonds will be entitled to receive payment thereof in full before the Holders of the Fully Subordinate Bonds are entitled to receive payment thereof; and any payment or distribution of assets otherwise payable to Holders of the Fully Subordinate Bonds will be paid to Holders of Senior Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds, and Second Subordinate Bonds until all Senior Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds and Second Subordinate Bonds have been Fully Paid, and the Holders of the Fully Subordinate Bonds will be subrogated to the rights of such Holders of Senior Bonds, First Subordinate Bonds and Second Subordinate Bonds to receive payments or distributions of assets with respect thereto.

*Individual Remedies.* Subject to the provisions of the next succeeding sentence, no one or more Holders shall by his or their action affect, disturb or prejudice the pledge and assignment created by the Trust Indenture, or enforce any right under the Trust Indenture, except in the manner provided therein; and all proceedings at law or in equity to enforce any provision of the Trust Indenture shall be instituted, had and maintained solely by the Trustee in the manner provided therein and for the equal and ratable benefit of all Holders of the same class. Nothing in the Trust Indenture shall affect or impair the right of any Holder of any Bond to enforce payment of the Accreted Value, Principal of, premium, if any, or interest thereon at and after the same comes due pursuant to the Trust Indenture, or the obligation of the Authority to pay such principal, premium, if any, and interest on each of the Bonds to the respective Holders thereof at the time, place, from the source and in the manner expressed in the Trust Indenture and in the Bonds.

*Venue.* Except as otherwise described in this paragraph, and unless otherwise provided in Article IV of the Ohio Constitution, any legal action against the Authority shall be brought in the Ohio Court of Claims under chapter 2743 of the Ohio Revised Code. Any special proceeding brought against the Authority or the State in which the Ohio Court of Appeals has original jurisdiction shall be filed and determined in the Court of Appeals of Franklin County. Pursuant to the Act, any such action or proceeding to which the Authority or the State is a party shall be preferred over all other civil causes of action or cases, except election causes of action or cases, irrespective of position on the calendar.

*Waiver.* If the Trustee determines that a Default has been cured before becoming an Event of Default and before the entry of any final judgment or decree with respect to it, the Trustee may waive the Default and its consequences, by written notice to the Authority, and shall do so upon written instruction of the Holders of at least 25% of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of the Senior Bonds.

*Supplements and Amendments to the Trust Indenture.* The Trust Indenture may be:

(i) supplemented by delivery to the Trustee of an instrument certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority to (A) provide for earlier or greater deposits into the Bond Service Fund, (B) upon direction of an Authorized Officer of the Authority, accompanied by an opinion of Counsel as to the validity thereof under the Act, subject any property to the lien of the Trust Indenture subject to the consent of the State or as authorized by law, (C) add to the covenants and agreements of the Authority or surrender or limit any right or power of the Authority to the extent permitted by the Act or other applicable law, (D) identify particular Bonds for purposes not inconsistent with the Trust Indenture, including credit or liquidity support, remarketing, serialization and defeasance, (E) cure any ambiguity or defect, (F) protect the exclusion of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes, or the exemption from registration of the Bonds under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or of the Trust Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, (G) authorize Bonds of a Series and in connection therewith determine the matters referred to in the Trust Indenture, and any other things relative to such Bonds that are not materially adverse to the Holders of Outstanding Bonds, or to modify or rescind any such authorization or determination at any time prior to the first authentication and delivery of such Series of Bonds, (H) make any other changes to the Trust Indenture that, as evidenced by a Rating Confirmation, are not materially adverse to the Holders of Outstanding Bonds, or (I) provide for the issuance of the Series 2007 Bonds, Refunding Bonds, Additional Bonds and Fully Subordinate Bonds in compliance with Article III of the Trust Indenture; or

(ii) amended in any other respect by the Authority and the Trustee, (A) to add provisions that are not materially adverse to the Holders, or (B) to adopt amendments that do not take effect unless and until (1) no Bonds Outstanding prior to the adoption of such amendment remain Outstanding or (2) such amendment is consented to by the Holders of such Bonds in accordance with the further provisions below; or

(iii) amended only with prior written notice to the Rating Agencies and the written consent of a Majority in Interest of the Aggregate Bond Obligation of Senior Bonds (or First Subordinate Bonds when there are no Senior Bonds Outstanding, or Second Subordinate Bonds when there are no Senior Bonds and no First Subordinate Bonds Outstanding); provided, however, the Trust Indenture shall not be amended so as to (A) extend the maturity of any Bond, (B) reduce the Principal amount or Accreted Value of any Bond, applicable premium or interest rate of any Bond, (C) make any Bond redeemable other than in accordance with its terms, (D) create a preference or priority of any Bond over any other Bond of the same class or (E) reduce the percentage of the Bonds required to be represented by the Holders giving their consent to any amendment unless the Holders of the Bonds affected thereby have consented thereto in writing.

Any amendment of the Trust Indenture shall be accompanied by a Counsel's opinion addressed to the Trustee to the effect that the amendment is permitted by law and by the Trust Indenture and, if there are Tax-Exempt Bonds Outstanding, does not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

When the Authority determines that the requisite number of consents have been obtained for an amendment hereto or to the 2007 Sale Agreement which requires consents, it shall file a certificate to that effect in its records and give written notice to the Trustee and the Holders. The Trustee will promptly certify to the Authority that it has given such notice to all Holders and such certificate will be conclusive evidence that such notice was given in the manner required by the Trust Indenture.

*Supplements and Amendments to the 2007 Sale Agreement.* In the event that the Trustee receives a request from the Authority for a consent or other action with respect to an amendment to the 2007 Sale Agreement pursuant to the Trust Indenture (see "Amendment to Agreement" above), the Trustee shall transmit a notice of such request to each Holder and request directions with respect thereto.

*Governing Law.* The Trust Indenture shall be governed by State law, without reference to its conflict of law provisions, and the obligations, rights and remedies of the parties under the Trust Indenture shall be determined in accordance with such laws. Any and all litigation or actions commenced in connection with the Trust Indenture and the Bonds shall be brought in the venues designated in the Trust Indenture (see "Venue" above).

## APPENDIX E

### BOOK-ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM

*The information in this Appendix E concerning The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”), New York, New York, and DTC’s book-entry system has been obtained from DTC and the Authority, the State and the Underwriters take no responsibility for the completeness or accuracy thereof. The Authority, the State and the Underwriters cannot and do not give any assurances that DTC, DTC Participants or Indirect Participants will distribute to the Beneficial Owners (a) payments of principal of and interest on the Series 2007 Bonds, (b) certificates representing ownership interest in or other confirmation or ownership interest in the Series 2007 Bonds, or (c) redemption or other notices sent to DTC or Cede & Co., its nominee, as the registered owner of the Series 2007 Bonds, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or that DTC, DTC Participants or DTC Indirect Participants will act in the manner described in this Appendix F. The current “Rules” applicable to DTC are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission and the current “Procedures” of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.*

DTC will act as securities depository for the Series 2007 Bonds. The Series 2007 Bonds will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC’s partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully registered security certificate of each Series and maturity will be issued for the Series 2007 Bonds, in the aggregate initial principal amount of such Series 2007 Bonds, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a “banking organization” within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a “clearing corporation” within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a “clearing agency” registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 2.2 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments from over 100 countries that DTC’s participants (“Direct Participants”) deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants’ accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (“DTCC”). DTCC, in turn, is owned by a number of Direct Participants of DTC and Members of the National Securities Clearing Corporation, Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, and Emerging Markets Clearing Corporation (respectively, “NSCC,” “FICC,” and “EMCC,” also subsidiaries of DTCC), as well as by the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., the American Stock Exchange LLC, and the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly (“Indirect Participants”). DTC has Standard & Poor’s highest rating: AAA. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com) and [www.dtc.org](http://www.dtc.org).

Purchases of the Series 2007 Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Series 2007 Bonds on DTC’s records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Series 2007 Bonds (“Beneficial Owner”) is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants’ records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Series 2007 Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in

the Series 2007 Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for the Series 2007 Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Series 2007 Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of the Series 2007 Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Series 2007 Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Series 2007 Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of the Series 2007 Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the security documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of the Series 2007 Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Series 2007 Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the Authority as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts the Series 2007 Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Payments of principal of and interest evidenced by the Series 2007 Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the Authority or the Trustee, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC (nor its nominee), the Trustee, or the Authority, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payment of principal of and interest evidenced by the Series 2007 Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of the Authority or the Trustee, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

NONE OF THE AUTHORITY, THE UNDERWRITERS OR THE TRUSTEE WILL HAVE ANY RESPONSIBILITY OR OBLIGATION TO DTC PARTICIPANTS, INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR BENEFICIAL OWNERS WITH RESPECT TO THE PAYMENTS OR THE PROVIDING OF NOTICE TO DTC PARTICIPANTS, INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR BENEFICIAL OWNERS OR THE SELECTION OF BONDS FOR PREPAYMENT.



DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Series 2007 Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Authority or the Trustee. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered. The Authority may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, bond certificates will be printed and delivered. In the event that the book-entry system is discontinued as described above, the requirements of the Indenture will apply.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]

**APPENDIX F**

**ACCRETED VALUE TABLES**

**Table of Accreted Values for the  
Series 2007A-3 Senior Convertible Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
to Conversion Date  
(Accreted Values Shown Per \$5,000 Maturity Amount)**

<b>Date</b>	<b>Accreted Value</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Accreted Value</b>
29-Oct-2007	\$3,655.55	1-Dec-2010	\$4,420.90
1-Jun-2008	3,790.45	1-Jun-2011	4,559.05
1-Dec-2008	3,908.90	1-Dec-2011	4,701.55
1-Jun-2009	4,031.05	1-Jun-2012	4,848.45
1-Dec-2009	4,157.05	1-Dec-2012 and thereafter	5,000.00
1-Jun-2010	4,286.95		

**Table of Accreted Values for the  
Series 2007B First Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
(Accreted Values Shown Per \$5,000 Maturity Amount)**

<b>Date</b>	<b>Accreted Value</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Accreted Value</b>
29-Oct-2007	\$298.20	1-Dec-2030	\$1,543.95
1-Jun-2008	310.95	1-Jun-2031	1,599.90
1-Dec-2008	322.25	1-Dec-2031	1,657.90
1-Jun-2009	333.90	1-Jun-2032	1,718.00
1-Dec-2009	346.00	1-Dec-2032	1,780.30
1-Jun-2010	358.55	1-Jun-2033	1,844.85
1-Dec-2010	371.55	1-Dec-2033	1,911.70
1-Jun-2011	385.05	1-Jun-2034	1,981.00
1-Dec-2011	399.00	1-Dec-2034	2,052.80
1-Jun-2012	413.45	1-Jun-2035	2,127.25
1-Dec-2012	428.45	1-Dec-2035	2,204.35
1-Jun-2013	443.95	1-Jun-2036	2,284.25
1-Dec-2013	460.05	1-Dec-2036	2,367.05
1-Jun-2014	476.75	1-Jun-2037	2,452.85
1-Dec-2014	494.05	1-Dec-2037	2,541.80
1-Jun-2015	511.95	1-Jun-2038	2,633.95
1-Dec-2015	530.50	1-Dec-2038	2,729.40
1-Jun-2016	549.75	1-Jun-2039	2,828.35
1-Dec-2016	569.65	1-Dec-2039	2,930.90
1-Jun-2017	590.30	1-Jun-2040	3,037.15
1-Dec-2017	611.70	1-Dec-2040	3,147.20
1-Jun-2018	633.90	1-Jun-2041	3,261.30
1-Dec-2018	656.85	1-Dec-2041	3,379.55
1-Jun-2019	680.65	1-Jun-2042	3,502.05
1-Dec-2019	705.35	1-Dec-2042	3,629.00
1-Jun-2020	730.90	1-Jun-2043	3,760.55
1-Dec-2020	757.40	1-Dec-2043	3,896.85
1-Jun-2021	784.85	1-Jun-2044	4,038.15
1-Dec-2021	813.35	1-Dec-2044	4,184.50
1-Jun-2022	842.80	1-Jun-2045	4,336.20
1-Dec-2022	873.35	1-Dec-2045	4,493.40
1-Jun-2023	905.00	1-Jun-2046	4,656.25
1-Dec-2023	937.85	1-Dec-2046	4,825.05
1-Jun-2024	971.85	1-Jun-2047	5,000.00
1-Dec-2024	1,007.05		
1-Jun-2025	1,043.55		
1-Dec-2025	1,081.40		
1-Jun-2026	1,120.60		
1-Dec-2026	1,161.20		
1-Jun-2027	1,203.30		
1-Dec-2027	1,246.95		
1-Jun-2028	1,292.15		
1-Dec-2028	1,339.00		
1-Jun-2029	1,387.50		
1-Dec-2029	1,437.80		
1-Jun-2030	1,489.95		

**Table of Accreted Values for the  
Series 2007C Second Subordinate Capital Appreciation Turbo Term Bonds  
(Accreted Values Shown Per \$5,000 Maturity Amount)**

<b>Date</b>	<b>Accreted Value</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Accreted Value</b>
29-Oct-2007	\$187.55	1-Dec-2030	\$1,026.75
1-Jun-2008	195.85	1-Jun-2031	1,065.25
1-Dec-2008	203.20	1-Dec-2031	1,105.20
1-Jun-2009	210.85	1-Jun-2032	1,146.65
1-Dec-2009	218.75	1-Dec-2032	1,189.65
1-Jun-2010	226.95	1-Jun-2033	1,234.30
1-Dec-2010	235.45	1-Dec-2033	1,280.55
1-Jun-2011	244.30	1-Jun-2034	1,328.60
1-Dec-2011	253.45	1-Dec-2034	1,378.40
1-Jun-2012	262.95	1-Jun-2035	1,430.10
1-Dec-2012	272.80	1-Dec-2035	1,483.75
1-Jun-2013	283.05	1-Jun-2036	1,539.35
1-Dec-2013	293.65	1-Dec-2036	1,597.10
1-Jun-2014	304.70	1-Jun-2037	1,657.00
1-Dec-2014	316.10	1-Dec-2037	1,719.15
1-Jun-2015	327.95	1-Jun-2038	1,783.60
1-Dec-2015	340.25	1-Dec-2038	1,850.50
1-Jun-2016	353.00	1-Jun-2039	1,919.90
1-Dec-2016	366.25	1-Dec-2039	1,991.85
1-Jun-2017	380.00	1-Jun-2040	2,066.55
1-Dec-2017	394.25	1-Dec-2040	2,144.05
1-Jun-2018	409.05	1-Jun-2041	2,224.45
1-Dec-2018	424.35	1-Dec-2041	2,307.90
1-Jun-2019	440.30	1-Jun-2042	2,394.45
1-Dec-2019	456.80	1-Dec-2042	2,484.25
1-Jun-2020	473.90	1-Jun-2043	2,577.40
1-Dec-2020	491.70	1-Dec-2043	2,674.05
1-Jun-2021	510.15	1-Jun-2044	2,774.30
1-Dec-2021	529.25	1-Dec-2044	2,878.35
1-Jun-2022	549.10	1-Jun-2045	2,986.30
1-Dec-2022	569.70	1-Dec-2045	3,098.30
1-Jun-2023	591.05	1-Jun-2046	3,214.45
1-Dec-2023	613.25	1-Dec-2046	3,335.00
1-Jun-2024	636.25	1-Jun-2047	3,460.10
1-Dec-2024	660.10	1-Dec-2047	3,589.85
1-Jun-2025	684.85	1-Jun-2048	3,724.45
1-Dec-2025	710.55	1-Dec-2048	3,864.10
1-Jun-2026	737.20	1-Jun-2049	4,009.00
1-Dec-2026	764.85	1-Dec-2049	4,159.35
1-Jun-2027	793.50	1-Jun-2050	4,315.35
1-Dec-2027	823.25	1-Dec-2050	4,477.15
1-Jun-2028	854.15	1-Jun-2051	4,645.05
1-Dec-2028	886.15	1-Dec-2051	4,819.25
1-Jun-2029	919.40	1-Jun-2052	5,000.00
1-Dec-2029	953.90		
1-Jun-2030	989.65		

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]

## APPENDIX G

### INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS

1934 Act.....	126	Current Interest Bonds.....	S-1
2007 Residual Certificate.....	S-7, 54	DAC.....	129
2007 Sale Agreement.....	cover, 2	Debt Service Coverage .....	112
2007 Sold Tobacco Receipts.....	cover, S-2, 47	Delivery Date.....	cover, 3
Accreted Value.....	S-10	Deposit Date .....	S-18, 49
Act.....	cover, S-3	Direct Participants .....	E-1
Actual Operating Income .....	61	Disclosure Dissemination Agent .....	128
Actual Volume .....	60	Disclosure Dissemination Agreement .....	128
Additional Bonds .....	S-22, 45	Discount Bonds.....	131
Allocable Share Release Amendment.....	3, 69	Disputed Payments Account.....	S-2
Allocable Share Release Legislation.....	18	Distribution Date .....	S-10
Altria .....	71	DTC .....	S-3, 34, E-1
Annual Payments .....	S-6	DTCC .....	E-1
Authority .....	cover, S-1	EMCC.....	E-1
Authorized Denomination.....	S-3, 34	Enforcement Expenses .....	S-8, S-18
B&W .....	S-5, 71	ETS .....	12
Bankruptcy Code .....	27	FCLAA .....	12
Base Aggregate Participating		FCTC .....	79
Manufacturer Market Share.....	20, 61	FDA .....	13, 75
Base Operating Income.....	61	FICC .....	E-1
Base Share.....	63	Final Approval.....	65
Base Volume.....	60	Findings .....	83
Bekenton .....	25	First Subordinate Capital Appreciation	
Beneficial Owner .....	E-1	Bonds .....	S-1
Bond Fund.....	47	Fitch.....	132
Bond Obligation.....	S-10	Foundation .....	66
Bond Structuring Methodology .....	106	<i>Freedom Holdings</i> .....	6
Bond Year .....	S-18	FTC.....	87
Bonds .....	cover, S-1	Fully Paid.....	48
Business Day.....	S-10	Fully Subordinate Bonds .....	S-23, 46
Capital Appreciation Bonds.....	S-1	Global Insight .....	8
Cash Equivalents.....	S-14, 48	Global Insight Base Case Forecast .....	102
Cash Flow Assumptions .....	106	Global Insight Consumption Report.....	8, 102
CBI.....	72	Global Insight FET Increase Case .....	125
cigarette.....	26, 59	Global Insight High Forecast.....	125
Code .....	S-19, 129	Global Insight Low Case 1 .....	125
Collateral.....	S-3, 46	Global Insight Low Case 2 .....	125
Collection Account .....	S-15, 47	Global Insight Low Case 3 .....	125
Collections .....	S-3	<i>Grand River</i> .....	4
Complementary Legislation.....	3, 23	Grand River Defendant States .....	4
Contract Clause.....	33	HCCR Act.....	99
Conversion Date.....	cover, 9	Holders.....	34
Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond.....	S-10	Income Adjustment.....	61
Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds .....	S-1	Indenture.....	cover, S-2
CPC .....	9	Indirect Participants.....	E-1
CPI .....	60, 107	Inflation Adjustment.....	60

## APPENDIX G

### INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS (Continued)

Initial Payments .....	S-6	Pledged Accounts .....	S-3, S-16
IRI/Capstone .....	71	Pledged Tobacco Receipts .....	cover, S-2
IRS .....	129	PMS .....	S-2, S-5, 55
Liggett .....	72	Premium Bonds .....	131
Litigating Releasing Parties Offset .....	63	Previously Settled States .....	56
Lorillard .....	S-5, 71	Previously Settled States Reduction .....	61
Lump Sum Payment .....	S-15	Principal .....	S-11
Mandatory Clean-Up Call .....	S-14, 45	Priority Payments .....	S-19
Market Share .....	63	Pro Rata .....	S-12
Maturity Date .....	cover, S-11	Projected Turbo Redemption .....	S-13
MDL Panel .....	11	Qualifying Statute .....	67
MDPH .....	76	Rating Agencies .....	132
MFN .....	25	Rating Agency .....	132
<i>MidCal</i> .....	6	Record Date .....	34
Model Statute .....	67	Refunding Bonds .....	S-22, 45
Moody's .....	132	Relative Market Share .....	59
MSA .....	S-2	Released Parties .....	57
MSA Auditor .....	58	Released Party .....	57
MSA Escrow Agent .....	58	Releasing Parties .....	57
MSA Escrow Agreement .....	58	Relief Clause .....	25
MSAI .....	72	Repository .....	126
MSRB .....	127	Reynolds American .....	S-5, 71
NAAG .....	18	Reynolds Tobacco .....	S-5, 71
National Repository .....	126	RICO .....	98
New York State Defendants .....	6	Rule .....	126
Non-Participating Manufacturers .....	S-5	S&P .....	132
Non-Released Parties .....	63	SCHIP .....	15, 79
<i>NP</i> .....	6	<i>SEC</i> .....	70, 126
NPM Adjustment .....	61	Second Subordinate Capital	
NPMs .....	S-5	Appreciation Bonds .....	S-1
NSCC .....	E-1	Securities Act .....	inside cover
OCSPA .....	88	Senior Bonds .....	S-1
Officer's Certificate .....	16	Senior Debt Service Account .....	47
Offset for Claims-Over .....	63	Senior Liquidity Reserve Account .....	S-14
Offset for Miscalculated or Disputed		Senior Liquidity Reserve Requirement .	S-14, 47
Payments .....	62	Serial Bonds .....	S-1
OFPC .....	76	Series .....	S-22, 45
OID .....	131	Series 2007 Bonds .....	cover, S-1
Operating Expenses .....	S-19	Series 2007 Supplement .....	S-2
OPMs .....	S-5	Series 2007A Bonds .....	cover, S-1
Original Participating Manufacturers .....	S-5	Series 2007A-1 Bonds .....	S-1
Outstanding Bonds .....	S-4	Series 2007A-2 Bonds .....	S-1
Parity Swap Payments .....	S-19	Series 2007A-3 Bonds .....	S-1
<i>Parker</i> .....	6	Series 2007B Bonds .....	cover, S-1
Partial Lump Sum Payment .....	S-16	Series 2007C Bonds .....	cover, S-1
Partial Lump Sum Payment Account .....	48	Settling States .....	S-2, S-5
Participating Manufacturers .....	S-5	Sinking Fund Installments .....	S-11
Payment Default .....	S-11	SPMs .....	S-5, 55
Payment Priorities .....	S-12	Star .....	101
Philip Morris .....	S-5, 71	State .....	cover, S-2



## APPENDIX G

### INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS (Continued)

State Defendants .....	10	Trustee .....	cover, S-2
State Repository .....	126	Turbo Redemption .....	40
State-Specific Finality .....	65	Turbo Redemption Account .....	48
Strategic Contribution Payments .....	S-6	Turbo Redemption Date .....	S-12
Subordinate Bonds .....	S-1	Turbo Redemptions .....	cover, S-11
Subordinate Payment Default .....	S-12	Turbo Term Bond Maturity .....	S-19
Subsequent Participating Manufacturers .....	S-5	Turbo Term Bonds .....	S-1
Surplus Collections .....	S-11, 51	Undertaking .....	126
TABESA .....	56	Underwriters .....	132
Tax Obligations .....	S-19	United States .....	59
Termination Payment .....	S-19	units sold .....	68
Termination Payment Cap .....	S-19	USDA .....	73
Three Agreements .....	25	USDA-ERS .....	73
Tobacco Products .....	66	Vector .....	72
Total Lump Sum Payment .....	S-16	Volume Adjustment .....	60
Trust Indenture .....	S-2		

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.]



